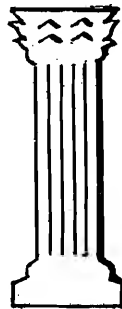


*STUDENTS' INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS*

CAESAR'S  
COMMENTARIES  
ON THE  
GALLIC WAR

Books I—VII

THE ORIGINAL LATIN TEXT  
WITH AN INTERLINEAR ENGLISH TRANSLATION  
By FREDERICK HOLLAND DEWEY, A.B.



TRANSLATION PUBLISHING CO., INC.  
67 Irving Place, New York

COPYRIGHT, 1918  
TRANSLATION PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.

## INTRODUCTION

---

Since Caesar is the first Roman author studied by beginners in Latin, a translation of his work should be practical and helpful for both teacher and student. Such a translation, especially an inter-linear, must not be so smooth and polished in English style and diction as to escape the true Latin meaning of word and phrase, or so slavishly literal and exact that the real meaning is clouded by the abuse of English idiom.

Owing to the style and nature of Caesar's work, it is impossible to produce an elegant, polished English rendering, and at the same time indicate the full force and meaning of the original. The Commentaries of Caesar are camp notes, hastily composed, and sent to Rome annually, merely as military reports. The author never considered them a classical production and for that reason never carefully revised and polished them as did Cicero his famous orations.

As Caesar, in early life, devoutly studied and practiced versification, with the secret hope of becoming a famous poet, his writings are occasionally enlivened with poetic terms and expressions. Although his epigrams and lyrics have disappeared, his military notes, hastily written, have become immortal. The poetic element in the Commentaries appearing in many vivid and original uses of words, calls for especial attention in a translation. These Commentaries, little valued as a literary work by the author, were soon adopted as a text by ancient Roman teachers, and ever since have been found indispensable in classical instruction because of their artistic perfection. We have endeavored to indicate these natural touches by following Caesar as closely as possible.

The elements of Caesar's work which render it so suitable as a means of instruction also make it the most difficult to translate into good English. The Commentaries, being mere camp notes, are written with a conciseness, force and teeming thought in a climactic progress, which the English idiom can with difficulty reproduce from the brevity of the Latin. Caesar's command of climax, his fluency, his poetic use of words, together with his philosophic outlook, cause a strictly literal translation to be very inadequate.

The frequent use of indirect discourse is also an added difficulty for the translator. If the rendering of such passages is too free, the translation as a reproduction of the Latin thought and a clue to the Latin construction, will be most misleading to the student. For practical use a translation must be transparent and behind it the original language must be visible. In certain passages where Caesar desires to represent rapid action, he has used a vivid and condensed form of construction, even for Latin. A smooth and easy rendering would fail to reproduce the life and vitality of Caesar's thought.

He will suddenly use a word in a bright and original manner, even as we might expect from the pen of a poet, and unless the feeling and force of the passage is rendered as well as the bare thought, an important element of Caesar's style is entirely lost. Caesar possessed such a command of both the essential and secondary meanings of Latin terms that his brief and cursory notes shine with these gems of thought. The natural Latin order of thought and expression, a style somewhat inverted to the English thinking mind, of course is found in Caesar in all its Roman complexity. Beside Caesar has inverted forms of expression, peculiarly his own.

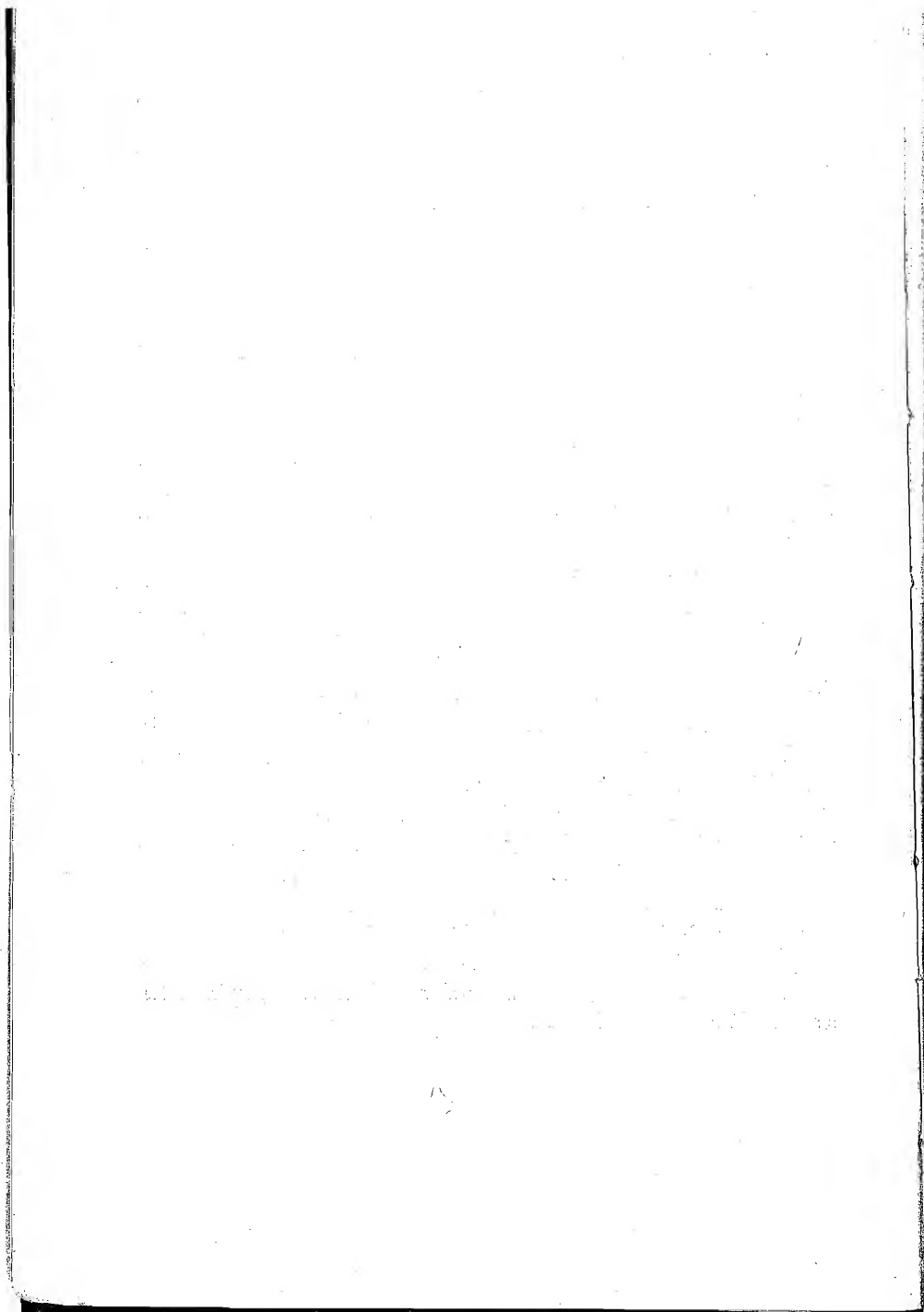
Translators therefore have found it impracticable to preserve the Latin order of the original and the student after the use of the interlinear must reconstruct his own translation and by comparison with the usual text book, will be able to appreciate the power and beauty of the Latin language, which must in a large degree escape even the most careful translation, as a result of the artificial English order of the Latin words.



Owing to the prevalence of these difficulties throughout the Commentaries of Caesar and the inadequacy of the usual methods of translation, a new system has been adopted in the production of this interlinear. In the reproduction of the Latin words into English it has been the endeavor to render the Latin terms as literally and exactly as possible, consistent with good English idiom. To remedy the crudeness of passages which have been impossible to render exactly into our idiom in an interlinear translation and which would become too wordy beneath the Latin, explanatory notes have been added in many instances providing a freer translation. Notes of this nature are an innovation in an interlinear and taken together with the parallel translation will afford both a free and an exactly literal rendering. In this manner the full meaning, the original and poetic feeling, the strength and rapidity, the artistic completeness of Caesar's style, by comparison of the renderings, can be obtained.

In order to modify exact renderings so that a more pleasing English idiom may be produced, not too far removed from the Latin sense, brackets have been used about these synonymous terms and expressions. In translating, if desired, these bracketed portions may be substituted for the more exact renderings which immediately precede. It has been the endeavor in every instance not to use in brackets any forms which would mislead the student concerning the essential meanings of the Latin text.

Words and expressions which may be entirely omitted or those which may be supplied bodily to suit more nearly the English phraseology, and which are not synonymous, have been inserted in parentheses. Such parenthetical portions may be used or omitted as the student's judgment may decide in order to obtain the best English rendering. In the preparation of this work the standard Latin school text as regards punctuation and orthography in so far as possible has been followed.



THE COMMENTARIES OF  
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR  
ON THE  
GALLIC WAR

FIRST BOOK

Cæsar, in recounting the events of the war which he waged in Gaul, first describes Gaul itself, then tells of two battles against the Helvetians and then of one against the Germans.

1. Omnis<sup>1</sup> Gallia est divisa in tres partes: unam  
All Gaul is divided into three parts: one  
quarum Belgæ incolunt; aliam, Aquitani; tertiam,  
of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third,  
qui linguâ ipsorum appellantur  
(those) who in (the) language of themselves are called  
Celtæ, nostrâ, Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter  
Celtæ, in ours, Gauls. All these differ between  
se linguâ, institutis, legibus. Flumen  
themselves in language, in institutions, (and) in laws. The river  
Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis,  
Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitani,  
Matrona et Sequana à Belgis. Belgæ sunt  
the Marne and Seine from the Belgæ. The Belgæ are  
fortissimi omnium horum, propterea quod absunt  
the bravest of all these, because (that) they are distant  
longissimè à cultu atque humanitate  
farthest from the cultivation and humanity [refinement]  
Provinciæ; que mercatores minimè sæpe  
of the Province [Provence]; and merchants least often

commēant ad eos, atque important ea,  
resort to them, and import those (things)

quæ pertinent ad animos effeminandos.  
which tend to minds to be effeminated [to enfeeble

their minds]. Sunt proximi Germanis, qui  
They are nearest to the Germans, who

incōlunt trans Rhenum, cum quibus gerunt  
dwell beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry on

bellum continenter : de quâ causâ Helvetii  
war continually : from which cause the Helvetii

quōque præcedunt reliquos Gallos virtute;  
also go before [excel] the remaining Gauls in valor;

quod contendunt cum Germanis fere, quotidianis  
because they contend with the Germans almost, in daily

præliis quum aut prohibent eos suis  
battles when either they prohibit [bar] them from their own

finibus, aut ipsi gerunt bellum in  
borders, or they [themselves] carry on war in

finibus eorum.<sup>2</sup> Una pars eorum, quam  
the borders of them [their]. One part of them, which

dictum est Gallos obtinere, capit initium à  
it has been said the Gauls to hold, [possess] takes beginning from

flumine Rhodano; continetur flumine Garumnâ,  
the river Rhone; it is bounded by the river Garonne,

Oceano, finibus Belgarum; etiam attingit  
by the ocean, by the borders of the Belgæ; also it touches

flumen Rhenum<sup>3</sup> à Sequanis et  
[reaches to] the river Rhine from the Sequani and

Helvetiis;<sup>4</sup> vergit ad Septentriones.  
the Helvetii; it inclines to the seven stars [the North].

Belgæ oriuntur ab extremis finibus Galliarum;  
The Belgæ rise from the farthest borders of Gaul;

pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni;  
they reach to the lower part of the river Rhine;

spectant in Septentriones et orientem solem.  
they look unto [towards] the North and the rising sun.

Aquitania pertinet à flumine Garumnâ ad  
Aquitania reaches from the river Garonne to

Pyrenæos montes, et etiam partem Oceani,  
 the Pyrenees mountains, and that part of the Ocean,  
 quæ est ad Hispaniam, spectat inter occasum  
 which is [next] to Spain, it looks between the going down  
 Solis et Septentriones.  
 of the sun [West] and the North.

2. Orgetorix fuit longè nobilissimus et ditissimus  
 Orgetorix was by far the most noble and the richest  
 apud Helvetios. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco  
 among the Helvetii. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus  
 Pisone consulibus, inductus cupiditate regni,  
 Piso (being) consuls, induced by desire of the kingdom, [of  
 fecit conjurationem nobilitatis; et persuasit  
 reigning] made a conspiracy of the nobility; and persuaded  
 civitati, ut exirent de suis finibus  
 (to) the state that they should go out from their own borders  
 cum omnibus copiis, esse perfacile, quum  
 with all their forces: to be [that it was] very easy, since  
 præstarent (imp. subj.) omnibus virtute, potiri  
 they were excelling (to) all in valor, to gain  
 imperio totius Galliæ. Persuait id eis<sup>5</sup>  
 the empire of all Gaul. He persuaded (to) this (to) them  
 hoc facilius, quòd Helvetii continentur  
 by this more easily, because the Helvetii are contained in [hemmed in]  
 undique natura loci; ex<sup>6</sup> unâ parte,  
 on every side by the nature of the place; from [on] one side,  
 latissimo atque altissimo flumine Rheno,  
 by the widest [very wide] and very deep river Rhine,  
 qui dividit Helvetium agrum à Germanis:  
 which divides the Helvetians' land from the Germans:  
 ex alterâ parte, altissimo monte Jurâ,  
 on the other side, by the very high mountain Jura, [St. Claude]  
 qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios;  
 which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; (on the)  
 tertiâ, lacu Lemano, et  
 third (side), by lake Lemanus [the lake Geneva], and  
 flumine Rhodano, qui dividit nostram provinciam  
 by the river Rhone, which divides our province

ab Helvetiis. Fiebat  
 [Provençe] from the Helvetii. It was made [it happened]  
 his rebus, ut et vagarentur (imp.sub.) minus  
 by these things, that both they were roving less  
 latè et possent (imp.sub.) minus facîle inferre  
 widely and were able less easily to bring on  
 bellum finitimis. De<sup>7</sup> quâ caussâ homines  
 [wage] war (on) neighbors. From which cause men  
 cupidi bellandi afficiebantur magno dolore. Autem  
 desirous of warring were affected with great distress. But  
 arbitrabantur<sup>8</sup> se habere angustos fines, pro  
 they were deeming themselves to have narrow borders, for  
 multitudîne hominum et pro gloriâ belli atque  
 the multitude of men and for the glory of war and  
 fortitudinis; qui patebant ducenta et  
 of bravery; which was lying open [extending] two hundred and  
 quadraginta millia passuum in longitudinem, centum  
 forty thousand (of) paces into [in] length, a hundred  
 et octoginta in latitudinem.  
 and eighty into [in] width.  
 3. Adducti his rebus, et permoti auctoritate  
 Induced by these things, and excited by the authority  
 Orgetorigis, constituerunt comparare ea,  
 of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those (things)  
 quæ pertinerent (imp.subj.) ad proficiscendum;  
 which were pertaining to setting out; [the expedition]  
 eoemere quàm maximum numerum  
 to-buy-up as the greatest [the greatest possible] number  
 jumentorum et carrorum; facere<sup>9</sup> quàm  
 of beasts of burden [cattle] and of wagons; to make as  
 maximas sementes, ut copiâ frumenti suppeteret  
 the greatest sowings, that a supply of corn might be at hand  
 in itinere; confirmare pacem et amicitiam cum  
 on the way [march]; to confirm peace and friendship with  
 proximis civitatibus. Duxerunt biennium<sup>10</sup>  
 the nearest states. They led [thought] two years-  
 esse satis sibi ad eas res  
 time to be enough for themselves for those things

conficiendas; confirmant lege profectionem  
 to be accomplished; they established by law (their) departure  
 in tertium annum. Orgetōrix<sup>11</sup> deligitur ad  
 upon [for] the third year. Orgetorix is chosen for  
 eas res conficiendas. Is suscepit sibi  
 those things to be accomplished. He undertook to himself  
 legationem ad civitates. In eo itinere persuadet  
 an embassy to the states. In this journey he persuades  
 Castīco, filio Catamantaledis, Seqāno, pater<sup>12</sup>  
 (to) Casticus, son of Catamantaledes, a Sequanian, the father  
 cujus obtinuērat regnum in Sequānis multos  
 of whom had held the kingdom in the Sequani many  
 annos, et appellatus-erat amicus Romani populi  
 years, and had been called friend of the Roman people  
 à Senatu, ut occuparet regnum in  
 by the Senate, that he should occupy the kingdom in  
 suā civitate, quod pater antè habuērat: que  
 his own state, which (his) father before had held: and  
 item persuadet Ædūo Dumnorīgi, fratri  
 likewise he persuades (to) the Æduan Dumnorix, the brother  
 Divitiāci, qui eo tempore obtinebat principatum  
 of Divitiacus, who in this time was holding sovereignty  
 in suā civitate, ac erat maxīmè acceptus  
 in his state, and was especially acceptable  
 plebi, ut conaretur idem;  
 to the common people, that he should attempt the same (thing);  
 que dat suam filiam in matrimonium ei.  
 and gives his daughter into [in] marriage to him.  
 Prōbat illis esse perfacile factu  
 He proves to them to be [that it was] very easy to be done  
 perficere conata, propterēa quòd ipse  
 to effect (the things) attempted, because (that) (he) himself  
 esset (imp.subj.) obtenturus imperium suæ  
 was about to hold [obtain] the empire of his  
 civitatis: esse non dubium quin  
 state: to be [that it was] not doubtful but that  
 Helvetii possent (imp.subj.) plurimum totius  
 the Helvetians were able most [most powerful] of all

Galliæ; confirmat,<sup>13</sup> se conciliaturum  
 Gaul; he confirms [assures], himself about to secure  
 regna illis suis copiis que suo exercitu.  
 the kingdoms for them with his stores and with his army.  
 Adducti hac oratione, dant inter se  
 Induced by this speech, they give between themselves  
 fidem et iusjurandum; et regno  
 faith and oath; and the kingdom [government]  
 occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos  
 being occupied by three most powerful and most steadfast  
 populos, sperant<sup>14</sup> sese posse potiri totius  
 peoples, they hope themselves to be able to possess (of) all  
 Galliæ.  
 Gaul.

4. Ut ea res enuntiata-est Helvetiis per  
 When this thing [action] was declared to the Helvetii through  
 indicium, suis moribus coegerunt Orgetorigem dicere  
 a disclosure, by their customs they forced Orgetorix to say  
 causam ex vinculis. Oportebat poenam  
 [plead] (his) cause from [in] bonds. It must be punishment  
 sequi damnatum, ut cremaretur  
 to [should] follow (him) condemned, (viz:) that he be burnt  
 igni. Die constituta dictionis causæ,  
 with fire. On the day appointed of saying [pleading] the cause,  
 Orgetorix coegit omnem suam familiam, ad  
 Orgetorix collected all his family, [clan] to [about]  
 decem millia hominum ad iudicium; et<sup>15</sup>  
 ten thousand (of) men to the trial; and  
 conduxit eodem omnes suos clientes que  
 he led together to the same place all his clients and  
 obæratos, quorum habebat magnum numerum:  
 debt bondsmen, of whom he was having a great number;  
 per eos, eripuit se ne-dicëret  
 by these, he rescued himself that he might not plead  
 causam. Quum civitas, incitata ob  
 the cause. When the state, excited on account of  
 eam rem, conaretur (imp. subj.) exequi suum jus  
 this thing, was endeavoring to execute its right



armis, que magistratus cogèrent (imp. subj.)  
by arms, and the magistrates were collecting

multitudinem hominum ex agris, Orgetorix mortuus-est;  
a multitude of men out of the fields, Orgetorix died;

nēque<sup>16</sup> suspicio ābest, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin  
nor suspicion is absent, as the Helvetii think, but that

ipse consciverit (perf. subj.) mortem sibi.  
himself determined death to himself [committed suicide].

5. Nihilominus post mortem ejus Helvetii  
Nevertheless after the death of him the Helvetii

conantur facere id, quod constituerant, ut  
endeavor to do this, which they had determined, that

exēant ē suis finibus. Ubi jam arbitrati-sunt  
they may go out from their borders. When now they deemed

se paratos-esse ad eam rem, incendunt  
themselves to have been prepared to [for] this thing, they set fire to

omnia sua oppida, ad duodecim numero, vicos  
all their towns, to [about] twelve in number, villages

ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia;  
to [about] four hundred, the remaining private buildings;

comburent omne frumentum, praeter quod erant  
they burn up all the corn, except (that) which they were

portaturi cum se; ut, spe reditionis  
about to carry with themselves; that, the hope of a return

dōmum sublatā, essent<sup>17</sup> paratiores ad  
home being taken away, they might be more ready to

omnia pericula subeunda: jubent quemque  
all dangers to be undergone: they order each

afferre dōmo sibi molita cibaria trīum  
to bring from home for himself ground provisions of [for] three

mensium. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis,  
months. They persuade (to) the Rauraci, and (to) the Tulingi,

et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti uti  
and (to) the Latobrigi, (their) neighbors, that having adopted

eodem consilio, suis oppidis que vicis  
the same plan, their towns and villages

exustis, proficiscantur unā cum eis:  
having been burnt up, they should depart together with them:

que<sup>18</sup> adsciscunt receptos ad se socios  
 and they vote in received to themselves as allies  
 sibi, Boios, qui incoluerant trans Rhenum  
 to themselves, the Boii, who had dwelt across the Rhine  
 et transierant in Noricum agrum, que  
 and had passed over into the Norican land, and  
 oppugnarent Noreiam.  
 had besieged Noreia.

6. Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus  
 There were in all two roads, by which roads  
 possent exire domo; unum per  
 they might be able to go forth from home; one through  
 Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem  
 the Sequani narrow and difficult between Mount  
 Jura et flumen Rhodanum, qua singuli  
 Jura and the river Rhone, by [in] which single  
 carri vix ducerentur; autem altissimus  
 wagons scarcely could be led; but [moreover] the highest [a very  
 mons impendebat, ut perpauci facile  
 high] mountain was overhanging, so that very few easily  
 possent prohibere; alterum per nostram  
 would be able [could] (to) prohibit; the other through our  
 provinciam, multo facilius atque expeditius;  
 province, much more easy and more unimpeded;  
 propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et  
 because (that) between the borders of the Helvetii and  
 Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati-erant,  
 of the Allobroges, who lately had been reduced to peace [subdued]  
 Rhodanus fluit, que is nonnullis locis transitur  
 the Rhone flows, and this in some places is passed  
 vado. Genava est extremum oppidum Allobrogum  
 by ford. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges  
 que proximum finibus Helvetiorum; ex eo  
 and nearest to the borders of the Helvetii; from that  
 oppido pons pertinet ad Helvetios. Existimabant<sup>19</sup>  
 town a bridge reaches to the Helvetii. They were thinking  
 sese ve persuasuros Allobrogibus, (dat.) quod  
 themselves either about to persuade the Allobroges, because

viderentur (imp. subj.) nondum bōno anīmo in  
 they were seeming not yet with good mind towards  
 Romanum popūlum; vel coacturos vi,  
 the Roman people; or about to force by violence,  
 ut paterentur eos ire per suos fines.  
 that they should suffer them to go through their borders.  
 Omnibus rebus comparatis ad profectionem,  
 All things being prepared for (their) departure,  
 dicunt diem, quā diē omnes conveniant  
 they say [appoint] a day, on which day all may assemble  
 ad ripam Rhodāni. Is diēs erat ante quintum  
 at the bank of the Rhone. This day was before the fifth  
 diem kalendarum Aprilis; Lucio Pisone,  
 day of the Kalends of April [27th March]; Lucius Piso,  
 Aulo Gabinio consulibus.  
 Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls.

7. Quum id nuntiatum-esset (pl. perf. subj.) Cæsari,  
 When this had been told to Cæsar (that),  
 eos conari facere iter per nostram  
 them to [they would] endeavor to make a journey through our  
 provinciā, maturat proficisci ab urbe, et  
 province, he hastens to depart from the city, and  
 contendit in ulteriorem Galliam itineribus<sup>20</sup> quā  
 rushes into farther Gaul by journeys as  
 maximis potest, et pervenit ad Genavam. Imperat  
 greatest he can, and arrives at Geneva. He orders  
 toti provinciæ quā maximum  
 (to) the whole province (to furnish) as greatest [the greatest  
 numerum militum (una legio erat omnino  
 possible] number of soldiers (one legion was in all  
 in ulteriore Gallia). Jūbet pontem, qui erat  
 in farther Gaul). He orders the bridge, which was  
 ad Genavam, rescindi. Ubi Helvetii facti-sunt  
 at Geneva, to be cut down. When the Helvetii were made  
 certiores de adventu ejus, mittunt nobilissimos  
 more certain [told] of the arrival of him, they sent the noblest  
 civitatis legatos ad eum; cujus legationis  
 of the state (as) ambassadors to him; of which embassy

Nummeius et Verudoctius obtinebant principem locum:

Nummeius and Verodoctius were holding the chief place:

qui dicèrent esse sibi in animo,  
who should say to be to themselves in mind (that they

sine ullo maleficio facere iter per  
intended), without any damage to make a journey through

provinciam, propterea quod haberent (imp. subj.) nullum  
the province, because (that) they were having no

aliud iter: rogare,<sup>21</sup> ut liceret sibi  
other journey [road]: to ask, that it may be lawful to themselves

facere id voluntate ejus. Cæsar,<sup>22</sup> quod tenebat  
to do this by the will of him. Cæsar, because he held

memoriam, Lucium Cassium consulem occisum, que  
in memory, Lucius Cassius the consul being slain, and

exercitum ejus pulsum ab Helvetiis, et missum  
the army of him driven [routed] by the Helvetii, and sent

sub iugum, putabat non concedendum; neque  
under the yoke, considered (it) not to be granted; nor

existimabat homines inimico animo, facultate  
did he think men with unfriendly mind, liberty

faciendi itineris per provinciam datam,  
of making a journey through the province being given,

temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio: Tamen  
about to refrain [would refrain] from injury and damage: However

ut spatium posset intercedere, dum milites,  
that a space [period] might be able to intervene, while the soldiers,

quos imperaverat, convenirent, respondit,  
whom he had ordered, might assemble, he replied, (to the

se<sup>23</sup> sumpturum diem ad deliberandum;  
ambassadors) himself about to take a day [time] to deliberate;

si vellent (imp. subj.) quid reverterentur ad  
if they were wishing any thing let them return at

idos Aprilis.  
the ides of April.

8. Inter ea legione, quam habebat  
Meanwhile with this legion, which he was having

cum se que militibus qui conveniant ex  
with himself and with the soldiers who had assembled from

provinciā, perducit murum in altitudinem  
the province, he constructs a wall into [in] height

sexdecim pedum, que fossam à lacu Lemanno,  
(of) sixteen feet, and a trench from the lake Lemanus,

qui influit in flumen Rhodanum, ad montem Juram,  
which flows into the river Rhone, to Mount Jura,

qui dividit fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis,  
which divides the borders of the Sequani from the Helvetii,

decem<sup>24</sup> et novem millia (pl.) passum. Eo opere  
ten and nine [nineteen] thousand (of) paces. This work

perfecto, disponit praesidia, communit castella;  
being completed, he posts garrisons, (he) fortifies the redoubts;

quod posset prohibere facilius, si  
that he might be able to prevent more easily, if

conarentur transire, se invito.  
they should endeavor to pass over, himself (being) unwilling.

Ubi ea dies venit, quam constituerat cum  
When that day came, which he had appointed with

legatis, et legati reverterunt ad eum;  
the ambassadors, and the ambassadors returned to him:

negat<sup>25</sup> se more et exemplo Romani  
he denies himself, by the custom and example of the Roman

populi, posse dare iter per provinciam ulli;  
people, to be able to give a journey through the province to any;

et ostendit prohibiturum, si conentur (pres.  
and shows (himself) about to prohibit, if they attempt

subj.) facere vim. Helvetii dejecti eā  
to make violence. The Helvetii cast down from this

spe, alii, navibus<sup>26</sup> junctis, que compluribus  
hope, others [some], ships being joined, and a great many

ratibus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, quā<sup>27</sup>  
rafts being made, others by fords of the Rhone, where

minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdū,  
the least depth of the river was, sometimes in daytime,

sæpius noctu, conati si possent (imp.  
more often by night, having endeavored if they were able

subj.) perrumpere, repulsi munitione (sing.)  
to break through repulsed by the fortifications

opëris, et concursu et telis  
of the work, and by the charge and weapons

milîtum, destiterunt hoc conatu.  
of the soldiers, they desisted from this endeavor.

9. Una vïa per Sequānos relinquebatur;  
One way through the Sequani was left;

quâ, Sequānis invitis, potërant non  
by which the Sequani (being) unwilling, they were able not

ire propter angustïas. Quum possent (imp.  
to go on account of the defiles. When they were able

subj.) non persuadere iis (dat.) suâ sponte,  
not to persuade them by their own accord,

mittunt legatos ad Dumnorîgem Ædûm,  
they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduan,

ut, êo deprecatore, impetrarent hoc à  
that, he (being) intercessor, they might obtain this from

Sequānis. Dumnorîx potërat plurîmum  
the Sequani. Dumnorix was able most [had very great in-

fluence] apud Sequānos gratiâ et largitione, et  
with the Sequani by service and (by) lavishness, and

erat amicus Helveitiis, quod<sup>28</sup> duxerat in  
was friendly to the Helvetii, because he had led into

matrimonîum filiam Orgetorîgis ex eâ civitate;  
marriage the daughter of Orgetorix from that state;

et<sup>29</sup> adductus cupiditate regni, studebat  
and induced by a desire of the kingdom, he was eager

nôvis rebus; et volebat habere quamplurîmas  
for new things; and was wishing to have as many as possible

civitates obstrictas suo beneficio sibi. Itaque  
states bound by his favor to himself. Therefore

suscipit rem, et impëtrat à Sequānis,  
he undertakes the thing, and obtains from the Sequani,

ut patiantur Helvetios ire per suos  
that they may suffer the Helvetii to go through their

fines, que perficit uti dent obsides inter  
borders, and effects that they may give hostages between

sese; Sequāni ne prohibëant  
themselves; the Sequani lest they may prohibit [that they may

Helvetios                      itinēre;                      Helvetii,  
 not prohibit] the Helvetii                      from the journey;                      the Helvetii  
 ut                      transēant                      sine                      maleficio                      et                      injuriā.  
 that                      they may pass                      without                      damage                      and                      injury.  
 10. Nuntiat                      Cæsari,                      esse                      in                      animo,  
       It is announced                      to Cæsar,                      to be [it is]                      in                      the mind,  
 Helvetiis                      facere                      iter                      per                      agrum  
 to [of] the Helvetii                      to make                      the journey                      through                      the land  
 Sequanorum                      et                      Æduorum                      in                      fines  
 of the Sequani                      and                      of the Ædui                      into                      the borders  
 Santonum,                      qui                      absunt                      non                      longè                      à  
 of the Santones,                      who                      are distant                      not                      far                      from  
 finibus Tolosatium, quæ civitas est in provinciâ.  
 the borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province.  
 Si id fieret (imp. subj.) intelligebat futurum  
 If this should be [were] done                      he understood (it)                      about to be [it] would  
 cum magno periculo provinciæ, ut haberet  
 be] with great danger of the province, that it should have  
 bellicosos homines, inimicos Romani populi,  
 warlike men, enemies of the Roman people,  
 finitimis locis patentibus et maxime  
 neighbors to places open and especially  
 frumentariis. Ob eas causas præfecit  
 abounding in corn. On account of these causes he appointed  
 Titum Labienum legatum ei munitioni quam  
 Titus Labienus lieutenant to this fortification which  
 fecerat: ipse contendit in  
 he had made: (he) himself hastens into  
 Italiam magnis itineribus que ibi conscribit duas  
 Italy by great journeys and there he levies two  
 legiones; et educit ex hibernis tres,  
 legions; and he leads from winter quarters the three.  
 quæ hiemabant circum Aquileiam; et<sup>30</sup> quâ  
 which were wintering around Aquileia; and by which  
 iter erat proximum in ulteriorem Galliam  
 (way) the journey was nearest into farther Gaul  
 per Alpes, contendit ire cum his  
 through the Alps, he hastens to go with these

quinque legionibus. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli,  
 five legions. There the Centrones and the Graioceli,  
 et Caturiges, superioribus locis occupatis  
 and the Caturiges, the higher places having been occupied  
 conantur prohibere exercitum itinere. His  
 endeavor to check the army on the journey. These

pulsis compluribus præliis, pervenit ab  
 having been repulsed in several battles, he comes from  
 Ocelo, quod est extremum citerioris provinciæ,  
 Ocelum, which is the extreme(town) of the hither province,  
 in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciæ  
 into the borders of the Vocontii of the farther province

septimo die; inde in fines Allobrogum;  
 on the seventh day; thence into the borders of the Allobroges;

ducit exercitum ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos.  
 he leads the army from the Allobroges into the Segusiavi.

Hi sunt primi extra provinciam trans Rhodanum.  
 These are the first without the province beyond the Rhone.

11. Helvetii jam transduxerant suas copias  
 The Helvetii already had led over their forces;

per angustias et fines Sequanorum et  
 through the defiles and borders of the Sequani and

pervenierant in fines Æduorum, que  
 had come into the borders of the Ædui, and

populabantur agros eorum. Ædii, quum  
 were laying waste the lands of them. The Ædii when

possent (imp. subj.) non defendere se que<sup>81</sup>  
 they were able not to defend themselves and

sua ab his, mittunt legatos ad  
 their own(effects) from these, send ambassadors to

Cæsarem rogatum auxilium; "se omni tempore  
 Cæsar to ask aid; "themselves in all time

meritos esse ita de Romano populo, ut,  
 (to) have deserved so of the Roman people, that,

penè conspectu nostri exercitus, agri  
 almost are in sight of our army, (their) lands

debuerint (perf. subj.) non vastari, liberi<sup>82</sup>  
 ought not to be laid waste the children



eorum abduci in servitutem, oppida  
 of them to be led away into slavery, the towns  
 expugnari." Eodem tempore, Ædúi  
 to be taken by storm. At the same time, the Ædúi  
 Ambarri quoque, necessari et consanguinei  
 Ambarri also, friends and kinsmen  
 Æduorum, faciunt Cæsarem certiore,  
 of the Ædúi, make Cæsar more certain [inform Cæsar],  
 "sese, agris<sup>33</sup> depopulatis, non facîle prohibere  
 "themselves, the lands being depopulated, not easily to prohibit  
 vim hostium ab oppidis." Item  
 the violence of the enemy from the towns. Likewise  
 Allobroges, qui habebant vicos que  
 the Allobroges, who were having villages and  
 possessiones trans Rhodanum, recipiunt se fugâ  
 possessions beyond the Rhone, betake themselves in flight  
 ad Cæsarem; et<sup>34</sup> demonstrant, nihil reliqui  
 to Cæsar; and show, nothing of remaining  
 esse sibi præter solum agri. Adductus  
 to be to themselves beside the soil of the land. Induced  
 quibus rebus, Cæsar statuit non expectandum  
 by which things, Cæsar resolved not to be waited  
 sibi, num, omnibus  
 to [by] himself [that he ought not to wait], until, all  
 fortunis sociorum consumptis, Helvetii  
 the fortunes of the allies having been consumed, the Helvetii  
 pervenirent (imp.subj.) in Santones.  
 should come into the Santones.  
 12. Arar est flumen, quod influit in  
 The Arar [the Saone] is a river, which flows into  
 Rhodanum incredibili lenitate per fines  
 the Rhone with incredible smoothness through the borders  
 Æduorum et Sequanorum; ita ut possit  
 of the Ædúi and of the Sequani; so that it is possible  
 non judicari oculis in utram partem  
 not to be judged by the eyes in which part [direction]  
 fluat. (pres.sub.) Helvetii transibant id, ratibus ac  
 it flows. The Helvetii were crossing this, rafts and

lintribus junctis. Ubi<sup>35</sup> Cæsar factus-est certior  
 boats being joined. When Cæsar was made more certain  
 per exploratores, Helvetios jam transduxisse  
 by scouts (that), the Helvetii already to have [had] led over  
 id flumen tres partes copiarum, verò quartam  
 this river three parts of (their) forces, but the fourth  
 partem esse reliquam citra flumen Ararim;  
 part to be remaining on this side the river Arar [Saone];  
 de tertîa vigiliâ profectus è  
 from [at] the third watch [midnight] having set out from  
 castris cum tribus legionibus pervenit ad eam  
 the camp with three legions he arrives [comes] to this  
 partem, quæ nondum transierat flumen.  
 part, which not yet had passed the river.  
 Aggressus eos impeditos et inopinantes  
 Having attacked them encumbered and unaware  
 concidit magnam partem eorum; reliqui  
 he cut up [slew] a great part of them; the rest  
 mandarunt sese fugæ atque abdiderunt in  
 committed themselves to flight and hid away into [among]  
 proximas silvas. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:  
 the nearest woods. This canton was called the Tigurine:  
 nam omnis Helvetia civitas divisa-est in  
 for all the Helvetian state has been divided into  
 quatuor pagos. Hic unus pagus, quum  
 four cantons. This one canton, when  
 exisset (pl. pref. subj.) domo, memoriâ  
 it had gone out from home, in the memory  
 nostrorum patrum, interfecerat Lucium Cassium  
 of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius  
 Consulem, et miserat exercitum ejus sub  
 the Consul, and had sent the army of him [his army] under  
 jugum. Ita sive casu, sive consilio  
 the yoke. Thus whether by chance, or by the plan  
 immortalium deorum, pars Helvetiæ civitatis,  
 of the immortal gods, the part of the Helvetian state,  
 quæ intulerat insignem calamitatem Romano  
 which had brought on a remarkable calamity to the Roman

popūlo, ěa princeps persolvit poenas. In quā  
 people, this chief [first] paid penalties. In which  
 re Cāsar ultus-est non solūm publicas sed etiā  
 thing Cāsar avenged not - only public but also  
 privatas injuriās; quōd Tigurini interfecerant  
 private injuries; because the Tigurini had slain  
 Lucium Pisonem legatum, avum Lucii  
 Lucius Piso the lieutenant, (general) grandfather of Lucius  
 Pisonis soceri ejus, eodem proelio,  
 Piso father in law of him [Cāsar], in the same battle,  
 quo Cassium.  
 in which (they slew) Cassius.

13. Hoc proelio facto, ut posset  
 'his battle having been made, that he might be able  
 consēqui reliquas copias Helvetiorum, curat<sup>36</sup>  
 to reach the remaining forces of the Helvetii, he takes care  
 pontem faciendum in Arāre, atque ita transducit  
 a bridge to be made on the Arar, [Saone] and so leads over  
 exercitum. Helvetii commoti repentino adventu  
 the army. The Helvetii moved by the sudden arrival  
 ejus, quum<sup>37</sup> intelligērent (imp. subj.) illum  
 of him, when they were understanding him  
 fecisse uno die id, quod ipsi  
 to have [he had] done in one day that, which [they] themselves  
 confecerant ægerrimē viginti diebus, ut  
 had accomplished most grievously in twenty days, that  
 transirent flumen, mittunt legatos ad  
 they should pass the river, send ambassadors to  
 eum; cujus legationis Divico fuit princeps, qui  
 him; of which embassy Divico was chief, who  
 fuerat dux Helvetiorum Cassiano bellū.  
 had been leader of the Helvetii in the Cassian war.  
 Is ita egit cum Cæsare; "si Romanus  
 He thus acts [treats] with Cāsar; "if the Roman  
 populus faceret pacem cum Helvetiis, Helvetios  
 people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii  
 ituros in eam partem, atque futuros  
 about to go [would go] into that part, and about to [would] be

ibi, ubi Cæsar constituisset atque voluisset  
 there, where Cæsar might appoint and might wish (them)  
 esse; sin perseveraret persëqui bello,  
 to be; but if he should continue to pursue with war,  
 reminisceretur vetëris incommōdī Romani  
 let him remember (of) the old misfortune of the Roman  
 popūli, et pristīnæ virtutis Helvetiorum:  
 people, and (of) the ancient valor of the Helvetii:  
 quōd adortus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) improvīdō  
 because he had assailed unexpectedly  
 unum pagum, quum īi, qui trans-  
 one canton, when these, who had  
 issent (pl. perf. subj.) flumen, possent (imp. subj.)  
 crossed the river, were able  
 non ferre auxiliū sūis; tribuëret  
 not to bring aid to their (people); let him attribute  
 ne aut magnopere sūæ virtuti ob  
 not either very greatly to his own valor on account of  
 eam rem, aut despicëret ipsos.  
 this thing, nor let him despise themselves.  
 Se. Ita didicisse à sūis patribus  
 They themselves so (to) have learned from their fathers  
 que majoribus, ut contendërent māgis  
 and elders, that they should contend more  
 virtute quā niterentur dōlo, aut  
 by valor than (that) they should strive by deceit, or  
 insidiis. Quare committëret ne, ut  
 stratagems. Wherefore he should permit not, that  
 is lōcus, ūbi constitissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 this place, where they had stood  
 capëret nomen ac prodëret memoriā  
 should take (its) name and hand down the memory  
 ex calamitate Romani popūli, et  
 from the calamity of the Roman people, and  
 interecione exercītūs.  
 the destruction of the army.

14. Cæsar respondit ita his;  
 Cæsar. answered thus to these (words): "therefore

mīnus dubitationis dārī sibi, quòd  
 .ess (of) doubt to be [was] given to himself, because  
 teneret (imp.subj.) ēas res memoriā, quas  
 he was holding these things in memory, which  
 Helvetiī legati commemorāssent (pl. perf.  
 the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned  
 subj.), atque ferre ēd gravius,  
 and to bear [he bore it] for this the more heavily,  
 quòd accidissent (pl. perf. subj.) mīnus  
 that they had befallen the less  
 merito Romani populi, qui si  
 by the merit of the Roman people, which if  
 fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) conscius sibi alicujus  
 it had been conscious to itself of some  
 injuriā, fuisse non  
 injury (done to the Helvetii) to have been not [it would not have been]  
 difficile cavere; sed deceptum  
 difficult to beware [to be on guard], but to have [it was] deceived in  
 eo, quòd nēque intelligeret (imp. subj.)  
 this, because neither was it thinking (anything)  
 commissum à se, quare timeret; nēque  
 to have [had] been committed by itself, wherefore it should fear; nor  
 putaret (imp.subj.) timendum sine causā.  
 was it thinking to be feared [it should fear] without cause.  
 Quòd si vellet (imp.subj.) oblivisci vetēris contumeliā,  
 But if he was wishing to forget (of) the ancient insult,  
 num posset etiam deponere memoriā  
 whether would he be able also to lay aside the memory  
 recentium injuriarum, quòd, eo invito,  
 of the recent injuries, that, he (being) unwilling,  
 tentāssent (pl. perf. subj.) iter per Provinciā  
 they had attempted a march through the Province  
 per vim, quòd vexāssent (pl. perf. subj.) Ædūs,  
 by violence, that they had harassed the Ædui,  
 quòd Ambbarros, quòd Allobrōges? Quòd  
 that (also) the Ambarri, that (also) the Allobroges? That  
 gloriarentur (imp.subj.) tam insolenter suā victoriā;  
 they were boasting so insolently in [of] their victory;

que quòd admirarentur se tulisse injuriās  
and that they wonder that they (to) have committed outrages  
impunè tam diu, pertinere eòdem.  
with impunity so long, to pertain [pertains] to the same thing.

Enim immortales dēos consuēsse,  
For the immortal gods (to) have been accustomed,

quòd homīnes dolēant gravīus ex  
that men may grieve more heavily from [by]

commutatione rerum, quos vēlint (pr. subj.) ulcisci  
the change of things, whom they may wish to punish

pro scelēre eorum, interdum concedēre  
for the wickedness of them [their wickedness], sometimes (to) grant

secundiores res his, et diuturniorem  
more prosperous affairs to these, and more lasting

impunitatem. Cūm ēa sint (pres. subj.)  
impunity. Although these (things) are

ita, tāmen si obsīdes dentur (pres. subj.) sibi ab iis,  
so, yet if hostages may be [are] given to himself by them,

ūtī intelligat facturos ēa  
that he may understand (that they) about to [will] do these (things)

quæ polliceantur (pres. subj.); et si satisfaciānt  
which they promise; and if they satisfy

Ædūis de injuriis, quas  
(to) the Ædui concerning the wrongs, which

intulērint (perf. subj.) ipsis que sociis  
they have inflicted on them and on the allies

eorum, item si Allobrogibus, sese esse  
of them [their allies], likewise (if) (to) the Allobroges, he himself to be

facturum pacem cum iis." Divico respondit:  
about to [will] make peace with them." Divico answered;

"Helvetios institutos-esse ita à majoribus,  
"the Helvetii (to) have been instructed thus by (their) ancestors,

ūtī consuevērint (perf. subj.) accipere, non dare  
that they should be accustomed to receive, not to give

obsīdes; Romanum populum esse testem ejus rei."  
hostages; the Roman people to be [are] witness of this thing."

Hoc responso dāto, discessit.  
This answer having been given, he departed.

15. Postëro die mövent castra ex ðo  
 On the next day they move the camp from that  
 löco. Cæsar fäcit idem; que præmittit  
 place. Cæsar does the same; and sends forward  
 omnem equitatum ad numërum quatüor millium,  
 all the cavalry to the number of four thousand,  
 quem habebat coactum ex omni provinciâ,  
 which he was having collected from all the province,  
 et Ædüs atque sociis eorum;<sup>37a</sup>  
 and from the Ædui and from the allies of them;  
 qui vidëant in quas partes hostes faciãt  
 who may see into what parts the enemy may make  
 iter: qui, insecuti cupidius  
 (their) way: who, having followed up more [too] eagerly  
 novissimum agmen, committunt prælium  
 the last troop [the rear], join battle  
 cum equitatu Helvetiorum alieno  
 with the cavalry of the Helvetii in strange [an unfavorable]  
 löco, et pauci de nostris cädunt. Quo prælio  
 place, and a few of our (men) fall. By which battle  
 Helvetii sublati, quöd quingentis  
 the Helvetii being lifted up [elated] because with five hundred  
 equitibus propulërant tantam multitudinem  
 horsemen they had repulsed so great a multitude  
 equitum, cæperunt subsistëre audaciüs;  
 of horsemen, began to withstand more boldly;  
 nonnunquam ex novissimo agmine laccessëre  
 sometimes from the last troop [the rear] to challenge  
 prælio nostros. Cæsar continebat suos  
 with battle our (men). Cæsar was restraining his (men)  
 à prælio, ac habebat satis  
 from battle, and was holding (it) enough  
 in præsentia prohibere hostem  
 in [for] the present to prohibit the enemy  
 rapinis, pabulationibus, que populationibus.  
 from rapines, from foragings, and from devastations.  
 Ita circiter quindëcim dies fecerunt iter,  
 So about fifteen days they made the march,

ŭti inter novissimum agmen hostium et  
 that between the last troop [rear] of the enemy and  
 nostrum primum, non amplius quinque aut  
 our first [front], not more (than) five or  
 senis millibus passuum interesset.  
 six thousand (of) paces intervened.

16. Intērim<sup>38</sup> Cæsar quotidie flagitare  
 Meanwhile Cæsar daily to demand earnestly from

Ædūos frumentum, quod polliciti-essent (pl. perf.  
 the Ædui the corn, which they had promised

subj.) publice. Nam propter frigora quod  
 publicly. For on account of the cold because

Gallia posita est sub Septentrionibus (pl.),  
 Gaul is situated under [toward] the North

(ut dictum-est antè,) non modò frumenta  
 (as has been said before,) not only the corn (crops)

erant non matura in agris sed ne  
 were not ripe in the fields but not

pabuli<sup>39</sup> quidem satis magna copia,  
 of forage even a sufficiently great plenty,

suppetebat. Autem poterat minus ut eo (abl.)  
 was supplied. But he was able less to use this

frumento, quod subvexerat navibus flumine  
 corn, which he had carried up in ships by the river

Arare, propterea quod Helvetii avertērant  
 Arar, because (that) the Helvetii had turned away

iter ab Arare, à quibus nolebat  
 the march from the Arar, from whom he was unwilling

discedere. Ædūi<sup>40</sup> ducere diem  
 to depart. The Ædui to lead [put off] day

ex die, dicere conferri,  
 from [after] day, to say (the corn) to be brought together

comportari, adesse. Ubi intellexit  
 to be conveyed, to be present [ready]. When he understood

se duci diutius, et diem  
 (he) himself to be [is] led [put off] longer, and the day

instare, quo die oporteret metiri  
 to be [is] at hand, on which day it would be due to measure out



frumentum militibus ; principibus corum  
 corn to the soldiers; the chiefs of them  
 convocatis,<sup>41</sup> quorum habebat magnum  
 having been called together, of whom he was having a great  
 copiam in castris, in his Divitiāco  
 number in the camp, in [among] these Divitiacus  
 et Lisco, qui præerat summo magistratūi  
 and Liscus, who was over [invested with] the highest magistracy  
 (quem Ædūi appellant vergobretum, qui creatur  
 (which the Ædui name vergobretus, which is created  
 annūus que habet potestatem vitæ que necis  
 annually and has the power of life and of death  
 in suos), accusat eos graviter,  
 over his own (people), he accuses them severely,  
 quòd quum posset (imp.subj.) nèque emi,  
 because when it was possible neither to be bought,  
 nèque sumi ex agris, tempore tam  
 nor to be taken from the fields, in a time so  
 necessariō, hostibus tam propinquis,  
 necessary, the enemy (being) so near,  
 sublevetur (pres.subj.) non ab iis; præsertim quum,  
 he is succored not by them; especially when,  
 ex<sup>42</sup> magna parte adductus precibus eorum  
 from a great part induced by the prayers of them  
 suscepērit (perf.subj.) bellum, queritur etiā  
 he has undertaken the war, he complains also  
 multò gravius quòd destitutus-sit (perf.subj.).  
 much the more severely that he had been left destitute (of corn).  
 17. Tum demum Liscus adductus oratione  
 Then at last Liscus induced by the speech  
 Cæsaris, proponit quod antea tacuerat:  
 of Cæsar, sets forth (that) which before he had kept silent:  
 "Esse<sup>43</sup> nonnullos, auctoritas quorum  
 "To be [that there are] some, the authority of whom  
 valēat (pres.subj.) plurimūm apud plebem,  
 avails most[very much] with the common people,  
 qui privati possint (pres.subj.) plus  
 who (though) private (persons) are powerful more

quàm	magistratus	ipsi,	hos	seditionâ
than	the magistrates	themselves,	these	by seditious
et	imprôbâ	oratione	detertere	multitudine
and	wicked	speech	(to) deter	the multitude
	conférant	frumentum;	quòd	dicant
	they may bring together	the corn;	because	they say
(pres. subj.)	præstare,	si	jam	possint
	to be [it is] preferable	if	now	they may be able
non	obtinere	principatum	Galliæ,	perferre
not	to obtain	the sovereignty	of Gaul,	to indure
imperîa	Gallorum	quàm	Romanorum;	nêque
the commands	of the Gauls	than	of the Romans;	nor
deběant (pres. subj.)	dubitare	quin,	si	Romani
ought they	to doubt	but that,	if	the Romans
superavěrint	Helvetios,	sint (pres. subj.)		
should overcome	the Helvetii,	they are		
erepturi	libertatem	Ædũis	unà	
about to snatch away	liberty	from the Ædui	together	
cum	reliquâ	Galliâ:	ab	ĩisdem
with	remaining	Gaul:	by	the same (persons)
consilia,	quæque	gerantur (pres. subj.)	in	castris, (pl.)
councils,	whatsoever	are carried on		in the camp,
enuntiari	hostibus;	hos	posse	non
to be [are] announced	to the enemy;	these	to be [are] able	not
coërceri	à	se:	Quin-etiam,	quòd
to be restrained	by	himself:	Moreover,	because
enuntiãrit (perf. subj.)	rem	necessariò	Cæsãri,	
he has told	the thing	necessarily	to Cæsar,	
sese	intelligěre	cum	quanto	pericũlo
himself	to understand [that he is aware]	with	how great	danger
fecěrit (perf. subj.)	id;	et	ob	ẽam
he has done	it;	and	for	this
tacuisse	quamdiũ	potuěrit". (perf. subj.)		
to have [he] kept silent	as long as	he could".		
18. Cæsar	sentiebat	Dumnorigem	fratrem	
Cæsar	was perceiving	Dumnorix	the brother	
Divitiãci	designari	hãc	oratione	Lisci;
of Divitiacus	to be [was] indicated	by this	speech	of Liscus;

I

â  
s

sed, quòd nolebat eas res  
but, since he was not wishing (that) these things to [should]  
jactari pluribus præsentiibus, dimittit  
be tossed [debated], more (being) present, he dismisses  
concilium, celeriter, retinet Liscum: quærit ex  
the council, quickly, he retains Liscus: he seeks from (him)  
solo ea, quæ dixerat in conventu.  
alone those (things), which he had said in the assembly.  
Dicit liberius, atque audacius. Quaerit  
He speaks more freely, and more boldly. He inquires  
eâdem ab aliis secretò, reperit esse vera:  
the same (things) from others apart, he finds to be true:  
"Dumnorigem ipsum esse summâ audaciâ,  
"Dumnorix himself to be [is] with (of) the highest boldness  
magnâ gratiâ apud plebem propter  
in great favor with the common people on account of  
liberalitatem, cupidum novarum rerum;  
(his) liberality, desirous of new things [revolution];  
habere portoria que omnia reliqua  
to have [that he had] the customs duties and all the remaining  
vectigalia Æduorum complures annos redempta  
taxes of the Ædui many years purchased  
parvo pretio; propterea quòd, ille licente, nemo  
for a small price; because (that,) he bidding, no one  
audëat (pres. subj.) liceri contra; his rebus  
dares to bid against (him); by these things  
et auxisse<sup>44</sup> suam familiarem rem, et  
both to have [he] increased his family estate, and  
comparasse magnas facultates ad largiendum;  
to have [he] procured great means for giving bribes:  
semper alere magnum  
always to maintain [that he always maintained] a great  
numërum equitatûs suo sumptu, et habere  
number of horsemen at his own expense, and to have [had] (them)  
circum se: nêque posse largiter  
around himself: nor to be able (to bestow) largely [nor was he powerful]  
solùm dñmi, sed etiã apud finitimas civitates;  
only at home, but also with the bordering states:

atque causâ<sup>45</sup> hujus potentiæ, collocasse  
 and by reason of this power, to have [he had] placed  
 matrem in Biturigibus, homini illic  
 [married] (his) mother in the Bituriges, to a man there  
 nobilissimo et potentissimo; ipsum habere uxorem  
 most noble and most powerful; himself to have [he had] a wife  
 ex Helvetiis: collocasse sororem ex  
 from the Helvetii: to have placed [he had given] a sister from [by]  
 matre, et suas propinquas nuptum in alias  
 the mother, and his kinswomen to be married into other  
 civitates. Favere<sup>45a</sup> et cupere Helvetiis  
 states. To favor and to desire [wish well] to the Helvetii  
 propter eam affinitatem, etiam odisse  
 on account of this alliance, also to hate  
 Cæsarem et Romanos suo nomine,  
 Cæsar and the Romans from his own name,  
 quod potentia ejus diminuta-sit (perf. subj.)  
 because the power of him had been diminished  
 adventu eorum, et Divitiacus frater restitutus  
 by the arrival of them, and Divitiacus (his) brother restored  
 in antiquum locum gratiæ atque honoris: si  
 into the ancient place of favor and of honor: if  
 quid accideret Romanis, venire<sup>46</sup> in  
 any (thing) may happen to the Romans, to come into  
 summan spem regni obtinendi per  
 the highest hope of the kingdom to be obtained through  
 Helvetios; imperio Romani populi, non<sup>47</sup>  
 the Helvetii; (under) the empire of the Roman people, not  
 modo desperare de regno, sed etiam de ea  
 only to despair of the kingdom, [of reigning] but also of that  
 gratiâ quam habeat." (pres. subj.) Cæsar etiam  
 favor [influence] which he has." Cæsar also  
 reperiebat in quærendo, quod adversum prælium  
 was finding by inquiring, that [how] the adverse battle  
 equestre (adj.) factum-esset (plup. subj.) paucis  
 of cavalry had been made [occured] a few  
 diebus antè, initium ejus fugæ  
 days before, (that) the beginning of this flight

factum-esse à Dumnorīge atque equitibus  
 to have [had] been made by Dumnorix and by the horsemen  
 ejus, (nam Dumnōrix præerat equitatūi (dat.),  
 of him, (for Dumnorix was over [commanded] the cavalry,  
 quem Ædūi misērant auxilio Cæsāri;) que fūgā  
 which the Ædui had sent for aid to Cæsar;) and by the flight  
 eorum reliquum equitatum perterritum-esse.  
 of them the remaining cavalry to have [had] been dismayed.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, quum<sup>48</sup> certissimæ  
 Which things being known, since most certain  
 res accedērent (imp. subj.) ad has suspiciones;  
 facts were approaching [confirming] (to) these suspicions;

quòd traduxisset (pl. perf. subj.) Helvetiōs per  
 because [that] he [Dumnorix] had led over the Helvetii through

fines Sequanorum; quòd curāset (pl. perf.  
 the borders of the Sequani; because [that] he had taken care

subj.) obsides dandos inter eos: quòd  
 hostages to be [should] given between them: because [that]

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnia ea non mōdō  
 he had done all those (things) not only

sūo injussu et civitatis, sed etiam  
 without his order and (that) of the state, but also

ipsis inscientibus; quòd accusaretur (imp.  
 themselves not knowing; because [that] he was accused

subj.) à magistratu Æduorum; arbitrabatur<sup>49</sup>  
 by a magistrate of the Ædui; he [Cæsar] was deeming

satis caussæ esse quare, aut ipse animadverteret  
 enough (of) cause to be [was] wherefore, either himself should attend

in eum, aut juberet civitatem animadvertere.  
 upon [to] him, or should order the state to attend (to him).

Unum repugnabat omnibus his, quòd cognoverat  
 One (thing) was opposing (to) all these, that he had known

summum studium fratris Divitiāci in  
 the highest zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus unto [towards]

Romanum populum, summam voluntatem in  
 the Roman people, (his) highest good will unto [toward]

se, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam.  
 himself, (his) preeminent faith. justice, temperance.

Nam verebatur, ne offendēret animum Divitiāci  
 For he was fearing, lest he should offend the mind of Divitiacus  
 supplicio ejus. Itaque prius quā  
 by the punishment of him Therefore sooner than [before that]  
 conaretur quidquam, jūbet Divitiācum  
 he should attempt anything, he orders Divitiacus  
 vocari ad se; et quotidianis  
 to be called to himself; and the daily [usual]  
 interpretibus remotis, colloquitur cum eo.  
 interpreters having been removed, he converses with him,  
 per Cāum Valerium Procillum, principem  
 through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief  
 provinciæ Galliæ, suū familiarem, cui  
 of the province of Gaul, his intimate (friend), to [in]whom  
 habebat summam fidem omnium rerum;  
 he was having the highest faith [confidence] of all things  
 simul commonefacit, quæ dicta-sint  
 at the same time he reminds, (Divitiacus) what (things) were said  
 de Dumnorige in concilio Gallorum, ipso  
 of Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, himself/  
 præsente; et ostendit quæ quisque dixerit (perf  
 (being)present; and shows what every one has said  
 subj.) separatim de eo apud se. Petit  
 separately of him to himself [Cæsar]. He asks  
 atque hortatur ut, sine offensione animi ejus,  
 and exhorts that, without offence of mind of him,  
 vel ipse statuât de eo,  
 either he himself [Cæsar] may determine of him [pass judgment on him],  
 caussâ cognitâ; vel jubeat  
 (his) cause being known [the case being tried]; or may order  
 civitatem statuere.  
 the state to determine.

20. Divitiācus complexus Cæsārem cum multis  
 Divitiacus having embraced Cæsar with many  
 lacrymis cœpit obsecrare, "nestatuēret  
 tears began to beseech, "that he should not determine  
 quid gravius in fratrem; se scire<sup>50</sup>  
 any thing more severe against (his) brother: himself to know

illa esse vera nec quenquam capere  
 [that he knows] those (things) to be true nor anyone to take  
 plus doloris ex eo, quam se; propterea quod  
 more (of) grief from this, than himself; because (that)  
 (quum ipse posset (imp.subj.) plurimum gratia  
 (when himself was able (to do) most in influence  
 domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum  
 at home and in the remaining Gaul, he [Dumnorix] the least  
 propter adolescentiam crevisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 on account of (his) youth had increased (in power)  
 per se; quibus opibus ac nervis<sup>51</sup>  
 through himself [Divitiacus]; which means and nerves [strength]  
 uteretur (imp. subj.) non solum ad gratiam  
 he was using not only to (Divitiacus) influence  
 minuendam, sed penè ad suam perniciem;  
 to be diminished, but almost to his [Divitiacus] destruction;  
 sese tamen commoveri et fraterno amore  
 (that) himself however to be [was] moved both by fraternal love  
 et existimatione volgi: quod si  
 and by the esteem of the common people: because if  
 quid gravius accidisset ei  
 any (thing) more heavy [serious] should happen to him  
 à Cæsare, cum ipse teneret (imp. subj.)  
 from Cæsar, when he himself was holding  
 eum locum amicitiae apud eum, neminem  
 this place of friendship with him [Cæsar], no one  
 existimatum non factum sua voluntate;  
 about to think [would think] (the thing) not done with his will;  
 futurum ex qua re, uti<sup>52</sup> animi  
 about to [it would] be from which thing, that the minds  
 totius Galliae averterentur à se."  
 of the whole of Gaul would be turned away from himself."  
 Quum flens peteret (imp. subj.) hæc  
 When weeping he was seeking these (things)  
 à Cæsare pluribus verbis, Cæsarprehendit  
 from Cæsar with many words, Cæsar takes  
 dextram ejus; consolatus, rogat (ut)  
 the right hand of him; having consoled, he asks (that)

faciāt finem orandi: ostendit gratiām  
 he make an end of entreating: he shows (that) the favor  
 ejus esse tanti apud se, ūti  
 of him to be [is] of so much (account) with himself, that  
 condonet et injuriām rei publicæ et  
 he forgives both the injury of the republic and  
 sūum dolorem, voluntati ac precibus  
 his own grief, for the good will and for the prayers  
 ejus. Vocat Dumnorīgem ad se; adhibet  
 of him. He calls Dumnorix to himself; he summons  
 fratrem; ostendit quæ reprehendat (pres. subj.)  
 the brother; he shows what he blames  
 in eo; proponit quæ ipse intelligat,  
 in him; he sets forth what (he) himself understands,  
 (pres. subj.), quæ civitas queratur (pres. subj.);  
 what the state complains of;  
 mōnet, ut<sup>53</sup> vitet omnes suspiciones in  
 he warns, that he may avoid all suspicions into [for]  
 reliquum tempus. Dicit<sup>54</sup> se condonare  
 the remaining time. He says himself to forgive  
 præterita fratri Divitiāco; ponit  
 past (things) for (his) brother Divitiacus; he places  
 custodes Dumnorīgi, ut possit scire  
 keepers [spies] to [over] Dumnorix, that he may be able to know  
 quæ agat (pres. subj.) cum quibus  
 what (things) he does with whom  
 loquatur (pres. subj.)  
 he speaks.

21. Eodem die factus certior ab  
 On the same day being made more sure [being informed] by

exploratoribus, hostes consedissee sub  
 scouts (that), the enemy to have [had] encamped under [at the]

montem, octo millia passuum ab  
 foot of] the mountain, eight thousand (of) paces from

castris (pl.) ipsius; misit qui cognoscere,nt,  
 the camp of himself; he sent (persons) who might learn,

qualis esset natura montis, et  
 what might be [was] the nature of the mountain, and



qualis ascensus in circūitu. Renuuntiatum-est  
 what the ascent in a circuit. It was reported  
 esse<sup>55</sup> facilem. De tertiā vigiliā jūbet  
 to be easy. About [at] the third watch he orders

Titum Labienum legatum pro prætore  
 Titus Labienus lieutenant for prætor [with prætorian  
 cum duobus legionibus, et iisdem ducibus, qui  
 powers] with two legions, and the same guides, who  
 cognoverant iter, ascendere summum jūgum  
 had learned the route, to ascend the highest peak  
 montis; ostendit quid sit sui consilii.  
 of the mountain; he shows what may be (of) his counsel.

Ipsē de quartā vigiliā  
 [design]. He himself about the fourth watch  
 eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant,  
 by the same route, by which the enemy had gone.

contendit ad eos, que mittit antē omnem equitatum.  
 hastens to them, and sends before all the cavalry.

Publius Considius, qui habebatur peritissimus  
 Publius Considius, who was deemed most skilled  
 militaris rei (sing.), et fuerat in exercitu Lucii  
 of [in] military affairs, and had been in the army of Lucius

Syllæ, et postea in Marci Crassi,  
 Sylla, and afterwards in (that) of Marcus Crassus,  
 præmittitur cum exploratoribus.  
 is sent forward with the scouts.

22. Primā<sup>56</sup> luce, quum summus mons  
 At the first light [early dawn], when the highest mountain  
 teneretur (imp. subj.) à Tito Labieno, ipse  
 was held by Titus Labienus, he himself  
 abesset (imp. subj.) non longius mille et  
 was distant not farther (than) a thousand and  
 quingentis passibus ab castris (pl.) hostium;  
 five hundred paces from the camp of the enemy  
 neque, ut compèrit postea ex captivis,  
 nor, as he found afterwards from the captives,  
 aut adventus ipsius, aut Labieni  
 either the arrival of himself, or (that) of Labienus

cognitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); Cosindius, <sup>equo</sup>  
 had been known; Considius, (his) horse  
 admissio, accurrit ad eum; dicit.  
 at full speed, rushes to him [Cæsar]; he says,  
 montem quem voluerit (perf. subj.) occupari  
 the mountain which he wished to be occupied  
 à Labieno, teneri ab hostibus: se  
 by Labienus, to be [is] held by the enemy: (that) he himself  
 cognovisse id à Gallicis armis atque insignibus.  
 to have known[knew] this from the Gallic arms and ensigns.  
 Cæsar subducit suas copias in proximum collem,  
 Cæsar leads away his forces to the nearest hill,  
 instruit aciem. Labienus, ut præceptum-erat  
 he arrays the line. Labienus, as had been directed  
 ei à Cæsare, ne-committēret prælium,  
 to him by Cæsar, that he should not join battle,  
 nisi copiae ipsius visæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 unless the forces of himself had been seen  
 præpe castra (pl.) hostium, ut impetus fieret  
 near the camp of the enemy, that the attack might be made  
 in hostes undique uno tempore,  
 against the enemy on every side at one time,  
 monte occupato, expectabat nostros, que  
 the mountain having been occupied, was awaiting our (men), and  
 abstinebat prælio. Denique, multo die Cæsar  
 was holding from battle. Finally, far in the day Cæsar  
 cognovit per exploratores, et montem teneri  
 learned by scouts (that), both the mountain to be [was] held  
 à suis, et hostes movisse castra  
 by his own (men), and (that) the enemy to have [had] moved camp,  
 (pl.), et Considium perterritum timore renuntiâsse  
 and Considius dismayed by fear to have [had]  
 pro viso, quod non vidisset (pl. perf.  
 announced for [as] seen, (that) which he had not seen.  
 subj.). Eo die, intervallo quo consuērat,  
 On that day, in the interval with which he had been accustomed,  
 sequitur hostes, et ponit castra (pl.) tria  
 he follows the enemy. and places (his) camp three

millia passum ab castris (pl.) eorum.  
thousand (of) paces from the camp of them [their camp].

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod biduum  
The day after this day, because a period of two days

omnino supererat, quum oporteret (imp. subj.)  
altogether was remaining, when it was obligatory

metiri frumentum exercitu (exercitui); et  
to measure [deal] out corn to the army; and

quod aberat a Bibracte, longe  
because he was distant from Bibracte, by far

maximo ac copiosissimo oppido Æduorum,  
the greatest and most wealthy town of the Ædui,

non amplius octodēcim millibus passum;  
not more (than) eighteen thousand (of) paces;

existimavit prospiciendum frumentariæ  
he believed it must be looked out [he must provide] for the grain

rei; et avertit iter ab Helvetiis  
supply, and he turns away the route from the Helvetii

ac contendit ire Bibracte. Ea<sup>57</sup> res  
and hastens to go (to) Bibracte. This thing

nuntiatur hostibus per fugitivos Lucii Æmilii,  
is announced to the enemy by fugitives of Lucius Æmilius,

decurionis equitum Gallorum. Helvetii,  
captain of the horsemen of the Gauls. The Helvetii,

seu quod existimarent (imp. subj.) Romani  
either because they were judging (that) the Romans

discedere a se perterritos timore, eo magis  
(to) withdraw from them dismayed with fear, by this the more

quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis,  
because the day before the higher places having been occupied,

commisissent (pl. perf. subj.) non proelium, sive  
they had joined not battle, or

quod<sup>58</sup> confiderent (imp. subj.) posse inter-  
because they were trusting (our men) to be able [could] (to) be inter-

cludi frumentaria re: consilio commutato  
cepted from the corn supply; (their) plan having been altered

atque itinere converso, coeperunt insequi ac  
and the route having been changed, they began to pursue and

laccessere nostros à novissimo agmine.  
to harass our (men) from the last marching-line [in the rear].

24. Postquam Cæsar animadvertit id, subducit  
After (that) Cæsar perceived this; he leads up

suas copias in proximum collem que misit equitatum,  
his forces onto the nearest hill and sent cavalry,

qui sustineret impetum hostium. Ipse  
which should meet the attack of the enemy. He himself

intērim instruxit triplicem aciem quatuor veteranarum  
meanwhile drew up a triple line of four veteran

legionum in medio colle; ita uti collocaret  
legions on the center (of the) hill; so that he might place

supra se, in summo jūgo, duas legiones quas  
above himself, on the highest peak, the two legions which

conscripsērat proximē in citeriore Gallia, et omnia  
he had levied very lately in hither Gaul, and all

auxilia, et compleret totum montem  
the aids [auxiliaries], and might fill the whole mount

hominibus. / Interēa jussit sarcinas  
with men. In the mean time he ordered (that) the baggage

conferri in unum locum et eum  
(to) be brought together into one place and (that) this

muniri ab iis, qui constitērant in superiore  
(to) be fortified by those, who took stand in the higher

acie. Helvetii, secuti cum omnibus suis  
line. The Helvetii, having followed with all their

carris, contulerunt impedimenta in unum  
wagons, brought together the baggage into one

locum; ipsi confertissimā acie, nostro equitatu  
place; (they) themselves in a very dense line, our cavalry

rejecto, phalange factā, successerunt  
having been repulsed, a phalanx having been made, advanced

sub nostram primam aciem.  
under [to] our first line.

25. Cæsar, suo primū, deinde equis  
Cæsar, his own (horse) first, then the horses

omnium remotis ē conspectu, ut periculo  
of all having been removed from sight, that the danger

æquato, tollēret spem fūgæ,  
 having been made equal, he might take away the hope of flight,  
 cohortatus sūos, commisit prœlium.  
 having encouraged his (men), joined battle.  
 Milītes, pilis missis è superiore lōco,  
 The soldiers, javelins having been sent [cast] from the higher place,  
 facīlè perfregerunt phalangem hostium: ēā  
 easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy: this  
 disjectā, fecerunt impētum in eos districtis  
 having been dispersed, they made an attack upon them with drawn  
 gladiis. Erat<sup>59</sup> magno impedimento Gallis ad  
 swords. It was (for) a great impediment to the Gauls for  
 pugnam, quōd pluribus scutis eorum transfixis  
 the fight, that many shields of them having been pierced  
 et colligatis uno ictu pilorum, cūm  
 and bound together by one stroke of the javelins, when  
 ferrum inflexisset (pl. perf. subj.) se, potērant  
 the iron had bent itself, (in) they were able  
 nēque evellēre, nēque, sinistrā impeditā,  
 neither to tear (it) out. nor, the left (hand) having been entangled,  
 pugnare sātis commōdè, ut multi, brachiō  
 to fight sufficiently easily, so that many, the arm  
 diū jactato, præoptarent (imp. subj.)  
 a long time having been tossed about, were preferring  
 emittēre scutum mānu, et pugnare  
 to discard the shield from the hand, and to fight  
 nudo corpore. Tandem defessi vulneribus cœperunt  
 with naked body. At length wearied with wounds they began  
 et referre pēdem, et quōd mons  
 both to bear back the foot [to retreat], and because a mountain  
 suberat circiter mille passūm recipere  
 was near about a thousand (of) paces to betake  
 se ēd. Monte capto,  
 themselves [withdraw] thither. The mountain having been taken,  
 et nostris succedentibus, Boii et Tulingi,  
 and our (men) advancing, the Boii and Tulingi,  
 qui claudēbant agmen hostium circiter  
 who were closing the marching line of the enemy (with) about

quindēcim millibus hominum, et erant præsidio  
 fifteen thousand (of) men, and were (for) a guard  
 novissimis, aggressi<sup>60</sup> nostros, ex  
 to the last [rear], having attacked our (men), from [upon]  
 itinere aperto latere circumvenire;  
 the march on the open flank, (began) to surround (them);  
 et Helvetii qui receperant se in  
 and the Helvetii who had betaken themselves to  
 montem, conspicati id, coeperunt rursus  
 the mountain, having beheld this, began again  
 instare et redintegrare prælium. Romani  
 to advance and to renew the battle. The Romans  
 intulerunt signa conversa bipartitò;  
 bore on[charged] the standards (having been) turned in two directions;  
 prima ac secunda acies, ut resisteret  
 the first and second line, that it [they] might resist  
 victis et submotis; tertia ut exciperet  
 to) the conquered and routed; the third that it might receive  
 venientes.  
 (those) coming.

26. Ita<sup>61</sup> pugnatum-est ancipiti prælio dū  
 Thus it was fought with doubtful battle a long time  
 atque acriter. Quum possent (imp. subj.) non  
 and sharply. When they were able not  
 sustinere impetum nostrorum diutius, alteri receperunt  
 to sustain the attack of our (men) longer, others [some] betook  
 se in montem, ut coeperant; alteri  
 themselves unto the mountain, as they had begun; others  
 contulerunt se ad impedimenta et suos  
 collected themselves to [at] the baggage and their  
 carros. Nam hoc toto prælio, quum  
 wagons. For in this whole battle, when [although]  
 pugnatum-sit (perf. subj.) ab septimâ horâ  
 it was fought from the seventh hour [one o'clock]  
 ad vespëram, nemo<sup>62</sup> potuit videre hostem aversum.  
 to evening no one was able to see the enemy turned away.  
 Pugnatum-est etiam ad multam noctem ad  
 It was fought also to [until] much [late] night at

impedimenta: propterēa quòd objecērant carros pro  
the baggage: because (that) they had opposed wagons for  
vallo, et conjiciebant tela è superiore lōco in  
a rampart, and were hurling weapons from a higher place upon  
nostros venientes, et nonnulli subiciebant matāras  
our (men) advancing, and some were thrusting spears  
ac tragūlas inter carros que redas, que  
and javelins between the wagons and carts, and  
vulnerabant nostros. Quum<sup>63</sup> pugnatum-esset  
were wounding our (men). When it had been fought  
(pl. perf. subj.) dū, nostri potiti-sunt  
a long time, our (men) won [captured]  
impedimentis que castris. Ibi filia Orgetorigis,  
the baggage and camp. There a daughter of Orgetorix,  
atque unus è filiis captus-est. Superfuerunt  
and one from [of] (his) sons was [were] taken. There survived  
ex ēo proelio circiter centum et triginta millia  
from this battle about a hundred and thirty thousand  
hommum, que ierunt continenter ēa totā nocte:  
(of) men, and they went[traveled] incessantly this whole night;  
itinēre intermisso nullam partem noctis,  
the march being interrupted no part of the night,  
quarto die pervenerunt in fines Lingonum:  
on the fourth day they arrived to[at] the borders of the Lingones;  
quum nostri morati triduum  
since our (men) having delayed the space of three days  
et propter vulnera militum et  
both on account of the wounds of the soldiers and  
propter sepulturam occisorum, potuissent  
on account of the burial of the slain. had been able  
(pl. perf. subj.) non sēqui ēos. Cæsar misit  
not to follow [could not follow] them. Cæsar sent  
litēras que nuntios ad Lingōnes, ne juvent  
letters and messengers to the Lingones, that they should not assist  
ēos frumento neve aliā re: qui si  
them with corn nor with (any) other thing: who if  
juvissent,<sup>64</sup> se habiturum illos  
they (should have) assisted, ne himself about to [would] hold them

eodem lōco, quo Helvetios. Ipse,  
 in the same place [light], in which [as] the Helvetii. (He) himself,  
 tridūo intermisso, cœpit sēqui  
 the period of three days having intervened, began to follow  
 eos cum omnibus copiis.  
 them with all (his) forces.

27. Helvetii, adducti inopiā omnium rerum,  
 The Helvetii, induced by want of all things,  
 miserunt<sup>65</sup> legatos qui cum convenissent  
 sent ambassadors to him who when they had met  
 (pl. perf. subj.) eum in itinēre, que  
 him on the march, and  
 projecissent (pl. perf. subj.) se ad pēdes, que  
 had thrown themselves at (his) feet, and  
 locuti suppliciter, flentes petissent (pl.  
 having spoken suppliantly, weeping sought  
 perf. subj.) pacem, atque jussisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 peace, and (when) he had ordered

eos expectare sūum adventum in eo lōco, quo  
 them to await his arrival in that place, in which  
 tum essent (imp. subj.), paruerunt. Postquam Cæsar  
 then they were, they obeyed. After (that) Cæsar  
 pervenit eo, poposcit obsides, arma, servos, qui  
 came there, he demanded hostages, arms, the slaves, who  
 perfugissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad eos. Dum ēa  
 had fled to them. While these

conquiruntur et conferuntur,  
 (things) are sought for and are brought together,  
 nocte intermissâ, circiter sex millia  
 a night having intervened, about six thousand  
 hominum ejus pagi, qui appellatur  
 (of) men of this canton, which is called  
 Verbigenus, sive perterriti timore, ne, armis  
 Verbigenus, either alarmed by fear, lest, (their) arms  
 traditis, afficerentur supplicio;  
 having been delivered, they should be affected[visited] with punishment;  
 sive inducti spe salutis, quod in tantâ  
 or induced by hope of safety, because in so great a



multitudīne deditiorum,<sup>66</sup> existimarent (imp. subj.)  
 multitude of (those) surrendered, they were thinking

sūam fūgam posse aut occultari aut ignorari  
 their flight to be able either to be concealed or to be disregarded

omnino; primā vigiliā noctis, egressi ex  
 altogether; in the first watch of the night, having gone out from

castris (pl.) Helvetiorum, contenderunt ad Rhenum  
 the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine

que fines Germanorum.  
 and borders of the Germans.

28. Quod<sup>67</sup> ūbi Cæsar reseivit, imperavit his,  
 Which when Cæsar discovered, he ordered (to) these.

per fines quorum iērant, ūti  
 through the borders of whom they had gone, that

conquirērent et reducērent, si<sup>68</sup>  
 they should search out and should lead back, if

vellent (imp. subj.) esse purgati sibi. Habuit<sup>69</sup>  
 they were wishing to be blameless to himself. He held

reductos in numēro hostium: accepit omnes  
 (those) led back in the number of enemies: he received all

reliquos in ditionem, obsidibus, armis, perfugis  
 the remaining into surrender, hostages, arms, deserters

traditis. Jussit Helvetios, Tulingos,  
 having been delivered up. He ordered the Helvetii, Tulingi,

Latobrigos, reverti in suos fines, unde  
 Latobrigi, to return into their territories, whence

profecti-erant; et quod, omnibus frugibus amissis,  
 they had set out; and because, all the crops having been lost

nihil erat domi, quo tolerarent famem,  
 nothing was at home, by which they might bear hunger,

imperavit Allobrogibus, ut facerent copiam  
 he ordered (to) the Allobroges, that they should make plenty

frumenti eis; jussit ipsos restituere  
 [a supply] of corn for them; he ordered themselves to replace

oppida que vicos, quos incendērant. Fecit  
 the towns and villages, which they had burned. He did

id maxime eā ratione, quod<sup>70</sup> noluit  
 this chiefly with this reason, because he was unwilling

ẽum locum, unde Helvetiĩ discessẽrant, vacare;  
this place, whence the Helvetii had departed, to be vacant.

ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani,  
lest on account of the excellence of the lands, the Germans.

qui incolunt trans Rhenum, transirent ẽ  
who dwell beyond the Rhine, should cross from

suis finibus in fines Helvetiorum, et essent  
their borders into the borders of the Helvetii, and should be

finitimi provinciæ Galliæ que Allobrogibus.  
neighbors to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges.

Concessit Ȑdũis petentibus, ut collocarent  
He granted to the Ȑdui asking, that they should place [settle]

Boios in suis finibus, quod cognitierant  
the Boii in their borders, because they were known

egregiã virtute: quibus illi dederunt agros, que  
of excellent valor: to whom they gave lands, and

quos<sup>71</sup> receperunt postea in parem conditionem  
whom they received afterwards into equal condition

juris que libertatis atque ipsi ẽrant.  
of right and of liberty as they themselves were.

29. In castris (pl.) Helvetiorum tabulæ confectæ  
In the camp of the Helvetii tablets prepared

Græcis litẽris repertæ sunt, et perlatae ad Cæsarem;  
with Greek letters were found, and brought to Cæsar;

in quibus tabulis ratio confecta ẽrat  
in which tablets a computation had been made

nominatim, qui numerus eorum exisset (pl.  
name by name, [individually] what number of them had gone forth

perf. subj.) dõmo, qui possent (imp. subj.) ferre arma,  
from home, who were able to bear arms

et item separatim puẽri, sẽnes que muliẽres  
and likewise separately the boys, old men and women.

Summa omniumq uarum rerum ẽrat, ducenta  
The sum of all which things [items] was, two hundred

sexaginta et tria millia capũtũ Helvetiorum;  
sixty and three thousand (of) heads [souls] of the Helvetii:

triginta et sex millia Tulingorum; quatuordẽcim  
thirty and six thousand of the Tulingi; fourteen

Latobrigorum; Rauracorum viginti et tria; Boiorum  
of the Latobrigi; of the Rauraci twenty and three: of the Boii  
triginta et duo. Ex his, qui possent (imp. subj.)  
thirty and two. Of those, who were able

ferre arma ad nonaginta et duo millia. Summa  
to bear arms to [about] ninety and two thousand. The sum

omnium fuerat ad trecenta sexaginta et  
[total] of all was at [about] three hundred sixty and

octo millia. Censu habito, ut Cæsar  
eight thousand. A census having been held, as Cæsar

imperaverat, numerus eorum, qui redierunt domum,  
had ordered, the number of those, who returned home,

reperit centum et decem millia.  
was found (to be) a hundred and ten thousand.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati<sup>72</sup>

The war of the Helvetii having been finished, ambassadors

ferre totius Galliae, principes civitatum, convenerunt  
almost of the whole of Gaul, chiefs of the states, came together

ad Cæsarem gratulatum: "sese, intelligere,  
to Cæsar (to) congratulate: "(they) themselves, (to) understand,

tametsi Romanus populus repetisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
although the Roman people had required

pœnas ab iis bello pro veteribus injuriis  
penalties from them in war for the ancient injuries

Helvetiorum; tamen eam rem accidisse non  
of the Helvetii; yet this thing to have [had] happened not

minus ex usu terræ Galliae,  
less from [for] the use [advantage] of the land of Gaul,

quam Romani populi; propterea quod eo  
than of the Roman people; because (that) with this

consilio, florentissimis rebus, Helvetii reliquissent  
plan, in most flourishing affairs, the Helvetii had left

(pl. perf. subj.) suas domos, ut inferrent  
their homes, that they might wage

bellum toti Galliae (dat.) que potirentur imperio (abl.);  
war on all Gaul and might gain empire;

que deligerent locum domicilio ex magna copia,  
and (might) choose a place for abode from a great supply

quem judicassent opportunissimum ac  
 which they (might have) judged most advantageous and  
 fructuosissimum ex omni Galliâ; que haberent  
 most fruitful from [of] all Gaul; and might have  
 reliquas civitates stipendiarias. Petierunt, uti  
 the remaining states as tributaries. They asked, that  
 liceret sibi indicere concilium  
 it might be allowed (to) themselves to proclaim a council  
 totius Galliæ in certam diem, que facere id  
 of all Gaul upon a certain day, and to do this  
 voluntate Cæsaris. Sese habere quasdam res,  
 with the will of Cæsar. They themselves (to) have certain things,  
 quas vellent (imp. subj.) petere ab eo è  
 which they were wishing to ask from him from [with]  
 communi consensu. Eâ re permissâ,  
 the common consent. This thing having been permitted,  
 constituerunt diem concilio, et sanxerunt  
 they appointed a day for the council, and ratified  
 jurejurando inter se, ne quis  
 by oath between themselves. (that) not any one  
 enuntiaret nisi quibus mandatum-esset (pl.  
 should divulge (it) unless to whom it had been enjoined  
 perf. subj.) communi consilio.  
 by common design.

31 Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes  
 This council having dismissed, the same chiefs  
 civitatum, qui fuerant antè, reverterunt ad  
 of the states, who had been before, returned to  
 Cæsarem; que petierunt, uti liceret  
 Cæsar; and asked, that it might be allowed  
 sibi agere secretò cum eo de  
 (to) themselves to act [treat] secretly with him about  
 suâ salute que omnium. Eâ re  
 their safety and (that) of all. This thing  
 impetratâ, omnes flentes projecerunt sese  
 having been obtained, all weeping cast themselves  
 ad pedes Cæsari; "se non minùs  
 at the feet to [of] Cæsar; "they themselves not less

contendere et laborare id, ne ea  
 to strive and to labor for this, lest these (things)  
 quæ dixissent (pl. perf. subj.) enuntiarentur,  
 which they had said should be divulged,  
 quàm uti impetrarent ea, quæ  
 than that they might obtain these (things), which  
 vellent (imp. subj.); propterea quod si enun-  
 they were wishing; because (that) if it  
 tiatum-esset, viderent (imp. subj.) se  
 was divulged, they were seeing (that) (they) themselves  
 venturos in summum cruciatum." Divitiacus  
 about to [would] come to the highest torture." Divitiacus  
 Ædūs<sup>73</sup> locutus-est pro his: esse dūas  
 the Æduan spoke for these; to be [there are] two  
 factiones totius Galliæ; Ædūs tenere  
 factions of all Gaul; the Ædui to hold  
 principatum alterius harum, Arvernos  
 sovereignty of the one of these, the Arverni  
 alterius. Quum hi contendērent (imp. subj.)  
 of the other. When these were contending  
 tantopere inter se de potentatu multos  
 very greatly between themselves about dominion many  
 annos, factumesse, uti Germani  
 years, to have been done [it resulted], that the Germans  
 accerserentur (imp. subj.) ab Avernis que Sequanis  
 were sent for by the Arverni and Sequani  
 mercede. Primò circiter quindēcim  
 with [for] hire [as mercenaries]. At first about fifteen  
 millia horum transisse Rhenum; posteaquam  
 thousand of these (to have) crossed the Rhine; after (that)  
 feri ac barbari homines adamassent  
 the wild and barbarous men had fallen in love with  
 (pl. perf. subj.) agros, et cultum, et copias  
 the lands, and cultivation, and resources  
 Gallorum, plures transductos: nunc esse  
 of the Gauls, more (were) led over: now to be [they are]  
 in Galliā ad numerum centum et viginti  
 in Gaul to the number of a hundred and twenty

millium: *Ædūos*,<sup>74</sup> que clientes eorum,  
 thousand: the *Ædui*, and clients [dependants] of them,  
*sēmēl* atque itērum contendisse armis cum  
 time and again (to) have contended in arms with  
 his; pulsos accepisse magnam  
 these; repulsed to (they) have received a great  
 calamitatem; amisisse omnem nobilitatem,  
 calamity; to (they) have lost all (their) nobility,  
 omnem senatum, omnen equitatum. Fractos  
 all the senate, all (their) cavalry. Broken  
 quibus praeliis que calamitatibus, qui  
 by which [these] battles and calamities, (they) who  
 antē potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) plurimum  
 before had been able most [were most powerful]  
 in Gallia, et sua virtute et  
 in Gaul, both by their own valor and  
 hospitio atque amicitia Romani populi,  
 by the alliance and friendship of the Roman people,  
 coactos-esse dare obsides Sequanis,  
 (to) have been forced to give hostages to the Sequani,  
 nobilissimos civitatis, et obstringere civitatem  
 the most noble (men) of the state, and to bind the state  
 jurejurando, sese neque repetituros  
 by oath (that they), themselves neither about to [would] ask back  
 obsides, neque imploratos auxilium  
 the hostages, nor about to [would] implore aid  
 à Romano populo, neque<sup>75</sup> recusatos, quod  
 from the Roman people, nor about to [would] refuse, that  
 minus-essent perpetuo sub ditione  
 they might not be perpetually under the dominion  
 atque imperio illorum. Se esse unum  
 and empire of them. He himself to be [was] the only one  
 ex omni civitate Æduorum, qui potuerit (perf.  
 from [of] all the state of the *Ædui*, who has been able  
 subj.) non adduci ut juraret, aut  
 not to be induced that he should swear, or  
 daret suos liberos obsides: Ob eam rem  
 should give his children (as) hostages: For this thing

se profugisse ex civitate, et venisse  
 he himself to have [had] fled from the state, and to have [had] come(to)  
 Roman ad Senatum postulatum auxilium, quòd  
 Rome to the Senate to request aid, because  
 solus teneretur (imp. subj.) nèque jurjurando.  
 (he) alone was held neither by oath,  
 nèque obsidibus. Sed accidissee pejus  
 nor by hostages. But to have [it had] happened worse  
 Sequānis victoribus, quàm Ædūis victis:  
 to the Sequani, the conquerors, than to the Ædui, the conquered;  
 propterēa quòd Ariovistus,<sup>76</sup> rex Germanorum,  
 because (that) Ariovistus, king of the Germans,  
 consedisset (pl. perf. subj.) in finibus eorum,  
 had settled in the borders of them,  
 que occupavisset (pl. perf. subj.) tertiam partem  
 and had occupied the third part  
 Sequāni agri, qui esset (imp. subj.) optimus  
 of the Sequanian land, which was the best  
 totius Galliae; et nunc juberet (imp. subj.)  
 of all Gaul; and now was ordering  
 Sequānos decedere de altēra tertiā parte;  
 the Sequani to depart from the other third part;  
 propterēa quòd, paucis mensibus (abl.) antē,  
 because (that), a few months before,  
 viginti et quatūor millia hominum Harudum  
 twenty and four thousand (of) men of the Harudes  
 venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad eum, quibus locus  
 had come to him, for whom a place  
 et sedes pararentur: futurum esse  
 and habitations should be prepared: to be about to be [it would be]  
 paucis annis, ūti omnes pellerentur ē  
 in a few years, that all would be driven from  
 finibus Galliae, atque omnes Germani  
 the regions of Gaul, and all the Germans  
 transirent Rhenum: enim nèque Gallicum  
 would cross the Rhine: for neither (is) the Gallic (land)  
 esse conferendum<sup>77</sup> cum agro Germanorum,  
 to be mentioned with the land of the Germans,

nēque hanc consuetudinē victūs comparandam  
nor is this custom of life to be compared

cum illā. Autem Ariovistum, ut sēmel  
with that. But Ariovistus, when once

vicērit (perf. subj.) copias Gallorum prœlio,  
he conquered the forces of the Gauls in battle,

quod prœlium factum-sit (perf. subj;) ad  
which battle was made [fought] at

Magetobrigam, imperare superbè et crudeliter,  
Magetobriga, to command [commands] proudly and cruelly,

poscēre libēros ejusque nobilissīmi  
to require [demands] the children of each (of the) most noble

obsīdes, et edēre omnia exempla cruciatūs in  
(as) hostages, and to impose [imposes] all examples of torture upon

ēos, si qua res facta-sit (perf. subj.) non ad nutum<sup>78</sup>  
them, if any thing has been done not at the nod

aut ad voluntatem ejus: homīnem esse barbārum,  
or at the will of him: the man to be [is] barbarous,

iracundum, temerariū: imperia<sup>79</sup> ejus non posse  
irascible, headstrong: the commands of him not to be able

sustineri diutius. Nisi quid auxili  
to be sustained longer. Unless some (thing) (of) aid

sit in Cæsare que Romano populo,  
may be [is] in Cæsar and the Roman people,

īdem esse faciendum omnibus Gallis, quod  
the same must (to) be done by all the Gauls, which

Helvetii fecerant, ut emigrant dōmo;  
the Helvetii had done, that they may emigrate from home;

pētant aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas  
(that) they may seek another abode, others seats remote

à Germanis, que experiantur fortunam, quæcunque  
from the Germans, and (that they) may try fortune, whatsoever

accidat. Si hæc enunciata-sint  
may happen [befall them]. If these (things) were told

Ariovisto, non dubitare,<sup>80</sup> quin sumat  
to Ariovistus, not to doubt, but that he may take

gravissimum supplicium de omnibus obsidibus, qui  
the heaviest punishment upon all the hostages, who



sint (pres. subj.) apud eum. Cæsarem, vel sua  
are with him. Cæsar, either by his

auctoritate atque exercitū, vel recenti  
authority and (that) of (his) army, or by (his) recent

victoriā, vel nomīne Romani populi, posse  
victory, or by the name of the Roman people, to be [is] able

detertere, ne major multitudo Germanorum  
to prevent, lest a greater multitude of Germans

transducatur Rhenum, que posse defendere  
(may) be led over the Rhine, and (to) be able to defend

omnem Galliam ab injuriā Ariovisti.  
all Gaul from the injury [wrongs] of Ariovistus.

32. Hæc oratione<sup>81</sup> habita à Divitiāco, omnes,  
This speech having been had[made] by Divitiacus, all,

qui adērant, cœperunt petere auxilium à Cæsare  
who were present, began to ask aid from Cæsar

magno fletu. Cæsar animadvertit Sequānos  
with great weeping. Cæsar observed (that) the Sequani

unos ex omnibus facere nihil earum rerum.  
alone from [of] all (to) do nothing of those things,

quas cæteri facerent (imp. subj.); sed tristes, capite  
which the rest were doing; but sad, (with) head

demisso, intueri terram. Miratus,  
(being) cast down, (to) look upon the earth. Having wondered,

quæ esset caussa ejus rei, quæsivit ex  
what was the cause of this thing, he inquired from

ipsis. Sequāni respondere nihil, sed  
them. The Sequani answered nothing, but

permansere taciti in eadem tristitiā. Quum quæreret  
remained silent in the same sadness. When he was asking

(imp. subj.) sæpius ab iis, neque posset (imp.  
more often from them, nor was able

subj.) exprimere ullam vocem omnino;  
to extort any voice [word] at all;

idem Ædūus Divitiācus respondit: "Fortunam  
the same Æduan Divitiacus answered: "The fortune

Sequanorum, esse hęc miseriorem que graviorem,  
of the Sequani, to be [is] in this more wretched and more heavy,

quàm reliquorum quòd soli auderent (imp.  
 than of the rest, because (they) alone were daring  
 subj.) nec quidem quèri in occulto,  
 neither indeed to complain in private,  
 nec implorare auxiliùm; que horrerent (imp. subj.)  
 nor to implore aid; and were dreading  
 crudelitatem absentis Ariovisti, vèlut si adesset  
 the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus, as if he was present  
 (imp. subj.) coràm; propterèa quòd tàmèn  
 in person; because (that) notwithstanding  
 facultas fūgæ daretur  
 [indeed] an opportunity [a resource] of flight was given  
 (imp. subj.) reliquis; verò omnes cruciatus essent  
 to the rest; but all tortures were  
 (imp. subj.) perferendi Sequānis, qui  
 to [must] be endured to [by] the Sequani, who  
 receperant (pl. perf. subj.) Ariovistum intra suos fines,  
 had received Ariovistus within their borders,  
 omnia oppida quorum essent (imp. subj.) in  
 all the towns of whom [whose towns] were in  
 potestate ejus."  
 the power of him [his power]."

33. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar confirmavit

These things having been known, Cæsar confirmed [cheered]

animos Gallorum verbis, que pollicitus-est  
 the minds of the Gauls with words, and promised

"eam rem futuram curæ sibi:  
 "(that) this thing about to [would] be (for) a care to himself:

se habere magnam spem, Ariovistum  
 (he) himself to have [has] great hope, (that) Ariovistus

adductum suo beneficio et auctoritate, facturum  
 induced by his kindness and authority, about to [would] make

finem injuriis." Hæc oratione habita,  
 an end to [of his] wrongs." This speech having been delivered,

dimisi concilium. Et secundum eam (pl.) multæ  
 he dismissed the council. And besides this many

res hortabantur eum, quare putaret eam  
 things were urging him, wherefore he should think (that) this

rem cogitandum et suscipiendum  
 thing to [must] be considered and to [must] be undertaken  
 sibi: imprimis, quòd videbat Ædùos,  
 to [by] himself: especially, because he was seeing (that) the Ædui,  
 sæpenuméro appellatos fratres que  
 oftentimes having [who had] been named brothers and  
 consanguinèos ab Senatu, teneri in servitute  
 kinsmen by the Senate, to be [were] held in slavery  
 atque in ditone Germanorum, que intelligebat  
 and in dominion of the Germans, and he was understanding  
 obsides eorum esse apud Ariovistum  
 hostages of them [their hostages] to be [were] with Ariovistus  
 ac Sequānos; quod, in tanto imperio Romani  
 and the Sequani; which, in so great empire of the Roman  
 populi, arbitrabatur esse turpissimum sibi  
 people, he was considering to be [was] most disgraceful to himself  
 et reipublicæ. Autem Germanos<sup>82</sup> consuescere  
 and to the republic. But (that) the Germans to be [are] accustomed  
 paulatim transire Rhenum, et magnam  
 little by little to cross the Rhine, and a great  
 multitudinem eorum venire in Galliam, videbat  
 multitude of them to come into Gaul, he was seeing (was)  
 periculosum Romano populo: neque existimabat  
 dangerous to the Roman people: nor was he thinking  
 feros ac barbāros homines temperaturos  
 wild and barbarous men about to [would] restrain  
 sibi, quin, quum occupassent  
 (to) themselves, but that, when they had occupied  
 (pl. perf. subj.) omnem Galliam, ut Cimbri que  
 all Gaul, as the Cimbri and  
 Teutōni fecissent (pl. perf. subj.) antè, exirent  
 Teutones had done before, they would go out  
 in Provinciam, atque inde contendērent in  
 into the Province, and thence would hasten into  
 Italiam; præsertim quum Rhodānus dividēret (imp.  
 Italy; especially since the Rhone was dividing  
 subj.) Sequānos à nostrā provinciā. Quibus<sup>83</sup>  
 the Sequani from our province. (To) which

rebus putabat occurrendum quàm-maturimè.  
things he was thinking to [must] be met as early as possible.

Autem Ariovistus ipse sumsērat<sup>84</sup> sibi tantos.  
Moreover Ariovistus himself had taken to himself so great

spiritus, tantam arrogantiam, ut videretur (imp.  
spirits, [airs] so great arrogance, that he was seeming

subj.) non ferendus.  
not to be borne [endured].

34. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut mitteret  
Wherefore it pleased (to) him, that he should send

legatos ad Ariovistum, qui postularent ab  
ambassadors to Ariovistus, who should demand from

eo, "ut deligeret aliquem locum medium  
him, "that he should choose some place midway

utriusque colloquio; sese velle agere  
of each for a conference; (he) himself to will [wishes] to act [treat]

cum eo de re publicâ et summis rebus  
with him about a public matter and the highest affairs

utriusque." Ariovistus respondit ei legationi: "Si  
of each." Ariovistus answered to this embassy: "If

quid<sup>85</sup> esset (imp. subj.) opus ipsi à  
any (thing) was needful to himself from

Cæsare, sese fuisse venturum ad eum;  
Cæsar, (he) himself to have been about to [would] come to him;

si ille vellet (pres. subj.) quid à se,  
if he wishes any (thing) from himself,

oportere illum venire ad se; præterea, se  
to behoove [it behooves] him to come to himself: besides, he

nēque audere venire sine exercitu in eas  
neither to dare [dares] to come without an army into these

partes Galliarum, quas Cæsar possideret (imp. subj.);  
parts of Gaul, which Cæsar was possessing;

nēque<sup>86</sup> posse contrahere exercitum in unum  
nor to be [is he] able to gather an army into one

locum sine magno commeatu atque molimento:  
place without great provisions and trouble:

autem videri mirum sibi, quid negotii  
moreover to seem [it seems] wonderful to himself, what (of) business

esset aut Cæsari aut omnino Romano  
might be either to Cæsar or at all to the Roman  
populo, in sua Galliâ, quam vicisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
people, in his Gaul, which he had conquered  
bello.  
in war.

35. His responsis relatis ad Cæsarem,  
These answers having been brought back to Cæsar,  
Cæsar iterum mittit legatos ad eum cum his  
Cæsar again sends ambassadors to him with these  
mandatis: "Quoniam affectus tanto beneficio  
commands: "Since being affected with so great kindness  
suo que Romani populi (quum  
his own [Cæsar's] and (that) of the Roman people (since  
appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in suo consulatu rex  
he had been named in his own consulship king  
atque amicus à Senatu,) referret (imp. subj.) hanc  
and friend by the Senate,) he was returning this  
gratiam sibi que Romano populo, ut<sup>87</sup>  
favor to himself and to the Roman people, that  
gravaretur invitatus venire in  
he should be averse (though) invited to come into  
colloquium, neque putaret dicendum  
a conference, nor should think (it) to [must] be spoken  
sibi et cognoscendum de communi  
to [by] himself and [nor] (to) be investigated concerning a common  
re; hæc esse, quæ postularet (imp. subj.)  
matter; these to be, [are] what he was demanding  
ab eo: primum, ne-traduceret quam  
from him: first, (that) he should not lead over any  
multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in  
multitude of men more across the Rhine into  
Galliâ: deinde redderet obsides quos  
Gaul: then (that) he should restore the hostages that  
haberet (imp. subj.) ab Æduis; que permittēret<sup>88</sup>  
he was having from the Ædui; and should permit  
Sequanis, ut liceret voluntate  
(to) the Sequani, that it should be allowed by the will

ejus reddere illis quos illi  
 of him [his will] to restore to them [the Ædui] (those) whom they  
 haberent (imp. subj.); nève laceret Ædūs  
 were having; nor should harass the Ædui  
 injuriā; nève inferret bellum his ve  
 with violence nor should bring on war to these or  
 sociis eorum; si fecisset id ita,  
 to the allies of them; if he should do this thus,  
 perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam futuram  
 perpetual favor and friendship about to [would] be  
 sibi que Romano populo cum eo. Si  
 to himself and to the Roman people with him. If  
 impetraret (imp. subj.) non, quoniam, Marco Messalā,  
 he was obtaining (it) not, since, Marcus Messala,  
 Marco Pisone consulibus, Senatus censuisset  
 Marcus Piso (being) consuls, the Senate had resolved  
 (pl. perf. subj.) uti quicunque obtineret Galliam  
 that whosoever should hold Gaul  
 provinciam, defenderet Ædūs que  
 (as a) province, should defend the Ædui and  
 ceteros amicos Romani populi, quod  
 other friends of the Roman people, which [as]  
 posset facere commodo rei publicæ,  
 he might be able to do to the advantage of the republic,  
 se non neglecturum injurias Æduorum."  
 (he) himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries of the Ædui."  
 36. Ariovistus respondit ad hæc: "esse  
 Ariovistus answered to these (things): "to be [it was]  
 jus belli, ut qui vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 the right of war, that (they) who had conquered,  
 imperarent iis (dat.), quos vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 should rule those, whom they had conquered,  
 quemadmodum vellent: item Romanum  
 in whatsoever manner they may wish; likewise the Roman  
 populum consuēsse imperare victis (dat.)  
 people to have [had] been accustomed to rule the conquered  
 non ad præscriptum alterius, sed ad suum  
 not according to the edict of another, but according to their own

arbitrium. Si<sup>89</sup> ipse præscriberet (imp. subj.)  
 will. If he (himself) was dictating  
 non Romano populo, quemadmodum uteretur  
 not to the Roman people, how it should use  
 suo jure (abl.), non oportere se impediri  
 its right, (it was) not (to be) proper (that) himself (to) be hindered  
 à Romano populo in suo jure: Æduos  
 by the Roman people in his right: the Ædui  
 factos-esse stipendarios sibi, quoniam  
 to have [had] been made tributary to himself, since  
 tentassent (pl. perf. subj.) fortunam belli, et  
 they had tried the fortune of war, and  
 congressi-essent (pl. perf. subj.) armis ac  
 had engaged in arms and (had been)  
 superati: Cæsarem facere magnam injuriam, qui  
 overcome: Cæsar to do [did] great injury, who  
 suo adventu faceret (imp. subj.) vectigalia deteriora  
 by his arrival was making the taxes worse [less]  
 sibi: se<sup>90</sup> esse non redditurum  
 for him: (he) himself to be [was] not about to restore  
 obsides Æduis; neque illaturum bellum  
 the hostages to the Ædui; nor about to [would] bring on war  
 injuriâ iis, neque sociis eorum, si  
 with damage to them, nor to the allies of them [their allies], if  
 manerent in eo, quod convenisset (pl.  
 they should abide in that, which had been agreed upon,  
 perf. subj.), que pendèrent stipendium quotannis:  
 and should pay tribute yearly:  
 si non fecissent id, fratrum nomen  
 if they would not do this, the fraternal name  
 Romani populi abfuturum longè ab  
 of the Roman people about to [would] be absent far from  
 his; quod Cæsar denuntiaret (imp. subj.) sibi,  
 these; that Cæsar was declaring to him,  
 se non neglecturum injurias  
 (that) he himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries  
 Æduorum, neminem contendisse cum se  
 of the Ædui, no one to have [had] contended with himself

sine sua perniciē congrederetur quum  
without his own destruction let him come on when  
vellet; intellecturum, quid invicti  
he wishes; about to [he would] understand, what the invincible  
Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui subissent  
Germans, most practiced in arms, who had gone under  
(pl. perf. subj.) non tectum intra quatuordecim  
not [no] roof within fourteen

annos, possent virtute."  
years, might be able (to effect) by valor."

37 Eodem tempore hæc mandata  
In [at] the same time these charges  
referebantur Cæsari; et legati veniebant  
were reported to Cæsar; and [also] ambassadors were coming  
ab Ædūis et Treviris: Ædūi, questum,  
from the Ædui and Treviri: the Ædui, (to) complain,  
quod Harudes, qui nuper transportati-essent (pl.  
that the Harudes, who lately had been brought over  
perf. subj.) in Galliam, popularentur (imp. subj.)  
into Gaul, were laying waste

fines<sup>91</sup> eorum; sese potuisse redimere  
the borders of them; themselves to have [had] been able to purchase

pacem Ariovisti, ne obsidibus quidem  
peace of Ariovistus, not hostages indeed [even]

dātis. Autem Treviri, centum pagos  
having been given. But the Treviri, (reported) a hundred cantons

Suevorum consedissee ad ripam Rheni, qui  
of the Suevi to have [had] settled at the bank of the Rhine, who  
conarentur (imp. subj.) transire Rhenum; fratres  
were endeavoring to cross the Rhine; (that) the brothers

Nasūam et Cimberium præesse iis (dat.) Quibus  
Nasua and Cimberius to be [are] over these. By which

rebus Cæsar commotus vehementer existimavit  
things Cæsar being moved greatly thought

maturandum<sup>92</sup> sibi ne si nova manus  
to be [it must be] hastened to [by] himself, lest, if the new band

Suevorum conjunxisset (pl. perf. subj.) sese cum  
of the Suevi should join itself with



veteribus copiis Ariovisti, posset<sup>93</sup> minus  
the old forces of Ariovistus, it might be able less

facile resisti. Itaque, frumentaria re  
easily to be withstood. Therefore, the corn affair [grain]

comparata, quam-celerissime potuit, contendit  
having been procured, as quickly as he could, he hastened

magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum.  
by great [forced] marches to Ariovistus.

38. Quum<sup>94</sup> jam processisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
When now he had proceeded

viam tridui, nuntiatum-est ei,  
a course of three days, it was reported to him,

Ariovistum<sup>95</sup> cum omnibus suis copiis contendere ad  
Ariovistus with all his forces to hasten to

occupandum Vesontionem, quod est maximum  
occupy Vesontio, which is the largest

oppidum Sequanorum, que processisse viam  
town of the Sequani, and to have [had] proceeded a course

tridui a suis finibus. Caesar existimabat  
of three days from his borders. Caesar was thinking

praevidendum sibi magnopere, ne id  
to [it must] be guarded to [by] himself very greatly, lest this

accideret: namque erat summa facultas  
should happen; for indeed there was the highest [largest] supply

in eo oppido omnium rerum, quae erant usui ad  
in this town of all things, which were for use to

bellum,<sup>96</sup> que idem muniebatur sic natura  
war, and the same was fortified so by the nature

loci, ut daret (imp. subj.) magnam facultatem  
of the place, that it was giving great means

ad<sup>97</sup> ducendum bellum; propterea quod flumen  
to lead [protract] the war; because (that) the river

Dubis, ut circumductum circino, cingit  
Dubis [Doux], as (if) led [traced] around by a compass, girds

penè totum oppidum; reliquum spatium, quod  
almost the whole town; the remaining space, which

est non amplius sexcentorum pedum, quà flumen  
is not more (than) (of) six hundred feet, where the river

intermittit, mons continet, magnā  
 ceases, a mountain occupies, with (of) great  
 altitudine, ita<sup>98</sup> ut radices ejus montis contingant  
 height, so that the roots [foot] of this mountain reach  
 (pres. subj.) ripæ fluminis ex utrâque  
 [reaches] to the bank of the river from [on] each  
 parte. Murus circumdatus efficit hunc  
 part [side]. A wall thrown around makes this (mountain)  
 arcem et conjungit cum oppido. Huc<sup>99</sup>  
 a citadel and joins (it) with the town. Hither  
 Cæsar contendit magnis diurnis que nocturnis  
 Cæsar hastens by great day and night  
 itineribus, que oppido occupato, collocat  
 marches, and the town having been occupied, he places  
 præsidium ibi.  
 a garrison there.

39. Dum moratur paucos dies ad Vescontionem  
 While he delays a few days at Vescontio

causâ<sup>100</sup> frumentariæ rei que commeatûs, ex  
 by cause of corn affair [grain] and of provisions, from  
 percuntatione nostrorum que vocibus Gallorum  
 the inquiry of our (men) and the expressions of the Gauls  
 et mercatorum qui prædicabant Germanos  
 and of the merchants who were proclaiming the Germans  
 esse ingenti magnitudine corporum,  
 to be [were] with [of] vast size of bodies,  
 incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis,  
 with (of) incredible valor and practice in arms,  
 sese<sup>101</sup> sæpenumero congressos cum iis,  
 (they) themselves oftentimes having encountered with them,  
 potuisse ferre ne vultum quidem atque  
 to have [had] been able to bear not the look indeed [even] and  
 aciem oculorum, tantus timor subito  
 edge [glance] of (their) eyes, so great fear suddenly  
 occupavit omnem exercitum, ut perturbaret (imp.  
 occupied all the army, that it was disturbing  
 subj.) non mediocriter mentes que animos omnium  
 in no moderate degree the minds and spirits of all.

Hic primū ortus-est à tribunis milītum,  
 This (fear) first arose [started] from the tribunes of soldiers  
 ac præfectis, que reliquis, qui causā  
 and prefects, and remaining (persons), who by cause [reason]  
 amicitīæ secuti Cæsārem ex urbe,  
 of friendship having followed Cæsar from the city,  
 miserebantur magnum pericūlum, quōd habebant  
 were deploring the great danger, because they were having  
 non magnum usum in militari re (sing.):  
 not [no] great experience in military affairs:  
 quorum aliū,<sup>102</sup> aliā causā illatā,  
 of whom one, one cause being brought [alleged], (another,  
 quam dicēret (imp. subj.) esse necessariā  
 another) which he was saying to be [was] necessary  
 sibi ad proficiscendum, patebat, ut liceret  
 to himself for setting out, was asking, that it might be  
 discedere voluntate ejus; nonnulli  
 allowed (him) to depart by the will of him [by his will]; some  
 adducti pudore, ut<sup>103</sup> vitarent suspicionem  
 prompted by shame, that they might avoid the suspicion  
 timoris remanebant. Hi potērant nēque fingere  
 of fear were remaining. These were able neither to form [keep]  
 vultum nēque interdum tenere lacrymas;  
 (their) countenance nor sometimes to hold (their) tears;  
 abditi in tabernaculis, aut querebantur sūm  
 hidden in the tents, either they were bewailing their own  
 fatum, aut cum suis familiaribus miserebantur  
 fate, or with their confidants were deploring (their)  
 commune pericūlum. Vulgō testamenta obsignabatur  
 common danger. Everywhere wills were sealed  
 totis castris (pl.). Vocibus ac timore horum  
 in the whole camp. By the words and fear of these  
 paullatim etiam ii, qui habebant magnum usum  
 gradually also they, who were having great experience  
 in castris (pl.), militis que centuriones, que qui  
 in camps, soldiers and centurions, and (those) who  
 præerant equitatui (dat.), perturbabantur. Qui<sup>104</sup> ex  
 commanded the cavalry, were disturbed. Whoever of

his volebant se existimari mīnūs timīdos,  
 these were wishing themselves to be thought less alarmed,  
 dicebant se non vereri hostem, sed timere  
 were saying they (did) not (to) dread the enemy, but (to) fear  
 angustias itinēris et magnitudīnem silvarum,  
 the (hard) straits of the way and the vastness of the woods,  
 quæ intercedērent (imp. subj.) inter eos atque  
 which were intervening between them and  
 Ariovistum, aut frumentariā rem, ut  
 Ariovistus, or the corn affair [supply], that  
 posset commōdè sātis supportari.  
 it might be able [could] (not) conveniently enough (to) be carried up.  
 Etiam nonnulli renuntiabant Cæsāri, cū  
 Also some were reporting to Cæsar, when  
 jussisset (pl. pref. subj.) castra (pl.) moveri, ac  
 he had ordered the camp to be moved, and  
 signa ferri, milītes<sup>105</sup> non fore  
 the standards to be borne, the soldiers not to be about to [would not] be  
 audientes dicto, nēque laturos  
 hearing [obedient] to the word, nor about to [would] bear  
 signa propter timorem.  
 the standards on account of fear.

40. Quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 When Cæsar had observed

hæc, concilio convocato, que  
 these (things), a council having been called together, and  
 centurionibus omnium ordinum adhibitis ad  
 the centurions of all ranks having been admitted to  
 id concilium, incusavit eos vehementer; primum,  
 this council, he blamed them vehemently; first,  
 quod<sup>106</sup> putarent (imp. subj.) quærendum aut  
 because they were thinking to [it must] be inquired [investigated] or  
 cogitandum sibi, aut in quam  
 to [must] be considered to (by) themselves, either into what  
 partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur (imp. subj.).  
 part, or with what plan they should be led.  
 Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissimè  
 Ariovistus, himself (being) consul, most eagerly

appetisse amicitiam Romani populi:  
 to have [had] sought the friendship of the Roman people:  
 cur quisquam judicaret hunc discessurum  
 why should any one judge this (man) about to [would] depart  
 tam temerè ab officio? Quidem<sup>107</sup> persuaderi  
 so rashly from (his) duty? Indeed to be [it was] persuaded  
 sibi, suis postulatis cognitis, atque æquitate  
 to himself, his demands having been known, and the justice  
 conditionum perspectâ, eum (acc.) nèque repudia-  
 of the conditions being clearly seen, he neither about to  
 turum suam gratiam nèque Romani  
 [would] reject his favor nor (that) of the Roman  
 populi: quòd si, impulsus furore atque amentia,  
 people: but if, impelled by rage and by madness,  
 intulisset bellum, quid tandem vererentur?  
 he would wage war, what, pray should they fear?  
 aut cur desperarent de sua virtute,  
 or why should they despair concerning (their) own valor,  
 aut de diligentia ipsius? Periculum  
 or concerning the diligence of himself [Cæsar]? Danger [trial]  
 ejus hostis factum memoriâ nostrorum  
 of this enemy (was) made in the memory of our  
 patrum, quum, Cimbris et Teutonis  
 fathers, when, the Cimbri and Teutones  
 pulsus à Caio Mario, exercitum  
 having been routed by Caius Marius, the army  
 videbatur<sup>108</sup> meritis non minorem laudem, quàm  
 was seeming to have deserved not less praise, than  
 imperator ipse: etiam factum nuper in  
 the general himself: also (a trial was) made recently in  
 Italiâ, servili<sup>109</sup> tumultu, quos tamen aliquis  
 Italy, in the slave uprising, whom however some  
 usus ac disciplina, quam acceperant  
 experience and discipline, which they had received  
 (pl.perf.subj.) à nobis, sublevarent. Ex<sup>110</sup> quo  
 from us, assisted. From which  
 posse judicari, quantum boni constantia  
 to be able [it can] (to) be judged, how much (of) good firmness

haberet (imp. subj.) in se; propterēa quòd  
 was having [had] in itself; because (that)  
 quos aliquandū timuissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 (those) whom for some time they had feared  
 sine causā inermes, superāssent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 without cause, unarmed, they had subdued,  
 hos postēa armatos ac victores. Denique,  
 these afterwards armed and conquered. Lastly,  
 hos esse Germanos cum quibus Helveti  
 these to be [are] the Germans with whom the Helveti  
 sæpenumēro congressi non solū in suis,  
 oftentimes having engaged not only in their own,  
 sed etiā in finibus illorum plerumque  
 but also in the borders of them [their borders] generally  
 superārint (perf. subj.); qui tāmen potuerint  
 have overcome; who notwithstanding have been able  
 (perf. subj.) non esse pāres nostro exercitū.  
 not to be equal to our army.  
 Si adversum prælium et fuga Gallorum  
 If the adverse battle and flight of the Gauls  
 commoveret quos, hos posse reperire,  
 might move [affect] any, these to be able [can] (to) find,  
 si quærerent (imp. subj.), Gallis defatigatis  
 if they should inquire, (that) the Gauls being wearied  
 diuturnitate belli, Ariovistum, quum  
 by the long continuance of the war, Ariovistus, when  
 continuisset (pl. perf. subj.) se multos menses  
 he had kept himself many months  
 castris (pl.) ac paludibus, nēque fecisset (pl. perf.  
 in camp and marshes, nor had made  
 subj.) potestatem sui, adortum  
 power of himself [given an opportunity], having attacked  
 subitō jam desperantes de pugna et  
 suddenly (those) already despairing of battle and  
 dispersos, vicisse magis ratione  
 scattered, to have [had] conquered more by reason [trickery]  
 ac consilio quā virtute: cui rationi  
 and by counsel [wiles] than by valor: for which trickery

lōcus                    fuisset            contra    barbāros    atque  
a place [chance]    might have been    against    barbarous    and  
imperitos    homīnes:    hāc    ne    ipsum    quīdem  
unskilled    men:    by this    not    (he) himself    even

sperare            nostros exercitus    posse            cāpi.  
to expect [expected]    our    armies    to be able [could]    (to) be taken.

Qui conferrent (imp. subj.) sūm timorem in  
(They) who    were assigning            their    fear    upon

simulationem<sup>111</sup> frumentariæ rei    que angustias  
the pretence            of the corn    affair [supply]    and    the difficulties

itinērum,                    facere            arroganter,            quūm  
of the marches,            (to) do (this)            officiously,            since

viderentur (imp. subj.) aut desperare de officio  
they were seeming            either    to despair    of    the duty

imperatoris,            aut            præscribere.            Hæc<sup>112</sup>  
of the commander,            or            to prescribe.            These (things)

esse            curæ    sibi;    Sequānos,    Leucos,  
to be [are]    (for) a care    to himself;    the Sequani,    Leuci,

Lingōnes    subministrare    frumentum;    que    jam  
Lingones    to [will] supply    corn;    and    now

frumenta (pl.) esse matura in agris. De itinēre  
corn            to be [is] ripe    in the fields.    Of    the route

ipsos            judicatos    brēvi    tempore.  
(they) themselves    about to [would] judge    in a short    time.

Quōd dicantur<sup>113</sup> (pres. subj.) non    fore  
That    they are [it is] said    (they would) not    (to be about to) be

audientes            dicto,    nēque    latu-    signa,  
hearing [obedient]    to the word,    nor    (about to) bear    the standards,

se            commoveri    nīhil            eā    re; enim  
(he) himself    to be [was] moved    nothing [not at all]    by this thing;    for

scire,            quibuscumque    exercitus    fuērit (perf.  
to know [he knew],    to whomsoever    an army    has been

subj.) non            audiens            dicto,            aut,  
not            hearing [obedient]    to the word,            either,

re            gestā            mālē,            fortunam    defu-  
an affair    having been carried on    ill,            fortune    to have

isse;    aut    aliquo    facinore            comperto,  
[had] failed;    or    some    crime            being found out.

avaritiām convictam-esse: sūam<sup>114</sup> innocentiam  
 avarice to have [had] been proved: his (own) innocence [integrity]  
 perpetuā vitā, felicitatem bello Helvetiorum  
 in (his) whole life, (his) success in the war of the Helvetii

perspectam-esse. Itaque, se repræ-  
 to have been [were] clearly seen. Therefore, (he) himself about to  
 sentaturum quod fuisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 [would] do presently (that) which he had been

collaturus in longiorem diem; et  
 (otherwise) about to defer to a more distant day; and  
 proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā  
 on the nearest [next] night from [at] the fourth watch

moturum castra (pl.), ut quam primū  
 about to [he would] move the camp, in order that as soon as

posset intelligere, utrū pūdor  
 he might be able to [he may] understand, whether shame

atque officiū, an timor valeret plūs  
 and duty, or fear may prevail the more

apud eos. Quod si nemo præterea sequatur  
 with them. But if no one besides follows,

(pres. subj.), tamen se iturum cum  
 nevertheless (he) himself about [would] go with

decimā legione solā, de quā non dubi-  
 the tenth legion alone, of which he was not doubt-

taret (imp. subj.) que etiam futuram Prætoriam  
 ing and this about to [would] be a Prætorian

cohortem sibi." Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè  
 cohort for himself." Cæsar both had favored especially

huic legioni (dat.) et confidebat, maxime propter  
 this legion and was trusting, (it) very much on account of

virtutem.

(its) valor.

41. Hæc oratione habita, mentes  
 This speech having been delivered, the minds

omnium conversæ-sunt in mirum modum,  
 of all were changed into [in] a wonderful manner,

que summa alacritas et cupiditas belli  
 and the highest eagerness and desire of war



gerendi<sup>115</sup> innata-est: que decima  
 to be carried on [of waging war] was born in [inspired]: and the tenth  
 legio princeps egit gratias ei per tribunos  
 legion first rendered thanks to him through the tribunes  
 militum, quod fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) optimum  
 of soldiers, that he had made the best  
 iudicium de se, que<sup>116</sup> confirmavit se esse  
 judgment concerning itself, and declared itself to be  
 partissimam ad gerendum bellum. Inde  
 most prepared for carrying on war. Then  
 reliquae legiones egerunt per tribunos  
 the remaining legions acted through the tribunes  
 militum et centuriones primorum ordinum, uti  
 of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks, that  
 satisfacerent Caesari; "se neque unquam  
 they might satisfy (to) Caesar; "(they) themselves neither ever  
 dubitasse, neque timuisse. neque existimavisse  
 to be [had] doubted, nor to have [had] feared, nor (to) have thought  
 iudicium de summâ (sing.) belli esse  
 the judgment of the highest (concerns) of war to be [was]  
 suum sed imperatoris." Satisfactione<sup>117</sup>  
 their own but (the part) of the commander." The satisfaction [apology]  
 eorum acceptâ, et itinere exquisito  
 of them [their apology] being received, and the way being reconnoitred  
 per Divitiacum, quod habebat maximam  
 by Divitiacus, because he was having the greatest  
 fidem ei ex aliis ut duceret  
 faith to [in] him from [of] the others [Gauls] that he might lead  
 exercitum apertis locis, circuitu amplius  
 the army in the open places, by a circuit of more  
 quadraginta millium, profectus-est de quartâ  
 (than) forty miles, he set out from [at] the fourth  
 vigiliâ, uti dixerat. Septimo die, quum  
 watch, as he had said. On the seventh day, when  
 non intermittet (imp. subj.) iter, factus-est  
 he was not ceasing the march, he was made  
 certior<sup>118</sup> ab exploratoribus, copias  
 more certain [was informed] by scouts, (that) the forces

Ariovisti abesse à nostris quatuor et  
 of Ariovistus to be [were] distant from our (forces) four and  
 viginti millibus (abl.) passuum.  
 twenty thousand (of) paces.

42. Adventu Cæsaris cognito, Ariovistus  
 The arrival of Cæsar being known Ariovistus

mittit legatos ad eum; "id licere  
 sends ambassadors to him; "this to be [is] allowed  
 fieri per se, quod antea postulasset  
 to be done by himself, which before he had demanded  
 (pl. perf. subj.) de colloquio, quoniam  
 concerning a conference, since

accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) propius; que<sup>119</sup> existimaret  
 he had approached nearer; and he was thinking

(imp. subj.) se posse facere id sine  
 (he) himself to be able [could] (to) do this without

periculo." Cæsar non respuit conditionem, que<sup>120</sup>  
 danger." Cæsar did not reject the condition, and

arbitrabatur eum jam reverti ad sanitatem,  
 was thinking him [he] now to [would] return to soundness [reason].

quum polliceretur (imp. subj.) ultro id, quod  
 since he was offering spontaneously that, which

antea denegasset (pl. perf. subj.) petenti;  
 before he had denied to (him) asking;

que veniebat in magnam spem, pro suis  
 and he was coming [entering] into great hope, for his

tantis beneficiis que Romani populi  
 (so) great benefits and (those) of the Roman people

in eum, suis postulatis cognitis, fore<sup>121</sup>  
 towards him (that), his demands having been known, to be about to be

uti desisteret pertinaciam. Quintus  
 [it would be] that he would cease from (his) obstinacy. The fifth

dies ex eo die dictus est colloquio.  
 day from that day was said [appointed] for the conference.

Intèrim, quum legati mitterentur (imp. subj.)  
 Meanwhile, when ambassadors were sent

sæpe citro que ultro inter eos. Ariovistus  
 often hither and thither between them, Ariovistus

postulavit; Cæsar ne adduceret quem peditem  
 requested; Cæsar should not lead up any foot soldiers  
 ad colloquium, "se vereri  
 to the conference, "himself to dread [he feared]  
 ne circumveniretur ab eo per  
 lest he should be circumvented by him through  
 insidias (pl.): uterque veniret cum  
 ambush: each should come with  
 equitatu, aliā<sup>122</sup> ratione se esse  
 cavalry, in other method [manner] (he) himself to be  
 non venturum." Cæsar, quod volebat  
 not about to [would not] come." Cæsar, because he was willing  
 neque colloquium tolli, causā  
 (that) neither the conference to [should] be taken away [be lost], cause  
 interposita; neque audebat committere suam  
 being interposed; nor was daring to commit his  
 salutem equitatu Gallorum, statuit esse  
 safety to the cavalry of the Gauls, determined to be  
 commodissimum, omnibus Gallis equitibus  
 [it was] most convenient [fitting], all the Gallic horsemen  
 detractis equis, imponere eo  
 having been withdrawn from the horses, to place upon there [them]  
 legionarios milites decimæ legionis, cui (dat.)  
 the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion, in which  
 confidebat quàm-maximè; ut haberet  
 he was confiding as much as possible; that he might have  
 præsidium quàm-amicissimum, si quid opus  
 a guard as friendly as possible, if any need  
 esset facto (abl.). Quum quod fieret  
 should be of deed [action]. When which [this] was done,  
 (imp. subj.), quidam ex militibus decimæ  
 a certain one of the soldiers of the tenth  
 legionis dixit non irridiculè, "Cæsarem facere  
 legion said not unwittily, "Cæsar to do [does]  
 plus quàm pollicitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.);  
 more than he had promised;  
 pollicitum habiturum decimam legionem  
 having promised about to [he would] have the tenth legion

in lōco prætoriae cohortis; nunc rescribere<sup>123</sup>  
 in place of a pretorian cohort; now to enroll (it)  
 ad æquum."  
 [he enrolls it] to the horse."

43. Erat magna planities et in eâ tumulus  
 (There) was a great plain and on it a hillock  
 terrēnus satis grandis. Hic lōcus abērat  
 of earth sufficiently large. This place was distant  
 spatio fere æquo ab castris Ariovisti et  
 by a space nearly equal from the camps of Ariovistus and  
 Cæsar. Eō, ut dictum-erat, venerunt ad  
 Cæsar. Thither, as had been said [appointed], they came to  
 colloquium. Cæsar constituit legionem, quam  
 the conference. Cæsar arranged the legion, which  
 devexerat equis, ducentis passibus (abl.)  
 he had brought down with horses, two hundred paces  
 ab eo tumulo. Item equites  
 from this hillock. Likewise the horsemen  
 Ariovisti constiterunt pari intervallo.  
 of Ariovistus took stand with [at] an equal interval.  
 Ariovistus postulavit, ut colloquerentur ex  
 Ariovistus demanded, that they should converse from [on]  
 equis et ut adducerent denos præter  
 horses and that they should lead up ten each besides  
 se ad colloquium. Ubi<sup>124</sup> ventum-est eō,  
 themselves to the conference. When it was come [they came] there,  
 Cæsar, initio orationis, commemoravit  
 Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recounted  
 sua que beneficia Senatūs in eum,  
 his own and the benefits of the Senate towards him,  
 quod appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) rex à  
 that he had been called (pl. perf. subj.) king by  
 Senatu, quod amicus, quod  
 the Senate, that (he had been called) a friend, that  
 amplissima munera missa; quam rem,  
 most ample gifts (had been) sent; which thing,  
 docebat, et contigisse paucis,  
 he was showing, both to have [had] happened to few,

et consuevisse tribūi à  
 and to have [had] been accustomed to be granted by  
 Romanis pro maximis officiis hominum,  
 the Romans for the greatest services of men,  
 illum, quum haberet (imp. subj.) neque aditum,  
 him [that he], although he was having neither access,  
 neque justam causam postulandi, beneficio  
 nor just cause of demanding, by (his) bounty  
 ac suā liberalitate ac Senatū,  
 and by his liberality and (that) of the Senate,  
 consecutum ēa prēmia. Docebat  
 having [he had] obtained these rewards [honors]. He was showing  
 etiam, quā vetēres, que quā justae  
 also, how ancient, and how just  
 causae necessitudinis intercedērent<sup>125</sup> (imp. subj.)  
 causes of alliance were existing  
 ipsis cum Aeduis; quae consulta Senatū,  
 to themselves with the Aedui; what decrees of the Senate,  
 quoties, que quā honorifica facta-essent (pl.  
 how often, and how honorable had been made  
 perf. subj.) in eos; ut omni tempore,  
 towards them [in their behalf]; that in all time,  
 Aedui tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principatum  
 the Aedui had held the supremacy  
 totius Galliae, etiam priusquam appetissent  
 of the whole of Gaul, even before that they had sought  
 (pl. perf. subj.) nostram amicitiam. "Hanc esse  
 our friendship. "This to be [was]  
 consuetudinem Romani populi, ut vellet  
 the custom of the Roman people, that it wished  
 socios atque amicos non modo deperdere  
 (its) allies and friends not only to lose  
 nihil sui, sed esse auctiores gratia,  
 nothing of their own, but to be more increased in favor,  
 dignitate, honore: verò quis posset  
 in dignity, in honor: but who would be able  
 pati id eripi  
 [could] (to) suffer (that) this to be [should be] snatched

his (dat.), quod attulissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
from them, which they had brought to

amicitiā Romani populi?" Deinde  
the friendship of the Roman people?" Afterwards

postulavit eādem, quæ dedērat in mandatis  
he demanded the same, which he had given in the charges

legatis ne inferret bellum aut  
to the ambassadors that he should not bring on war either

Ædūis, aut sociis eorum; redderet  
to the Ædui, or to the allies of them [their allies]; (that) he should

restore obsides; si posset (imp. subj.)  
the hostages; if he was able

remittere dōmum nullam partem Germanorum;  
to send back home no part of the Germans;

at ne pateretur quos amplius transire  
still that he should not suffer any more to cross

Rhenum.  
the Rhine.

44. Ariovistus respondit pauca ad postulata  
Ariovistus answered a few (things) to the demands

Cæsaris: prædicavit multa de suis  
of Cæsar: he declaimed many (things) of his own

virtutibus; sese transisse Rhenum  
virtues: (that he) himself to have [had] crossed the Rhine

non suā sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum  
not on his own accord, but (having been) asked and sent for

à Gallis: reliquisse dōmum que propinquos  
by the Gauls: to have [he had] left home and relations

non sine magnâ spe que magnis præmiis:  
not without great hope and great rewards:

habere sedes in Galliâ concessas ab  
to have [he has] settlements in Gaul granted by

ipsis, obsides ipsorum dātos voluntate,  
themselves, hostages of them given by (their) free will,

capere stipendium jure belli, quod  
to take [he takes] tribute by the right of war, which

victores consueverint (perf. subj.) imponere  
conquerors have been accustomed to impose

victis; se non<sup>126</sup> intulisse bellum  
to [on] the conquered; (he) himself not to have [has not] brought on war

Gallis, sed Gallos sibi; omnes civitates  
to the Gauls, but the Gauls to himself; all the states

Galliæ venisse ad oppugnandum se, ac  
of Gaul to have [had] come for opposing [to oppose] himself, and

habuisse castra contra se; omnes eas copias  
to have had [had] camps against himself; all these forces

pulsas (esse) ac superatas esse abs se uno  
to have [had] been routed and overcome by himself in one

prælio. Si vellent (pres. subj.) experiri iterum,  
battle. If they wish to try again,

se paratum iterum decertare: sin malint  
he himself (is) prepared again to contend: but if they prefer

(pres. subj.) uti pacē (abl.), esse iniquum  
to use peace, to be [it is] unjust

recusare de stipendio, quod pependissent (perf.  
to object concerning the tribute, which they paid

subj.) sua voluntate ad id tempus:  
by their own will [volition] to this time:

oportere amicitiam Romani populi  
to be [it is] proper (that) the friendship of the Roman people

esse ornamento et praesidio sibi, non  
(to) be (for) an ornament and a guard to himself, not

detrimento; que se petisse id eam  
(for) a detriment; and (he) himself to have [had] sought it in this

spe. Si stipendium remittatur (pres. subj.) per  
hope. If the tribute be remitted by

Romanum populum, et dediti subtrahantur  
the Roman people, and the surrendered be withdrawn,

(pres. subj.), sese recusaturum non minus libenter  
(he) himself about to [would] refuse not less willingly

amicitiam Romani populi, quam appetierit  
the friendship of the Roman people, than he sought (it).

(perf. subj.). Quod traducat (pres. subj.) multitudinem  
That he leads [brings] over a multitude

Germanorum in Galliam, se<sup>127</sup> facere id  
of the Germans into Gaul, he himself to do [did] this

causâ muniendi, sibi non impugnandæ  
 for the sake of protecting, himself not of fighting against  
 Galliæ; esse testimonium ejus  
 Gaul; to be [it was] a testimony [proof] of this  
 rei quodd venërit (perf. subj.) non<sup>128</sup> nisi  
 thing that he came not except (when)  
 rogatus, et quodd non intulërit (perf. supj.)  
 asked, and that he has not waged  
 bellum, sed defendërit (perf. subj.): se  
 war, but has defended (himself): (he)himself  
 venisse in Galliâ priûs quàm Romanum  
 to have [had] come into Gaul earlier than the Roman  
 populum. Nunquam<sup>129</sup> ante hoc tempus exercitum  
 people. Never before this time an army  
 Romani populi egressum finibus provinciæ  
 of the Roman people [has] gone out of the borders of the province  
 Galliæ: quid vellet (imp. subj.) sibi? cur  
 of Gaul: what did he wish for himself? why  
 veniret (imp. subj.) in suas possessiones? hanc  
 did he come into his possessions? this  
 Galliâ esse suam provinciâ, sicûti illam  
 Gaul to be [is] his province, even as that (is)  
 nostram: ut oporteret (imp. subj.) non  
 ours: as it was proper [it ought] not  
 concedi sibi, si facëret impëtum in  
 to be permitted to himself, if he should make an attack upon  
 nostros fines; sic item, nos esse iniquos,  
 our borders; so also, us to be [we are] unjust,  
 quodd interpellaremus (imp. subj.) se in suo  
 because we interfered with himself in his  
 jure: quodd dicëret (imp. subj.) Ædûos appellatos  
 right: that he was saying (that) the Ædui were called  
 amicos ex consulto Senatûs, se esse  
 friends from [by] a decree of the Senate, (he) himself to be [was]  
 non tam barbarum, nèque tam imperitum  
 not so barbarous, nor so inexperienced  
 rerum, ut non, sciret (imp. subj.) Ædûos  
 of [in] affairs, that he did not, know the Ædui



nēque tulisse auxilium Romanis  
 neither (to) have brought aid to the Romans  
 proximo bello Allobroges, nēque  
 in the nearest [latest] war of the Allobroges, nor (that they)  
 ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Ædūi  
 themselves in these contests, which the Ædūi  
 habuissent (pl. perf. subj.) cum se et cum  
 had had with himself and with  
 Sequānis, usos-esse auxilio (abl.) Romani  
 the Sequani, to have [had] used the aid of the Roman  
 populi: se debere<sup>130</sup> suspicari, amicitia  
 people: (he) himself to owe [ought] to suspect, friendship  
 simulatā, Cæsarem, quod habeat (pres. subj.)  
 being [was] pretended, Cæsar, because he has  
 exercitum in Galliā, habere causā opprimendi  
 an army in Gaul, to have[has it] for the sake of crushing  
 sui: qui nisi decedat (pres. subj. aut  
 himself: who unless he depart or  
 deducat (pres. subj.) exercitum ex his regionibus,  
 lead away (his) army from these regions,  
 sese habiturum illum non pro amico, sed  
 he himself about to [would] hold him not for a friend, but  
 pro hoste: quod<sup>131</sup> si interfecerit (perf. subj.) eum,  
 for an enemy: that if he killed him,  
 sese esse facturum gratum multis  
 he himself to be about to [would] do a grateful (thing) to many  
 nobilibus que principibus Romani populi:  
 nobles and chiefs of the Roman people:  
 se habere<sup>132</sup> id compertum ab ipsis  
 he himself to have [has] this thing found out from themselves  
 per eorum nuntios; gratiam atque amicitiam  
 by their messengers; the favor and friendship  
 omnium quorum posset (imp. subj.) redimere  
 of all of whom he was able to purchase  
 ejus morte: quod si discessisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 by his death: that if he should depart  
 ac tradidisset (pl. perf. subj.) liberam possessionem  
 and should deliver free possession

Galliæ sibi, se remuneraturum  
 of Gaul to himself, (he) himself about to [would] remunerate  
 illum magno præmio, et confecturum,  
 him with great reward, and about to [would] dispatch,  
 quæcunque bella vellet (imp. subj.) geri  
 whatever wars he was wishing to be carried on  
 sine ullo labore et periculo ejus.  
 without any labor and danger of him [on his part].

45. Multa dicta-sunt à Cæsare in eam  
 Many (things) were said by Cæsar upon this  
 sententiâ, quare posset (imp. subj.) non  
 opinion, wherefore he was able [could] not

desistere negotio. Neque suam neque  
 (to) desist from the business[undertaking]. Neither his nor

consuetudinem Romani populi pati, uti  
 the custom of the Roman people to suffer [permits], that

desereret socios<sup>133</sup> meritos optime;  
 he should desert allies having[who have] deserved the best;

neque se judicare Galliâ esse  
 nor (does) (he)himself (to) judge(that) Gaul to be[is]

potius Ariovisti, quàm Romani populi.  
 rather (the possession) of Ariovistus, than of the Roman people.

Arvernos et Rutenos superatos-esse bello  
 The Arverni and Ruteni to have [had] been overcome in war

à Quinto Fabio Maximo; quibus (dat.) Romanus  
 by Quintus Fabius Maximus; whom the Roman

populus ignovisset (pl. perf. subj.), neque  
 people had pardoned, nor

redegisset (pl. perf. subj.) in provinciam neque  
 had reduced (them) (in)to a province nor

imposuisset (pl. perf. subj.) stipendium: quod<sup>134</sup> si  
 had imposed tribute: that if

oporteret (imp. subj.) quodque antiquissimum tempus  
 it was proper (that) every most ancient time

spectari, imperium Romani populi in Galliâ  
 (to) be considered, the empire of the Roman people in Gaul

esse justissimum; si oporteret (imp. subj.)  
 to be [was] most just; if it is proper (that)

judiciūm Senatūs observari, Galliam debere  
 the judgment of the Senate (to) be kept, Gaul to owe [ought]  
 esse libēram, quam victam bello  
 to be free, which (though) conquered in war  
 voluisset (pl. perf. subj.) uti sūis  
 it [the senate] had willed to [should] use its own  
 legibus" (abl.).  
 laws."

46. Dum hæc geruntur in colloquio,  
 While these (things) are transpiring in the conference,  
 nuntiātum-est Cæsāri, equites Ariovisti  
 it was reported to Cæsar, (that) the horsemen of Ariovistus  
 accedēre<sup>135</sup> propius tumulum, et adequitare ad  
 (to) approach nearer the hillock, and (to) ride up to  
 nostros, conicere lapides que tela in  
 our (men), (to) throw stones and weapons against  
 nostros. Cæsar fecit finem loquendi que recepit  
 our (men). Cæsar made an end of speaking and betook  
 se ad sūos, que imperavit sūis (dat.)  
 himself to his own (men), and ordered his own (men)  
 ne rejicerent quod telum omnino  
 that they should not throw back any weapon at all  
 in hostes: nam etsi videbat  
 against the enemy: for although he was seeing (that)  
 prælium fore cum equitatu sine  
 a battle to be about to [would] be with the cavalry without  
 ullo periculo delectæ legionis; tamen putabat<sup>136</sup>  
 any danger of (his) chosen legion; yet he was thinking (it)  
 non, committendum ut, hostibus pulsīs,  
 not, [must not] be permitted that, the enemy having been routed  
 posset dici, eos circumventos à  
 it might be able [it could] (to) be said, them [they were] circumvented by  
 se per fidem in colloquio. Posteaquam  
 himself through (broken) faith in the conference. After that  
 elatum-est in vulgus militum, qua<sup>137</sup>  
 it was published among the mass of soldiers, what  
 arrogantia (abl.) Ariovistus usus in colloquio  
 arrogance Ariovistus having used in the conference

interdixisset (pl. perf. subj.) Romanis (dat.) omni  
he had forbidden the Romans from all

Galliā; que equites ejus fecissent  
Gaul; and that the horsemen of him [his horsemen] had made

(pl. perf. subj.) impetum in nostros;  
an attack upon our men;

que ea res diremisset (pl. perf. subj.) colloquum;  
and this thing had broken up the conference;

multo major alacritas que majus studium  
much greater activity and a greater desire

pugnandi injectum-est exercitui.  
of fighting was incited to [in] the army.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus mittit legatos  
Two days afterwards Ariovistus sends ambassadors

ad Cæsarem, "se" velle agere cum  
to Cæsar, (to say), "he himself to wish [wishes] to treat with

eo de his rebus, quæ coeptæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
him about these things, which had been begun

agere inter eos, neque perfectæ-essent  
to be treated between them, nor had been completed;

(pl. perf. subj.): uti aut constitueret iterum  
that either he would determine [fix] again

diem colloqui, aut si vellet (imp. subj.)  
a day for a conference, or if he was wishing

minus id, mitteret aliquem ex suis  
less (for) this (that), he would send some one from his

legatis ad se. Causa<sup>188</sup> colloquendi visa-est  
lieutenants to himself. A cause of conferring seemed

non Cæsari; et eo magis, quod pridie,  
not to Cæsar; and for this the more, that the day before,

eius diei, Germani potuerant non retineri  
this day, the Germans had been able [could] not (to) be restrained,

quin conicerent tela in nostros,  
but that they should throw weapons against our (men).

Existimabat sese missurum  
He was thinking (that he) himself about to [would] send

legatum ex suis cum magno periculo ad  
an ambassador from his own (men) with great danger to

ĕum, et objecturum fēris hominibus.  
 him, and about to [would] expose (him) to savage men.  
 Visum-est commodissimum mittere ad ĕum Caium  
 It seemed most convenient to send to him Caius  
 Valerium Procillum, filium Caii Valerii  
 Valerius Procillus, a son of Caius Valerius  
 Caburi, adolescentem summā virtute et  
 Caburus, a young man with [of] the highest virtue and  
 humanitate, (pāter ejus donatus-erat  
 politeness, (the father of whom had been presented  
 civitate à Caio Valerio Flacco et  
 with citizenship by Caius Valerius Flaccus both  
 propter fidem et propter scientiam  
 on account of (his) fidelity and on account of (his) knowledge  
 Gallicae linguae, quā (abl.) Ariovistus utebatur  
 of the Gallic tongue, which Ariovistus was using  
 multā (adj.) jam longinquā consuetudine, et  
 much [fluently] now by long custom, and  
 quod causa<sup>139</sup> peccandi esset non  
 because a cause of transgressing [offense] was not  
 Germanis in ĕo); et Marcum Mettium, qui  
 to the Germans in him); and Marcus Mettius, who  
 utebatur hospitio (abl.) Ariovisti. Mandavit  
 was enjoying the hospitality of Ariovistus. He charged  
 his (dat.), ut quæ Ariovistus dicēret,  
 these, that what (things) Ariovistus might say,  
 cognoscērent et referrent ad se. Quos  
 they should learn and should bring back to himself. Whom  
 quum<sup>140</sup> Ariovistus conspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) in  
 when Ariovistus had beheld in  
 castris (pl.) apud se, suo exercitu  
 (his) camp with himself, his army (being)  
 præsente, conclamavit: "Quid venirent (imp. subj.)  
 present, he cried out: "Why did they come  
 ad se? an causā speculandi?" Prohibuit  
 to himself? (was it) for the sake of spying?" He stopped  
 conantes dicere, et conjecit in catenas.  
 (them) endeavoring to speak, and cast (them) into chains.

48. Eodem die promovit castra (pl.),  
 On the same day he moved forward (his) camp,  
 et consedit sub monte sex millibus (abl.)  
 and pitched (it) under a mountain six thousand  
 passuum à castris (pl.) Cæsaris. Postridie  
 (of) paces from the camp of Cæsar. The day after  
 ejus diei traduxit suas copias præter castra (pl.)  
 this day he led over his forces beyond the camp  
 Cæsaris et fecit castra (pl.) duobus  
 of Cæsar and made a camp (by) two  
 millibus (abl.) passuum ultra eum, eo  
 thousand (of) paces beyond him, with this  
 consilio, uti intercluderet Cæsarem frumento  
 design, that he might shut off Cæsar from corn  
 que commeatu, qui supportaretur<sup>141</sup> ex  
 and provisions, which was [were] brought from  
 Sequanis et Æduis. Ex eo die Cæsar  
 the Sequani and the Ædui. From this day Cæsar  
 produxit suas copias quinque continuos  
 led forth his forces five continual [successive]  
 dies pro castris (pl.), et habuit aciem  
 days before the camp, and had (his) battle line  
 instructam, ut si Ariovistus vellet contendere  
 drawn up, that if Ariovistus might wish to contend  
 praelio, potestas<sup>142</sup> non deesset ei.  
 in battle, the power [opportunity] might not be wanting to him.  
 Ariovistus omnibus his diebus continuit exercitum  
 Ariovistus on all these days kept (his) army  
 castris (pl.); contendit quotidie equestri praelio.<sup>143</sup>  
 in camp; he contended daily in a cavalry battle  
 Hoc erat genus pugnæ, quo Germani  
 This was the kind of fight, in which the Germans  
 exercuerant se. Erant sex millia  
 had exercised themselves. (There) were six thousand  
 equitum, totidem pedites numero velocissimi  
 (of) horsemen, as many foot soldiers in number most swift  
 ac fortissimi, singulos quos singuli  
 and most brave each (of), whom (the horsemen) each

delegērant	ex	omni	copiā,	causā
had chosen	from	all	the force,	for the sake of
sūæ	salutis (gen.).	Versabantur	cum	
their own	safety.	They were engaged	with	
his	in	proeliis;	equites	recipiebant
these	in	the battles;	the horsemen	were betaking
se	ad	hos:	hi,	si
themselves	to	these:	these,	if
erat	durius,	concurrēbant:	si	qui, graviore
was	more difficult,	were rushing up:	if	any, a heavier
	volnēre	accepto,	decidērant	
[rather severe]	wound	having been received,	had fallen down	
ēquo,	circumsistebant:	si	erat <sup>144</sup>	
from (his) horse,	they were rallying around:	if	it was	
prodeundum	longiūs	aut	recipiendum	
to be advanced	farther	or	to be retreated	
celerius	quò,	tanta	erat	celeritas
more quickly	any where,	so great	was	the speed
horum	exercitatione,	ut,	sublevati	jūbis
of these	by exercise,	that,	supported	by the manes
equorum,	adæquarent	cursum.		
of the horses,	they would equal	(their) course [speed].		
49. Ubi	Cæsar	intellexit	ēum	tenere
When	Cæsar	learned (that)	him [he]	to hold
	se	castris (pl.),	ne prohiberetur	
[was holding] himself	in camp,	(that) he might not be prohibited		
diutius	commeatu,	delegit	lōcum	idonēum
longer	from provision,	he chose	a place	suitable
castris (pl.),	circiter	sex-centos	passus	ab
for camp,	about	six hundred	paces	from
his	ultra	ēum	lōcum,	in
them	beyond	this	place,	in
			in	quo
				lōco
				place
Germani	consedērant,	que	triplici	aciē
the Germans	had encamped,	and	a triple	battle line
	instructā,	venit	ad ēum lōcum.	Jussit
having been drawn up,	he came	to this	place.	He ordered
primam	et	secundam	aciem	esse in armis,
the first	and	second	line	to be in arms,

tertiam munire castra (pl.). Hic locus, ūti  
 the third to fortify the camp. This place, as  
 dictum-est, abērat ab hoste circiter  
 has been said, was distant from the enemy about  
 sex-centos passus. Eō Ariovistus misit  
 six-hundred paces. Thither Ariovistus sent  
 numerum hominum circiter sexdecim millia  
 a number of men about sixteen thousand  
 expedita, cum omni equitatu; quæ copiæ  
 light armed, with all the cavalry; which forces  
 perterrerent nostros, et prohiberent munitione.  
 should alarm our (men), and should check (them) from fortifying.  
 Nihilō seciūs, Cæsar, ut constituērat antē,  
 Nevertheless, Cæsar, as he had determined before,  
 iussit duas acies propulsare hostem,  
 ordered the two lines to repel the enemy,  
 tertiam perficere opus. Castris (pl.) munitis,  
 the third to complete the work. The camp having been fortified,  
 reliquit ibi duas legiones et partem auxil-  
 he left there two legions and part of the aux-  
 iorum; reduxit quattuor reliquas in  
 iiliaries; he led back the four remaining (legions) into  
 majora castra (pl.).  
 the greater camp.

50. Proximo die, Cæsar suo instituo  
 On the next day, Cæsar by his practice  
 eduxit suas copias ex utrisque castris; quæ  
 led forth his forces from both camps; and  
 progressus paullulum à majoribus, instruxit  
 having advanced very little from the greater, drew up  
 aciem quæ fecit hostibus potestatem  
 (his) line and made [gave] (to) the enemy an opportunity  
 pugnandi. Ubi intellexit eos ne  
 of fighting. When he understood (that) them [they] not  
 tum quidem prodire, circiter meridiem  
 then indeed (even) to [would] come forth, about midday  
 reduxit exercitum in castra (pl.). Tum demum  
 he led back the army into camp. Then at last



Ariovistus misit partem suarum copiarum, quæ  
 Ariovistus sent part of his troops, which  
 oppugnaret<sup>145</sup> minora castra (pl.). Pugnatum-est  
 might assault the lesser camp. It was fought  
 acriter utrimque usque ad vespërum. Occasu  
 sharply on both sides quite to [till] evening. With the setting  
 solis Ariovistus reduxit suas copias in  
 of the sun Ariovistus led back his troops into  
 castra (pl.), multis vulneribus et illatis  
 camp, many wounds both having been inflicted  
 et acceptis. Quum Cæsar quæreret (imp. subj.)  
 and received. When Cæsar was inquiring  
 ex captivis, quamobrem Ariovistus decertaret  
 from the captives, wherefore Ariovistus was contending  
 (imp. subj.) non prœlio, reperiebat hanc  
 not in battle, he was ascertaining this  
 causam, quod ea consuetudo esset (imp.  
 was the cause, because this custom was common  
 subj.) apud Germanos, ut matresfamilias  
 with the Germans, that the mothers of family [matrons]  
 eorum declararent sortibus et vaticinationibus,  
 of them should declare by lots and by divination,  
 utrùm esset ex usu prœlium committi  
 whether it might be from [of] use that battle to [should] be joined  
 necne: eas dicere<sup>147</sup> ita. "Non esse fas  
 or not: them [they] (to) say thus. "Not to be [it is not] right  
 Germanos superare, si contendissent prœlio  
 the Germans to [should] conquer, if they should contend in battle  
 ante novam lunam."  
 before the new moon."

51. Postridie ejus diei, præsidi relicto  
 The day after (of) this day, a guard having been left

utrisque castris, quod visum-est satis, constituit  
 for both camps, which seemed sufficient, he arranged  
 omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro  
 all the auxiliaries in sight of the enemy before  
 minoribus castris (pl.), quod valebat<sup>148</sup>  
 the lesser camp, because he did avail [was strong]

mīnūs multitudīne legionariūrum milītūm pro  
 less in the multitude of legionary soldiers for  
 numēro hostiūm; ut uteretur alariis (abl.)  
 the number of the enemy; that he might use the auxiliaries  
 ad speciem. Ipse, triplici acie instructa,  
 for a show. (He) himself, a triple battle line having been arrayed,  
 accessit usque ad castra (pl.) hostiūm. Tum  
 approached quite to the camp of the enemy. Then  
 demum Germani necessariō eduxerunt suas  
 at last the Germans necessarily led out their  
 copias è castris (pl.); que constituerunt  
 forces from the camp; and arranged (them)  
 generatim; que paribus intervallis, Harudes,  
 by nations; and at equal intervals, the Harudes,  
 Marcomannos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes,  
 Marcomanni, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes,  
 Sedusios, Suevos, que circumdederunt omnem  
 Sedusii, Suevi; and surrounded all  
 suam aciem rhedis et carris. Eò  
 their line with carriages and wagons. There  
 imposuerunt mulieres, quæ, manibus passis,  
 they consigned the women, who, (their) hands (having been) spread,  
 flentes implorabant milites proficiscentes  
 weeping were imploring the soldiers setting out  
 ad proelium, ne tradèrent se in  
 to battle, that they should not deliver themselves into  
 servitūtem Romanis.  
 slavery to the Romans.  
 52. Cæsar præfecit<sup>149</sup> legatos singulos  
 Cæsar appointed lieutenants one each  
 et quæstorem singulis legionibus (pl.), uti quisque  
 and a quæstor to each legion, that every one  
 haberet eos testes suæ virtutis. Ipse  
 might have them (as) witnesses of his valor. (He) himself  
 à dextro cornu, quod animadverterat  
 from [on] the right horn [wing], because he had observed  
 eam partem hostiūm esse minimè firmam,  
 (that) this part of the enemy to be [was] least firm,

commisit prœlium. Nostri, signo dāto,  
 joined battle. Our (men), the signal (having been) given,  
 fecerunt impetum ita acriter in hostes: que  
 made an attack so sharply upon the enemy: and  
 hostes procurrerunt ita repentē que celeriter, ut  
 the enemy charged so suddenly and quickly, that  
 spatium conjiciendi pila in hostes non  
 space [time] of [for] throwing javelins against the enemy was not  
 daretur. Pilis rejectis,<sup>150</sup> pugnatum-est  
 given. The javelins (having been) thrown aside, it was fought  
 cominus gladiis. At Germani celeriter  
 hand to hand with swords. But the Germans quickly  
 ex sua consuetudine, phalange facta,  
 from [after] their custom, a phalanx having been formed,  
 exceperunt impetus gladiatorum. Complures nostri  
 received the attacks of the swords. Very many (of) our  
 milites (nom.) reperti-sunt, qui insilirent in phalanges  
 soldiers were found, who would leap up upon the phalanxes  
 et revellērent scuta manibus, et  
 and would tear away the shields with (their) hands, and  
 vulnerarent desuper. Quum acies hostium  
 would wound from above. When the line of the enemy  
 pulsa-esset (pl. perf. subj.) à sinistro cornu,  
 had been routed from [on] the left horn [wing],  
 atque conversa in fugam, premebant  
 and turned into flight, they were pressing  
 nostram aciem vehementer à dextro  
 our line urgently from (on) the right  
 cornu multitudine suorum. Quum  
 horn [wing] by the multitude of their (men). When  
 Publius Crassus adolescens, qui præerat  
 Publius Crassus a young man, who commanded  
 equitatūi (dat.) animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id  
 the cavalry, had perceived this  
 quod erat<sup>151</sup> expeditior quàm hi, qui  
 because he was more disengaged than these, who  
 versabantur inter aciem, misit tertiam  
 were employed among [within] the line, he sent the third

aciem nostris laborantibus subsidio.  
line to our (men) toiling [struggling] for [as] a reinforcement.

53. Ita proelium restitutum-est atque omnes  
Thus the battle was restored and all

hostes verterunt terga, neque destiterunt  
the enemy turned (their) backs, nor ceased

fugere, prius quam pervenerunt ad flumen  
to flee, before that they arrived at the river

Rhenum, circiter quinque millia passuum ex eo  
Rhine, about five thousand (of) paces from this

loco. Ibi perpauci, aut confisi viribus  
place. There very few, either having trusted their strength,

(dat. pl.), contenderunt transnatare; aut, linteribus  
strove to swim over; or, boats

inventis, reppererunt salutem sibi.  
having been discovered, found safety for themselves.

In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, nactus  
In [among] these was Ariovistus, who, having found

naviculam deligatam ad ripam, profugit ea:  
a small skiff fastened at the bank, escaped in it:

nostri equites consecuti interfecerunt omnes  
our horsemen having overtaken slew all

reliquos. Uxores Ariovisti fuerunt duæ,  
the remaining. The wives of Ariovistus were two,

una Sueva<sup>152</sup> natione, quam  
one a Suevian (woman) by nation [nationality], whom

adduxerat secum domo; altera  
he had brought up with himself from home; the other

Norica, soror regis Voccionis,  
a Norican (woman), sister of king Voccio,

quam duxerat Gallia, missam a  
whom he had led [married] in Gaul, sent by

fratre: utraque perit in ea  
(her) brother: each perished in this

fuga: duæ filiae harum, altera  
fight: (there were) two daughters of these, the one

occisa-est, altera capta. Caius Valerius  
was slain, the other taken [captured]. Caius Valerius

Procillus, quum traheretur (imp. subj.) in  
 Procillus, when he was dragged in (their)  
 fūgā vinctus trinis catenis à custodibus,  
 flight bound with triple chains by (his) keepers,  
 incidit in Cæsarem ipsum persequentem  
 fell upon [fell in with] Cæsar himself pursuing  
 equitatum hostium. Quæ res quidem  
 the cavalry of the enemy. Which thing [circumstance] indeed  
 attulit non minorem voluptatem Cæsari, quàm  
 brought not less pleasure to Cæsar, than  
 victoriâ ipsa; quòd videbat honestissimum  
 the victory itself; because he was seeing a most honorable  
 hominem provincæ Galliæ, sūm familiarem  
 man of the province of Gaul, his acquaintance  
 et hospitem, ereptum è manibus hostium,  
 and nost, rescued from the hands of the enemy,  
 restitutum sibi: nèque fortuna diminuërat  
 restored to himself: nor [and] fortune had [not] diminished  
 quidquam de tantâ voluptate et gratulatione  
 any thing from so great pleasure and congratulation  
 calamitate ejus. Is dicebât  
 by a disaster of [to] him. He was saying  
 consultum (-esse) sortibus ter, se  
 to have [it had] been consulted by lots thrice, himself  
 præsentē, de se, utrū necaretur  
 (being) present, about himself, whether he should be put to death  
 statim igni, an reservaretur in aliud  
 immediately with fire, or should be reserved unto [for] another  
 tempus: se esse incolūmen beneficio  
 time: (that he) himself to be [was] safe by the favor  
 sortium. Item Marcus Mettius repertus-est  
 of the lots. Likewise Marcus Mettius was found  
 et reductus ad eum.  
 and led back to him.

54. Hoc prælio nuntiato trans Rhenum,  
 This battle having been reported beyond the Rhine,

Suevi, qui venérant ad ripas Rheni,  
 the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine

cœperunt reverti dõmum: quos Ubii, qui  
 began to return home: whom the Ubii, who  
 incõlunt<sup>153</sup> proximè Rhenum, insecuti  
 dwell nearest the Rhine, having followed up  
 perterritos, occiderunt magnum numërum ex his.  
 dismayed, slew a great number from [of] these.  
 Cæsar, duobus maximas bellis confectis  
 Cæsar, two very great wars having been finished  
 unâ æstate, deduxit paullo maturiùs, quàm  
 in one summer, conducted a little earlier, than  
 tempus anni postulabat, exercitum in  
 the time of the year was demanding [requiring] the army into  
 hiberna in Sequānos: præposuit  
 winter quarters into [among] the Sequani: he appointed  
 Labienum hibernis: ipse profectus-est  
 Labienus for the winter quarters: (he) himself departed  
 in citeriorem Galliā ad agendos conventus.<sup>154</sup>  
 into hither Gaul for holding assemb'ies.

## SECOND BOOK

The second book contains an account of Cæsar's expeditions against the Belgæ, the Nervii, the Aduatuci, and the Amorigi, in the six hundred and ninety seventh year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 57. Learning that the Belgæ had entered with the other tribes into a confederacy against the Roman people, Cæsar immediately moves with his army against them. First the Remi are conquered, from whom valuable information is gained relating to the movements of the Belgæ. Crossing the Aisne, Cæsar relieves Bibrax then under attack by the Belgæ. It is not long before the Belgæ and the Suessiones are forced to surrender. The war then turns against the Nervii, who in spite of their extraordinary courage, are at last subdued. The Aduatuci then through sheer treachery seek to overthrow Cæsar's troops. But they like the other tribes are quickly brought under Roman rule. Cæsar returns to Italy and a Thanksgiving is voted by the senate.

1. Quum Cæsar esset in citeriore Galliâ  
 When Cæsar was in hither Gaul,  
 ita uti suprâ demonstravimus, crebri  
 just as above we have shown, frequent  
 rumores afferebantur ad eum, que  
 rumors were brought to him, and  
 Item<sup>1</sup> fiebat certior litêris (pl.) Labieni,  
 likewise he was made more sure [informed] by letters of Labienus,  
 omnes Belgas, quam dixeramus esse tertiam  
 (that) all the Belgæ, which we have said to be [are] the third  
 partem Galliæ, conjurare contra Romanum populum,  
 part of Gaul, (to) conspire against the Roman people,  
 que dare obsides inter se. Has esse  
 and (to) give hostages between themselves. These to be [are]  
 causas conjurandi: primùm, quod vererentur  
 the causes of conspiring: first, because they were fearing  
 (imp.subj.) ne, omni Galliâ pacatâ, noster  
 lest all Gaul having been subdued, our

exercitus adduceretur ad eos; deinde, quod  
 army should be led up to them; then, because  
 sollicitarentur (imp. subj.) ab nonnullis Gallis, partim  
 they were solicited by some Gauls, partly  
 qui, ut nollent (imp. subj.) Germanos  
 (those) who, as they were unwilling that the Germans  
 versari diutius in Gallia, ita  
 to be [should] be employed longer in Gaul, so  
 ferebant molestè exercitum Romani  
 were bearing (it) uneasily (that) the army of the Roman  
 populi hiemare atque inveterascere in  
 people to [should] winter and to grow old [continue] in  
 Gallia; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate  
 Gaul: partly (those) who, by fickleness and lightness  
 animi, studebant novis imperiis; etiam  
 of mind, were eager for new governments: also  
 ab nonnullis, quod in Gallia regna  
 by some, because in Gaul the kingdoms [the thrones]  
 vulgò occupabantur à potentioribus atque  
 commonly were occupied by the more powerful and  
 his, qui habebant facultates ad conducendos  
 by those, who were having means for hiring  
 homines,<sup>2</sup> qui poterant minus facile consequi  
 men, who were able less easily to attain  
 eam rem nostro imperio.  
 this thing (under) our government.

2. Cæsar commotus his nuntiis que  
 Cæsar moved by these messages and

litteris conscripsit duas novas legiones in citeriore  
 letters levied two new legions in hither

Gallia, et æstate inita, misit Quintum  
 Gaul, and summer having begun, he sent Quintus

Pedium legatum qui deduceret in  
 Pedius (his) lieutenant who might lead (them) down into

interiorem Galliam. Ipse, quum<sup>3</sup> primum incip-  
 inner Gaul. (He) himself, when first there was

eret (imp. subj.) esse, copia pabuli venit ad  
 beginning to be, plenty of forage came to



exercitum. Dat negotium Senonibus  
the army. He gives the business [task] to the Senones

que reliquis Gallis, qui erant finitimi  
and to the remaining Gauls, who were neighbors

Belgis, uti cognoscant<sup>4</sup> ea, quae  
to the Belgæ, that they learn [ascertain] these (things), which

gerantur (pres. subj.) apud eos, et faciant  
are carried on [transpiring] with them, and may make

se certiore de his rebus. Omnes  
himself more certain [inform him] about these things. All

hi constanter nunciaverunt, manus  
these continually reported, (that) bands

cogi, exercitum conduci  
to be [were being] brought together, an army to be [was being]

in unum locum. Tum verò  
assembled to one place. Then indeed

existimavit non dubitandum,<sup>5</sup> quin  
he thought (it) [he must] not to be hesitated [hesitate], but that

proficisceretur ad eos. Re frumentariâ  
he should set out to them. The grain supply

provisâ, movet castra (pl.) que  
having been provided, he moves (his) camp and

circiter quindécim diebus pervenit ad  
in about fifteen days arrives to [at]

fines Belgarum.  
the borders of the Belgæ.

3. Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) èd de  
When he had come there from

improviso que celerius opinione  
unforeseen [unexpectedly] and more quickly (than) the opinion [belief]

omnium, Remi, qui sunt proximi ex  
of all, the Remi, who are nearest from [of]

Belgis Galliæ, miserunt ad eum legatos.  
the Belgæ to Gaul, sent to him ambassadors,

Iccium et Andocombogium primos suæ  
Iccius and Andocombogius first (men) of their

civitatis, qui dicèrent, "permittere<sup>6</sup> se  
state, who should say, "to [that they] entrust themselves

que omnia sua in fidem atque potestatem  
 and all their (effects) into [to] the faith and power

Romani populi, neque se  
 of the Roman people, (that) neither (they) themselves

consensisse cum reliquis Belgæ, neque  
 (to) have combined with the remaining Belgæ, nor

conjurasse contra Romanum populum, que  
 (to) have conspired against the Roman people, and (that)

esse paratos et dare obsides, et  
 to be [they are] prepared both to give hostages, and

facere imperata, et recipere oppidis  
 to do (the things) commanded, and to receive (them) in the towns

et juvare frumento que cæteris rebus;  
 and to aid with corn and in other things [matters];

omnes reliquos Belgas esse in armis:  
 (that) all the remaining Belgæ to be [are] in arms:

que Germanos, qui incolunt cis Rhenum  
 and the Germans, who dwell on this side the Rhine

conjunxisse sese cum his; que  
 (to) have united themselves with these [Belgæ]; and

tantum esse furorem omnium eorum, ut<sup>7</sup>  
 so great to be [is] the fury of all of them, that

potuerint (perf. subj.) detertere ne SueSSIONES  
 they have been able to restrain not the SueSSIONES

quidem, suos fratres que consanguineos, qui  
 even, their brothers and kinsmen, who

utantur (pres. subj.) eodem jure, iisdem  
 use the same right, the same

legibus, habent (pres. subj.) unum imperium, que  
 laws, have one government, and

unum magistratum cum ipsis, quin  
 one magistracy with themselves, but that

consentirent cum his.  
 they should conspire with these.

4. Quum quæreret (imp. subj.) ab his, quæ  
 When he was inquiring from these, what

civitates que quantæ essent (imp. subj.) in armis,  
 states and how great were in arms,

et quid possent (imp. subj.) in bello,  
 and what they were able in war,  
 reperiebat sic; plerosque Belgas  
 he was ascertaining thus; (that) the most of the Belgæ  
 ortos-esse Germanis que antiquitûs  
 (to) have sprung from the Germans and of old  
 traductos Rhenum, consedissee ibi  
 (were) led over the Rhine, to [that they] have settled there  
 propter fertilitatem agri; que expulisse  
 on account of the fertility of the land; and (to) have driven out  
 Gallos, qui incolerent (imp. subj.) ea loca; que  
 the Gauls, who were inhabiting these places; and  
 esse solos,<sup>8</sup> qui, memoriâ nostrorum patrum,  
 to be [are] alone, (those) who, in the memory of our fathers,  
 omni Gallia vexatâ, prohibuerint (perf. subj.)  
 all Gaul having been harassed, prohibited  
 Teutones que Cimbros ingredi intra suos  
 the Teutones and Cimbri to enter within their  
 fines. Ex quâ re fieri uti  
 borders. From which thing to be done [it resulted] that  
 sumerent (imp. subj.) magnam auctoritatem que  
 they were taking [assuming] great authority and  
 magnos spiritus in militari re sibi,  
 great spirits [airs] in military matters to themselves,  
 memoriâ earum rerum. Remi dicebant  
 by the memory of these things. The Remi were saying  
 se habere omnia explorata de  
 (that) they themselves (to) have all (things) investigated about  
 numero eorum, propterea quod conjuncti  
 the number of them [their number], because (that) joined together  
 propinquitatibus (pl.) atque affinitatibus,  
 by kinship and by marriage alliances,  
 cognoverint (perf. subj.) quantam multitudinem  
 they knew how great a multitude  
 quisque pollicitus-sit (perf. subj.) in communi  
 each promised in the common  
 concilio Belgarum ad id bellum. Bellovacos<sup>3</sup>  
 council of the Belgæ to [for] this war. The Bellovaci

valere plurimum inter eos, et virtute, et  
 (to) prevail most among them, both in valor, and  
 auctoritate, et numero hominum; hos posse  
 in authority, and in the number of men; these to be [are] able  
 conficere centum millia armata;  
 to convene [muster] a hundred thousand armed (men);  
 pollicitos sexaginta millia electa  
 having [that they had] promised sixty thousand chosen  
 ex eo numero, que postulare  
 from this number, and to demand [demanded]  
 imperium belli sibi. SueSSIONES esse  
 the control of the war for themselves. The SueSSIONES to be [are]  
 suos finitimos; possidere latissimos que  
 their neighbors; to (they) possess the most broad and  
 feracissimos agros; Divitiacum fuisse regem  
 most productive lands; Divitiacus to have [has] been king  
 apud eos, potentissimum totius Galliae,  
 with [over] them, the most powerful of entire Gaul,  
 etiam nostram memoriam, qui cum obtinuërit  
 even in our memory, who not only had held  
 (perf. subj.) imperium magnæ partis harum  
 the empire of a great part of these  
 regionum, tum etiam Britanniae; Galbam  
 regions, but also even of Britain; Galba  
 nunc esse regem; summam  
 now to be [is] (their) king; the sum [chief command]  
 totius belli deferri ad hunc  
 of the whole war to be [was] conferred to (on) this (man)  
 voluntate omnium; habere duodecim oppida  
 by the will of all; to have [they have] twelve towns  
 numero, polliceri quinquaginta millia  
 in number, and (to) promise fifty thousand  
 armata: Nervios, totidem, qui habeantur  
 armed (men): the Nervii, just as many, who are held [deemed]  
 (pres. subj.) maximè feri inter ipsos que absint  
 the most fierce among them and are distant  
 (pres. subj.) longissimè; Atrebatès, quindècim  
 farthest; the Atrebatès, fifteen

millia; Ambianos, decem millia; Morinos,  
 thousand; the Ambiani, ten thousand; the Morini,  
 viginti quinque millia: Menapios, novem millia;  
 twenty five thousand: the Menapii, nine thousand;  
 Calētos decem millia; Veliocasses et  
 the Caleti ten thousand; the Veliocasses and  
 Veromandūos totidem; Aduatucos, viginti novem  
 Veromandui just as many; the Aduatuci, twenty nine  
 millia; arbitrari Condrosos, Eburones, Cærosos,  
 thousand; to [they] believe the Condusi, Eburones, Cærosi,  
 Pæmanos, qui appellantur uno nomine Germani,  
 Pæmani, who are called by one name German,  
 ad quadraginta millia.  
 (promise), to [about] forty thousand.

5. Cæsar, cohortatus<sup>10</sup> Remos, que  
 Cæsar, having encouraged the Remi, and  
 prosecutus liberaliter oratione, jussit  
 having followed up liberally [kindly] with a speech, ordered  
 omnem senatum convenire ad se, que  
 all (their) senate to assemble to himself and  
 liberos principum adduci ostes ad  
 (that) the children of the chiefs (to) be brought (as) hostages to  
 se. Omnia quæ facta sunt diligenter  
 him(self). All which (things) were done exactly  
 ab his ad diem. Ipse cohortatus  
 by these to the day. He himself having encouraged  
 magnopere. Ædūm Divitiacum, docet  
 very greatly [earnestly] the Æduan Divitiacus, shows  
 quantopere intersit (pres. subj.) rei publicæ (gen.)  
 how greatly it concerns the republic  
 que communis salutis, minus hostium  
 and the common safety, (that) the hands of the enemy  
 destineri, ne sit<sup>11</sup> configendam uno tempore  
 (to) be separated, lest it must be fought at one time  
 cum tantâ multitudīne; id posse  
 with so great a multitude; that it to be able [could]  
 fieri, si Ædūi introduxerint (perf. subj.)  
 to be done, if the Ædui should introduce

suas copias in fines Bellovacorum et  
 their forces into the borders of the Bellovaci and  
 cœperint (perf. subj.) populari agros eorum.  
 should begin to ravage the lands of them [their lands].  
 His mandatis, dimittit<sup>12</sup> eum ab  
 These (things) having been enjoined, he dismisses him from  
 se. Postquam cognovit ab his exploratoribus,  
 himself. After that he knew from these scouts,  
 quos miserat, et ab Remis, omnes copias  
 whom he had sent, and from the Remi, (that) all the forces  
 Belgarum coactas in unum locum  
 of the Belgæ (having been) collected into one place  
 venire ad se, neque jam  
 to come [were coming] to him(self), nor now  
 abesse<sup>13</sup> longè; maturavit traducere  
 to be [were] distant far; he hastened to take over  
 flumen Axõnam, quod est in extremis  
 the river Axona, which is in the extreme [remotest]  
 finibus Remorum, exercitum, atque ibi  
 borders of the Remi, the army, and there  
 posuit castra (pl.). Quæ res et  
 pitched (his) camp. Which thing [action] both  
 muniebat unum latus castrorum (pl.) ripis  
 was fortifying one side of the camp by the banks  
 fluminis et reddebat ea  
 of the river and was rendering these (things)  
 quæ erant post, tuta ab hostibus, et  
 which were behind, safe from the enemy, and  
 efficiebat ut commeatus possent  
 was effecting that provisions might be able [could]  
 portari ad eum ab Remis, que  
 (to) be carried to him from the Remi, and  
 reliquis civitatibus sine periculo. Pons erat  
 the remaining states without danger. A bridge was  
 in eo flumine; ibi ponit præsidium,  
 on this river; there he places a guard,  
 et reliquit Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum  
 and left Quintus Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant

in altērā parte fluminis cum sex cohortibus;  
on the other part [side] of the river with six cohorts;

jūbet munire castra (pl.) vallo in  
he orders (him) to fortify the camp with a rampart into [in]  
altitudinem duodēcim pēdum que fossā  
height (of) twelve feet and with a trench

duodeviginti pēdum.  
(of) eighteen feet (deep).

6. Oppidum Remorum, nomine Bibrax, abērat  
A town of the Remi, by name Bibrax, was distant

octo millia passuum ab castris ipsis (pl.);  
eight thousand (of) paces from the camp itself;

Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id magno impetu  
the Belgæ began to assault it with great violence

ex itinere: sustentatum est ægrè  
from [on] the march: it [the assault] was sustained hardly

eo die. Eādem oppugnatō Gallorum atque  
on this day. The same assault of the Gauls and

Belgarum est haec: Hi, ūbi, multitudinē  
of the Belgæ is this: These, when, a multitude

hominum circumjectā totis mœnibus (dat.),  
of men having been thrown around the whole wall,

lapides cœpti-sunt jāci in murum  
stones were begun to be thrown against the wall

undique que murus nudatus-est defensoribus;  
on all sides and the wall was stripped from defenders

testudinē factā, succedunt portis (dat.)  
a testudo having been formed, approach the gates

que subrūunt murum. Quod tum fiebat  
and undermine the wall. Which then was done

facile. Nam cum tanta<sup>14</sup> multitudo conjiciebant  
easily. For when so great a multitude were hurling

lapides ac tela, protestas consistendi in  
stones and darts, a power [ability] of standing on

muro erat nulli. Quam nox fecisset  
the wall was to none. When night had made

(pl. perf. subj.) finem oppugnandi, Remus Iccius,  
an end of assaulting, the Remian Iccius,

summâ nobilitate et gratiâ inter  
with [of the] highest nobility and favor among

suos, qui tum præerat oppido, unus ex  
his own (people), who then commanded (to) the town, one from [of]

his, qui venerant ad Cæsarem legati  
those, who had come to Cæsar (as) ambassadors

de pace, mittit nuntios ad eum, nisi  
about peace, sends messengers to him, unless

subsidium submittatur (pres. subj.) sibi, se  
aid is sent to him(self), he himself

posse non sustinere diutius.  
to be able [could] not (to) hold out longer.

7. Eo de mediâ nocte, Cæsar usus  
Thither about mid night, Cæsar having used

iisdem ducibus, qui venerant nuntii ab  
the same guides, who had come (as) messengers from

Iccio, mittit Numidas et Cretas sagittarios  
Iccius, sends the Numidian and Cretan archers

et Baleares funditores subsidio oppidanis.  
and Balearic slingers for a reinforcement to the townsmen,

Adventu quorum, et studium propugnandi  
By the arrival of whom, both a zeal of resisting

cum spe defensionis accessit  
with a hope of defence approached

Remis (dat.), et de eadem causâ spes  
the Remi, and from the same cause the hope

potiundi oppidi discessit hostibus.  
of gaining the town departed from [left] the enemy.

Itaque morati paulisper apud oppidum  
Therefore having delayed a little while at the town

que depopulati agros Remorum, omnibus  
and having laid waste the lands of the Remi, all

vicis que ædificiis incensis, quò  
the villages and buildings having been burnt, where

poterant adire, contenderunt  
they were able to approach, they strove [hastened]

ad castra (pl.) Cæsaris cum omnibus copiis,  
to the camp of Cæsar with all (their) forces,



et posuerunt castra (pl.) à mīnūs duobus  
and pitched (their) camp from [at] less than two  
millibus passūm, quæ castra (pl.) ut  
thousand (of) paces, which camp as

significabatur fumo atque ignibus, patebant  
was indicated by smoke and by fires, was extending

in latitudīnem ampliūs octo millibus  
into [in] breadth more (than) eight thousand

passūm.  
(of) paces.

8. Cæsar primò statuit supersedēre  
Cæsar at first determined to defer

prælio (abl.) et propter multitudīnem  
a battle both on account of the multitude

hostium et propter eximiam opinionem  
of the enemy and on account of the extraordinary reputation

virtutis; tamen periclitabatur quotidie  
of (their) valor; yet he was making trial daily

equestribus præliis, quid hostis posset  
in cavalry battles, what the enemy might be able

virtute, et quid nostri auderent. Ubi  
in valor, and what our (men) might dare. When

intellexit nostros esse non inferiores,  
he understood (that) our (men) to be [were] not inferior,

lōco pro castris (pl.) opportuno atque  
the place before the camp (being) favorable and

idoneo<sup>15</sup> naturā ad instruendam aciem; quod  
suitable by nature for drawing up the line; because

is collis ubi castra (pl.) posita-erant, editus  
this hill where the camp had been placed, being raised

paullulum ex planitie, patebat in  
a little from the plain, was extending into [in]

latitudīnem adversus tantum loci, quantum  
breadth opposite so much of place [distance] as

aciēs instructa potērat occupare atque  
the line (of battle), arrayed, was able to occupy, and

habebat dejectus latēris ex utrāque  
was having descents of the side from [on] either

parte, et lenīter fastigiatus in fronte, paullatim  
part [hand], and gently sloping in front, gradually

redibat ad planitiem: ab utroque latere  
was returning to the plain: from each side

ejus collis obduxit transversam fossam circiter  
of this hill he led over a transverse trench about

quadringentorum passuum, et ad extremas  
(of) four hundred paces, and at the extreme [both ends of]

fossas constituit castella, que ibi collocavit  
the trenches he planted redoubts, and there placed

tormenta; ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
engines; lest, when he had arrayed

aciem, hostes (quod potērant tantum  
(his) battle line, the enemy (because they were able so much

multitudine) possent circumvenire à  
by (their) multitude might be able [could] (to) surround from [on]

lateribus suos pugnantes. Hoc facto,  
the flanks his (men) fighting. This having been done,

duabus legionibus, quas conscripsērat proximē,  
two legions, which he had levied last,

relictis in castris (pl.), ut, si quid opus  
having been left in camp, that, if any need

esset possent duci subsidio,<sup>16</sup> constituit  
should be, they might be able to be led for reinforcement, he formed

reliquas sex legiones in acie pro castris (pl.).  
the remaining six legions in battle line before the camp.

Item hostes instruxerant suas copias eductas  
Likewise the enemy had drawn up their forces led forth

ex castris (pl.).  
from the camp.

9. Palus non magna erat inter nostrum atque  
A marsh not great was between our (men) and

exercitum hostium; hostes expectabant, si  
the army of the enemy; the enemy were awaiting, if

nostri transirent hanc; autem nostri erant  
our (men) would cross over this; but our (men) were

parati in armis ut, si initium transeundi  
prepared in arms that, if a beginning of crossing

fiēret ab illis,<sup>17</sup> aggredērentur impeditos.  
should be made by those (forces) they might attack (them) entangled.

Intērim contendebatur<sup>18</sup> equestri prōlio  
Meanwhile there was fighting in a cavalry battle

inter dūas acies. Ubi neutri faciunt  
between the two lines. When neither make

initium transeundi, prōlio nostrorum equitum  
a beginning of crossing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit suos in  
(being) more successful, Cæsar led back his (men) into

castra (pl.). Hostes protinus contenderunt  
the camp. The enemy forthwith strained [hastened]

ex ō loco ad flumen Axōnam, quod  
from that place to the river Axona, which it

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi  
has been shown to be [is] behind our camp; there

vadis repertis, conati-sunt traducere  
fords being found, they endeavored to lead over

partem suarum copiarum, ō consilio, ut,  
part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,  
if they should be able, they might storm the fortress,

cui Q. Titurius legatus præerat, que  
over which Q. Titurius the lieutenant held command, and

intercindērent pontem: si minùs, popula-  
might cut down the bridge: if less [not], they might

rentur agros Remorum, qui erat magno  
ravage the lands of the Remi, which were for [of] great

usui nobis ad gerendum bellum<sup>19</sup> que  
use to us for carrying on the war and

prohibērent<sup>20</sup> nostros commeātū.  
were cutting off our (men) from supplies.

10. Cæsar factus certior à Titurio,  
Cæsar being made more certain [informed] by Titurius,

traducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numidas  
leads over the bridge all the cavalry, and Numidians

lēvis<sup>21</sup> armaturæ, funditores que sagittarios, atque  
of light armor the slingers and archers, and

contendit ad eos. Pugnatum-est acriter<sup>22</sup> in  
 strains [hastens] to them. It was fought sharply in  
 ěo lŏco: nostri aggressi hostes  
 this place: our (men) having attacked the enemy  
 impeditos in flumĭne, occiderunt magnum numĕrum  
 entangled in the river. slew a great number  
 eorum: repulerunt multitudĭne telorum  
 of them; they [our men] repulsed with a multitude of weapons  
 reliquos conantes audacissimĕ transire  
 the remaining (men) endeavoring most boldly to cross  
 per corpŏra eorum: interfecerunt primos, qui  
 among the bodies of those (slain); they killed the first, who  
 transiĕrant, circumventos equitatu. Hostes (pl.),  
 had passed, surrounded by cavalry. The enemy  
 ŭbi intellexerunt spem<sup>23</sup> fefellisse se  
 when they understood hope to have [had] deceived themselves [them]  
 et de expugnando oppĭdo, et de transeundo  
 both of storming the town, and of crossing  
 flumĭne, nĕque viderunt nostros progrĕdi  
 the river, nor saw our (men) advance  
 in iniquiorem lŏcum causā  
 into a more unequal (disadvantageous) place for the sake  
 pugnandi, atque frumentariā res cœpit  
 of fighting, and corn thing [provisions] began  
 deficĕre ěos; concilĭo convocato, constitu-  
 to fail them; a council having been convened, they  
 erunt esse optĭmum quemque reverti sŭam  
 resolved it was best (for) each to return (to) his  
 dŏmum: et convenire undique ad defend-  
 home: and to assemble from all sides for defend-  
 endos,<sup>24</sup> ěos in fines quorum Romani  
 ing, those into the borders of whom the Romans  
 primŭm introduxissent exercĭtum; ut decertarent  
 first should lead on the army; that they might contend  
 potĭus in sŭis, quā alienis finĭbus, et  
 rather in their own, than in foreign borders, and  
 uterentur domesticis copiis (abl.) frumentarię rei.  
 might use domestic supplies. of corn thing

Quodque hæc ratio, cum reliquis  
 [provisions]. Also this reason, with remaining [other]  
 causis, deduxit eos ad eam sententiam,  
 causes, led them to this opinion [resolution],  
 quod cognoverant Divitiacum atque Ædios  
 because they had known Divitiacus and the Ædii  
 appropinquare<sup>25</sup> finibus Bellovacorum. Poterat  
 (to) approach (to) the borders of the Beliovacii. It was possible  
 non persuaderi his, ut morarentur  
 not to (be) persuaded [persuade] (to) these, that they should delay  
 diutius, neque ferrent auxilium suis.<sup>26</sup>  
 longer, nor should bring aid to their (countrymen).

11. Ea re constituta, secundâ vigiliâ,  
 This thing being resolved, in the second watch,  
 egressi castris cum magno strepitu  
 having gone out from camp with great noise  
 ac tumultu, nullo certo ordine neque imperio,  
 and tumult, with no certain order nor command,  
 quum quisque peteret (imp. subj.) primum  
 since each was seeking the first  
 locum itinêris sibi, et properaret (imp. subj.)  
 place of the road for himself, and was hastening  
 pervenire domum, fecerunt, ut profectio  
 to reach (to) home, they did [acted] so, that (their) departure  
 videretur (imp. subj.) consimilis fugæ. Hæc  
 was seeming very like (to) a flight. This  
 re statim cognita per speculatores,  
 thing immediately being known through scouts,  
 Cæsar veritus insidias, quod per-  
 Cæsar having feared snares, because he had  
 spexerat<sup>27</sup> nondum de quâ causâ disced-  
 seen clearly not yet on [for] what cause they were  
 erent (imp. subj.) continuit exercitum, quæ  
 departing held the army, and  
 equitatum castris. Primâ luce,<sup>28</sup> re  
 cavalry in camp. At the first light the thing [fact]  
 confirmatâ ab exploratoribus, præmisit  
 being confirmed by scouts, he sent before

omnem equitatum, qui moraretur  
 all the cavalry, which should delay [detain]  
 novissimum agmen. His præfecit Quintum  
 the last troop [rear]. Over them (he) appointed Quintus  
 Pedium, et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam  
 Pedius, and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta  
 legatos ei: jussit Titum Labienum  
 lieutenants to him [his lieutenants]: he ordered Titus Labienus  
 legatum subsequi cum tribus legionibus.  
 the lieutenant to follow close with three legions.  
 Hi adorti novissimos et prosecuti  
 These, having attacked the last [rear] and having pursued  
 multa millia passum, conciderunt magnam  
 (them) many thousand (of) paces, cut up a great  
 multitudinem eorum fugientium. Quum hi ab  
 multitude of them fleeing When those from [on]  
 extremo agmine, ad quos ventum-erat,<sup>29</sup>  
 the last troop [rear], to whom it had been [they had] come,  
 consistèrent (imp. subj.), que sustinerent (imp. subj.)  
 were standing together and were sustaining  
 fortiter impetum nostrorum militum; priores,  
 bravely the attack of our soldiers; the former [the  
 quod viderentur (imp. subj.) abesse à  
 van]. because they seemed to be distant from  
 periculo, neque continerentur (imp. subj.) ullâ  
 danger, nor were held together by any  
 necessitate neque imperio, clamore exaudito,  
 necessity nor command, the din being heard,  
 ordinibus perturbatis, omnes ponerent  
 the ranks being disturbed [confused], all put  
 præsidium sibi in fugâ. Ita sine ullo  
 protection for themselves in fight. Thus without any  
 periculo nostri interfecerunt tantam multitudinem  
 danger our (men) killed so great a multitude  
 eorum, quantum spatium<sup>30</sup> diei fuit; que  
 of them, as the space of the day was [permitted]; and  
 sub occasum solis destiterunt  
 under [just before] the going down of the sun they ceased

sequi, que receperunt se in castra, ūti  
to follow, and betook themselves into camp, as

imperatum-ērat.  
it had been commanded.

12. Postridie ejus diei, prius-quàm hostes (pl.)  
The day after this day, before (that) the enemy

recipērent se ex terrore ac fūgā,  
might recover themselves from terror and flight,

Cæsar duxit exercitum in fines Suessi-  
Cæsar led (his) army into the borders of the Suessi-

onum, qui erat proximi Remis; et  
ones, who were nearest to the Remi; and

magno itinēre confecto, contendit ad  
a great march having been completed, he hastened to

oppidum, Noviodunum. Conatus oppugnare  
the town, Noviodunum. Having attempted to storm

id ex itinēre, quòd audiebat  
this from the way [on his march], because he was hearing

esse vacuum ab defensoribus, potuit<sup>31</sup>  
(it) to be [was] clear from [of] defenders, he was able

non expugnare propter latitudinem fossæ,  
not to storm (it) on account of the breadth of the ditch,

que altitudinem muri, paucis defendentibus.<sup>32</sup>  
and the height of the wall, few (men) defending (it).

Castris (pl.) munitis cœpit agere vinēas,  
The camp having been fortified he began to drive [push] the sheds,

que comparare quæ erant usui  
and to prepare (the things) which were for use

ad oppugnandum.<sup>33</sup> Intērim omnis multitudo  
for storming. Meanwhile all the multitude

Suessionum convēnit ex fūgā in  
of the Suessiones comes together [gathers] from flight into

oppidum proximā nocte. Vinēis actis  
the town on the nearest [next] night. The sheds having been pushed

celeriter ad oppidum, aggere jacto, que  
quickly to the town, a mound having been thrown up, and

turribus constitutis, Galli permoti  
towers (having been) erected, the Gauls much moved [alarmed]

magnitudīne opērum, quæ nēque vidērant  
by the vastness of the works, which neither they had seen

antē nēque audiēant, et celeritate  
before nor had heard (of), and by the quickness

Romanorum, mittunt legatos ad Cæsārem  
of the Romans, send ambassadors to Cæsar

de deditione; et, Remis petentibus,  
about a surrender; and, the Remi seeking [petitioning],

ut conservarentur,<sup>34</sup> impētrant.  
that they may be preserved, they obtain (it).

13. Cæsar obsidibus acceptis primis  
Cæsar hostages having been received the first (men)

civitatis, atque duobus filiis regis Galbæ  
of the state, and two sons of king Galba

ipsius que omnibus armis traditis ex oppido,  
himself and all arms having been delivered from the town,

Cæsar accipit Suessiones in deditionem;<sup>35</sup> que  
Cæsar received the Suessiones into a surrender; and

duxit exercitum in Bellovacos: qui quum  
led the army among the Bellovaci: and when

contulissent (pl. perf. subj.) se que omnia  
they had brought together themselves and all

sua in oppidum Bratuspantium, atque  
their (things) into the town Bratuspantium, and

Cæsar, cum exercitu, abesset (imp. subj.) ab  
Cæsar, with the army, was distant from

eo oppido circiter quinque millia passuum,  
this town about five thousand (of) paces.

omnes majores natu egressi ex  
all (the) greater by birth [the elders] having gone out from

oppido, cœperunt tendere manus ad  
the town, began to stretch (their) hands to

Cæsārem, significare voce, sese venire  
Cæsar, to signify by voice, (that they) themselves (to) come

in ejus fidem ac potestatem nēque  
into his faith [protection] and power nor

contendere contra Romanum populum armis;<sup>36</sup>  
(to) contend against the Roman people with arms:



item, quum accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) ad oppidum,  
also, when he had approached to the town,

que poneret (imp. subj.) castra (pl.) ibi, pueri que  
and was placing [pitching] (his) camp there, the boys and

mulieres ex muro, manibus passis, suo  
women from the wall, (with) hands stretched out, by their

more, petierunt pacem à Romanis.  
custom, sought peace from the Romans.

14. Divitiacus facit verba pro his (nam  
Divitiacus makes words [intercedes] for these (for

post discessum Belgarum, copiis Æduorum  
after the departure of the Belgæ, the forces of the Ædui

dimissis, revertērat ad eum):  
having been sent away, he had returned to him [Cæsar] );

Bellovācos omni tempore fuisse in fide  
the Bellovaci in [for] all time (to) have been in the faith [confidence]

atque amicitia Ædūæ civitatis; impulsos à  
and friendship of the Æduan state; impelled by

suis principibus, qui dicērent (imp. subj.) Ædūos  
their chiefs, who were saying the Ædui,

reductos in servitutem à Cæsare, perferre omnes  
reduced into servitude by Cæsar, (to) endure all

indignitates que contumelias, et defecisse ab  
indignities and outrages, (both) (to) have revolted from

Ædūis, et intulisse bellum Romano populo.<sup>37</sup>  
the Ædui, and have waged war upon the Roman people.

Qui fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principes hujus  
(Those) who had been chiefs [authors] of this

consilii, quod intelligērent (imp. subj.) quantam  
counsel, because they understood how great

calamitatem intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) civitati (dat),  
a calamity they had brought on the state,

profugisse in Britanniam. Non solum Bellovācos  
to have [had] fled into Britain. Not only the Bellovaci

petere, sed etiam Ædūos, pro his,  
to seek [entreated] but also the Ædui, for these

ut utatur sua clementia ac mansuetudine (abl.)  
that he may use his clemency and mildness

in ðos: quod si fecerit, amplificatum  
towards them: which if he shall have done, about to [it would]

auctoritatem Æduorum apud omnes  
enlarge the authority of the Ædui at [among] all

Belgæ, auxiliis atque opibus quorum  
the Belgæ, by the troops and resources of whom

consueverint (perf. subj.) sustentare,<sup>28</sup> si  
they have been accustomed to endure, if

qua bella incidèrent.  
any wars may have happened [occurred].

15. Cæsar, causâ honoris Divi-  
Cæsar, for the sake of the honor of Divi-

tiaci atque Æduorum, dixit sese  
tiacus and of the Ædui, said (that he) himself

receptum ðos in fidem et  
about to [would] receive them into faith [allegiance] and

conservatum; et quod civitas erat  
about to [would] preserve (them); and because the state was

magna et præstabat inter Belgæ auctoritate  
great and it was excelling among the Belgæ in authority

ac multitudîne hominum, proposcit sex-centos  
and in multitude of men, he required six hundred

obsides: his traditis que omnibus armis  
hostages: these having been delivered and all (their) arms

collatis ex oppido, pervenit ab ðo  
(having been) brought together out of the town, he passed from this

loco in fines Ambianorum, qui dederunt  
place into the borders of the Ambiani, who surrendered

se que omnia sua sine mōrâ.  
themselves and all their (possessions) without delay.

Nerviî attingebant fines eorum: de  
The Nervii were touching upon the borders of them [their borders]: con-

naturâ que moribus quorum, quum Cæsar  
cerning the nature and manners of whom, when Cæsar

quæreret (imp. subj.), reperiebat sic; nullum  
was inquiring, he ascertained thus: no

aditum esse mercatoribus ad ðos: pati  
access to be [was] for merchants to them; to (they) suffer

nihil vini, que reliquarum rerum pertinentium  
nothing [no] (of) wine, and (of) remaining things tending

ad luxuriam, inferri: quod  
to luxury, to be brought in [imported]: because

existimarent (imp. subj.) animos eorum  
they thought (that) the minds of them [their minds]

relanguescere, que virtutem remitti  
(to) grow feeble, and (their) virtue [valor] to be [is] relaxed

his rebus: homines esse feroces, que magnae  
by these things: the men to be [are] fierce, and of great

virtutis: increpitare atque incusare reliquos  
valor: to (they) upbraid and (to) blame the remaining

Belgas, qui dedissent (pl. perf. subj.) se  
Belgae, who had surrendered themselves

Romano populo, que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
to the Roman people, and had cast aside

patriam virtutem; confirmare,  
(their) native virtue [national honor]; to (they) affirm (that they),

se neque missuros legatos, neque  
themselves neither about to [would] send ambassadors, nor

accepturos ullam conditionem pacis.<sup>89</sup>  
about to [would] receive any condition of peace.

16. Quum fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) iter triduum  
When he had made a journey of three days

per fines eorum, inveniebat  
through the borders of them [their borders], he was learning

ex captivis, flumen Sabin abesse ab  
from the captives, (that) the river Sabis to be [was] distant from

suis castris non amplius decem millia  
his camp not more (than) ten thousand

passum: omnes Nervios consedisse  
(of) paces: (that) all the Nervii to have [had] halted

trans id flumen, que ibi una cum  
beyond this river, and there together with

Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, suis finitimis,  
the Atrebates and Veromandui, their neighbors,

expectare adventum Romanorum; nam  
to [were] awaiting the arrival of the Romans; for

persuasērant utrisque his,<sup>40</sup> ut experirentur  
 they had persuaded both these, that they should try  
 eandem fortunam belli; etiā copias  
 the same fortune of war: also (that) the forces

Aduatucorum expectari ab his,  
 of the Aduatuci to be waited for [were expected] by these,  
 atque esse in itinēre:  
 and (that they) to be [were] on the way [march]:

conjecisse muliēres, que  
 to have [that they had] thrown [put] together the women, and

qui per ætatem viderentur (imp. subj.)  
 (those) who through age were seeming

inutiles ad pugnam, in eum locum, quod  
 useless for a battle, into this place, in which

propter paludes aditus non esset exercitūi.<sup>41</sup>  
 on account of the marshes access might not be for an army.

17. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar præmittit  
 These things having been known, Cæsar sends forward

exploratores, que centuriones, qui deligant  
 scouts, and centurions, who may choose

locum idoneum castris: que quum complures  
 a place suitable for camp: and since many

ex Belgis que reliquis Gallis  
 from the Belgæ and remaining Gauls

dedidit, secuti Cæsarem, facerent  
 [who had] surrendered, having followed Cæsar, made

(imp. subj.) iter unā: quidam ex  
 (their) way together: certain ones from [among]

his, ut postea cognitum est ex captivis,  
 these, as afterwards it was known from the captives,

consuetudine itinēris nostri exercitūs  
 the custom of the journey [march] of our army

eorum dierum perspectā, pervenerunt nocte  
 of those days being fully seen, repaired by night

ad Nervios atque demonstraverunt iis  
 to the Nervii and showed to them (that)

magnum numerum impedimentorum intercedere  
 a great number of baggage wagons (to) come between

[intervened] inter singūlas legiones; nēque  
 between the several legions; nor  
 esse quidquam negotiī,<sup>42</sup> cū prima  
 to be [was] (there) any thing of business [any difficulty], when the first  
 legiō venisset in castris, que reliquæ  
 legion had come into camp, and the remaining  
 legiones abessent magnum spatium, adoriri  
 . legions were distant a great space [way], to attack  
 hanc sub sarcīnis: quā pulsā, que  
 this (one) under packs [baggage]: which being routed, and  
 impedimentis direptis, futurum,<sup>43</sup>  
 the baggage wagons having been plundered, about to [it would] be,  
 ut reliquæ non auderent consistere  
 that the remaining (legions) would not dare to stand  
 contrā. Etiam adjuvabat consiliū eorum,  
 against [in opposition]. Also it was aiding the design of these,  
 qui deferebant rem, quod Nervii  
 who were proffering the thing [plan], because the Nervii  
 antiquitūs, quum possent (imp. subj.) nihil  
 anciently, since they were able (to do) nothing  
 equitatu, (ēnim nēque ad hoc tempus  
 with cavalry, (for neither to this time  
 stūdent ēi rēi, sed, quidquid possunt,  
 are they zealous for this thing, but, (in) whatever they are able,  
 vālent pedestribus copiis,) quod impedirent  
 they are strong in foot forces,) that they might hinder  
 faciliūs equitatum finitimorum, si venissent  
 more easily the cavalry of (their) neighbors, if they might come  
 ad eos causā prædandi, tenēris arboribus  
 to them for the sake of robbing, pliant trees  
 incisis atque inflexis, que crebris ramis  
 being cut and bent in, and thick boughs  
 enatis in latitudinem, et rūbis  
 having sprouted forth into breadth [sidewise], and brambles  
 que sentibus interjectis, effecerant,  
 and thorns having been cast between, they had brought to pass,  
 ut hæ sæpes præberent (imp. subj.) munimenta  
 that these hedges were affording fortifications

instar muri; quò posset (imp. subj.) non modò  
like a wall; where it was possible not only

non intrari, sed ne perspici<sup>44</sup> quidem.  
not to be entered, but not to be seen through even.

Quum iter nostri agminis impediretur  
When the march of our army should be hindered

(imp. subj.) his rebus Nervii  
by these things [conditions] the Nervii

existimaverunt consilium non omittendum  
thought the advice (must) not (to) be omitted

sibi (dat.).  
[neglected] by themselves.

18. Hæc erat natura loci, quem  
This was the nature of the place, which

nostri delegerant castris. Collis æqualiter  
(our) men had chosen for camp. A hill equally

declivis ab summo vergebat ad  
sloping from the highest (point) was receding to

flumen Sabim, quod nominavimus supra:  
the river Sabis [Sambre], which we have named [mentioned] above:

ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis  
from this river with equal ascent a hill

nascebatur adversus et contrarius huic, infimus  
was rising opposite and facing this, the lowest

circiter ducentos passus apertus,  
(portion) about two hundred paces (being) clear.

silvestris ab superiore parte; ut posset (imp.  
woody from [on] the higher part; so that it was possible

subj.) non perspicere facile introrsus.<sup>45</sup> Intra  
not to be seen through [to see] easily within. Inside

has silvas hostes continebant se in  
these woods the enemy were holding themselves in

occulto. In aperto loco, secundum flumen,  
secret [hiding]. In the open place, near [along] the river,

paucæ stationes equitum videbantur. Altitudo  
a few pickets of horsemen were seen. The depth

fluminis erat circiter trium pedum.  
of the river was about (of) three feet.

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur  
Cæsar, the cavalry having been sent before, was following closely

omnibus copiis: sed ratio que ordo  
with all (his) forces; but the manner and order

agminis habebat se aliter ac  
of the marching line was keeping itself otherwise and [than]

Belgæ detulêrant ad Nervios. Nam,  
the Belgæ had carried [reported] to the Nervii. For,

quôd hostis appropinquabat, Cæsar suâ  
because the enemy was approaching, Cæsar by his

consuetudinē ducebat sex expeditas legiones.<sup>46</sup>  
custom was leading six light armed legions:

post eas collocabat impedimenta  
after [behind] these he was putting the baggage

totius exercitûs; inde duæ legiones,  
of the whole army; then (the) two legions,

quæ conscriptæ-erant proximè, claudebant  
which had been enrolled last, were closing up

totum agmen, que erant præsidio  
the whole line of march, and were (for) a safeguard

impedimentis. Nostri equites cum fundi-  
to the baggage. Our horsemen with the

toribus que sagittariis transgressi flumen,  
slingers and archers having passed the river,

commiserunt prælium cum equitatu hostium.  
joined battle with the cavalry of the enemy.

Quum illi identidem recipèrent (imp. subj.)  
When they now and then were betaking

se in silvas ad suos, ac rursus  
themselves into the woods to their (men), and again

facèrent (imp. subj) impetum in nostros ex  
were making an attack upon our (men) out of

silvâ; neque nostri auderent (imp. subj.) insêqui  
the wood; nor our (men) were daring to pursue

cedentes longius, quam ad quem finem  
(those) yielding farther, than to which end [the limit]

porrecta ac aperta loca pertinebant.<sup>47</sup>  
the extended and open places were reaching:

intērim sex legiones, quæ venērunt primæ,  
 meanwhile the six legions, which had come first,  
 opère dimenso, cœperunt munire castra.  
 the work having been measured, began to fortify (the) camp.  
 Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus visa-  
 When the first baggage wagons of our army were  
 sunt ab eis, qui latebant abditi in silvis,  
 seen by these, who were lying concealed in the woods,  
 quod tempus convenērat inter eos  
 which time had been agreed upon between them  
 committendi prœlium: ut constituērant intra  
 of [for] joining battle: as they had stationed within  
 silvas aciem que ordines, atque  
 the woods the battle line and ranks, and  
 ipsi confirmavērant sese,<sup>48</sup> subito  
 they themselves had encouraged themselves, suddenly  
 provolaverunt omnibus copiis, que fecerunt  
 they flew forth with all (their) forces [troops], and made  
 impetum in nostros equites. His pulsus  
 an attack upon our horsemen. These having been routed  
 facile ac proturbatis, decucurrerunt incredibili  
 easily and disordered, they ran down, with incredible  
 celeritate ad flumen; ut pænè uno tempore  
 speed to the river; so that almost at one time  
 hostes viderentur (imp. subj.) et ad silvas,  
 the enemy were seen both at the woods,  
 et in flumine, et jam in nostris  
 and in the river, and now in our  
 manibus. Autem contenderunt eadem  
 hands [close at hand]. But they hastened with the same  
 celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos  
 speed on the opposite hill to our camp, and (to) these  
 qui erant occupati in opère.  
 who were occupied in the work.

20. Omnia erant agenda Cæsari (dat.) uno  
 All (things) were to be acted [managed] by Cæsar at one

tempore: vexillum proponendum, quod erat  
 time: the standard to [must] be set up, which was



insigne, quum oporteret concurrī (passive verb)  
the sign, when it was proper to make a rush

ad arma: signum dandum tūbā:  
to arms: the signal to [must] be given with the trumpet:

milītes revocandi ab opēre: qui  
the soldiers to [must] be recalled from the work: (those) who

processerant paulò longiūs, causā aggēris  
had proceeded a little farther, for the sake of the rampart

petendi arcessendi,<sup>49</sup> acies  
[materials] to [must] be sought, to [must] be summoned, the line

instruenda: milītes cohortandi:  
(of battle) to [must] be arranged: the soldiers to [must] be exhorted:

signum dandum. Magnam partem quarum rerum  
the signal to [must] be given. A great part of which things

brevitas tempōris, et successus et incursus  
the shortness of the time, and the approach and charge

hostiū impediēbat (sing.). Dūe res erant subsidio  
of the enemy were hindering. Two things were (for) an aid

his difficultatibus, scientia atque usus  
to these difficulties, the knowledge and experience

militem, quod, exercitati superioribus  
of the soldiers, because, having been exercised in former

praeliis, poterant ipsi praescribere  
battles, they were able themselves to prescribe [assign]

sibi quid oporteret fieri, non minus  
to themselves what was proper to be done, not less

commōdè quàm doceri ab aliis:  
conveniently [fitly], than to be shown by others;

et quod Cæsar vetuerat singulos legatos  
and because Cæsar had forbidden the several lieutenants

discedere ab opēre que singulis legionibus,  
to depart from the work and (their) several legions,

nisi castris (pl.) munitis. Hi, propter  
unless the camp having been [was] fortified. These, on account of

propinquitatem et celeritatem hostiū,  
the nearness and swiftness of the enemy,

spectabant nihil jam imperiū Cæsaris;  
were awaiting not at all now the command of Cæsar;

sed per se, administrabant quæ  
but by themselves, were managing what (things)

videbantur.  
seemed (best).

21. Necessariis rebus imperatis, Cæsar  
The necessary things having been commanded, Cæsar  
decucurrit ad cohortandos<sup>50</sup> milites in partem,  
ran down for exhorting [to exhort] the soldiers into the part,  
quam fors obtulit; et devenit ad decimam  
which chance presented; and came down to the tenth  
legionem. Cohortatus-est milites non longiore  
legion. He exhorted the soldiers not with longer  
oratione, quam ūti retinerent memoriā  
speech, than that they should retain the memory  
sue pristinae virtutis, neu perturbarentur animo  
of their former valor, nor should be confused in mind  
que sustinerent fortiter impetum hostium;  
and should sustain bravely the attack of the enemy;  
et, quod hostes aberant non longius,  
and, because the enemy were distant not farther,  
quam quod telum posset adjici, dedit  
than where a weapon might be able [could] (to) be cast, he gave  
signum committendi<sup>51</sup> proeli atque profectus  
the signal of [for] joining battle and having set out  
item in alteram partem, causa cohortandi,  
likewise into another part, for the sake of exhorting,  
occurrit pugnantibus. Tanta fuit exig-  
he meets (them) fighting. So great [such] was the brief-  
uitas temporis, que tam paratus animus hostium  
ness of the time, and so prepared the mind of the enemy  
ad dimicandum, ut tempus defuerit (perf. subj;)  
for battling, that time failed  
non modo ad accommodanda insignia,  
not only for fitting on the ensigns [badges].  
sed etiam ad induendas galæas, que detrahenda  
but even for putting on the helmets, and (for) drawing off  
tegmina scutis.<sup>52</sup> In quam partem  
the coverings from the shields. Into what [whatever] part

quisque devenit casu ab opère, que  
 each came down by chance from the work, and  
 quæ signa conspexit prima, constitit  
 what (whatever) standards he beheld first, he took stand  
 ad hæc, ne dimittëret tempus pugnandi  
 at these, lest he might let pass [lose] the time of fighting  
 in quærendo suos.  
 in seeking his own (comrades).

22. Exercitu instructo, mägis ut natura  
 The army having been drawn up, rather as the nature

lõci que dejectus collis, et necessitas  
 of the place and the declivity of the hill, and the necessity

tempõris postulabat (sing.), quàm ut ratio  
 of the time were requiring, than as [according to] the plan

atque ordo militaris rēi (sing.); quum aliæ  
 and arrangement of military affairs; since some

legiones in aliã parte resistèrent (imp.  
 legions in one part (others in another) were resisting

subj.) hostibus (dat.) diversis lõcis, que densissimis  
 the enemy in different places, and very thick

sepibus interjectis, ut demonstravimus  
 hedges having been interposed [intervening], as we have shown

antè, prospectus impediretur (imp. subj.): nèque  
 before, the view was impeded: neither

certa subsidia potèrant collocari, nèque  
 sure reserves were able [could] (to) be placed, nor

provideri, quid esset õpus in quaque  
 (to) [could it] be foreseen, what might be needful in each

parte; nèque omnia imperia administrari  
 part: nor all the orders to [could] be managed [given]

ab uno.<sup>53</sup> Itaque, in tantâ iniquitate  
 by one. Therefore, in so great an irregularity

rerum, varii eventus fortunæ quodque sequebantur.  
 of things. various events of fortune also were following.

23. Milites nonæ et decimæ legionis,  
 The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions,

ut constitèrant in sinistra parte acie,  
 as they had stood in the left part of the battle line, (their)

pilis emissis, celeriter compulerunt ex  
 javelins having been thrown, quickly forced from  
 superiore loco in flumen Atrebates, (nam  
 the higher place into the river the Atrebates, (for  
 ea pars obvenērat his) exanimatos cursu  
 this part had fallen to these) exhausted [spent] with running  
 ac lassitudine, que confectos vulneribus;  
 and fatigue, and worn out with wounds:  
 et insecuti gladiis conantes  
 and having pursued (them) with swords endeavoring  
 transire, interfecerunt magnam partem eorum  
 to cross over, they killed a great part of them  
 impeditam. Ipsi dubitaverunt non transire  
 encumbered. They hesitated not to cross  
 flumen;<sup>54</sup> et progressi in iniquum locum,  
 the river; and having advanced into an unfavorable place,  
 conjecerunt in fugam hostes rursus resistentes,  
 cast into flight the enemy again resisting,  
 prælio redintegrato. Item in aliâ parte, duæ  
 the battle having been renewed Also in another part, two  
 diversæ legiones, undecima et octava, Verom-  
 different legions, the eleventh and eighth, the Verom-  
 anduis profligatis, cum quibus congressi-erant,  
 andui having been routed, with whom they had joined,  
 præliabantur ex superiore loco in ripis  
 were fighting from the higher place in [on] the banks  
 ipsis fluminis.<sup>55</sup> At totis castris (pl.)  
 themselves [the very banks] of the river. But the whole camp  
 fere nudatis à fronte et à sinistrâ  
 nearly being exposed from [on] the front and from [on] the left  
 parte, cum duodecima legio et septima  
 part [side], when the twelfth legion and the seventh  
 non magno intervallo ab ea, constitisset  
 not at a great distance from it, had taken stand  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in dextro cornu, omnes Nervii  
 upon the right wing, all the Nervii  
 confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato,  
 in closest marching line the leader (being) Boduognatus,

qui tenebat summam imperi, contenderunt  
 who was holding the chief place of command, hastened  
 ad eum locum: pars quorum cepit circumvenire  
 to this place: part of whom began to surround  
 legiones aperto latere pars petere  
 the legions (on) the open flank, part to seek [attack]  
 summum locum castrorum.  
 the highest place [portion] of the camp.

24. Eodem tempore nostri equites que  
 At the same time our cavalry and  
 pedites levis armaturæ, qui fuerant unā  
 infantry of light armor, who had been [were] together  
 cum his, quos dixeram pulsos(-esse) primo  
 with these, whom I had said to have [had] been routed in the first  
 impetu hostium, cum recipèrent (imp. subj.)  
 attack of the enemy, when they were betaking  
 se in castra, occurrebant hostibus (dat.)  
 themselves into camp, were meeting the enemy  
 adversis ac rursus petebant fugam in aliam  
 opposite and again were seeking flight into another  
 partem. Et calones, qui conspexerant à  
 part[direction]. And the camp followers, who had beheld from  
 Decumanā portā, ac summo iugo collis  
 the Decuman gate, and the highest ridge of the hill  
 nostros virores transire flumen, egressi  
 our (men) conquerors (to) cross the river, having gone out  
 causā prædandi, quum respexissent (pl. perf.  
 for the sake of plundering, when they had looked back  
 subj.) et vidissent (pl. perf. subj.) hostes  
 and had seen the enemy (to be)  
 versari in nostris castris, præcipites mandabant  
 engaged in our camp, headlong were consigning  
 sese fugæ: simul clamor que  
 themselves to flight: at the same time the shout and  
 fremitus eorum qui veniebant cum impedimentis  
 uproar of those who were coming with the baggage wagons  
 oriebatur, que alii perterriti ferebantur in aliam  
 was arising, and some dismayed were borne into one

partem.<sup>56</sup> Omñibus quibus rebus Treviri  
 part (others into another). By all which [these] things, the Trevirian  
 equites permoti, virtutis quorum est  
 cavalry having been alarmed, of the valór of whom there is  
 singularis opinio inter Gallos, qui  
 a singular [very high] opinion among the Gauls, who  
 missi causâ auxilii à civitate,  
 (having been) sent for the sake of aid by the state,  
 venerant ad Cæsarem, quum vidissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 had come to Cæsar, when they had seen (that)  
 nostra castra compleri multitudine hostium,  
 our camp to be [was] filled with a multitude of the enemy  
 legiones præmi, et teneri  
 (that) the legions to be [were] pressed, and to be [were] held  
 pænè circumventas, calones, equites,  
 almost surrounded, (that) the camp followers, the cavalry,  
 Numidas funditores, diversos que dissipatos  
 the Numidian slingers, separated and scattered  
 fugere in omnes partes, nostris rebus  
 to flee [were fleeing] into all parts, our affairs  
 desperatis, contenderunt dõmum; renuntiaverunt  
 being despaired of, hastened home; they announced  
 civitati, Romanos pulsos que  
 to the state (that) the Romans (had been) routed and  
 superatos, hostes potitos eorum<sup>57</sup>  
 overcome, (that) the enemy to have [had] got possession of their  
 castris que impedimentis (abl.).  
 camp and baggage.

25. Cæsar profectus ab cohortatione  
 Cæsar having set out from the exhortation  
 decimæ legionis ad dextrum cornu, ubi vidit  
 of the tenth legion to the right wing, where he saw  
 suos urgeri, que signis  
 his (men) to be [were] pressed hard, and the standards  
 collatis in unum locum, milites  
 having been assembled into one place, the soldiers  
 duodecimæ legionis confertos esse  
 of the twelfth legion to have been [were] crowded together

impedimento sibi ipsis ad pugnam, omnibus  
 for [as] an impediment to themselves for the battle, all  
 centurionibus quartæ cohortis occisis, que  
 the centurions of the fourth cohort having been killed, and  
 signifëro interfecto, signo  
 the standard bearer (having been) slain, the standard  
 amisso, fërè omnibus centurionibus  
 (having been) lost, almost all the centurions  
 reliquarum cohortium, aut vulneratis aut  
 of the remaining cohorts, either having been wounded or  
 occisis, in his primopilo Publïo Sextïo  
 killed, in [among] these the first centurion Publius Sextius  
 Baculo, fortissimo viro, confecto multis  
 Baculus, a very brave man, (having been) worn out with many  
 que gravibus vulneribus, ut jam non  
 and heavy [severe] wounds, (so) that now he was not  
 posset (imp. subj.) sustinere se; reliquos  
 able to support himself; the rest  
 esse tardiores, et nonnullos desertos à  
 to be [were] more slow, and some (being) deserted by  
 novissimis excedere prælio, ac  
 the rear to depart [were withdrawing] from the battle, and  
 vitare tela; hostes nèque  
 to avoid [were avoiding] the weapons; (that) the enemy neither  
 intermittere, subeuntes à fronte ex  
 to intermit [ceased], advancing on the front from  
 inferiore loco, et instare ab  
 the lower place [ground], and to press [pressed] on from [at]  
 utroque latere, et rem esse in  
 each flank, and (that) the affair to be [was] in  
 angusto, nèque esse ullum subsid-  
 a narrow [critical state], nor to be [was there] any reinforce-  
 ÿum, quod posset submitti;<sup>58</sup> scuto  
 ment, which might be able [could] (to) be sent up; (with) a shield  
 detracto (abl. abs.) uni militi (dat.)  
 (having been) snatched away from one soldier  
 ab novissimis (quod ipse venerat èd  
 from [in] the latest [rear] (because (he) himself had come there

sine scuto) processit in primam aciem;  
 without a shield) he advanced into the first battle line;  
 que centurionibus appellatis nominatim,  
 and the centurions having been called by name,  
 cohortatus reliquos, jussit milites inferre  
 having encouraged the rest, he ordered the soldiers to bear on  
 signa, et laxare manipulos, quod  
 the standards, and to loosen [open] the companies, in order that  
 possent uti gladiis (abl.) facilius. Spe  
 they might be able to use the swords more easily. Hope  
 illatâ militibus ejus, adventu ac  
 having been brought in to the soldiers by his, arrival and  
 animo (sing.) redintegrato, quum quisque  
 (their) spirits having been renewed, since every one  
 pro se cuperet (imp. subj.) navare operam  
 for himself was desiring to ply [do well] (his) task  
 in conspectu Imperatoris, etiam in suis  
 in the sight of the General, even in his  
 extremis rebus, impetus hostium tardatus-est  
 most critical affairs, the violence of the enemy was retarded  
 paulum.<sup>59</sup>  
 a little.

26. Quum Cæsar vidisset (pl. perf. subj.) septimam  
 When Cæsar had seen (that) the seventh  
 legionem, quæ constitêrat juxtâ, urgeri  
 legion, which had stood near, to be [was] pressed  
 Item ab hoste, monuit tribunos militum,  
 likewise by the enemy, he advised the tribunes of the soldiers,  
 ut legiones conjungerent sese paullatim, et  
 that the legions should join themselves gradually, and  
 inferrent signa conversa in hostes.<sup>60</sup>  
 should bear on the standards turned against the enemy.  
 Quo facto, quum alii ferrent (imp. subj.)  
 Which having been done when some were bringing  
 subsidium aliis nêque timerent (imp.  
 aid to some (others to others) nor were fearing  
 subj.)<sup>61</sup> ne aversi circumvenirentur  
 lest having been turned about they might be surrounded



ab hoste, cœperunt resistere audaciùs ac  
 by the enemy, they began to resist more boldly and  
 pugnare fortius. Intèrim milites duarum  
 to fight more bravely. Meanwhile the soldiers of the two  
 legionum, quæ fuèrant in novissimo agmine  
 legions, which had been in the rear marching line  
 præsidiò impedimentis, proelio nuntiato,  
 for protection to the baggage, the battle having been reported,  
 cursu incitato, conspiciebantur in  
 (their) course having been increased, were beheld on  
 summo colle (abl.) ab hostibus: et  
 the highest [the summit] (of the) hill by the enemy: and  
 Titus Labienus potitus castris (abl.) hostium,  
 Titus Labienus having possessed the camp of the enemy,  
 et conspicatus ex superiore loco, quæ res  
 and having beheld from the higher place, what things  
 gererentur (imp. subj.) in nostris castris, misit  
 were transpiring in our camp, sent  
 decimam legionem subsidio nostris; qui  
 the tenth legion for [as] aid to our (men); who  
 quum cognovissent (pl. perf. subj.) ex fugâ  
 when they had ascertained from the flight  
 equitum et calonum, in quo loco  
 of the cavalry and of the camp followers in what place [condition]  
 res esset (imp. subj.), que quanto  
 the affair [action] was, and in how great  
 periculo et castra et legiones et  
 danger both camp, and the legions and  
 Imperator versaretur, fecerunt nihil  
 the Commander were involved, made [left] nothing  
 reliqui (gen.) sibi ad celeritatem.<sup>62</sup>  
 left [wanting] to themselves for speed.  
 27. Tanta commutatio rerum facta-est  
 So great a change of things [conditions] was made  
 adventu horum, ut nostri etiam qui  
 by the arrival of these, that our (men) even those who  
 procubuissent (pl. perf. subj.) confecti vulneribus,  
 had lain down spent with wounds.

innixi scutis (dat.), redintegrarent (imp. subj.)  
 having leaned on the shields, were renewing

prælium. Tum calones conspicati  
 the battle. Then the camp followers having beheld

hostes perterritos, etiam særmes occurrerent  
 the enemy dismayed, even unarmed were assailing

(imp. subj.) armatis: equites verò,  
 the armed (enemy): the cavalry indeed,

ut delerent turpitudinem fugæ virtute,  
 that they might blot out the disgrace of flight by valor,

pugnabant in omnibus locis, quò præ-  
 were fighting in all places, in order that they might

ferrent se legionariis militibus  
 show better themselves than [might surpass] the legionary soldiers.

(dat.). At hostes, etiam in extremâ  
 But the enemy, even in the extreme [last]

spe salutis, præstiterunt tantam virtutem, ut,  
 hope of safety, displayed so great valor, that.

quum primi eorum cecidissent proximi  
 when the first of them had fallen the nearest [next]

insisterent jacentibus, atque pugnarent  
 would stand upon (those) lying prostrate, and would fight

ex eorum corporibus: his dejectis,  
 from their bodies: these having been thrown down

et cadaveribus coacervatis<sup>63</sup> qui  
 and the dead bodies having been heaped up (those) who

superessent, conjicerent tela in nostros ut  
 survived, would hurl weapons upon our (men) as

ex tumulo, que remitterent intercepta  
 from a mound, and would return the intercepted

pila: ut deberet (imp. subj.) judicari non  
 javelins: so that it ought to be judged (that) not

nequidquam homines tantæ virtutis<sup>64</sup> ausos-esse  
 in vain men of so great valor (to have) [had] dared

transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas  
 to cross a very broad river, to ascend very high

ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quæ  
 banks, to mount a most unfavorable place: which (things)

magnitudo animi redegerat facilia ex  
a greatness of soul had rendered easy from  
difficilimis.  
the most difficult (conditions).

28. Hoc proelio facto, et gente  
This battle having been done [fought], and the nation  
ac nomine Nerviorum redacto propè ad  
and name of the Nervii having been reduced nearly to  
internecionem : majores natu,  
extermination : (those) greater by birth [the elders];  
quod dixeramus collectos<sup>65</sup> unà  
whom we had said to have [had been] collected together  
cum puëris que mulieribus in æstuariâ  
with the boys and women into [among] the inlets  
ac paludes, hac pugna nuntiata, quum  
and marshes, this battle having been reported, when  
arbitrarentur (imp. subj.) nihil impeditum  
they were considering (that) nothing was difficult  
victoribus, nihil tutum victis;  
for the conquerors, nothing safe for the conquered,  
consensu omnium, qui supererant, miserunt  
by consent of all, (those) who survived, sent  
legatos ad Cæsarem que dediderunt  
ambassadors to Cæsar and surrendered  
se ei : et in commemorandâ,  
themselves to him : and in to be recounted  
[recounting], calamitate civitatis dixerunt :  
the calamity of the state they said (that they) :  
sese. esse redactos ex sexcentis  
themselves to be [were] reduced from six-hundred  
ad tres senatores; ex sexaginta millia  
to three senators; from sixty thousand  
hominum, ad vix quingentos, qui possent  
(of) men, to scarcely five-hundred, who were able  
ferre arma; quos Cæsar conservavit diligent-  
to bear arms; whom Cæsar preserved most care-  
issimè, que jussit uti suis  
fully, and commanded (them) to use their own.

finibus atque oppidis, ut videretur usus<sup>66</sup>  
 territories and towns, that he might seem to have used  
 misericordiâ (abl.) in miseros ac supplices;  
 compassion toward the wretched and suppliant;  
 et imperavit finitimis (dat.) ut prohiberent  
 and ordered the neighbors that they should check  
 se que suos ab injuriâ et  
 themselves and their own (people) from injury and  
 maleficiô.  
 trouble (to them).

29. Aduatuci, de quibus scripsimus suprâ,  
 The Aduatuci, of whom we have written above,  
 quum venirent (imp. subj.) omnibus copiis  
 when they came with all (their) forces  
 auxilio Nervii, hæc pugna nuntiata,  
 for aid to the Nervii, this battle having been reported,  
 reverterunt domum ex itinere; cunctis  
 returned home from the march; all  
 oppidis que castellis desertis, contulerunt  
 the towns and fortresses having been deserted, they brought together  
 omnia sua in unum oppidum egregiè  
 all their (effects) into one town excellently  
 munitum naturâ: quum quod habere  
 fortified by nature: since which [this] had  
 (imp. subj.) altissimas rupes que despectus  
 very high rocks and outlooks  
 ex omnibus partibus in circuitu,<sup>67</sup>  
 from [on] all parts [sides] in compass [round about].  
 aditus leniter acclivis relinquebatur, ex  
 an approach gently sloping was left, from [on]  
 unâ parte, non amplius ducentis pedum  
 one side, not more (than) two hundred (of) feet  
 in latitudinem: quem locum munièrant  
 in breadth: which place they had fortified  
 altissimo duplici muro: tum collocarant  
 with a very high double wall: besides they had placed  
 saxa magni pondëris, et præacutas trâbes  
 stones of great weight, and sharpened beams

in muro. Ipsi erant prognati ex Cimbris  
 on the wall. They were descended from the Cimbri  
 que Teutōnis: qui, quum facerent (imp. subj.)  
 and Teutones: who, when they were making

iter in nostram Provinciā atque Italiā,  
 (their) march into our Province and Italy,  
 his impedimentis (pl.), quæ poterant non  
 this baggage, which they were able not

agere ac portare secum, depositis  
 to bring and to carry with them, having been deposited  
 citra flumen Rhenum, reliquerunt unā  
 on this side the river Rhine, they left together

sex millia hominum ex suis custodiam  
 six thousand (of) men from [of] their own as a guard

ac praesidium. Hi, post obitum  
 and protection. These [the latter], after the destruction

eorum, exagitati multos annos à  
 of those, having been harassed many years by

finitimis, quum aliās inferrent (imp. subj.)  
 (their) neighbors, when sometimes they were waging

bellum, aliās defendērent (imp. subj.) illatum,  
 war, at other times were repelling (it) (when) waged,

pace<sup>68</sup> factā consensu omnium, delegerunt  
 a peace having been made by consent of all, chose

hunc locum domicilio.  
 this place for an abode.

30. Ac primo adventu nostri exercitus,  
 And at the first approach of our army,

faciebant crebras excursiones ex oppido,  
 they were making frequent sallies from the town,

que contendebant parvulis praeliis cum  
 and were contending in trifling battles with

nostris. Postea circummuniti vallo  
 our (men). Afterwards having been fortified around with a rampart

duodēcim pēdum, quindēcim millium in  
 of twelve feet, fifteen thousand (feet) in

circuitu, que crebris castellis, continebant  
 compass, and with frequent fortresses, they were holding

sese oppido. Ubi, vinēis actis,  
 themselves in the town. When, the sheds having been driven on,  
 aggere exstructo, viderunt turrim constitūi  
 a mound having been constructed, they saw a tower (to be) erected  
 procul, primūm irridere ex  
 at a distance, (they began) first to mock from  
 muro atque increpitare vocibus: quō  
 the wall and to call out with voices [cries]: wherefore  
 tanta machinatio institueretur ab tanto  
 so great a machine was constructed from [at] so great  
 spatīo! quibusnam manibus, aut quibus  
 a space [distance]! with what hands, or with what  
 viribus, confiderent sese collocare  
 forces, did they trust (that they) themselves to [would] place  
 turrim tanti onēris in muros, præsertim  
 a tower of so great burden against the walls, especially  
 homīnes tantūlæ staturæ, (nom nostra brevitas  
 men of so little statue, (for our shortness  
 est contemptūi plerisque Gallis hominibus,  
 is (for) a contempt to most Gallic men,  
 præ magnitudīne suorum  
 before [in comparison with] the hugeness of their own  
 corpōrum).

31. Verō ūbi viderunt moveri, et  
 But when they saw (it) (to be) moved, and  
 appropinquare mœnibus,<sup>69</sup> commoti nōvâ  
 (to) approach (to) the walls, being alarmed by the new  
 et inusitatâ specīe, miserunt legatos ad  
 and unusual sight, they sent ambassadors to  
 Cæsārem de pace: qui locuti (-sunt) ad hunc  
 Cæsar about peace: who spoke to [after] this  
 mōdum: Se existimare Romanos  
 manner: (They) themselves (to) think the Romans  
 gerere bellum non sīne ōpe deorum,  
 (to) carry on war not without the assistance of the gods,  
 qui possent promovere machinationes tantæ  
 who are able to move forward machines of so great

altitudinis tantâ celeritate, et pugnare ex  
 height with so great speed, and to fight from [at]  
 propinquitate: dixerunt permittère  
 nearness [close quarters]: they said (they) (to) give up  
 se que omnîa sua eorum  
 themselves and all their (effects) to their  
 potestati petere ac deprecari unum,<sup>70</sup> si  
 power to (they) seek and (to) beg one (thing), if  
 pro sua clementiâ ac mansuetudine, quam  
 for [according to] his clemency and mildness, which  
 ipsi audissent (pl. perf. subj.) ab aliis, statuisset  
 they had heard from others, he should decree that  
 fortè Aduatucos conservandos-esse,  
 perchance the Aduatuci should be preserved,  
 ne despoliaret se armis (abl.): omnes  
 that he would not deprive themselves of arms: all  
 finitimos fere esse inimicos sibi, ac  
 the neighbors nearly to be [are] hostile to themselves, and  
 invidere suæ virtuti (dat.), à quibus possent  
 (to) envy their valor, from whom they could  
 non defendere se, armis traditis;  
 not (to) defend themselves, (their) arms having been surrendered;  
 præstare sibi pati quamvis  
 to be [it is] better for themselves to endure any  
 fortunam à Romano populo, si deducerentur  
 fortune from the Roman people, if they should be led  
 in eum casum, quam interfici per cruciatum  
 into this calamity, than to be slain with torture  
 ab his inter quos consuissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 by those among whom they had been accustomed  
 dominari.  
 to rule.

32. Cæsar respondit ad hæc: Se  
 Cæsar answered to these (words): He himself  
 conservaturum civitatem magis suâ  
 about to (would) preserve the state rather by his  
 consuetudine quam eorum merito, si  
 custom than by their merit [deserts], if

dedidissent se, prius-quàm arēs  
 they should surrender themselves, before (that) the battering ram  
 attigisset murum: sed esse nullam  
 should touch the wall: but to be [there was] no  
 conditionem deditiōis, nisi armis tradī-  
 condition of surrender, unless the arms having been  
 tis: se facturum<sup>71</sup> id, quod  
 [were] delivered up: (he) himself about to [would] do that, which  
 fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Nervios; que  
 he had done to the Nervii; and  
 imperaturum finitimis (dat.), ne-inferrent  
 about to [would] order the neighbors, that they should not inflict  
 quam injuriā deditiis (dat.) Romani  
 any injury upon the surrendered (subjects) of the Roman  
 populi. Re nuntiata ad suos, illi  
 people. The matter having been reported to their own (people), they  
 dixerunt se facere, quæ imperarentur.  
 said (that they) themselves to [would] do, what was ordered.  
 Magnā multitudīne armorum jactā de  
 A great multitude of arms having been thrown from  
 muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum,  
 the wall into the ditch, which was before the town,  
 sic ut acervi armorum adæquarent (imp. subj.)  
 so that the heaps of arms were equalling  
 propè summam altitudinem muri que  
 nearly the highest [greatest] height of the wall and  
 aggēris: et tamen circiter tertiā parte  
 of the mound: and yet about a third part  
 celatā, (ut perspectum-est postea,)  
 having been concealed, (as was ascertained afterwards,)  
 atque retentā in oppido, portis  
 and having been retained in the town, the gates  
 patefactis, usi-sunt pace (abl.)  
 having been thrown open, they used [obtained] peace  
 eo die.  
 on that day.

33. Sub vespērum Cæsar jussit portas  
 Towards evening Cæsar ordered the gates



claudi, que milites exire ex oppido,  
 to be shut, and the soldiers to go out from the town,  
 ne oppidani accipèrent quam injuriam à  
 lest the townsmen might receive any injury from  
 militibus noctu. Illi, consilio inīto  
 the soldiers by night. They, a plan having been formed  
 antè, ut intellectum-est, quòd, deditione  
 before, as it was understood, because, the surrender  
 factâ, credidērunt nostros non  
 having been made, they had believed our (men) not  
 inducturos præsidiâ, aut denique  
 about to [would not] introduce garrisons, or, finally,  
 servaturos indiligentiùs: partim cum his  
 [would] watch somewhat carelessly: partly with these  
 armis, quæ retinuērunt et celavērunt,  
 arms, which they had retained and had concealed,  
 partim scutis factis ex cortice, aut intextis  
 partly with shields made from barks, or woven  
 viminibus, quæ induxērunt pellibus subitò  
 twigs, which they had overlaid with hides suddenly  
 (ut exiguitas temporis postulabat), fecerunt  
 (as the briefness of the time was demanding), (they) made  
 eruptionem repentè ex oppido omnibus  
 a sally unexpectedly from the town with all  
 copiis, tertîâ vigiliâ, quâ ascensus ad  
 the forces, in the third watch, where the ascent to  
 nostros munitiones videbatur minimè arduus.  
 our fortifications was seeming least difficult.  
 Significatione factâ celeriter ignibus, ut Cæsar  
 A signal having been made quickly by fires, as Cæsar  
 imperavêrat antè, concursus-est eò ex  
 had ordered before, it was [they] run together there from  
 proximis castellis; que pugnatum (-est) ab  
 the nearest fortresses; and it was fought by  
 hostibus<sup>72</sup> ita acriter, ut debuit pugnari  
 the enemy so vigorously, as it ought to be fought  
 à fortibus viris in extremâ spe salutis,  
 by brave men in the last hope of safety

iniquo loco, contra eos, qui jacèrent  
 in an unfavorable place, against those, who were casting  
 (imp. subj.) tela ex vallo que turribus, quum  
 weapons from a rampart and towers, when

omnis spes salutis consisteret (imp. subj.) in  
 all hope of safety was resting in

virtute unâ. Ad quartuor millibus hominum  
 valor alone. About four thousand (of) men

occisis, reliqui rejecti-sunt in oppidum.  
 having been killed the rest were thrown back into the town.

Postridie ejus diei (gen.), portis refractis,  
 The day after this day, the gates having been broken down,

quum nemo jam defenderet (imp. subj.), atque  
 when no one now was defending, and

nostris militibus intromissis, Cæsar vendidit  
 our soldiers having been sent within, Cæsar sold

universam sectionem ejus oppidi. Numerus  
 the entire section [booty] of this town. The number

quinquaginta trium millium capitum relatus-est  
 of fifty three thousand (of) heads [souls] was reported

ad eum ab his qui emèrant.  
 to him by those who had bought (them).

34. Eodem tempore factus-est certior  
 At the same time he was made more sure [was

informed] à Publio Crasso, quem misèrat cum  
 by Publius Crassus, whom he had sent with

unâ legione ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios,  
 one legion to the Veneti, Unelli, Osismii,

Curiosolitas, Esuvios, Aulercos, Redones, quæ  
 Curiosolitæ, Esuvii, Aulerci, Redones, which

sunt maritimæ civitates, que attingunt Oceānum,  
 are maritime states, and touch on the ocean,

omnes eas civitates redactas-esse in  
 (that) all those states to have [had] been reduced into

ditionem que potestatem Romani populi.  
 the authority and power of the Roman people.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia  
 These things having been accomplished, all Gaul

pacatā tantā opinio hujus belli  
 having been subdued, so great an opinion of this war  
 perlata-est ad barbāros, ut legati  
 was carried to the barbarians, that ambassadors  
 mitterentur (imp. subj.) ad Cæsārem ab nationibus,  
 were sent to Cæsar by the nations,  
 quæ incolērent (imp. subj.) trans Rhenum, quæ  
 which were dwelling across the Rhine, who  
 pollicerentur (imp. subj.) se daturas  
 were promising (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 obsides, facturas imperata: quas  
 hostages, about to [and would] do (the things) commanded: which  
 legationes Cæsar jussit reverti ad se,  
 embassies Cæsar commanded to return to himself,  
 prozīmā æstate inītā, quōd  
 (when) the next summer having begun [began], because  
 properabat in Italiā, que Illyricum. Ipse  
 he was hastening into Italy, and Illyricum. He himself  
 profectus-est in Italiā, legionibus deductis  
 set out into Italy, the legions having been conducted  
 in hiberna in Carnutes, Andes,  
 into winter quarters into [among] the Carnutes, Andes,  
 Turōnes, quæ civitates erant propinquæ his  
 Turones, which states were neighboring to these  
 lōcis, ūbi gessērat bellum. Ex litēris  
 places, where he had carried on war. From the letters  
 Cæsāris, supplicatio quindēcim dīes  
 of Cæsar, a general thanksgiving (for) fifteen days  
 decreta-est ob eas res: quod  
 was decreed on account of these things: which  
 accidērat nulli ante id tempus.  
 had happened to no one before this time.

## THIRD BOOK

This book describes the principal events of five wars which were carried on against the various nations of Gaul in the six hundred and ninety-eighth year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 56: the first, against the Nantuates, the Veragri and the Seduni, is successfully conducted by the lieutenant, Galba; the second, against the Veneti, though fought at a disadvantage by the Roman forces because of the position of the Venetic towns, finally ends through the strategy of Cæsar, himself, in a naval engagement; the third results in a victory by Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant, over the Venelli, the Auberici, the Eburovices, and the Lexovii; the fourth is conducted by Crassus against the Sotiates and other Aquitanian tribes, the greatest part of Aquitania being subdued; and the fifth, Cæsar's campaign against the Morini and the Menapii closes with the army entering into winter quarters after brilliantly repelling the offensive attack of the enemy.

1. Quum Cæsar proficisceretur (imp. subj.) in  
When Cæsar was setting out into

Italiam, misit Sergium Galbam cum duodecimâ  
Italy, he sent Sergius Galba with the twelfth

legione et parte equitatus in Nantuates,  
legion, and part of the cavalry into the Nantuates,

Veragros, que Sedunos; qui pertinent à  
Veragri, and Seduni; who reach[extend] from

finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno  
the borders of the Allobroges, and the lake Lemannus

et flumine Rhodano, ad summas  
and the river Rhone, to the highest [summit of the]

Alpes. Causa mittendi fuit, quod  
Alps. The cause of sending (him) was, because

volebat iter patefieri per Alpes,  
he was desiring (that) the passage (to) be opened through the Alps,

quo mercatores consueverant ire cum  
by which merchants had been accustomed to go with

magno pericūlo que magnis portorīs. Permisit  
 great danger, and great tolls. He permitted  
 huic (dat.), si arbitraretur esse opus,  
 him if he should think (it) to be [was] necessary,  
 ūti collocaret legionem in iis lōcis,  
 that he might place a legion in these places,  
 causā hiemandi. Galba, aliquot secundis  
 for the sake of wintering. Galba, some successful  
 proelīs factis, que compluribus eorum  
 battles having been made [completed], and several of their  
 castellis expugnatis, legatis missis  
 strongholds having been stormed, ambassadors having been sent  
 undique ad eum, que obsidibus dātis,  
 from every side to him, and hostages having been given,  
 et pace factā, constituit collocare duas  
 and peace having been made, resolved to place two  
 cohortes in Nantuatibus; ipse hiemare cum  
 cohorts in [among] the Nantuates; himself to winter with  
 reliquis cohortibus ejus legionis, in vico  
 the remaining cohorts of this legion, in a village  
 Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus: qui<sup>1</sup>  
 of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus: which  
 vicus positus in valle, planitie non magnā  
 village being placed [situated] in a valley, a plain not large  
 adjectā, continetur undique altissimis  
 being adjacent, is bounded on every side by very high  
 montibus. Quum hic divideretur (imp. subj.) in  
 mountains. Since this was divided into  
 duas partes flumine, concessit alteram partem  
 two parts by the river, he granted the one part  
 ejus vici Gallis; attribuit alteram  
 of this village to the Gauls; he assigned the other  
 relictam vacuam ab illis cohortibus ad  
 left vacant by them to the cohorts for win-  
 hiemandum: munivit eum locum vallo  
 tering [to winter]: he fortified this place with a rampart  
 que fossā.  
 and (with) a trench.

2. Quum complures dies hibernorum  
 When several days of the winter quarters  
 transissent (pl. perf. subj.) que jussisset (pl. perf.  
 had passed and he had ordered  
 subj.) frumentum comportari eò, factus-est  
 corn to be brought there, he was made  
 certior subitò per exploratores,  
 more sure [was informed] suddenly by scouts, (that)  
 omnes discessisse noctu ex eà  
 all to have [had] departed by night from this  
 parte vici, quam concesserat Gallis; que  
 part of the village, which he had granted to the Gauls; and  
 montes, qui impenderent (imp. subj.),  
 (that) the mountains, which were overhanging  
 teneri à maxīmā multitudīne Sedunorum  
 to be [were] held by a very great multitude of the Seduni  
 et Veragrorum. Id accidērat de aliquot  
 and of (the) Veragri. This had happened from several  
 causis, ut Galli capērat (imp. subj.) subitò  
 causes, that the Gauls were taking suddenly  
 consilium renovandi belli que opprimendæ  
 the purpose of renewing the war and of overwhelming  
 legionis. Primū, quòd despiciebant legionem,  
 the legion. First, because they were despising the legion,  
 propter paucitatem, nēque eam  
 on account of the fewness (of soldiers), nor (was) this  
 plenissimam, duabus cohortibus detractis  
 very full, two cohorts having been drawn out (of it)  
 et compluribus singillatim absentibus, qui  
 and very many individually (being) absent, who  
 missi-erant causā petendi commeatūs; tum  
 had been sent for the purpose of seeking provisions; then  
 etiā, quòd propter iniquitatem loci  
 also, because, on account of the unfavorableness of the place,  
 existimabant ne quidem primum impetum  
 they were thinking (that) not even the first attack [shock]  
 posse sustineri, quum  
 to be able [could] (to) be withstood (by the Romans), when

ipsi decurrerent ex montibus in  
(they) themselves should run down from the mountains into  
vallem, et conicerent tela. Accedebat,  
the valley, and should hurl (their) weapons. It was added,

quod dolebant suos liberos abs-  
because (that) they were mourning for their children (having

tractos ab se nomine obsidum; et  
been taken from themselves in the name of hostages; and

habebant<sup>2</sup> persuasum sibi  
they were having (it) persuaded to themselves [were persuaded]

Romanos conari occupare culmina  
(that) the Romans to endeavor [endeavored] to occupy the tops

Alpium non solum causâ itinêrum, sed  
of the Alps not only for the sake of the passes, but

etiam perpetuâ possessionis, et adjungere ea  
also of perpetual possession, and to unite these

loca finitimâ provincîæ.  
places to the neighboring province.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, quum<sup>3</sup> nèque  
These messages having been received, since neither

opus hibernorum, que munitiones  
the work of the winter quarters, and the fortifications

essent (imp. subj.) plenè perfectæ, nèque  
were fully finished, nor

esset (imp. subj.) provisum satis de frumento,  
was (there) provided enough from [of] corn,

que reliquo commeatu, quod, deditione  
and the other provisions, because, a surrender

factâ, que obsidibus acceptis, Galba  
having been made, and hostages having been received, Galba

existimaverat nihil timendum de bello:  
had thought nothing to [must] be feared about war:

concilio convocato celeriter, cœpit exquirere  
a council having been called together quickly, he began to seek

sententias. In quo concilio, quum  
the opinions. In which council, since

tantum repentini periculi accidisset (pl. perf.  
so much (of) sudden danger had happened

subj.) præter opinionem, ac jam fere omnia  
 contrary to opinion [expectation], and now nearly all  
 superiora loca conspicerentur (imp. subj.) completa  
 the higher places were seen (to be) filled  
 multitudīne armatorum, neque  
 with a multitude of armed (men), neither (could it) [any one]  
 veniri, subsidio<sup>4</sup> neque commeatus posset  
 (to be) come, to (their) aid nor were provisions able  
 supportari, itineribus interclusis: jam  
 to be brought up, the ways having been shut up [closed]: now  
 salute prope desperata, nonnullæ sententiæ  
 safety nearly having been despaired of some opinions  
 hujusmodi dicebantur; ut, impedimentis (pl.)  
 of this kind were said [delivered]; that, the baggage  
 relictis, eruptione facta, contendērent  
 having been left a sally having been made, they should hasten  
 ad salutem, iisdem itineribus, quibus  
 to safety, by the same ways, by which  
 pervenissent (pl. perf. subj.) eō. Tamen placuit  
 they had arrived there. However it pleased  
 majori parti (dat.), hoc consilio reservato  
 (to) the greater part, this counsel having been reserved  
 ad extremum, experiri eventum rei  
 to the last, to try the issue of the thing [matter]  
 interim, et defendere castra.  
 meanwhile, and to defend the camp.  
 4. Brevis spatio interjecto, vix ut  
 A short space [period] having intervened, scarcely that  
 tempus daretur collocandis<sup>5</sup> atque administrandis  
 time might be given for arranging and for managing  
 his rebus, quas constituissent (pl. perf.  
 these things, which they had resolved,  
 subj.), hostes decurrere<sup>6</sup> ex omnibus  
 the enemy (to) run down from all  
 partibus, signo dato, conjicere  
 sides, a signal having been given, (and) (to) hurl  
 lapides que gæsa in vallum. Nostri<sup>7</sup>  
 stones and heavy darts upon the rampart. Our (men)



primò repugnare fortiter intēgris  
 at first (to) repulse (them) bravely (when) with whole [fresh]  
 viribus nēque mittere ullum telum  
 power [strength] nor (to) send [cast] any weapon  
 frustra ex superiore loco: ut quæque pars  
 in vain from the higher place: as each part  
 castrorum nudata defensoribus videbatur  
 of the camps stripped from [of] defenders was seeming  
 premi, occurrere ðð, et ferre auxilium:  
 to be pressed. to (they) run there and (to) bring aid:  
 sed superari hoc, quòd  
 but to be (they are) surpassed [overcome] in this (manner), because  
 hostes defessi diuturnitate pugnæ excedebant  
 the enemy wearied by the length of the fight were retiring  
 prælio, alii succedebant intēgris viribus:  
 from battle, others were succeeding with whole [fresh] powers  
 nihil quarum rerum potērat  
 [strength]: nothing of which [these] things was able [could]  
 fieri à nostris propter paucitatem; ac  
 (to) be done by our (men) on account of (their) fewness; and  
 non mōdò facultās dabatur defesso  
 not only (no) opportunity was given to a wearied (man)  
 excedendi ex pugnâ, sed ne saucio quidem  
 of retiring from the fight, but not to a wounded even  
 relinquendi ejus loci (gen.), ubi constitērat, ac  
 of leaving his place, where he had stood, and  
 recipiendi sui (gen.).  
 of recovering himself.

5. Quum pugnaretur<sup>s</sup> jam continenter ampliùs  
 When it was fought now unceasingly more (than)  
 sex horis, ac non solùm vires (pl.) sed etiam  
 six hours, and not only strength but also  
 tela deficērent (imp. subj.) nostris (dat.), atque  
 the weapons were failing our (men), and  
 hostes instarent (imp. subj.) acriùs, que  
 the enemy were pressing on more vigorously, and  
 nostris<sup>s</sup> languidioribus, cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 our (men) having become more faint. they began

scindere vallum et complere fossas, que  
 to tear down the rampart and to fill up the ditches, and  
 res esset (imp. subj.) jam deducta ad  
 the affair [action] was now led [brought] to  
 extremum casum; Publius Sextius Beculus,  
 the last chance; Publius Sextius Baculus,  
 centurio primipili quem<sup>10</sup> diximus  
 a centurion of the first rank whom [who] we have said  
 confectum (-esse) compluribus vulneribus  
 to have [had] been overcome with many wounds  
 Nervico proelio, et item Caius Volusenus,  
 in the Nervian battle, and also Caius Volusenus,  
 tribunus militum, vir et magni consilii  
 a tribune of the soldiers, a man both of great counsel [prudence]  
 et virtutis, accurrunt ad Galbam, atque docent  
 and valor, run up to Galba, and show  
 esse<sup>11</sup> unam spem salutis, si eruptione  
 (that) to be [there is] one hope of safety, if a sally  
 factâ, experirentur extremum auxilium.  
 having been made, they should try the last aid [resort].  
 Itaque centurionibus convocatis, facit  
 Therefore the centurions having been called together, he makes  
 milites certiores intermittērent  
 the soldiers more sure [informs them] (that) they should intermit [moder-  
 ate] the battle a little while, and should deliver only  
 tela missa, que refecerunt se ex  
 the weapons sent [thrown], and should refresh themselves from  
 labore; post, signo dato, erum-  
 labor; afterwards, the signal having been given, they should  
 perent è castris, atque ponerent omnem  
 burst forth from the camp, and should put all  
 spem salutis in virtute.  
 hope of safety in (their) valor.  
 6. Faciunt, quod jussi-sunt; ac eruptione  
 They do, what they were ordered; and a sally  
 factâ subito omnibus portis, relinquunt  
 having been made suddenly from all the gates, they leave

facultatem hostibus nēque cognoscendi quid  
 opportunity to the enemy neither of knowing what  
 fieret, nēque colligendi<sup>12</sup> sui. Ita,  
 should be done, nor of collecting themselves. Thus,  
 fortunā commutatā, interficiunt eos<sup>13</sup>  
 fortune having been changed, they slay these  
 circumvetos undique, qui venērunt in spem  
 surrounded on every side, who had come into the hope  
 potiundorum castrorum; et ex amplius  
 of possessing the camps; and from more (than)  
 triginta millibus hominum, (quem numerum  
 thirty thousand (of) men, (which number  
 barbarorum constabat venisse ad castra)  
 of the barbarians it was manifest to have [had] come to the camp  
 plus tertīa parte interfectā, coniciunt  
 more (than) the third part having been killed, they throw  
 in fugam reliquos perterritos; ac patiuntur  
 into flight the rest affrighted; and suffer (them)  
 consistere ne quidem<sup>14</sup> in superioribus locis.  
 to take stand not even in the higher places.  
 Sic omnibus copiis hostium fuis,  
 Thus all the forces of the enemy having been routed,  
 que armis exutis, recipiunt se  
 and (their) arms having been stripped off, they betake themselves  
 in castra (pl.) que suas munitiones. Quo praelio  
 into the camp and their fortifications. Which battle  
 facto, quod Galba nolebat  
 having been done [completed], because Galba was unwilling  
 tentare fortunam sæpius, atque meminērat<sup>15</sup>  
 to try fortune too often, and (he had) remembered  
 sese venisse alio  
 (that) he himself to have [had] come with another [a different]  
 consilio in hiberna, videbat  
 design into winter quarters, he was seeing (that he)  
 occurrisset aliis rebus (dat.); permotus maximè  
 to have [had] met with other things; being moved principally  
 inopiā frumenti que commeatūs: postēro  
 by the want of corn and of provisions: on the following [next]

dñe, omnibus ædificiis ejus vici  
day, all the buildings of this village

incensis, contendit reverti in provinciā:  
having been burned, he hastened to return into the province;

ac nullo hoste prohibente, aut demorante  
and no enemy preventing, or delaying

iter, perduxit legionem incolūmem in  
the march, he conducted the legion safe into

Nantuates, inde in Allobrōges, que  
the Nantuates, thence into the Allobroges, and

hiemavit ibi.  
wintered there.

7. His rebus gestis, quum Cæsar  
These things having been performed, when Cæsar

existimaret (imp subj.) Galliā pacatā de  
was thinking that Gaul (was) subdued from

omnibus causis; Belgis superatis,  
all (these) reasons; the Belgæ having been overcome,

Germanis expulsis, Sedunis victis  
the Germans having been expelled, the Seduni having been conquered

in Alpibus, atque ita hieme<sup>16</sup>  
in the Alps, and so the winter

inīta profectus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in  
having begun he had set out into

Illyricum, quod volebat adire eas nationes  
Illyricum, because he was wishing to visit these nations

quōque et cognoscere regiones; subitum  
also and to know [investigate] the countries; a sudden

bellum coortum-est in Galliā. Hæc fuit causa  
war arose in Gaul. This was the cause

ejus belli. Publius Crassus adolescens hiemabat  
of this war. Publius Crassus a young man was wintering

cum septimā legione in Andibus proximis  
with the seventh legion among the Andes nearest

Oceānum mære.<sup>17</sup> Is dimisit complures præfectos  
the Ocean (sea). He dispatched very many prefects

que tribunos militum in finitimas civitates,  
and tribunes of soldiers into the neighboring states,

causâ frumenti, quòd inopiâ frumenti erat  
for the sake of corn, because a want of corn was

in his locis: in quo numéro Titus  
in these places: in which number Titus

Terrasidius missus erat in Eusubios; Marcus  
Terrasidius had been [was] sent into the Eusubii; Marcus

Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus  
Trabius Gallus into the Curiosolitæ; Quintus

Velanius cum Tito Siliò in Venetos.  
Velanius with Titus Silius into the Veneti.

8. Auctoritas hujus civitatis est longè  
The authority of this state is by far

amplissîma omnis maritimæ oræ earum  
the most extensive of all the maritime coast of these

regionum; quòd Veneti habent et plurimas  
countries; because the Veneti have both very many

naves, quibus consueverunt navigare in  
ships, with which they have been accustomed to sail into

Britanniâ; et antecedunt cæteros scientiâ  
Britain; and they excel the rest in the knowledge

atque usu nauticarum rerum; et in magno  
and use [practice] of naval matters; and in the great

impetu vasti atque aperti mæris, paucis  
violence of the vast and open sea, few

portibus interjectis, quos ipsi tinent,  
harbors intervening, which (they) themselves hold,

habent fere omnes vectigales, qui consue-  
they have nearly all (those) tributary, who have been

verunt uti eodem mæri (abl.). Initium  
accustomed to use the same sea. A beginning

fit ab iis, retinendi Siliî atque Velanî,  
was made by these, of retaining Silius and of Velanius,

quòd per eos existimabant se  
because through them they were thinking (that they) themselves

recuperaturos suos obsides, quos dedissent  
about to [would] recover their hostages, whom they had given

(pl. perf. subj.) Crasso, Finitimi adducti  
to Crassus. (Their) neighbors induced

auctoritate horum (ut consilia Gallorum sunt  
 by the authority of these (as the councils of the Gauls are  
 subita et repentina) retinent Trebium que  
 sudden and immediate) detain Trebius and  
 Terrasidium de eadem causâ: et legatis  
 Terrasidius on the same cause: and ambassadors  
 missis celeriter, conjurant<sup>18</sup> inter se  
 having been sent quickly, they conspire among themselves  
 per suos principes; esse acturos  
 through their chiefs; (that they) to be about to [would] act  
 nihil nisi communi consilio, que laturos  
 in nothing unless by common counsel, and about to [would] bear  
 eundem exitum omnis fortunæ; que sollicitant  
 the same issue of every fortune; and they solicit  
 reliquas civitates, ut mallent permanere  
 the remaining states, that they should prefer to remain  
 in eâ libertate, quam acceperant à  
 in this liberty, which they have received from  
 majoribus, quàm perferre servitutem Romanorum.  
 (their) ancestors, than to endure the slavery of the Romans.  
 Omni maritimâ orâ perductâ celeriter  
 All the maritime coast having been brought over quickly  
 ad suam sententiâ, mittunt communem  
 to their opinion, they send a common  
 legationem ad Publium Crassum, "Si velit  
 embassy to Publius Crassus, "If he wishes  
 recipere suos, remittat obsides  
 to receive his (ambassadors), let him send back (the) hostages  
 sibi."  
 to themselves."

9. De quibus rebus Cæsar factus  
 Concerning which things Cæsar having been made  
 certior à Crasso, jûbet  
 more certain [having been informed] by Crassus, he orders  
 longas naves ædificari intërim in  
 long ships [war ships] to be built meanwhile on  
 flumine Ligëri, quod influit Oceânus,  
 the river Liger [Loire], which flows into the Ocean,

remīges instittī ex Provinciā, nautas  
 rowers to be provided from the Province, sailors  
 que gubernatores comparari, quōd ipse  
 and pilots to be procured, because he himself  
 abērat longius. His rebus administratis  
 was distant farther [too far]. These things having been managed,  
 ipse contendit celeriter ad exercitum, quā-  
 he himself hastened quickly to the army, as soon  
 primū potuit per tempus anni.  
 as he was able through [for] the time of the year.  
 Venēti que item reliquae civitates, adventu  
 The Veneti and also the other states, the arrival  
 Cæsaris cognito, simul quōd  
 of Cæsar having been known, at the same time because  
 intelligebant quantum facinus admisissent  
 they were understanding how great a crime they had committed  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in se, legatos,<sup>19</sup> nomen  
 against themselves, the ambassadors, a name  
 quod semper fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) sanctum que  
 which always had been holy and  
 inviolatum apud omnes nationes, retentos  
 inviolate at [among] all nations, to have [had] been  
 ab se et coniectos in vincula;  
 detained by themselves and cast into chains;  
 institūnt parare bellum pro  
 resolve to prepare a war for [in proportion to]  
 magnitudine periculi, et maxime providere  
 the greatness of the danger, and especially to provide  
 ea quae pertinerent (imp. subj.)  
 these (things) which were pertaining  
 ad usum navium; hoc, majore  
 to the use of ships; from this [on this account], with greater  
 spe, quōd confidebant multum naturā  
 hope, because they were relying much in [on] the nature  
 loci. Sciebant pedestria itinera  
 of the place. They were knowing (that) the foot ways  
 concisa-esse aestuariis; navigationem  
 to have [had] been cut up by æstuaries; navigation

impeditam<sup>20</sup> propter inscientiam locorum  
 prevented on account of (our) ignorance of the places  
 que paucitatem portuum: confidebant nostros  
 and the fewness of the harbors: they were trusting (that) our  
 exercitus neque posse morari diutius<sup>21</sup>  
 armies neither to [would] be able to delay longer  
 apud se, propter inopiam frumenti.  
 at [among] themselves, on account of the want of corn.  
 Ac jam, ut omnia acciderent contra  
 And now, though all (things) might happen against [contrary to]  
 opinionem, tamen se posse  
 (their) opinion, yet (they) themselves to [would] be able (to do)  
 plurimum navibus: Romanos habere neque ullam  
 very much by ships: the Romans to have [had] neither any  
 facultatem navium, neque novisse vada,  
 power[supply] of ships, nor to have known [knew] the shallows,  
 portus, insulas eorum locorum, ubi essent (imp.  
 harbors, islands of these places, where they were  
 subj.) gesturi bellum: ac perspiciebant  
 about to carry on war: and they were perceiving  
 navigationem in concluso mari, atque in  
 (that) navigation in an inclosed sea, and in  
 vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, esse longè  
 a very immense and very open Ocean, to be [is] far  
 aliam. His consiliis initis,  
 other [different], These counsels having been entered into,  
 mununt oppida, comportant frumenta (pl.)<sup>22</sup>  
 they fortify the towns, they bring together corn  
 ex agris in oppida; cogunt naves  
 from the fields into the towns; they collect (their) ships  
 quàm-plurimas possunt, in Venetiam, ubi  
 as many as they can, into Venetia, where  
 constabat Cæsarem primum gesturum  
 it was evident Cæsar first to be about to [would] carry on  
 bellum. Adsciscunt socios sibi ad id  
 the war. They unite (as) allies to themselves for this  
 bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambialites,  
 war the Osismii. Lexovii. Nannetes. Ambialites,



Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios; accersunt auxilia  
 Morini, Diablintes, Menapii: they send for auxiliaries  
 ex Britannia, quae est posita contra  
 from Britain, which is located over against  
 eas regiones.  
 these countries.

10. Hæ erant difficultates gerendi,<sup>23</sup> belli  
 These were the difficulties of carrying on, a war  
 quas ostendimus supra: sed tamen multa  
 which we have shown above: but yet many (things)  
 incitabant Cæsarem ad id bellum: injuriæ (pl.)  
 were urging Cæsar to this war: the injuries [wrong]  
 retentorum Romanorum equitum; rebellio  
 of detaining Roman knights; an uprising  
 facta post deditionem: defectio, obsidibus  
 having been made after a surrender: the revolt, hostages  
 datis: conjunctio tot civitatum:  
 having been given: the conspiracy of so many states:  
 in-partis, ne, hæc parte neglecta,  
 in particular, lest, this part [region] having been neglected  
 reliquæ nationes arbitrentur idem  
 the remaining nations might think the same (thing)  
 licere sibi. Itaque quum  
 to [would] be allowed to themselves. Therefore since  
 intelligeret (imp. subj.) fere omnes Gallos  
 he understood (that) nearly all the Gauls  
 studere novis rebus, et  
 to be [were] eager for new things [revolution], and  
 excitari mobiliter que celeriter ad  
 to be [were] aroused readily and quickly to  
 bellum; autem omnes homines naturâ  
 war; moreover (that) all men by nature  
 studere libertati, et odisse  
 to be [are] eager for liberty, and (to) have hated  
 conditionem servitutis; prius-quam plures civitates  
 the condition of slavery; before (that) more states  
 conspirarent, putavit exercitum partiendum,  
 should conspire, he thought the army to [must] be divided;

ac distribuendum latius sibi(dat.).  
 and to [must] be distributed more widely by himself.

11. Itaque mittit Titum Labienum legatum  
 Therefore he sent Titus Labienus (his) lieutenant

cum equitatu in Treviros, qui sunt proximi  
 with the cavalry among the Treviri, who are nearest

flumini Rheno. Mandat huic(dat.), adeat  
 to the river Rhine. He charges him, (that) he go to

Remos que reliquos Belgas, atque continēat  
 the Remi and the remaining Belgæ, and keep (them)

in officio; que prohibeat Germanos, qui  
 in duty; and prevent the Germans, who

dicebantur arcessiti<sup>24</sup> auxilio à Belgis, si  
 were said (to have) been summoned for aid by the Belgæ, if

conentur per vim transire flumen  
 they may attempt by force to cross the river

navibus. Jūbet Publium Crassum cum  
 with ships. He orders Publius Crassus with

duodēcim legionariis cohortibus, et magno número  
 twelve legionary cohorts, and a great number

equitatus proficisci in Aquitaniam, ne auxilia  
 of cavalry to set out into Aquitania, lest auxiliaries

mittantur ex his nationibus in Galliam, ac  
 may be sent from these nations into Gaul, and

tantæ nationes jungantur. Mittit Quintum  
 so great nations may be united. He sends Quintus

Titurium Sabinum legatum cum tribus legionibus  
 Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant with three legions

in Unellos, Curiolitas, que Lexovios; qui  
 among the Unelli, the Curiosolitæ, and the Lexovii; who

curet eam manum destinendam.  
 may take care (that) this band (of people) (to) be kept apart.

Præfecit Decium Brutum adolescentem classi,  
 He appointed Decius Brutus a young man to the fleet,

que Gallicis navibus, quas jussērat  
 and to the Gallic ships, which he had ordered

convenire ex Pictonibus que Santōnis, et  
 to assemble from the Pictones and Santoni. and

reliquis pacatis regionibus; et jūbet  
 the remaining subdued countries; and he orders  
 proficisci quàm-primùm posset, in  
 (him) to set out as soon as he may be able, among  
 Venētos. Ipse contendit eò pedestribus  
 the Veneti. He himself hastens thither with the foot  
 copiis.  
 forces.

12. Sītus oppidorum ērant fērè  
 The situations of (their) towns were nearly  
 ejusmodi, ut posita in extremis  
 of this sort, that having been placed [located] on extreme  
 lingulis que promontoriis, haberent (imp.  
 little tongues (of land) and promontories, they were having  
 subj.) nèque aditum pedibus, quum æstus  
 neither access by feet [foot], when the tide  
 incitavisset se ex alto, quod accidit  
 may have aroused itself from the deep, which occurs  
 semper bis spatio duodēcim horarum:  
 always twice in the space [period] of twelve hours:  
 nèque navibus, quòd æstu rursus minuente  
 nor by ships, because the tide again diminishing  
 [ebbing] naves afflicarentur in vādis. Ita  
 the ships may be dashed on the shoals. Thus  
 utrāque re oppugnatio oppidorum  
 by each thing [condition] a siege of the towns  
 impediēbatur. Ac, si quando fortè sup-  
 was hampered. And, if at any time by chance having  
 erati magnitudine opēris, mări  
 been overcome by the greatness of a work, the sea  
 extruso aggere ac molibus, atque  
 having been shut out by a mound and by moles, and  
 his adæquatis mœnibus oppidi,  
 these having been made equal to the walls of the town,  
 cœperant<sup>25</sup> desperare suis fortunis; magno  
 they had begun to despair of their fortunes; a great  
 numēro navium appulso, cujus rei  
 number of ships having been landed, of which thing [means]

habebant summam facultatem, deport-  
 they were having the highest [greatest] power [supply], they were  
 abant omnia sua que recipiebant se  
 removing all their (effects) and were betaking themselves  
 in proxima oppida: ibi defendebant se  
 into the nearest towns: there they were defending themselves  
 rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci. Facie-  
 again by the same favorableness of place. They were  
 bant hæc ideo facilius magnam partem  
 doing these (things) for this reason more easily a great part  
 æstatis, quod nostræ naves detinebantur  
 of the summer, because our ships were detained  
 tempestatibus; que erat summa difficultas  
 by storms; and (there) was the highest [greatest] difficulty  
 navigandi vasto atque aperto mari, magnis  
 of sailing in an immense and open sea, with great  
 æstibus, raris ac præpè nullis portibus.  
 tides, with few and nearly no harbors,  
 13. Namque ipsorum naves factæ-erant que  
 For indeed their ships had been made and  
 armatæ ad hunc modum: carinæ  
 armed [equipped] according to this manner: the keels (were)  
 aliquanto planiores quàm nostrarum navium;  
 considerably more flat than (those) of our ships;  
 quò<sup>26</sup> possent excipere  
 in order that they might be able [could] (to) receive [endure]  
 vada ac decessum æstus facilius:  
 the shoals and the departure [ebb] of the tide more easily:  
 proræ admòdum erectæ, atque item puppes,  
 the prows (were) very upright, and also the sterns  
 accommodatæ ad magnitudinem fluctuum que  
 suited to the greatness of the waves and  
 tempestatum. Totæ naves factæ ex  
 storms. The whole ships (were) made from  
 robore, ad perferendam<sup>27</sup> quamvis vim et  
 oak, for bearing [enduring] any force and  
 contumeliam; transtra ex trabibus  
 violence; the benches (were) made from [of] beams

pedalibus in latitudinem (acc), confixa ferrēis  
 a foot in width, fixed [fastened] together with iron  
 clavis, crassitudine pollicis digiti:  
 nails, with [of] the thickness of the thumb (finger):  
 anchōræ revinctæ ferrēis catenis, pro  
 the anchors (were) fastened with iron chains, instead of  
 funibus. Pelles quæ alutæ (pl.) tenuiter  
 ropes. Hides and fine leathers (were) thinly  
 confectæ pro velis; sive propter inopiam  
 dressed for sails; whether on account of the want  
 lini, atque inscientiam usūs ejus; sive,  
 of flax, and ignorance of the use of it; or,  
 quod est magis verisimile, quod arbitrabantur  
 what is more likely, because they were thinking  
 tantas tempestates oceāni quæ tantos<sup>28</sup>  
 (that) so great storms of the ocean and so great  
 impētus ventorum posse non sustineri,  
 violence of winds to be able [could] not (to) be supported,  
 ac tanta onera navium regi velis  
 and so great burdens of ships (to) be governed by sails  
 satis commodè. Congressus nostræ classi  
 sufficiently conveniently. The encounter to [of] our fleet  
 cum his navibus erat ejusmodi ut præstaret  
 with these ships was of this kind that it was excelling  
 (imp. subj.) celeritate unâ, et pulsu remorum;  
 in speed alone, and the beat [stroke] of oars;  
 reliqua essent (imp. subj.) aptiora et  
 the remaining (conditions) were more suitable and  
 accommodatiora illis pro naturâ  
 more accommodated to them for [in view of] the nature  
 loci, pro vi tempestatum: enim  
 of the place (and), (for) the violence of the storms: for  
 nostræ neque poterant nocere his (dat.)  
 our (ships) neither were able to injure them  
 rostro, (tanta erat firmitudo in his)  
 with the beak [prow], (so great was the strength in them)  
 neque telum adiciebatur<sup>29</sup> facîle propter  
 nor a weapon was hurled easily on account of

altitudinem; et de eâdem causâ continebantur  
 (their) height; and from the same cause they were held fast  
 scopulis mînus commôdè. Accedebat  
 by grappling hooks less conveniently. It was added,  
 ut quum ventus cœpisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 that when the wind had begun  
 sævire et dedidissent (pl. perf. subj.) se  
 to rage and they had given [committed] themselves  
 vento, et ferrent tempestatem facilius,  
 to the wind, both they would bear a storm more easily,  
 et consistèrent tutius in vâdis, et  
 and would stop more safely in the shoals, and  
 derelictæ ab æstu, timerent nihil  
 having been left by the tide, they would fear nothing  
 saxa et cautes: casus omnium  
 [in no wise] the rocks and reefs: accidents of all  
 quarum rerum erant extimescendi nostris  
 which [these] things [kinds] were to be dreaded by our  
 navibus (dat.).  
 ships,

14. Compluribus oppidis expugnatis, ubi  
 Several towns having been stormed, when

Cæsar intellexit tantum laborem sumi  
 Cæsar understood so great labor to be [was] taken  
 frustra, nèque fugam hostium reprîmi,  
 in vain, neither the flight of the enemy to be [was] checked,  
 oppidis captis, nèque posse<sup>30</sup>  
 the towns having been taken, nor to be able [could he]  
 noceri his (dat.), statuit classem  
 to be injured [injure] them, he resolved (that) the fleet  
 expectandam, Ubi quæ convenit ac  
 to [must] be awaited. When which [this] assembled and  
 primùm visa-est ab hostibus, circiter ducentæ<sup>31</sup>  
 first was seen by the enemy, about two hundred  
 viginti paratissimæ eorum, naves atque  
 twenty most prepared [equipped] of their, ships and  
 ornatissimæ omni genere armorum,  
 most furnished with all [every] kind of arms,

profectæ è portu, constiterunt adversæ  
 having set out from port, stood opposite  
 nostris. Nēque satis constabat Bruto,  
 (to) our (ships). Neither was it sufficiently clear to Brutus,  
 qui præerat classi (dat.), nēque tribunis  
 who commanded the fleet, nor to the tribunes  
 militum que centurionibus, quibus singulæ  
 of the soldiers and to the centurions, to whom single  
 naves attributæ-erant, quid agerent,  
 [particular] ships had been assigned, what they should do,  
 aut quam rationem pugnae insistērent: enim  
 or what plan of battle they should adopt: for  
 cognovērant<sup>32</sup> posse non noceri  
 they had known to be able [they could] not (to) be injured  
 rostro: autem turribus excitatis,  
 by the beak [prow]: but towers having been raised,  
 tamen altitudo puppium ex barbāris  
 yet the height of the sterns from [of] the barbarian  
 navibus superabat has; ut nēque tela  
 ships was overtopping these; (so) that neither weapons  
 possent adjici commōdè satis ex  
 might be able [could] (to) be thrown conveniently enough from  
 inferiore loco, et missa à Gallis  
 the lower place, and (those) sent by the Gauls  
 acciderent gravius. Una res præparata à  
 would fall more heavily. One thing prepared by  
 nostris erat magno usui; præcutæ falces,  
 our (men) was for [of] great use; sharp-pointed scythes.  
 insertæ que affixæ longurīs, formā non  
 inserted in and fastened to long poles, with a shape not  
 absimili muralium falcium:<sup>33</sup> quum funes, qui  
 unlike (that) of wall scythes: when the ropes, which  
 destinabant antennis ad malos, comprehensi-erant  
 were bracing the yards to the masts had been seized  
 que adducti his, navigio incitato  
 and drawn taut by these, the vessel having been urged forward  
 remis, prærumpebantur: quibus  
 with the oars, they were broken apart: which

abscissis, antennæ necessariō concidebant;  
having been cut away, the yards necessarily were falling;

ut quum omnis spes consistēret (imp. subj.)  
(so) that since all hope was resting

Galliis navibus in velis que armamentis,  
for the Gallic ships in (their) sails and riggings,

his ereptis, omnis usus<sup>34</sup> navium  
these having been torn away, all use of (their) ships

eriperetur (imp. subj.) uno tempore. Reliquum  
was wrested away at one time. The remaining

certamen erat positum in virtute; quā  
contest was placed in valor; in which

nostri milites facīle superabant; atque māgis  
our soldiers easily were excelling; and the more

ēdō, quōd res gerebatur in  
for this reason, because the action was carried on in

conspēcto Cæsaris atque omnis exercitus, ut  
sight of Cæsar and of all the army, that

nullum factum paulō fortius posset latere;  
no deed a little more brave was able to be hid;

enim omnes coles ac superiora loca, unde  
for all the hills and higher places, whence

erat propinquus despectus in mare, tenebantur  
was a near view upon the sea, were held

ab exercitu.  
by the army.

15. Antennis disiectis, ut diximus,  
The yards having been thrown down, as we have said,

quum binæ aut ternæ naves circumsisterent (imp.  
when two or three ships were surrounding

subj.) singulas naves, milites contende-  
(our) individual ships, the soldiers were striving

summā vi transcendere in naves  
with highest [utmost] force [exertion] to climb over into the ships

hostium. Quod<sup>35</sup> postquam barbāri  
of the enemy. Which after (that) the barbarians

animadverterunt fieri, compluribus navibus  
perceived to be [was] done, several ships



expugnatis, quum nullum auxilium  
 having been stormed [boarded], since no aid  
 reperiretur ei rei, contenderunt petere  
 was found for this thing [crisis], they hastened to seek  
 salutem fugā: ac jam navibus conversis in  
 safety by flight: and now the ships having been turned to  
 eam partem, quod ventus ferebat, tanta  
 that part [direction], where the wind was bearing, so great  
 malacia ac tranquillitas subito exstitit, ut  
 a calm and stillness suddenly occurred, that  
 possent (imp. subj.) non movere se ex  
 they were able not to move themselves from  
 loco: quæ res<sup>36</sup> quidem fuit maximè opportuna  
 the place: which thing indeed was most seasonable  
 ad conficiendum negotium, nam nostri  
 for completing the business [engagement], for our (men)  
 consecrati singulas expugnaverunt, ut  
 having pursued individual (ships) stormed [boarded] (them), so that  
 perpaucæ ex omni numero pervenirent ad  
 very few from [of] all the number arrived to  
 terram, interventu noctis, quum pug-  
 land, by the interposition of night, since it was  
 naretur<sup>37</sup> (imp. subj.) ab quartâ horâ usque  
 (they) fought from the fourth hour until  
 ad occasum solis.  
 (to) the setting of the sun.

16. Quo prælio bellum Venetorum que  
 By which battle the war of the Veneti and

totius maritimæ oræ confectum-est. Nam  
 of the whole maritime coast was finished. For

quum omnis juvenus, etiam omnes gravioris  
 not only all (their) youth, also all of more mature

ætatis, in quibus<sup>38</sup> fuit, aliquid consilii aut  
 age, in whom (there) was, something [some] (of) counsel or

dignitatis conveniant eò; tum coegērant  
 (of) dignity had assembled there; but also they had collected

in unum locum, quod navium fuerat  
 into one place, what [whatever] (of) ships had been

ubique: quibus amissis, reliqui habebant  
 everywhere: which having been lost, the rest were having  
 neque quod recipèrent se, neque  
 neither where they might betake themselves, nor  
 quemadmodum defendèrent oppida. Itaque  
 how they might defend (their) towns. Therefore  
 dediderunt se que omnia sua  
 they surrendered themselves and all their (effects)  
 Cæsari: in quos Cæsar statuit vindicandum  
 to Cæsar: against whom Cæsar resolved to be avenged  
 gravius èd quod jus legat-  
 more severely for this reason in order that the right of ambas-  
 sadors conservaretur diligentius à barbaris  
 might be observed more carefully by the barbarians  
 in reliquum tempus. Itaque, omni  
 for the remaining [future] time. Therefore, all  
 senatu necato, vendidit reliquos sub  
 the senate having been put to death, he sold the rest under  
 coronâ.<sup>39</sup>  
 the crown [at auction].

17. Dum hæc geruntur in  
 While these (things) are carried on in [among]

Venētis, Quintus Titurius Sabinus pervenit in  
 the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus passed into  
 fines Venellorum, cum his copiis, quas  
 the borders of the Venelli, with these forces, which  
 acceperat à Cæsare. Viridovix præerat  
 he had received from Cæsar. Viridovix commanded  
 his (dat.), ac tenebat summam imperii  
 these, and was holding the height (of) [the chief] power  
 omnium earum civitatum, quæ defecerant; ex  
 of all of these states, which had revolted; from  
 quibus coegerat exercitum que magnas  
 which he had collected an army and great  
 copias. Atque his paucis diebus, Aulerci,  
 resources. And in these few days, the Aulerci,  
 Eburovices, que Lexovii, suo senatu inter-  
 Eburovices, and Lexovii, their senate having been put

fecto, quòd nolebant esse auctores belli,  
to death, because they were unwilling to be advisers of war,  
clausērunt portas, quę conjunxerunt se  
shut (their) gates, and joined themselves  
cum Viridovice: quę pręterea magna multitudo  
with Viridovix: and besides a great multitude  
perditorum hominū quę latronum convenērat  
of abandoned men and robbers had assembled  
undique ex Galliā, quos spes  
from every side from Gaul, whom the hope  
prędandi quę studium<sup>40</sup> bellandi revoc-  
of plundering and an inclination of warring were calling  
abat ab agri culturā et quotidiano labore.  
away from agriculture and daily labor.  
Sabinus tenebat sese castris (pl.) loco  
Sabinus was holding himself in camp in a place  
idonēo omnibus rebus: quum Viridōvix  
suitable for all things: when Viridovix  
considisset (pl. perf. subj.) contrā eum spatio  
had pitched camp opposite him (to) a space  
[distance] dūm millium, quę copis  
of two miles, and (his) forces  
productis quotidie faceret (imp. subj.)  
having been led forth daily he was making  
potestatem pugnandi; ut Sabinus jam  
power [an opportunity] of fighting; so that Sabinus already  
veniret (imp. subj.) in contemtionem non solum  
was coming into contempt not only  
hostibus, sed etiam carperetur (imp. subj.)  
to [as regards] the enemy, but also was censured  
nonnihil vocibus nostrorum militum: quę  
somewhat by the expressions of our soldiers: and  
prębuit tantam opinionem timoris, ut  
he exhibited so great an opinion [a sentiment] of fear, that  
hostes auderent jam accedere ad vallum  
the enemy would dare at length to approach to the rampart  
castrorum (pl.). Faciebat id eā causā,  
of the camp. He was doing this from this cause [reason]

quòd existimabat<sup>41</sup> non dimicandum  
because he was thinking (it) not to [must not] be contended

legato (dat.) cum tantâ multitudîne hostium,  
by a lieutenant with so great a multitude of the enemy,

præsertim eo absente, qui teneret (imp. subj.)  
especially he (being) absent, who was holding

summam imperiî, nisi æquo loco,  
the height [chief] (of) command, unless on equal place [ground],

aut aliquâ opportunitate datâ.  
or some opportunity having [had] been given.

18. Hâc opinione timoris confirmatâ,  
This opinion of fear having been strengthened,

delêgit quandam Gallum idoneum et callidum  
he selected a certain Gaul a suitable and shrewd

hominem, ex iis, quos habebat secum  
man, from those, whom he was having with him

causâ auxilii (sing.). Persuadet huic (dat.)  
for the sake of reinforcements. He persuades him

magnis præmiis que pollicitationibus, uti  
by great rewards and promises, that

transêat<sup>42</sup> ad hostes: edocet quod  
he go over to the enemy: he shows (him) what

vêlit fieri. Qui, ubi venit ad eos  
he wishes to be done. Who, when he came to them

pro perfugâ, proponit timorem Romanorum:  
for [as] a deserter, exposed the fear of the Romans:

docet quibus angustiis Cæsar ipse  
he shows (them) with what straits [difficulties] Cæsar himself

prematur (pres. subj.) à Venëtis: nèque<sup>43</sup> longius  
is pressed by the Veneti: nor farther

abesse, quin Sabinus educat  
to be [was it] distant (from fact), but that Sabinus may lead out

exercitum clâm ex castris (pl.) proximâ  
(his) army secretly from the camp on the next

nocte, et proficiscatur ad Cæsarem, causâ  
night, and (may) set out to Cæsar, for the sake

ferendi auxilii. Ubi quod auditum-est,  
of bearing aid, When which (this report) was heard,

omnes conclamant, occasionem gerendi ne-  
 all cry out (that), an opportunity of performing the  
 gotli bènè non amittendam-esse: oportere  
 business [task] well not to [must not] be lost: to be fitting  
 iri ad castra (pl.). Multae  
 'they ought] to be gone [to go] to the camp. Many  
 res hortabantur Gallos ad hoc consilium:  
 things were encouraging the Gauls to this plan:  
 cunctatio Sabini superiorum dierum;  
 the hesitation of Sabinus of [on] the former days;  
 confirmatio perfugæ; inopia<sup>44</sup> cibarium (pl.),  
 the assurance of the deserter; the want of food,  
 cui provisum-erat ab his parum  
 for which it had been provided by them not very  
 diligenter; spes Venetici belli; et quod  
 carefully; the hopes of the Venetian war; and because  
 homines fère credunt libenter id quod  
 men generally believe willingly that which  
 völuent. Adducti<sup>45</sup> iis rebus, dimittunt  
 they desire. Induced by these things, they dismiss  
 Viridovicem que reliquos dūces ex  
 Viridovix and the rest of the generals from  
 concilio non prius quam concessum-sit ab  
 the council not sooner than it has been [was] granted by  
 his, ūti capiunt arma et contendunt ad  
 them, that they may take arms and may hasten to  
 castra (pl.). Quæ re concessâ, læti,  
 the camp. Which thing having been granted, (they) joyful,  
 vëlut victoriâ exploratâ, sarmentis que  
 as if the victory having been [were] assured, fagots and  
 virgultis collectis, quibus complēant  
 bushes having been collected, with which they may fill up  
 fossas Romanorum, pergunt ad castra (pl.).  
 the ditches of the Romans, they press on to the camp.  
 19. Locus castrorum (pl.) erat editus, et  
 The situation of the camp was elevated, and  
 paullatim acclivis ab imo, circiter  
 gradually sloping from the lowest [from below] about

mille passus: huc contenderunt magno  
 a thousand paces: hither they hastened with great  
 cursu,<sup>46</sup> ut quàm minimum spatii  
 running, that as least [little as possible] (of) space [time]  
 datur Romanis ad colligendos,  
 might be given to the Romans for collecting,  
 que armandos, se que exanimati  
 and arming themselves and breathless  
 pervenerunt. Sabinus, hortatus suos,  
 they arrived (there). Sabinus, having encouraged his (men),  
 dat signum cupientibus: hostibus  
 gives the signal to (them) being eager for (it): the enemy  
 impeditis propter ea onera, quæ  
 having been encumbered on account of these burdens, which  
 ferebant, jubet eruptionem fieri subito  
 they were bearing, he orders a sally to be made suddenly  
 duabus portis. Factum-est<sup>47</sup> opportunitate  
 from the two gates. It was done by the convenience  
 loci, inscientia ac defatigatione hostium,  
 of the place, by the ignorance and exhaustion of the enemy.  
 virtute militum ac exercitatione superiorum  
 by the valor of the soldiers and the practice of former  
 pugnarum, ut ferrent (imp. subj.) ne quidem  
 battles, that they were bearing not even  
 primum impetum nostrorum; ac statim  
 the first charge of our (men); and immediately  
 vertèrent (imp. subj.) terga: quos<sup>48</sup> impeditos  
 they were turning (their) backs: whom encumbered  
 nostri milites consecuti integris viribus (pl.),  
 our soldiers having pursued with fresh strength,  
 occiderunt magnum numerum eorum: equites  
 slew a great number of them: the cavalry  
 consecuti reliquos reliquerunt paucos, qui  
 having pursued the rest left few, who  
 evaserant ex fuga. Sic Cæsar factus-est  
 had escaped from flight. Thus Cæsar was made  
 certior uno tempore et de  
 more sure [was informed] in [at] one time both of

navali pugnâ, et de victoriâ Sabini:  
 the naval battle, and of the victory of Sabinus:  
 que omnes civitates dediderunt se stâtim  
 and all the states surrendered themselves immediately

Titurio. Nam ut animus Gallorum est  
 to Titurius. For as the spirit of the Gauls is

alâcer ac promptus ad suscipiendâ<sup>49</sup> bella,  
 alert and ready for undertaking wars,

sic eorum mens est mollis ac minimè  
 so their mind is soft [weak] and by no means

resistens ad perferendas calamitates.  
 resistant for bearing misfortunes.

20. Fêrè eodem tempore, quum Publius  
 Nearly at the same time, when Publius

Crassus pervenisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Aquitaniam,  
 Crassus had arrived into [at] Aquitania,

quæ pars, ut dictum-est antè, est  
 which part, as has been said before, is

æstimanda ex tertîa parte Galliae, et  
 to [must] be regarded from [as] the third part of Gaul, both

latitudine regionum et multitudine  
 by the breadth [extent] of countries and by the multitude

homînum; quum intelligeret (imp. subj.) bellum  
 of men; when he was understanding (that) war

gerendum sibi (dat.) in eis locis,  
 to [must] be carried on by himself in these places,

ubi paucis (abl.) annis antè Lucius  
 where a few years before Lucius

Valerius Præconinus legatus interfectus-esset  
 Valerius Præconinus the lieutenant had been killed,

(pl. perf. subj.), exercitu pulso; atque  
 (his) army having been routed; and

unde Lucius Manilius Proconsul, impedi-  
 whence Lucius Manilius the Proconsul, (his)

mentis amissis, profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),  
 baggage having been lost, had escaped,

intelligebat non mediocrem diligentiam  
 he was understanding (that) not [no] moderate diligence

adhibendam sibi (dat.). Itaque, frumentariā  
to [must] be employed by himself. Therefore, corn

re provisā, auxiliis que equitatu  
affair [grain] having been provided, auxiliaries and cavalry

comparato, præterea multis fortibus viris  
having been prepared, moreover many brave men

Tolosā et Narbone (quæ sunt civitates  
from Tolosa and Narbo (which are cities

provinciæ Gallæ, finitimæ his regionibus)  
of the province of Gaul, neighboring to these countries)

evocatis nominatim, introduxit exercitum  
having been called out by name, he led forth (his) army

in fines Sotiatum. Cujus adventu  
into the territories of the Sotiates. Whose arrival

cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coac-  
having been known, the Sotiates, great forces having been

tis, que equitatu, quo valebant  
collected, and cavalry, in which they were availing

plurimum, adorti nostrum agmen in itinere,  
most, having attacked our army on the march,

primum commiserunt equestre prælium; deinde  
first engaged (in) a cavalry fight; afterwards

suo equitatu pulso, atque nostris  
their cavalry having been routed, and our (men)

insequentibus, ostenderunt subito pedestres  
pursuing, they showed [revealed] suddenly the foot

copias, quas collocaverant in convalle in  
forces, which they had placed in a valley basin in

insidiis. Hi adorti nostros disiectos,  
ambuscades. These having attacked our (men) scattered,

renovarunt prælium.  
renewed the battle.

21. Fugnatum-est<sup>50</sup> diu atque acriter, quum  
It was fought long and sharply, since

Sotiates, freti superioribus victoriis,  
the Sotiates, having relied on former victories,

putarent (imp. subj.) salutem<sup>51</sup> totius Aquitanie  
were thinking (that) the safety of the whole of Aquitania



positam in suâ virtute; autem nostri  
 was placed in their own valor; but our (men)  
 cupèrent (imp. subj.) perspici,<sup>52</sup> quid pos-  
 were desiring (that it) to [should] be seen, what they might be  
 sent efficere sine imperatore,  
 able [could] (to) accomplish without the commander in chief,  
 et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo  
 and without the remaining legions, a very young man  
 duce. Tamen hostes tandem confecti  
 (being) general. However the enemy at length having been spent  
 vulneribus vertêrunt terga: magno numero  
 with wounds turned (their) backs: a great number  
 quorum interfecto, Crassus cœpit oppugnare  
 of whom having been slain, Crassus began to storm  
 oppidum Sotiatium ex itinere; quibus  
 the town of the Sotiates from [on] (his) march; who [they]  
 resistentibus<sup>53</sup> fortiter, egit vineas que  
 opposing bravely, he pushed the sheds and  
 turres. Illi, aliàs eruptione tentatâ,  
 towers. They at one time a sally having been tried,  
 aliàs cuniculis actis ad aggere  
 at another time mines having been pushed to the rampart  
 que vineas; cuius rei Aquitani sunt longè  
 and sheds; of which thing the Aquitani are by far  
 peritissimi, propter eâ-quod ærariæ que secturæ  
 most skillful, because (that) copper mines and quarries  
 sunt apud eos multis locis; ubi intellexerunt  
 are among them in many places; when they understood  
 nihil posse profici his rebus,  
 nothing to be able [could] (to) be accomplished by these things  
 diligentia nostrorum, mittunt legatos  
 [tactics], from the activity of our (men), they send ambassadors  
 ad Crassum que pêtunt, ut recipiat se  
 to Crassus and request, that he may receive themselves  
 in deditionem. Quâ re impetratâ,  
 into a surrender. Which thing having been obtained,  
 jussi tradere arma, faciunt  
 having been ordered to deliver (their) arms, they do (it)

22. Atque animis omnium nostrorum intentis  
 And the minds of all our (men) being engaged  
 in eâ re, Adiatomus qui tenebat summam  
 on this thing, Adiatomas who was holding the height  
 imperii, ex aliâ parte oppidi, cum  
 (of) [the chief] command, from another part of the town, with  
 sexcentis devotis, quos illi appellant  
 six hundred devoted (men), whom they call  
 Soldurios: quorum hæc est conditio ut  
 Soldurii: of whom this is the estate that  
 fruuntur (pres. subj.) omnibus commodis (abl.) in  
 they enjoy all advantages in  
 vitâ unâ cum his, amicitiae quorum  
 life together with those, to the friendship of whom  
 dediderint se: si quid  
 they may have given up [devoted] themselves: if any (thing)  
 accidat iis per vim, aut  
 may happen to these through violence, (that) either  
 ferant eundem casum unâ, aut consciant<sup>54</sup>  
 they may bear the same calamity together, or inflict  
 mortem sibi (dat.) necne quisquam repertus-est  
 death upon themselves nor has any one been found  
 adhuc memoriâ hominum, qui recusaret  
 as yet in the memory of men, who would refuse  
 mori, eo interfecto, amicitiae cujus  
 to die, he having been killed, to the friendship of whom  
 devovisset se. Cum his Adiatomus  
 he might have devoted himself. With these Adiatomas  
 conatus facere eruptionem, clamore  
 having endeavored to make a sally, a shout  
 sublato ab eâ parte munitionis,  
 having been raised from that part of the fortification,  
 quum milites concurrissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
 when the soldiers had run together to  
 arma, que pugnatum-esset<sup>55</sup> (pl. perf. subj.) ibi  
 arms, and it had been [they had] fought there  
 vehementer, repulsus-est in oppidum; tamen  
 violently, he was forced back into the town; however

impetravit à Crasso, ūtī uteretur<sup>56</sup>  
 he obtained from Crassus, that he might use

eādem conditione (abl.) deditionis.  
 the same condition [terms] of surrender.

23. Armis que obsidibus acceptis, Crassus  
 The arms and hostages having been received Crassus

profectus-est in fines Vocationis et  
 set out into the territories of the Vocates and

Tarusatium. Tum verò barbari  
 of the Tarusates. Then indeed the barbarians (were)

commoti, quòd cognovērunt oppidum munitum  
 alarmed, because they had learned (that) a town fortified

et naturā loci et mānu  
 both by the nature of the place and by hand [by art]

expugnatum<sup>57</sup> paucis diebus, quibus ven-  
 having been stormed in the few days, in which it had been

tum fuērat; cōperunt dimittere legatos  
 [they had] come there; they began to send ambassadors

quoqueversus, conjurare, dare obsides inter  
 in every direction, to take oaths, to give hostages between

se, parare copias. Legati mittuntur  
 themselves, to prepare forces. Ambassadors are sent

etiā ad eas civitates, quæ sunt citerioris  
 also to these states, which are in nearer

Hispaniæ (gen.) finitimæ Aquitaniæ: inde  
 Spain neighboring to Aquitania: thence

auxilia que dūces arcessuntur; adventu  
 auxiliaries and generals are summoned; on the arrival

quorum conantur gerere bellum cum magnā  
 of whom they endeavor to wage war with great

auctoritate et cum magnā multitudīne hominum.  
 authority and with a great multitude of men.

Verò ūi deliguntur dūces, qui fuērunt.  
 Moreover these are chosen (as) generals, who had been

unā cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos, que  
 together with Quintus Sertorius all the years, and

existimabantur habere summam scientiam militaris;  
 were thought to have the highest knowledge of military

rēi                      Hi        consuetudine        Romani        populi  
 affair [tactics]    These        by the custom        of the Roman        people  
 institūunt        capere                      loca,                      munire  
                     resolve        to take [choose]        places [ground],        to fortify  
 castra (pl.),        intercludere        nostros        com meatibus.  
 the camp,            to shut off            our (men)        from provisions.  
 Quod        ūbi        Crassus        animadvertit,                      suas  
 Which        when        Crassus        perceived,                      (and that) his own  
 copias        non        facile        diduci                      propter  
 forces        not        easily        to be [were] divided        on account of  
                     exiguitatem,                      et                      hostem                      vagari  
 (their) scantiness [fewness], and        (that) the enemy        (to) wander about  
 et        obsidere        vias,                      et        relinquere        satis  
 and        (to) block up        the ways,                      and        (to) leave                      enough  
 praidii        castris (pl.);        ob                      eam causam  
 of protection        to (their) camp;        on account of        this        cause (that)  
 frumentum        que        com meatum                      supportari  
                     corn                      and                      provision                      to be [were] brought up  
 sibi        minus        commodè,                      numerum        hostium  
 to himself        less        conveniently, (that) the number        of the enemy  
                     augeri        in dies; existimavit<sup>58</sup>        non        cunctan-  
 (to be) increased        daily;        he considered (it)        not        to [he must not] be  
 dum,                      quin        decertaret        pugnâ. Hâc        re  
 delayed [delay],        but that        he should contend        in battle.        This        thing  
                     delatâ        ad        concilium,        ūbi        intellexit  
 having been referred        to        a council,        when        he understood (that)  
 omnes<sup>59</sup>        sentire        idem,                      constituit                      posterum  
 all        (to) think        the same,                      he appointed                      the following  
 diem        pugnæ.  
 day        for the battle.

24. Omnibus        copiis                      productis                      primâ  
                     All        (his) forces        having been drawn out        at the first

luce,                      duplici        acie        institutâ,                      que  
 light [early dawn],        a double        line        having been formed,        and  
                     auxiliis                      coniectis                      in        mediâ        aciem,  
 the auxiliaries        having been thrown        into        the middle        line,  
 expectabat        quid        consilii (gen.)        hostes        caperent.  
 he was awaiting        what        plan                      the enemy        might take

Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et  
 They, although on account of (their) multitude, and  
 vetërem gloriâ belli que paucitatem nostrorum  
 ancient glory of war and the fewness of our (men)  
 existimabant se dimicatuROS tutô;  
 were considering (that) themselves about to [would] contend safely;  
 tâmen arbitrabantur esse tutiûs potiri  
 however they were judging (it) to be [was] safer to possess  
 victoriâ sine vulnëre, viis  
 a victory without a wound, the ways [roads] having  
 obsessis, commeatu intercluso: et si  
 been blocked up, provisions having been intercepted: and if  
 propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani  
 on account of the want of provisions the Romans  
 cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.) recipëre sese,  
 should begin to take away themselves [to re-  
 cogitabant adoriri impeditos  
 treat], they were thinking to [they would] attack (them) encumbered  
 agmïne et sub sarcinīs (pl.), inferiores animo.  
 on the march and under baggage, (and) weaker in spirit.  
 Hoc consilio<sup>60</sup> probato ab ducibus,  
 This plan having been approved by (their) generals,  
 copiis Romanorum productis, tenebant  
 the forces of the Romans having been drawn out, they were keep-  
 ing sese castris (pl.). Hæc re perspectâ  
 themselves in camp. This thing being clearly seen  
 Crassus, quum hostes effecissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 Crassus, since the enemy had rendered  
 suâ cunctatione atque opinione timoris,  
 by their delay and the belief of fear,  
 nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum,  
 our soldiers more eager to fight [for fighting],  
 atque voces omnium audirentur (imp. subj.),  
 and the expressions of all were heard, (that it)  
 oportere<sup>61</sup> non expectari diutius, quin  
 to be [was] fitting not to be waited [to wait] longer, but that  
 iretur ad castra (pl.); cohortatus  
 it should be gone [they should go] to the camp; having exorted

sũos, omnĩbus cupientĩbus, contendit ad  
 his (men), all desiring, he hastens to  
 castra (pl.) hostium.  
 the camp of the enemy.

25. Ibi quum alii complerent (imp. subj.) fossas  
 There when some were filling the ditches

alii depellẽrent (imp. subj.) defensores vallo  
 others were dislodging the defenders from the rampart

que munitionĩbus, multis telis coniectis, que  
 and fortifications, many weapons having been thrown, and

auxiliares, quĩbus (dat.) Crassus confidebat non  
 the auxiliaries, [in] whom Crassus was confiding not

multũ ab pugnam, præberent (imp. subj.)  
 much for the battle, were exhibiting

speciem atque opinionem pugnantium  
 the appearance and impression of fighting (men)

subministrandis lapidibus que telis, et comportandis  
 by supplying stones and weapons, and by collecting

cespitibus ad aggẽrem; quum item pugnaretur  
 turfs for a mound; since likewise it was fought

(imp. subj.) constanter ac non timĩdẽ ab hostibus,  
 steadily and not timidly by the enemy,

que tela missa ex superiore lĩco,  
 and the weapons sent [thrown] from the higher place,

accidẽrent (imp. subj.) non frustra; equĩtes, castris  
 were falling not in vain; horsemen, the camp

(pl.) hostium circumĩtis, renuntiaverunt Crasso  
 of the enemy having encircled, announced to Crassus

castra (pl.) non esse munita eadem  
 (that) the camp not to be [was not] fortified with the same

diligentiã ab Decumanã portã, que habere  
 diligence from [at] the Decuman gate, and to have

facilem adĩtum.  
 [had] an easy access.

26. Crassus cohortatus præfectos equĩtum  
 Crassus having encouraged the perfects of the horsemen

ut excitarent sũos magnis præmiĩs  
 that they should stimulate their (men) by great rewards

que pollicitationibus, ostendit quid vèlit  
 and promises, shows (them) what he wishes  
 fieri. Illi, ut imperatum erat, eis  
 to be done. They, as it had been commanded, these  
 cohortibus devectis, quæ relictæ  
 cohorts having been brought forth, which having been left  
 præsidio castris (pl.), erant intritæ ab  
 for a guard to the camp, were unworn [fresh] from  
 labore: et circumductis longiore itinère,  
 labor: and having been led round by a longer route,  
 ne possent conspici ex castris  
 lest they might be able [should] (to) be seen from the camp  
 hostium; oculis que mentibus omnium  
 of the enemy: the eyes and minds of all  
 intentis ad pugnam, pervenerunt celeriter  
 being engaged to [on] the fight, they arrived quickly  
 ad eas munitiones, quas diximus; atque  
 to [at] these fortifications, which we have mentioned; and  
 his prorutis, constiterunt in castris  
 these having been demolished, they stood in the camp  
 (pl.) hostium prius quam posset  
 of the enemy before that it might be able [could]  
 videri. planè ab his aut cognosci, quid  
 (to) be seen plainly by these or (to) be known, what  
 rei gereretur. Tum verò clamore  
 (of) thing was transpiring. Then indeed a shout  
 audito ab eâ parte, nostri, viribus (pl.)  
 having been heard from this part, our (men), their strength  
 redintegratis, quod plerumque consuevit  
 having been renewed, which generally has been accustomed  
 accidere in spe victoriæ, coeperunt impugnare  
 to occur in the hope of victory, began to assault  
 acrius. Hostes circumventi undique,  
 more vigorously. The enemy surrounded on every side,  
 omnibus rebus desperatis, contenderunt  
 all things having been despaired of, hastened  
 dejicere se per munitiones, et  
 to hurl themselves through the fortifications, and

petere salutem fugâ Quos equitatus  
to seek safety by flight. Whom the cavalry  
consectatus apertissimis campis, recepit  
having pursued in the most open plains, betook  
se in castra (pl.) multâ nocte,<sup>62</sup>  
itself into camp in much night [late at night],  
vix quartâ parte relictâ ex  
scarcely a fourth part having been left from  
numéro quinquaginta millium, quæ  
the number of fifty thousand, which  
constabat venisse ex Aquitanîa  
it was evident to have [had] come from Aquitania  
que Cantâbris.  
and the Cantabri.

27. Hâc pugnâ auditâ, maxîma pars  
This battle having been heard of, the greatest part  
Aquitanîæ dedit sese Crasso, que misit  
of Aquitania surrendered itself to Crassus, and sent  
obsides ultrò: in quo numéro fuerunt  
hostages voluntarily: in which number were  
Tarbelli, Bigerriônes, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates,  
the Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates,  
Elusâtes, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusates, que  
Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusates, and  
Cocosates. Paucae ultîmæ nationes, confisæ  
Cocosates. A few remotest nations, having relied  
tempore anni, quòd hiems suberat,  
on the time of the year, because winter was near,  
neglexerunt facere id.  
neglected to do this.  
28. Fêrè eodem tempore, etsi æstas  
Nearly at the same time, although the summer  
erat jam pròpè exacta, tâmen quòd, omni  
was already almost finished, still because, all  
Galliâ pacatâ, Morîni que Menapii  
Gaul having been subdued, the Morini and Menapii  
supererant, qui essent (imp. subj.) in armis  
were remaining, who were in arms



nèque unquam misissent<sup>63</sup> (pl. perf. subj.) ad eum  
 nor had ever sent to him  
 legatos de pace, Cæsar arbitratus  
 ambassadors about peace, Cæsar having thought (that)  
 id bellum posse confici celeriter, duxit  
 this war to be able [could] (to) be finished quickly, led  
 exercitum ðð: qui cœperunt agere bellum  
 the army thither: who began to conduct the war  
 ratione longè aliâ ac reliqui Galli:  
 in a manner far otherwise than the remaining Gauls:  
 nam, quòd intelligebant maximas  
 for, because they were understanding (that) the greatest  
 nationes, quæ contendissent (pl. perf. subj.) prælio  
 nations, which had contended in battle  
 pulsas-esse que superatas, que habebant  
 to have [had] been routed and overcome, and they were having  
 continentes silvas ac paludes, contulerunt ðð  
 extended woods and marshes, they bore away thither  
 se que omnia sua. Ad initium  
 themselves and all their (effects). At the beginning  
 quarum<sup>64</sup> silvarum, quum Cæsar pervenisset (pl.  
 of which woods, when Cæsar had arrived,  
 perf. subj.), que instituisset (pl. perf. subj.) munire  
 and had resolved to fortify  
 castra (pl.), nèque intèrim hostis visus esset  
 the camp, nor meanwhile the enemy had been seen;  
 (pl. perf. subj.); nostris dispersis in  
 our (men) having been scattered in  
 opère, evolaverunt subitò ex omnibus partibus  
 the work, they flew out suddenly from all parts  
 silvæ, et fecerunt impetum in nostros.  
 of the wood, and made an attack upon our (men).  
 Nostri celeriter ceperunt arma, que  
 Our (men) quickly took arms, and  
 repulerunt eos in silvas; et complur-  
 forced them into the woods; and very  
 ibus interfectis, secuti longius  
 many having been killed, having followed (them) rather far

impeditioribus locis, deperdiderunt paucos  
in more entangled places, they lost a few

ex suis.  
from [of] their own (men).

29. Cæsar instituit cædere silvas deinceps  
Cæsar resolved to cut the woods in succession

reliquis diebus; et ne quis impetus  
on the remaining days; and lest any attack

posset fieri ab latere militibus  
might be able [could] (to) be made from the flank on the soldiers

(dat.) inermibus que imprudentibus, collocabat  
unarmed and unaware, he was placing

omnem eam materiam, quæ cæsa erat,  
all this material [timber], which had been cut,

conversam ad hostem, que exstruebat pro  
turned to the enemy, and was building (it) for

vallo ad utrumque latus. Magno spatio  
a rampart to [on] each flank. A great space

confecto paucis diebus incredibili  
having been finished [cleared] in a few days with incredible

celeritate, quum pæcus atque extrema imped-  
speed, when the cattle and the farthest bag-

imenta (pl.) tenerentur (imp. subj.) jam ab nostris,  
gage was possessed now by our (men),

ipsi petèrent (imp. subj.) densiores silvas;  
(they) themselves were seeking the thicker woods:

tempestates ejusmodi consecutæ sunt, uti opus  
storms of such kind followed, that the work

intermitteretur (imp. subj.) necessariò; et contin-  
was interrupted necessarily; and by the

uatione imbrum, milites possent (imp. subj.)  
continuance of the rains, the soldiers were able

non contineri diutius sub pellibus. Itaque,  
not to be kept longer under hides [tents]. Therefore,

omnibus eorum agris vastatis,<sup>65</sup> vicis  
all their lands having been ravaged, the villages

que ædificiis incensis, Cæsar reduxit exercitum  
and buildings having been burned, Cæsar led back the army

et collocavit in hibernis in Aulereis  
and placed (it) in winter quarters among the Aulerci  
que Lexovii, item reliquis civitatibus, quæ  
and the Lexovii, also the remaining states, which  
facerant bellum proximè.  
had made war last.

## FOURTH BOOK

The fourth book contains the description of Cæsar's campaign against the Germans and of his first invasion of Britain, B. C. 55. The German tribes, the Usipetes Germani and the Tencteri, pressed by the Suevi, had crossed the Rhine near its mouth and conquered the Menapii. Cæsar, fearing complications and a possible alliance of the Gauls and Germans, orders the Germans to withdraw from Gaul. He then advances with the army and a protracted parley takes place between him and the Germans. After a treacherous attack by the German cavalry Cæsar assaults the camp of the Germans and puts them to flight. The Rhine is bridged by Cæsar, who invades Germany and after a stay of 18 days returns. He sends a reconnoitering fleet to Britain, and after assembling a large fleet, himself, sails and lands on the British coast. A storm disables the fleet, whereupon the Britons attack him and are defeated. Cæsar returns to Gaul. The Morini rebel and are subdued. For that winter the legions are quartered among the Belgæ and the Senate appoints a thanksgiving of 20 days.

1. Eâ hieme quæ secuta est, qui fuit annus,  
In this winter which followed, which was the year.

Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus,  
(when) Cneius Pompey, Marcus Crassus (were) counsuls,

Germani Usipetes, et item Tencteri transierunt  
the German Usipetes, and also the Tencteri crossed

flumen Rhenum cum magnâ multitudine hominum,  
the river Rhine with a great multitude of men,

non longè à mæri, quò Rhenus influit.  
not far from the sea, where the Rhine flows in.

Causa transeundi fuit, quòd exagitati ab  
The cause of crossing was, because having been harassed by

Suevis complures annos, premebantur bello,  
the Suevi many years, they were crushed by war,

et prohibebantur agri culturâ. Gens  
and were prevented from agriculture. The nation

Suevorum est longè maxīma et bellicosissīma  
 of the Suevi is by far the greatest and most warlike  
 omnium Germanorum. Hi dicuntur habere  
 of all the Germans. These are said to have  
 centum pagos; ex quibus<sup>1</sup> educunt  
 a hundred cantons; from which they lead forth  
 quotannis singula (pl.) millia armatorum  
 yearly single thousands of armed (men)  
 ex suis finibus, causā bellandi: reliqui  
 from their borders, for the sake of warring: the rest  
 qui manserunt domi (gen.), alunt se atque  
 who remained at home, support themselves and  
 illos. Hi rursus sunt in armis invicem  
 those. These again are in arms in turn  
 anno post; illi remanent domi (gen.).  
 in the year after; they [those] remain at home.  
 Sic neque agri cultura, neque ratio atque  
 Thus neither agriculture, nor the theory and  
 usus belli intermittitur. Sed est nihil  
 practice of war is interrupted. But (there) is nothing  
 privati ac separati agri apud  
 [not any] (of) private and separate land at [among]  
 eos: neque licet remanere longius anno  
 them: neither is it lawful to remain longer (than) a year  
 in uno loco, causā colendi. Neque  
 in one place, for the sake of tilling [farming]. Neither  
 vivunt multum frumento, sed maximam<sup>2</sup>  
 do they live much by [on] corn, but the greatest  
 partem lacte atque pecore; que sunt  
 part by [on] milk and cattle; and they are  
 multum in venationibus (pl.); quæ res et  
 much in huntings [in the chase]; which thing both  
 alit vires et efficit homines  
 nourishes the forces [strength] and produces men  
 immani magnitudine corporum et genere  
 with [of] huge size of bodies and by the kind  
 cibi, et quotidianâ exercitatione, et libertate  
 of food, and daily exercise, and freedom

vitæ, quòd àssuefacti nullo officio aut  
 of life, because having been accustomed to no duty or  
 disciplinâ à puëris, faciunt (pres. subj.)  
 discipline from boys [boyhood], they do

nihil omnino contra voluntatem. Atque  
 nothing at all against (their) will. And

adduxerunt, se in eam consuetudinem,  
 they have brought themselves into this habit,

ut habèant (pres. subj.) nèque quidquam  
 that they have neither any (thing)

vestitûs frigidissimis locis, præter pelles;  
 (of) clothing in the coldest places, except skins;

propter exiguitatem quarum, magna pars  
 on account of the scantiness of which, a great part

corpōris est aperta; et laventur (pres. subj.)  
 of the body is uncovered; and they are washed [bathe]

in fluminibus.  
 in the rivers.

2. Aditus est mercatoribus ad eos, magis  
 Access is for merchants to them, more

eo, ut habèant quibus  
 by this [on this account], that they may have (those) to whom

vendant, quæ cepèrint bello, quàm  
 they may sell, what they may have taken in war, than

quòd desiderent ullam rem importari  
 that they may desire any thing to be imported

ad se. Quinetiam Germani utuntur non  
 to themselves. Moreover the Germans use not

importatis jumentis, quibus Galli maxime  
 imported beasts of burden, with which the Gauls especially

delectantur que quæ pàrant impenso  
 are delighted and which they procure at expensive [a high]

pretio; sed efficiunt hæc, quæ sunt nata  
 price; but they render these, which are born

prava atque deformia apud eos, quotidianâ  
 mis-shapen and deformed among them, by daily

exercitatione ut sint summi  
 exercise that they may be (capable) of the highest [greatest]

laboris. Equestribus prœliis desiliunt sæpe  
 labor. In cavalry fights they leap down often  
 ex æquis, ac prœliantur<sup>3</sup> pedibus; que  
 from the horses, and fight on feet [on foot]; and  
 assuefaciunt æquos remanere eodem vestigio,  
 they accustom the horses to remain in the same footstep [spot],  
 ad quos recipiunt se celeriter, quum usus  
 to which they betake themselves quickly, when need  
 poscit: nèque quidquam habetur turpius  
 requires: nor is any thing held more shameful  
 aut inertius eorum moribus quam uti  
 or more lazy by their customs than to use  
 ephippiis (abl.). Itaque,<sup>4</sup> quamvis pauci audent  
 saddles. Therefore, however few, they dare  
 adire ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum  
 to approach to any number of saddled  
 equitum. Non sinunt vinum importari  
 horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported  
 omnino ad se, quòd<sup>5</sup> arbitrantur  
 at all to themselves, because they think (that)  
 homines remollescere hæc re ad ferendum,  
 men (to) become enfeebled by this thing for bearing,  
 laborem atque effœminari.  
 labor and to be [are] effeminated.  
 3. Publicè putant esse maximam  
 Publicly [as a nation] they think (it) to be [is] the greatest  
 laudem, agros vacare quam latis-  
 praise (that), the lands to be [are] vacant as most exten-  
 sive à suis finibus.  
 sively [as extensively as possible] from their borders. (That)  
 Significari hæc re, magnum numerum  
 to be [it is] indicated by this thing (that), a great number  
 civitatum non potuisse sustinere  
 of states not (to) have been able to [could not] withstand  
 suam vim. Itaque circiter sexcenta millia  
 their force [power]. Therefore about six hundred thousands  
 passum agri dicuntur<sup>6</sup> vacare à  
 (of) paces of land [country] are said to be vacant from

Suevis ex unâ parte. Ubii succedunt  
the Suevi from [on] one part [side]. The Ubii come next

ad altëram partem, quorum civitas fuit  
at the other part [side], whose state has been

ampla atque florens, ut captus Germanorum  
extensive and flourishing, as the nature of the Germans

est; ei sunt paulò humaniores cætëris,  
is; they are a little more civilized than the rest,

quamquam sunt ejusdem genëris: propterëa  
although (they) are of the same race; because

quòd attingunt Rhenum, que mercatores ventitant  
(that) they touch on the Rhine, and merchants travel

multùm ad eos, et ipsi sunt assuefacti  
much to them, and they are accustomed

Gallicis moribus propter propinquitatem. Quum  
to Gallic manners on account of (their) nearness. When

Suevi, experti hos (acc.) sæpè multis  
the Suevi, having made trial of these often in many

bellis, potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) non expellëre  
wars, had been able [could] not (to) expel (them)

finibus, propter amplitudinem que  
from (their) borders, on account of the extent and

gravitatem civitatis, tamen fecerunt  
weight [influence] of the state, at length they made

vectigales sibi, ac redegerunt multò  
(them) tributary to themselves, and rendered (them) much

humiliores que infirmiores.  
lower [poorer] and weaker.

4. Usipètes et Tenctëri, quos diximus  
The Usipetes and Tencteri, whom we have said

suprà, fuerunt in eadem causâ: qui  
above, were in the same cause [condition]: who

sustinuerunt vim Suevorum complures annos:  
withstood the violence of the Suevi many years:

tamen ad extremum expulsi  
however at last having been driven out from (their)

agris, et vagati multis locis Germaniæ  
lands, and having wandered in many places of Germany



triennium, pervenerunt<sup>7</sup> ad Rhenum:  
 (during) three years time, they arrived at the Rhine:  
 quas regiones Menapii incolebant, Hi  
 which countries the Menapii were inhabiting, These  
 habebant agros, ædificia, qua vicos ad  
 were holding lands, buildings, and villages at [along]  
 utramque ripam fluminis: sed perterritis  
 each bank of the river: but alarmed  
 adventu tantæ multitudinis, demigraverunt  
 by the arrival of so great a multitude, they emigrated  
 ex his ædificiis, quæ habuerant trans flumen:  
 from these buildings, which they had had beyond the river:  
 et præsidiiis dispositis cis Rhenum,  
 and garrisons having been posted on this side the Rhine,  
 prohibebant<sup>8</sup> Germanos transire.  
 they were checking the Germans to cross [from crossing] over.  
 Illi experti omnia, quum possent (imp.  
 They, having tried all (things) when they were able  
 subj.) neque contendere vi, propter  
 neither to contend by force, on account of  
 inopiam navium, neque transire clam,  
 the want of ships, nor to cross over secretly,  
 propter custodias Menapiorum, simulaverunt<sup>9</sup>  
 on account of the guards of the Menapii, pretended  
 se reverti in suas sedes  
 (that they) themselves (to) return into their seats  
 que regiones; et progressi viam  
 [settlements] and countries; and having advanced a way  
 tridui, reverterunt rursus; atque  
 [distance] of three days, they return again and  
 omni hoc itinere confecto unâ nocte  
 all this march having been finished in one night  
 equitatu, oppresserunt Menapios inscios que  
 by cavalry, they overwhelmed the Menapii ignorant and  
 inopinantes; qui<sup>10</sup> facti certiores  
 unaware; who having been made more sure [having been  
 de discessu Germanorum per  
 informed] of the departure of the Germans by

exploratores, remigravérant sīne mētu in  
 spies, had moved back without fear into  
 suos vicos trans Rhenum. His interfectis  
 their villages beyond the Rhine. These having been slain  
 que eorum navibus occupatis, prius-quam<sup>11</sup>  
 and their ships having been seized, before (that)  
 ēa pars Menapiorum, quæ erat citra  
 this part of the Menapii, which was on this side  
 Rhenum, fiēret (imp. subj.) certior,  
 the Rhine, was made more sure [was informed],  
 transierunt flumen; atque omnibus eorum  
 they crossed the river; and all their  
 ædificiis occupatis, aluerunt se  
 buildings having been seized, they supported themselves  
 eorum copiis reliquam partem hiemis.  
 with their supplies [stores] the remaining part of the winter.  
 5. Cæsar factus certior de  
 Cæsar being made more sure [having been informed] of  
 his rebus, et veritus infirmitatem Gallorum,  
 these things, both having feared the weakness of the Gauls,  
 quod sunt mobiles in capiendis consiliis, et  
 because they are changeable in taking councils, and  
 plerumque student novis rebus,  
 generally are zealous for new things [a revolution],  
 existimavit nihil committendum his. Autem  
 thought nothing to [should] be entrusted to these. But  
 hoc est Gallicæ consuetudinis; ut et  
 this is (of) the Gallic custom; that both  
 cogant (pres. subj.) viatores, etiam invitos,  
 they compel travellers, even unwilling,  
 consistere; et quærant (pres. subj.) quod quisque  
 to stop: and they inquire what each  
 eorum audiērit aut cognovērit de  
 of them may have heard or may have learned about  
 quaque re: et vulgus circumstiat  
 each thing: and the common people stand about  
 (pres. subj.) mercatores in oppidis: cogant  
 the merchants in the towns: they compel

(pres. subj.) pronuntiare ex quibus regionibus  
(them) to declare from what countries  
veniant, que quas res cognoverint ibi.  
they come, and what things they have learned there.  
Permoti his rumoribus atque auditionibus,  
Aroused by these reports and hearsays,  
inēunt consilia sæpè de summis  
they enter upon plans often concerning the most important  
rebus: quorum est necesse eos pœnitere  
things: of which it is necessary (for) them to repent  
in vestigio, quum serviant (pres. subj.)  
on the track [spot], since they are slaves  
incertis rumoribus, et plerique<sup>12</sup> respondēant  
to uncertain reports, and very many answer  
(pers. subj.) ficta ad eorum voluntatem.  
feigned (things) to their wish.  
6. Quâ consuetudine cognitâ, Cæsar  
Which custom having been known, Cæsar  
proficiscitur ad exercitum maturius quàm  
sets out to the army sooner than  
consueverat, ne<sup>13</sup> occurreret graviori  
he had been accustomed, lest he might meet a heavier [more serious]  
bello (dat.). Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) èd  
war. When he had come there  
cognovit<sup>14</sup> ea facta, quæ  
he learned (that) these (things) (had been) done, which  
suspiciatus-erat fore: legationes mis-  
he had suspected to be about to [would] be: embassies to have  
sas à nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos,  
[had] been sent by some states to the Germans,  
que eos invitatos ūti discederent  
and these to have [had] been invited that they should depart  
ab Rheno: que omnia quæ  
from the Rhine: and all (things) which  
postulassent fore parata ab  
they had demanded to be about to [would] be prepared by  
se. Quâ<sup>15</sup> spe Germani adducti,  
themselves. By which hope the Germans being induced [moved]

vagabantur jam latius, et pervenerant  
were wandering now more widely, and had arrived

in fines Eburonum et Condusorum,  
into [at] the borders of the Eburones and of the Condrusi,

qui sunt clientes Trevirorum. Principibus  
who are dependents of the Treviri. The chiefs

Galliæ evocatis, Cæsar existimavit  
of Gaul having been summoned, Cæsar thought (that)

ea, quæ cognoverat, dissimulanda  
these (things), which he had learned, to [must] be concealed

sibi (dat.); que eorum animis permulsis  
by himself; and their minds having been soothed

et confirmatis, que equitatu imperato,  
and strengthened, and cavalry having been demanded,

constituit gerere bellum cum Germanis.  
he resolved to carry on war with the Germans.

7. Frumentaria re comparata, que  
The grain supply having been prepared, and

equitibus delectis, cepit facere iter  
the cavalry having been chosen, he began to make (his) march

in ea loca, in quibus locis audiebat  
into these places, in which places he was hearing

Germanos esse. A quibus<sup>16</sup> quum  
the Germans to be [were]. From whom [them] when

abesset (imp. subj.) iter paucorum dierum,  
he was distant a journey of a few days,

legati venerunt ab iis, quorum<sup>17</sup> hæc  
ambassadors came from them, of whom this

fuit oratio: "Germanos neque inferre bellum  
was the speech: "The Germans neither (to) wage war

Romano populo priores, neque<sup>18</sup> tamen  
to [on] the Roman people the first, nor however

recusare, quin contentant armis, si  
to refuse, but that they may contend in arms, if

laccessantur: quod hæc consuetudo Germanorum  
they should be attacked: because this custom of the Germans

tradita-sit (perf. subj.) à majoribus, resistere,  
has been delivered by (their) ancestors, to oppose,

nēque deprecari, quicumque infērant  
 nor to beg off [ask quarter of], whosoever may bring on  
 bellum: tāmen dicere hoc: venisse  
 war: however to [they] say this: to (that they) have come  
 invitos, ejectos dōmo: si Romani vēlint  
 unwilling, having been driven from home: if the Romans wish  
 suam gratiam, posse esse utiles amicos  
 their favor, to be [they are] able to be useful friends  
 eis: vel attribuant agros sibi, vel  
 to them: either let them assign lands to themselves, or  
 patiantur tenere eos, quos possederint  
 let them permit (them) to hold these, which they have possessed  
 armis: sese concedere Suevis  
 by arms: (that they) themselves (to) yield to the Suevi  
 unis; quibus ne quidem immortales dii  
 one [alone]; to whom not even the immortal gods  
 possint esse pares: neminem reliquum  
 are able to be equal: (that) no one remaining [else]  
 quidem esse in terris, quem  
 indeed to be [is] in the lands [on earth], whom  
 non-possint superare.”  
 they are not able to overcome.”

8. Cæsar respondit ad hæc quæ  
 Cæsar answered to these (words), what (things)  
 visum-est; sed exitus orationis fuit:  
 seemed (best); but the conclusion of (his) speech was:  
 “Nullam amicitiam posse esse sibi  
 “No friendship to be able [can] (to) be for himself  
 cum his, si remanerent in Gallia: nēque  
 with them, if they should remain in Gaul: neither  
 esse verum occupare alienos, qui  
 to be [is it] true [just] to seize others' (lands), who  
 potuerint non tueri suos fines:  
 may have been able not to defend their own borders:  
 nēque ullos agros vacare in Gallia, qui  
 nor (are) any lands (to be) vacant in Gaul, which  
 possint dari sine injuriā, præsertim  
 may be able to be given without injury, especially

tantæ multitudīni: sed licere, si  
 to so great a multitude: but (that) to be [it is] permitted, if  
 vēlint, considere in finibus Ubiorum;  
 they wish, to settle in the territories of the Ubii;  
 legati quorum sint (pres. subj.) apud se,  
 ambassadors of whom are at [with] himself,  
 et querantur (pres. subj.) de injuriis Suevorum,  
 and complain of the injuries of the Suevi,  
 et pētant (pres. subj.) auxiliū à se:  
 and ask aid from himself: (he)  
 se impetraturum hoc ab Ubīs."  
 himself about to [would] obtain this from the Ubii."

9. Legati dixerunt se rela-  
 The ambassadors said (that they) themselves about to  
 turos hæc ad suos, et  
 [would] carry back these (words) to their own (people), and  
 re deliberatā, reversuros  
 the thing having been considered, (to be) about to [would] return  
 ad Cæsārem post tertium diem: interea  
 to Cæsar after the third day: meantime  
 petiērunt ne moveret castra (pl.) propiūs  
 they requested (that) he would not move (his) camp nearer  
 se. Cæsar dixit ne id quidem posse  
 themselves. Cæsar said not this even to be able  
 impetrari ab se. Enim cognovērat  
 [could] (to) be obtained from himself. For he had known  
 magnam partem equitatūs missam ab  
 a great part of (their) cavalry having [had] been sent by  
 iis ad Ambivaritos trans Mōsam, aliquot  
 them to the Ambivariti across the Meuse, some  
 diebus antè, causā prædandi que frumentandi:  
 days before, for the sake of plundering and of providing corn:  
 arbitrabatur hos equites expectari,  
 he was thinking (that) these horsemen to be [were] awaited,  
 atque mōram interponi causā  
 and the delay to be [was] interposed for the sake  
 ejus rei.  
 of this thing.

10. Mōsa                      profūit      ex      monte      Vogēso,  
       The Mosa [Meuse]      flows      from      mount      Vogesus.  
       qui    est    in      finibus      Lingōnum;  
   [Vosges],    which    is    in    the territories    of the Lingones;  
       et quādam parte ex      Rheni      receptā,  
       and    a certain    part    from [of] the Rhine    having been received,  
       quæ      appellatur    Vahālis,      efficit    insulam  
       which (part)      is called    Vahalīs [Waal],    it forms    the island  
       Batāvorum:      nēque longiūs      ab      eo  
       of the Batavi:      and not farther      from      this (than)  
       octoginta millibus passūm influit in Oceānum.  
       eighty    thousand    (of) paces    it empties    into    the Ocean.  
       Autem    Rhenus    oritur    ex      Lepontīis,    qui  
       But    the Rhine    rises    from    the Lepontii,    who  
       incōlunt Alpes,    et fertur citatus longo spatio  
       inhabit    the Alps,    and    is borne    rapid    in a long    distance  
       per      fines      Nantuatiūm,    Helvetiorum,  
       through    the territories    of the Nantuates,    of the Helvetii,  
       Sequanorum,    Mediomatricorum,    Tribocorum,    que  
       of the Sequani,    of the Mediomatrici,    of the Triboci,    and  
       Treverorum; et ūbi appropinquat Oceāno,  
       of the Treveri;    and    when    it approaches    (to) the Ocean,  
       diffūit    in    plures      partes;      multis<sup>19</sup>  
       it flows apart    into    more [several]    parts [estuaries];    many  
       que    ingentibus    insulis      effectis;      magna  
       and      great      islands      having been formed;    a large  
       pars quarum incolitur à fēris que barbāris  
       part    of which    is inhabited    by    wild    and    barbarous  
       nationibus; (ex      quibus      sunt      qui  
       nations;      (from [of]    which    (there) are    (some) who  
       existimantur    vivēre      piscibus    atque    ovis  
       are thought    to live      (on) fishes    and    the eggs  
       avium); que    influit      in      Oceānum    multis  
       of birds);    and    it empties    into    the Ocean    by many  
       capitibus.  
       heads [outlets].
11. Quum      Cæsar      abesset (imp. subj.)      ab  
       When      Cæsar      was distant      from

hoste non ampliùs duodēcim millibus  
 the enemy not more (than) twelve thousand  
 passum, legati revertuntur ad eum,  
 (of) paces, the ambassadors returned to him,  
 ut constitutum-erat: qui congressi in-  
 as it had been appointed: who having met (him) on-  
 itinere, orabant magnopere, ne progrediretur  
 the march, were praying very much, that he would not advance  
 longius. Quum non impetrassent (pl. perf.  
 farther. When they had not obtained  
 subj.) id, petebant, "uti præmitteret  
 this, they were asking, "that he would send before  
 ad eos equites, qui antecessissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 to these horsemen, who had preceded  
 agmen, que prohiberet eos pugnâ: que  
 the marching line, and would prohibit them from battle: and  
 uti faceret potestatem sibi mittendi  
 that he would make an opportunity to themselves of sending  
 legatos in Ubios: si quorum principes que  
 ambassadors unto Ubii: if their chiefs and  
 senatus fecissent fidem<sup>20</sup> sibi  
 senate would make faith [give pledge] to themselves  
 jurejurando, ostendebant se  
 by oath, they were showing (that they) themselves  
 usuros eâ conditione, quæ ferretur  
 about to use [would accept] this condition, which was offered  
 à Cæsare; daret sibi spatium tridui  
 by Cæsar; let him give to themselves the period of three days  
 ad conficiendas has res." Cæsar arbitrabatur  
 for accomplishing these things." Cæsar was thinking (that)  
 omnia hæc pertinere eodem-illò, ut,  
 all these (things) (to) tend to this same (point), that,  
 mora tridui interpositâ, eorum  
 the delay of three days having been interposed, their  
 equites qui abessent (imp. subj.) reverterentur:  
 horsemen who were absent might return:  
 tamen dixit sese processurum non  
 however he said (that he) himself about to [would] advance not



longiūs quatūor millibus passūm ēo dīe  
farther (than) four thousand (of) paces on this day  
causā aquationis: convenirent<sup>21</sup> huc quā  
for the sake of watering: let them assemble hither as

frequentissīmi postēro dīe,  
most numerous [as many as possible] on the following day,

ut cognoscēret de eorum postulatis.  
that he might learn concerning their requests.

Intērim mittit ad prāfectos, qui  
Meanwhile he sends (persons) to the commander, who

antecessērant cum omni equitatu, qui  
had advanced with all the cavalry, who

nuntiarent, ne lacesērent hostes  
should announce [instruct], that they should not provoke the enemy

proelio; et, si ipsi laceserentur,  
to battle; and, if (they) themselves should be provoked, [attacked],

sustinerent quoad ipse accessisset  
they should hold out until (he) himself should approach

propīus cum exercitu.  
nearer with the army.

12. At hostes,<sup>22</sup> ūbi primū conspexerunt  
But the enemy, when first [as soon as] they beheld

nostros equites, numērus quorum erat quinque  
our cavalry, the number of whom was (of) five

milliū, quū ipsi haberent (imp. subj.)  
thousand, although (they) themselves were having

non ampliūs octogentos equites, quod  
not more (than) eight hundred cavalry, because

īi, qui iērant trans Mōsam causā  
those, who had gone beyond the Meuse for the sake

frumentandi, nondum rediērant; nostris  
of foraging, had not yet returned; our (men)

timentibus nīhil, quod eorum legati  
fearing nothing, because their ambassadors

discessērant paulō antē à Cēsāre, atque is  
had departed a little before from Cēsar, and this

dīs petitus-erat ab īis indutīs (pl.),<sup>23</sup>  
day had been sought by them for a truce,

impetu facto, perturbaverunt celeriter  
 an attack having been made, confused quickly  
 nostros. Nostris rursus resistentibus, desilierunt  
 our (men). Our (men) again resisting, they leaped down:  
 ad pedes, sua consuetudine, que equis  
 to feet, [on foot] by their custom, and the horses  
 suffossis, que compluribus nostris  
 having been stabbed, and very many (of) our (men)  
 dejectis, conjecerunt reliquos in fugam;  
 having been cast down, they hurled the rest into flight;  
 atque egerunt ita perterritos, ut desisterent  
 and drove (them) so panicstricken, that they were ceasing  
 (imp. subj.) non fugam prius quam venissent  
 not from flight before that they had come  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in conspectum nostri agminis.  
 into sight of our marching line.  
 Quatuor et septuaginta ex nostris equitibus  
 Four and seventy out of our cavalry  
 interficiuntur in eo proelio; in his Piso,  
 are killed in this battle; among these (was) Piso,  
 fortissimus vir, Aquitanus, natus amplissimo  
 a most brave man, an Aquitanian, born from [of a] most distin-  
 guished family, whose grandfather had obtained the sovereignty  
 in sua civitate, appellatus amicus a nostro  
 in his own state, having been called a friend by our  
 senatu. Quum hic ferret (imp. subj.) auxilium  
 senate. When he was bearing aid  
 fratri intercluso ab hostibus, eripuit  
 to (his) brother cut off by the enemy, he rescued  
 illum ex periculo; ipse, equo vulnerato,  
 him from danger; (he) himself, (his) horse having been  
 dejectus restitit fortissime quoad  
 wounded, thrown down, resisted most bravely as long as  
 potuit. Quum circumventus cecidisset  
 he was able. When having been surrounded he had fallen;  
 (pl. perf. subj.); multis vulneribus acceptis,  
 many wounds having been received,

atque frater, qui jam excesserat praelio  
 and (his) brother, who already had departed from the battle  
 animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id praeul, equo  
 (had) perceived this afar off, (his) horse  
 incitato obtulit sese hostibus,  
 having been urged on he threw himself to [upon] the enemy,  
 atque interfectus-est.  
 and was slain.

13. Hoc praelio facto, Caesar jam  
 This battle having been done [fought], Caesar now  
 arbitrabatur neque legatos audiendos  
 was thinking (that) neither ambassadors (ought) to be heard  
 sibi (dat.), neque condiciones accipiendas  
 by himself, nor conditions (ought) to be received  
 ab illis, qui, pace petita, intulissent  
 from these, who, peace having been sought, had brought on  
 (pl. perf. subj.) bellum ultro, per dolum  
 war voluntarily, through deceit  
 atque insidias (pl.). Verò judicabat esse  
 and treachery. But he was judging (that) to be  
 summæ dementiæ expectare, dum  
 [it was] (of) the highest madness to wait, until  
 copiae hostium augerentur que  
 the forces of the enemy should be increased and (their)  
 equitatus reverteretur et infirmitate Gallorum  
 cavalry should return and the weakness of the Gauls  
 cognita, sentiebat quantum auctoritatis  
 having been known, he was perceiving how much (of) prestige  
 hostes consecuti-essent (pl. perf. subj.) apud eos  
 the enemy had obtained among them  
 uno praelio; quibus existimabat nihil<sup>24</sup>  
 by one battle; to whom he was judging nothing [not any]  
 spatii dandum ad capienda consilia.  
 of space [time] to [must] be given for taking counsels.  
 His rebus constitutis, et consilio  
 These things having been determined, and (his) plan  
 communicato cum legatis et  
 having been communicated with [to] the lieutenants and

quæstore, opportunissîma res accîdit,  
 the quæstor, a most advantageous thing [incident] occurred,  
 ne prætermittêret quem diem pugnae, quòd  
 that he might not omit any day of [for] a battle, because  
 manè postridie ejus diei, Germani  
 in the morning the day after (of) this day, the Germans,  
 frequentes, usi et eâdem perfidiâ et  
 in numbers, having used both the same treachery and  
 simulatione, omnibus principibus que  
 pretence, all (their) chiefs and (those)  
 majoribus-natu adhibitis, venerunt ad  
 greater by birth [the elders] having been brought, came to  
 eum in castra (pl.); simul,<sup>25</sup> ut dicebatur,  
 him into the camp; as well, as it was said,  
 causâ purgandi sibi, quòd commisissent  
 for the sake of clearing themselves, because they had joined  
 (pl. perf. subj.) prælium pridie, (contra<sup>26</sup> atque  
 battle the day before, (contrary as  
 dictum-esset (pl. perf. subj.), et ipsi  
 (it) had been said, and (they) themselves  
 petissent (pl. perf. subj.): simul ut impetrarent  
 had requested): as that they might obtain  
 quid, si possent (imp. subj.), fallendo  
 some (thing), if they could, by deceiving  
 de indutiis (pl.). Quos oblatos  
 concerning the truce. (When) whom [they] (were) presented  
 sibi Cæsar gavisus,<sup>27</sup> jussit illos  
 to himself Cæsar, having rejoiced, commanded them  
 retineri: ipse eduxit omnes copias  
 to be detained: he himself led out all (his) forces  
 castris (pl.); jussit equitatum subséquì  
 from the camp; he ordered the cavalry to follow near  
 agmen, quòd existimabat perterritum-  
 the marching line, because he was thinking (it) to have [had]  
 esse recenti prælio.  
 been alarmed by the late battle.  
 14. Triplici acie institutâ, et itinère  
 A tripple battle line having been arranged, and a march

octo millium confecto celeriter, pervenit  
 of eight miles having been completed quickly, he arrived  
 ad castra (pl.) hostium, prius quam Germani  
 at the camp of the enemy, before (that) the Germans  
 possent sentire quid ageretur: qui<sup>28</sup> per-  
 were able to perceive what was transpiring: who having  
 territi subito omnibus rebus, et  
 been panicstricken suddenly by all the things, both  
 celeritate nostri adventus, et discessu  
 by the quickness of our arrival, and by the departure  
 suorum, neque spatio<sup>29</sup> dato  
 of their own (people), neither space [time] having been given  
 habendi, consilii neque capiendi arma,  
 of having [forming], a plan nor of taking arms,  
 perturbantur, ne praestaret educere  
 are confused (as to) whether it would be better to lead out  
 copias adversus hostem, an defendere  
 (their) troops against the enemy, or to defend  
 castra, an peteret salutem fugam. Quum  
 the camp, or to seek safety by flight. When  
 quorum timor<sup>30</sup> significaretur (imp. subj.) fremitu  
 their fear was signified by the noise  
 et concursu, nostri milites incitati perfidia  
 and running, our soldiers impelled by the treachery  
 pristini diei, irruperunt in castra (pl): in  
 of the former day, broke in upon the camp in  
 quo loco, qui potuerunt capere arma  
 which place, (those) who were able to take arms  
 celeriter, restiterunt nostris (dat.) paulisper,  
 quickly, resisted our (men) a little while,  
 atque commiserunt proelium inter  
 and joined battle between [among]  
 carros que impedimenta. At reliqua  
 the wagons and baggage. But the remaining  
 multitudo puerorum que mulierum (nam  
 multitude of boys and (of) women (for  
 excesserant domo cum omnibus suis  
 they had departed from home with all their

que transiērant Rhenum,) cœpit fugēre  
 (people) and had crossed the Rhine,) began to flee  
 passim, ad consecrandos quos Cæsar misit  
 everywhere, for pursuing whom Cæsar sent  
 equitatum.  
 the cavalry.

15. Germani, clamore audito post  
 The Germans, a shout having been heard behind [in]  
 tergum, quum viderent (imp. subj.) suos  
 the back [the rear], when they were beholding their  
 interfici, armis abjectis  
 (people) (to be) slaughtered, (their) arms having been cast away  
 que militaribus signis relictis, ejecerunt  
 and the military standards having been left, hurled  
 se ex castris (pl.); et quum perven-  
 themselves from the camp; and when they had  
 issent (pl. perf. subj.) ad confluentem Mösæ  
 arrived at the junction of the Meuse  
 et Rheni, reliquâ fūgâ des-  
 and (of) the Rhine, remaining [further] flight having  
 peratâ, magno numero interfecto,  
 been despaired of, a great number having been killed,  
 reliqui præcipitaverunt se in  
 the rest dashed themselves headlong into  
 flumen, atque oppressi ibi timore  
 the river, and having been overpowered there by fear  
 lassitudine et vi fluminis,  
 by weariness and by the force of the river,  
 periērunt. Omnes nostri incolūmes ad  
 they perished. All our (men) safe to  
 unum, perpaucis vulneratis, receperunt  
 one [to a man], very few having been wounded, betook  
 se in castris (pl.) ex timore  
 themselves into camp (freed) from the fear  
 tanti belli, quum numerus hostium fuisset  
 of so great a war, since the number of the enemy was  
 quadringentorum triginta millium capĭtum.  
 (of) four hundred thirty thousand of heads [souls].

Cæsar fecit potestem discedendi iis,  
 Cæsar made power [an opportunity] of departing to those,  
 quos retinuërat in castris (pl.). Illi ver-  
 whom he had detained in the camp. They having  
 iti supplicia que cruciatus Gallorum,  
 feared the punishments and tortures of the Gauls,  
 quorum agros vexaverant, dixerunt  
 whose lands they had harassed, said (that they)  
 se velle remanere apud eum. Cæsar  
 themselves (to) wish to remain at [with] him. Cæsar  
 concessit libertatem his.  
 granted the liberty [privilege] to them.

16. Germanico bello confecto, Cæsar de  
 The German war having been finished, Cæsar from  
 multis causis statuit Rhenum transeundum-esse  
 many causes resolved (that) the Rhine to [must] be crossed  
 sibi (dat.); quarum illa fuit justissima;<sup>31</sup>  
 by himself of which that [this] was the most just  
 quod, quum videret (imp. subj.) Germanos  
 [strongest] because, when he was seeing (that) the Germans  
 impelli tam facile, ut venirent  
 to be [were] incited [impelled] so easily, that they should come  
 in Galliam, voluit eos timere suis  
 into Gaul, he wished them to fear for their own  
 rebus quodque, quum intelligerent  
 things [possessions] also, when they should understand (that)  
 exercitum Romani populi et posse  
 the army of the Roman people both to be [was] able  
 et audere transire Rhenum. Accessit<sup>32</sup>  
 and to dare [dared] to cross the Rhine. It was added  
 etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum  
 also, that that part of the cavalry of the Usipetes  
 et Tencterorum, quam commemoravi supra  
 and of the Tencteri, which I have mentioned above  
 transisse Mosam causâ prædandi que  
 (to have) crossed the Meuse for the sake of plundering and  
 frumentandi, neque interfuisse prælio,  
 of providing corn, nor (to have) [had] been present to [at] the bat-

receperat se trans Rhenum, post  
 tle, had betaken itself across the Rhine, after  
 fugam suorum in fines Sugambrorum,  
 the flight of their own (people) into the borders of the Sugambri,  
 que conjunxerat se cum iis. Ad quos<sup>33</sup>  
 and had united itself with them. To whom  
 quum Cæsar misisset (pl. perf. subj.) nuncios, qui  
 when Cæsar had sent messengers, who  
 postularent, uti dedèrent sibi eos,  
 should demand, that they should surrender to himself those,  
 qui intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sibi  
 who had borne war to [on] himself  
 que Galliæ, responderunt: "Rhenum finire  
 and to [on] Gaul, they answered: "the Rhine to end [terminates]  
 imperium Romani populi: si existimaret<sup>34</sup>  
 the empire of the Roman people; if he should judge (it)  
 non æquum Germanos transire in Galliā,  
 not just (that) the Germans to [should] cross over into Gaul,  
 se invito, cur postuleret  
 he himself (being) unwilling. why should he require (that)  
 quidquam sui imperii aut potestatis esse  
 any of his empire or power to [should] be  
 trans Rhenum? Autem Ubii, qui uni ex  
 across the Rhine? But the Ubii, who one [alone] from [of]  
 Transrhenanis miserant legatos ad Cæsarem,  
 the Over-Rhine (nations) had sent ambassadors to Cæsar,  
 fecerant amicitiam, dedérant obsides, orbant  
 had made friendship, had given hostages, were praying  
 magnopere, ut ferret auxilium sibi,  
 very greatly, that he would bear aid to themselves,  
 quod premerentur (imp. subj.) graviter ab Suevis:  
 because they were oppressed grievously by the Suevi:  
 vel, si prohiberetur facere id occupationibus  
 or, if he should be hindered to [from] doing this by the engagements  
 rei publicæ, modo transportaret Rhenum  
 of the state, only (that) he would carry over the Rhine  
 exercitum: id futurum satis sibi  
 (his) army: that about to [would] be enough to themselves



ad auxilium que spem reliqui temporis:  
for aid and hope of [for] the remaining time:

tantum esse nomen atque opinionem  
so great to be [is] the name and opinion [repute]

Romani exercitus, Ariovisto pulso,<sup>35</sup>  
of a Roman army, Ariovistus having been routed,

et hoc novissimo proelio facto,  
and this newest [last] battle having been done [fought],

etiam ad ultimas nationes Germanorum, uti  
even to the remotest nations of the Germans, that

possint esse tuti opinione et  
they may be able to be safe by the opinion [repute] and

amicitiâ Romani populi." Pollicebantur  
friendship of the Roman people." They were promising

magnam copiam navium ad transportandum  
a great supply of ships for transporting

exercitum.  
the army.

17. Cæsar de his causis, quas commemoravi,  
Cæsar from these causes, which I have mentioned,

decreverat transire Rhenum: sed arbitrabatur  
had resolved to cross the Rhine: but he was judging (that)

nēque esse satis tutum transire navibus,  
neither (it) to be [was] sufficiently safe to cross with ships,

nēque statuebat esse suæ  
nor was he considering (that) to be [it was] (worthy) of his own

dignitatis, nēque Romani populi: itaque,  
dignity, nor (that) of the Roman people: therefore,

etsi summa difficultas faciundi pontis  
although the highest [greatest] difficulty of making a bridge

proponebatur, propter latitudinem, rapiditatem,  
was confronting (him), on account of the breadth, swiftness,

que altitudinem fluminis; tamen existimabat  
and depth of the river: yet he was thinking

id contendendum sibi, aut aliter  
this to [must] be attempted by himself, or otherwise

exercitum non transducendum. Ig̃tur  
the army not to [must not] be led over. Therefore

instituit hanc rationem pontis. Jungebat  
 he formed this plan of the bridge. He was joining  
 bina sesquipedalia tigna, paulum præacuta  
 double [two] foot and half thick beams, a little sharp pointed  
 ab imo, dimensa ad  
 from [at] the lowest (part), measured to [according to]  
 altitudinem fluminis, intervallo duorum pedum  
 the depth of the river, with a distance of two feet  
 inter se: cum defixerat hæc  
 between themselves [them]; when he had fastened these  
 demissa in flumen machinationibus que adegerat  
 let down into the river by machines and had driven  
 fistucis, non directa ad perpendiculum  
 (them) with pile drivers, not straight to a perpendicular  
 modo publicæ, sed prone ac fastigate,  
 in the manner of a pile, but inclining and sloping,  
 ut procumbèrent secundum naturam  
 that they might lean forward according to the nature [flow]  
 fluminis: statuebat item duo contraria  
 of the river: he was setting up also two (beams) opposite  
 his juncta ad eundem modum intervallo  
 (to) these joined to [after] the same manner with an interval  
 quadragenum pedum ab inferiore parte conversa  
 of forty feet from the lower part turned  
 contra vim atque impetum fluminis: utraque  
 against the force and pressure of the river: both  
 hæc distinebantur binis fibulis utrimque  
 these were separated by two clamps on either side  
 ab extrema parte, bipedalibus trabibus  
 from [at] the extreme part [the top], two foot wide beams  
 immissis, quantum junctura eorum  
 having been let in (to them), as much as the joint of these  
 tignorum distabat: quibus<sup>36</sup> disclusis,  
 beams was apart: which having been separated,  
 atque revinctis in contrariam partem  
 and having been fastened on the opposite part [side]  
 tanta erat firmitudo operis, atque ea  
 so great was the firmness of the work, and this [such]

natura rerum, ut quò-major vis  
the nature of the things [parts], that the greater the force  
āquæ incitavisset se, hōc arctiūs  
of the water roused itself [increased], so much the more closely  
tenerentur (imp. subj.) illigata: hæc directa  
they were kept fastened: these laid straight  
contexebantur materiā injectā,  
were interwoven with material [timber] thrown on (them),  
ac consternebante longuriis que cratibus:  
and were strewn with long poles and hurdles:  
ac nihilo seciūs publicæ adigebantur obliquè  
and in no wise [likewise] piles were driven obliquely  
ad inferiorem partem fluminis,<sup>37</sup> quæ sub-  
at the lower part of the river, which having been  
jectæ pro pariēte, et conjunctæ cum  
put below for [as] a wall, and united with  
omni opère, excipērent vim fluminis:  
all the work, [would] receive the force of the river:  
et item aliæ mediocri spatīo supra  
and also other (piles) at a moderate distance above  
pontem, ut si trunci arbōrum sive naves  
the bridge, so that if trunks of trees or ships  
essent missæ à barbāris, causā  
should be sent by the barbarians, for the sake  
dejiciendi, opēris vis earum rerum  
of casting down, the work the force of these things  
minueretur his defensoribus, neu  
would be diminished by these defenses, nor  
nocerent ponti (dat).  
would they injure the bridge.  
18. Omni opère effecto dēcem  
All the work having been completed in ten  
diebus, quibus materiā cœpta-erat comportari,  
days, in which the material had been begun to be gathered,  
exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, firmo præsidio  
the army is led over. Cæsar, a strong guard  
relicto ad utramque partem pontis,  
having been left at each part [end] of the bridge,

contendit in fines Sugambrorum. Intërim  
 hastened into the territories of the Sugambri. Meantime  
 legati à compluribus civitatibus veniunt  
 ambassadors from very many states come  
 ad eum, quibus petentibus pacem atque  
 to him, to whom seeking peace and  
 amicitiam respondit liberaliter, que jubet obsides  
 friendship he answered generously, and orders hostages  
 adduci ad se. Sugambri, ex eo  
 to be brought to himself. The Sugambri, from this [that]  
 tempore, quod pons coeptus-est institui,  
 time, in which the bridge was begun to be built,  
 fugâ comparatâ, iis hortantibus,  
 flight having been prepared, these exhorting (them),  
 quos habebant ex Tenctëris atque Usipetibus  
 whom they were having from the Tencteri and Usipetes  
 apud se, excesserant suis finibus,  
 at [among] themselves, had departed from their territories,  
 que exportaverant omnia sua, que  
 and had carried away all their (effects), and  
 abdidërant se in solitudinem ac  
 had concealed themselves in the desert and  
 silvas.  
 woods.

19. Cæsar moratus paucos dies in eorum  
 Cæsar having delayed a few days in their  
 finibus omnibus vicis que ædificiis  
 territories all the villages and buildings  
 incensis, que frumentis (pl.) succissis,  
 having been burned, and the corn (having been) cut down.  
 recepit se in fines Ubiorum; atque  
 betook himself into the territories of the Ubii; and  
 pollicitus suum auxilium his, si preme-  
 having promised his aid to them, if they should  
 rentur à Suevis, cognovit hæc ab  
 be oppressed by the Suevi, he learned these (things) from  
 iis; Suevos, postquam comperissent (pl. perf.)  
 them; (that) the Suevi, after (that) they had found

subj.)	per	exploratores	pontem	fieri,	
	by	spies (that)	a bridge	to be [was] made,	
concilio	habito,	suo	more,	dimisis-	
a council	having been held,	in their	manner,	to have [had]	
se	nuntios	in	omnes partes,	ut	demig-
sent	messengers	into	all parts,	that	they might
rarent	de	oppidis,	deponerent	liberos,	
emigrate	from	the towns,	might deposit	(their) children,	
uxores,	que	omnia	sua	in	silvas,
wives,	and	all	their (effects)	into [in]	the woods.
atque	omnes,	qui	possent	ferre	arma,
and	all,	who	were able	to bear	arms
convenirent	in	unum	locum:	hunc	
should assemble	into [in]	one	place:	(that)	this (place)
delectum-esse		fere	medium	earum	
to have [had] been chosen		nearly	the middle	of these	
regionum,	quas	Suevi	obtinerent (imp. subj.):		
countries,	which	the Suevi	were possessing:	(that)	
expectare	hic	adventum	Romanorum,	atque	
to [they] await	here	the approach	of the Romans,	and	
constituisse		decertare	ibi.	Quod	ubi
to have [had] resolved		to fight	there.	Which	when
Cæsar	compertit,	omnibus	his	rebus	
Cæsar	discovered,	all	these	things [matters]	
confectis,		causa	quarum	rerum	con-
having been completed		for the sake	of which	things	he had
stituērat	transducere	exercitum,	ut	injiceret	
resolved	to lead over	(his) army,	that	he might arouse	
metum	Germanis,	ut	ulcisceretur		
fear	to [in] the Germans,	that	he might punish		
Sugambros,	ut	liberaret	Ubios	obsidione,	
the Sugambri,	that	he might deliver	the Ubii	from a blockade.	
octodēcim	diebus	omnino	consumptis	trans	
eighteen	days	altogether	being spent	across	
Rhenum,	arbitratus		profectum (esse)		
the Rhine,	having thought (that)		to have [he had] accomplished		
satis	et	ad	laudem	et	ad
enough	both	to [for]	praise	and	to [for]

utilitatem, recepit se in Galliam que  
 advantage [utility], he betook himself into Gaul and  
 rescidit pontem.  
 cut down the bridge.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis reliquâ,  
 A small part of the summer having been left,

Cæsar, etsi hiemes in his locis sunt  
 Cæsar, although the winters in these places are

maturæ, (quod omnis Gallia vergit ad  
 early, (because all Gaul lies to

Septentrionem), tamen contendit proficisci in  
 the North), yet hastened to set out into

Britanniâ; quod intelligebat auxilia  
 Britain; because he was understanding (that) auxiliaries

subministrata (esse) inde nostris hostibus,  
 to have [had] been supplied from there to our enemies,

fere omnibus Gallicis bellis: et, si tempus  
 in nearly all the Gallic wars: and, if the time

anni deficeret ad gerendum bellum; tamen  
 of the year should fail to carry on war; yet

arbitrabatur fore magno usui  
 he was thinking (it) to be about to [would] be for [of] great use [ad-

vantage] to himself, if only he should visit the island,

perspexisset genus hominum, cognovisset loca,  
 should observe the kind of men, should learn the places,

portus, aditus: quæ fere omnia erant  
 harbors, approaches; which nearly all were

incognita Gallis. Enim neque quisquam adit  
 unknown to the Gauls. For neither any one goes

illò temere præter mercatores; neque est  
 thither rashly except merchants; nor is

quidquam notum iis ipsis, præter  
 any (thing) known to these themselves, except

maritimam oram, atque eas regiones, quæ  
 the maritime coast, and these countries, which

sunt contra Galliam. Itaque, mercatoribus  
 are opposite Gaul. Therefore, the merchants

convocatis                      undique                      ad                      se,  
 having been called together      from every side      to      himself,  
 poterat      reperire      neque      quanta      esset  
 he was able      to find      neither      how great      might be  
 magnitudo      insulæ,      neque      quæ      aut      quantæ  
 the size      of the island,      nor      what      or      how great  
 nationes      incolerent,      neque      quem      usum  
 nations      might inhabit (it),      nor      what      method  
 belli      haberent,      aut      quibus (abl.)      institutis  
 of warfare      they might have,      or      what      customs  
 uterentur,      neque      qui      portus      essent      idonei  
 they might use,      nor      what      harbors      might be      suitable  
 ad multitudinem      majorum      navium.  
 for      a number      of the larger      ships.

21. Arbitratus      esse      idoneum, prius quam  
 Having thought (it)      to be [was]      proper,      before      (that)

faceret      periculum,      præmittit      Caium  
 he should make      the trial,      he sends before (him)      Caius

Volusenum      cum      longâ      navi,      ad  
 Volusenus      with      a long      ship [war ship],      for

cognoscenda hæc.      Mandat huic (dat.)      ut,  
 ascertaining      these (things).      He charges      him      that,

omnibus rebus      exploratis,      revertatur  
 all      things      having been reconitered,      he should return

ad se quam      primum.      Ipse      proficiscitur  
 to himself      as soon      as possible.      He himself      sets out

cum omnibus      copiis      in      Morinos,      quod  
 with      all      (his) forces      into      the Morini,      because

trajectus      inde      in Britanniam erat brevissimus.  
 the passage      from there into      Britain      was      the shortest.

Jubet naves      convenire      huc      undique      ex  
 He orders      ships      to assemble      hither      from everywhere from

finitimis      regionibus,      et      classem,      quam  
 the neighboring      countries,      and      the fleet,      which

fecerat      ad      Veneticum      bellum      superiore  
 he had made      for      the Venetian      war      in the preceding

æstate. Intërim ejus consilio      cognito,  
 summer.      Meantime      his      design      having been known [learned],

et perlatō ad Britannos per  
and having been reported to the Britons through  
mercatores, legati veniunt ad eum à  
the merchants, ambassadors came to him from  
compluribus civitatibus ejus insulæ, qui  
very many states of this island, who  
polliceantur dare obsides, atque obtemperare  
promise to give hostages, and to obey  
imperio (dat.) Romani populi. Quibus auditis.  
the empire of the Roman people. Whom having been heard,  
pollicitus liberaliter, que hortatus  
having promised generously, and having exhorted (them)  
ut permanerent in eâ sententiâ remisit  
that they should continue in this determination he sent  
eos domum: et unâ cum his mittit  
them (back) home: and together with these he sends  
Commium, quem ipse contulerat regem  
Commius, whom (he) himself had appointed king  
ibi, Atrebatibus superatis, et cujus  
there, the Atrebatians having been overcome, and whose  
virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem  
valor and discretion he was approving, and whom  
arbitratur fidelem sibi, que cujus auctoritas  
he was thinking faithful to himself, and whose authority  
habebatur magna in his regionibus:  
was held [considered] great in these countries:  
imperat huic (dat.), adeat quas civitates  
he commands him, (that) he should visit what states  
possit, que hortetur ut sequantur  
he may be able, and should exhort (them) that they follow  
fidem Romani populi, que nun-  
[accept] the faith of the Roman people, and he should  
tiet se venturum eò celeriter.  
announce (that he) himself about [was] to come there quickly.  
Volusenus, regionibus<sup>38</sup> perspectis, quantum  
Volusenus, the countries having been reconnoitered, as much  
facultatis potuit dari ei, qui  
(of) opportunity (as) was able to be given to him, who



non auderet egredi navi, ac  
might not dare to disembark from the ship, and  
committēre se barbāris, revertitur quinto  
to entrust himself to the barbarians, returns on the fifth  
diē ad Cæsārem, quē renuntiāt quæ  
day to Cæsar, and announces what (things)  
perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) ibi.  
he had discovered there.

22. Dum Cæsar commoratur in his locis  
While Cæsar delays in these places  
causā parandarum navium, legati venerunt  
for the sake of preparing ships, ambassadors came  
ad eum ex magnā parte Morinorum, quē  
to him from a great part of the Morini, who  
excusarent se de consilio<sup>39</sup> superioris  
excused themselves concerning the design of the former  
temporis; quōd barbāri homines quē  
time; because (being) barbarous men and  
imperiti nostræ consuetudinis (gen.), fecis-  
unacquainted with our custom, they had  
sent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum Romano populo;  
made war [on] the Roman people;  
quē pollicerentur se facturos  
and promised (that they) themselves about to [would] do  
ea, quæ imperāset. Cæsar arbitratus  
these (things), which he commanded. Cæsar having thought  
hoc accidisse opportunè satis sibi;  
this to have [had] happened conveniently enough for himself;  
quōd volebat nēque relinquere hostem  
because he was wishing neither to leave an enemy  
post tergum, nēque habebat facultatem  
behind (his) back, nor was he having the means  
gerendi belli propter tempus anni;  
of carrying on war on account of the time of the year;  
nēque judicabat has occupationes tan-  
nor was he judging (that) these engagements of so  
tularum rerum anteponendas sibi (dat.)  
trifling things [matters] to [should] be preferred by himself

Britannîæ: impêrat his magnum numërum  
 to Britain: he demands from them a great number  
 obsidum. Quibus<sup>40</sup> adductis, recepit eos  
 of hostages. Whom having been brought, he received them  
 in fidem. Circiter octoginta onerariis  
 into allegiance. About eighty burden [transport]  
 navibus coactis que contractis,  
 ships having been collected and brought together,  
 quot existimabat esse satis ad  
 as many as he was thinking to be [was] sufficient for  
 transportandas duas legiones, distribuit quæs-  
 transporting two legions, he distributed to the  
 tori, legatis que præfectis quod  
 quæstor, to the lieutenants and perfects what(ever)  
 longarum navium præterea habebat: huc  
 (of) long ships [war ships] besides he was having: hither  
 accedebant octodëcim onerariæ naves,  
 (to these) were added eighteen burden [transport] ships,  
 quas tenebantur vento octo millibus  
 which were detained by the wind eight thousand  
 passuum ex eo loco, quò minùs possent  
 (of) paces from this place, that they were the less [not] able  
 pervenire in eundem portum: distribuit  
 to arrive into [at] the same harbor: he distributed  
 has equitibus; dedit reliquum exercitum  
 these to the horsemen; he gave the rest of the army  
 Quinto Titurio Sabino, et Lucio Aurunculeio  
 to Quintus Titurius Sabinus, and to Lucius Aurunculeius  
 Cottæ, legatis, deducendum in Menapios  
 Cotta, (his) lieutenants. to be led down into the Menapii  
 atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab  
 and into these cantons of the Morini, from;  
 quibus legati non venerant ad eum;  
 which ambassadors had not come to him;  
 jussit Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum  
 he ordered Publius Sulpicius Rufus (his) lieutenant  
 tenere portum cum eo præsidio,  
 to hold the harbor with this guard,

quod	arbitrabatur	esse	sātis.
which	he was thinking	to be [was]	sufficient.
23. His	rebus	constitutis,	nactus
These	things	having been arranged,	having got
tempestatem	navigandum,	solvit	fērē
weather	for sailing,	he cast loose	nearly
tertiā	vigiliā,	que	jussit
at the third	watch,	and	commanded
in	ulteriorem	portum,	et
to	the farther	harbor,	and
ac	sēqui	se:	ab
and	to follow	himself:	by
tratum-esset (pl. perf. subj)	quibus <sup>41</sup>	cū	adminis-
performed	whom	when	it had been
	paulō	tardiūs,	
	a little	more slowly	
ipse	attigit	Britanniā	cum
(he) himself	touched [reached]	Britain	with
navibus	circiter	quartā	horā (abl.)
ships	about	the fourth	hour
ibi	conspexit	copias	hostium
there	he beheld	the forces	of the enemy
expositas	in	omnibus	collibus.
drawn up	on	all	the hills.
hæc	erat	natura:	māre
this	was	the nature:	the sea
montibus	ita	anguste,	ut
by heights	so	closely,	that
	adici	ex	superioribus
[could]	(to) be cast	from	the higher
littus.	Arbitratus	hunc	locum
the shore.	Having thought	this	place
idonēum	ad egrediendum	expectavit	in
suitable	for disembarking	he waited	in [at]
(pl.)	ad	nonam	horam,
	to	the ninth	hour,
naves	convenirent	ēd.	Intērim
ships	should assemble	there.	Meantime
que	tribunis	militum	convocatis,
and	tribunes	of soldiers	having been called together,

ostendit et quæ cognovisset (pl. perf.  
he showed (them) both what (things) he had learned

subj.) ex Voluseno, et quæ vellet  
from Volusenus, and what he wished

fiēri: que monuit omnes res  
to be done: and he warned (that) all things

administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad  
should be managed by them at the nod and to [on]

tempus ut ratio<sup>42</sup> militaris rei (sing),  
time as the method of military affairs,

maximè ut maritimæ res postularent  
(and) especially as maritime affairs were demanding,

(imp. subj.), (ut quæ haberent (imp. subj.)  
(as which [they] were having

celērem atque instabilem motum.) His  
a quick and unsteady movement.) These

dimissis, et nactus et secundum  
having been dismissed, and having got both a favorable

ventum et æstum uno tempore, signo  
wind and tide at one time, a signal

dāto, et anchōris sublatis,  
having been given, and the anchors having been taken up

progressus circiter octo millia  
[weighed], having advanced about eight thousand

passuum ab eo loco, constituit naves  
(of) paces from this place, he stood [stationed] the ships

aperto ac plano littore.  
against an open and level shore.

24. At barbāri, consilio Romanorum  
But the barbarians, the design of the Romans

cognito, equitatu præmisso, et  
having been known. the cavalry having been sent before, and

essedariis; quo genere (abl.) consueverunt  
the charioteers; which kind [means] they have been accustomed

plerumque uti in praeliis, subsecuti  
generally to use in battles, having followed near

reliquis copiis, prohibebant nostros  
with the rest of (their) forces, they were hindering our (men)

egrēdi                      navibus.                      Erat  
 to come out [from disembarking]      from the ships.      (There) was  
 summa                      difficultas ob has causas, quòd  
 the highest [greatest] difficulty      for these reasons, because  
 naves,                      propter magnitudinem non poterant  
 the ships,      on account of      (their) size      were not      able  
 constitūti nīsi in alto: autem et ērat  
 to be stationed unless in the deep: moreover both it was  
 desiliendum<sup>43</sup>                      sīmul de navibus,  
 to [it must] be leaped down      at the same time from the ships,  
 et consistendum fluctibus, et pugnandum  
 and to [must] be stood in the waves, and to [must] be fought  
 cum hostibus militibus, ignotis lōcis,  
 with the enemy by the soldiers, in unknown places,  
 impeditis manibus, pressis magno et  
 with encumbered hands, oppressed with a great and  
 grāvi onēre armorum; quum illi<sup>44</sup> conijcerent (imp.  
 heavy load of arms: while they were hurling  
 subj.) tela audacter aut ex arīdo aut  
 weapons boldly either from dry (ground) or  
 progressi paulum in āquam, expediti  
 having advanced a little into the water, unencumbered  
 omnibus membris, notissimis lōcis, et  
 in all (their) limbs, in very well known places, and  
 incitarent (imp. subj.) ēquos insuefactos.  
 were urging on the horses accustomed to (it).  
 Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque  
 By which things our (men) being dismayed, and  
 imperiti omnino hujus generis pugnae, omnes  
 unskilled altogether of [in] this kind of battle, all  
 nitebantur non eādem alacritate ac studio,  
 were striving not with the same eagerness and zeal,  
 (abl.), quo (abl.) consueverant uti in  
 which they had been accustomed to use in  
 pedestribus proeliis.  
 infantry battles.  
 25. Quod<sup>45</sup> ūbi Cæsar animadvertit, jussit  
 Which when Cæsar perceived, he ordered

longas naves species quarum et  
the long ships [war ships], the appearance of which both  
erat inusitatior barbāris, et motus  
was more unusual to the barbarians, and the motion  
expeditior ad usum, removeri paulum ab  
more easily for use, to be removed a little from  
onerariis navibus, et incitari  
the burden [transport] ships, and to be impelled  
remis, et constitūi ad apertum lātus  
with oars, and to be stationed at the open flank  
hostium, atque hostes propelli ac  
of the enemy, and the enemy to be repulsed and  
submoveri inde fundis, tormentis,  
to be removed from there by slings, shooting engines,  
sagittis; quæ res fuit magno usui  
arrows; which thing [means] was for [of] great use  
nostris. Nam barbāri permoti et  
to our (men). For the barbarians much alarmed both  
figurâ navium, et motu remorum,  
by the shape of the ships, and by the motion of the oars,  
et inusitato genere tormentorum, constit-  
and by the unusual kind of the shooting engines, halt-  
erunt, ac retulerunt pēdem paulum. Ac,  
ed, and retraced (their) foot [steps] a little. And,  
nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter  
our soldiers delaying, chiefly on account of  
altitudinem maris, qui ferebat aquilam  
the depth of the sea, (he) who was bearing the eagle  
decimæ legionis, obtestatus deos, ut ea  
of the tenth legion, having implored the gods, that this  
res eveniret feliciter legioni: inquit,  
thing might happen fortunately to the legion: says,  
"Desilite, commilitones, nisi vultis prodere  
"Jump down! fellow soldiers, unless you wish to betray  
aquilam hostibus; ego certe præstitero  
the eagle to the enemy; I certainly shall have performed  
meum officium rei publicæ atque Imperatori."  
my duty to the republic and to (my) Commander."

Quum dixisset (pl. perf. subj.) hoc magnâ  
 When he had said this with a great [loud]  
 voce, projecit se ex navi, atque  
 voice. he cast himself (forth) from the ship, and  
 cœpit ferre aquilam in hostes. Tum  
 began to bear the eagle against the enemy. Then  
 nostri cohortati inter se,  
 our (men) having encouraged among themselves [each other],  
 universi desilierunt ex navi, ne tantum  
 every one leaped down from the ship, lest so great  
 dedêcus admitteretur. Quum aliî item ex  
 a disgrace should be allowed. When others also from  
 proximis navibus conspexissent (pl. perf. subj.) hos,  
 the nearest ships beheld these,  
 subsecuti appropinquârunt hostibus (dat.).  
 having followed close they approached the enemy.  
 26. Pugnatum-est<sup>46</sup> acriter ab utrisque (plur.)  
 It was fought vigorously by each  
 Tâmen nostri perturbabantur magnopere, quod  
 However our (men) were disordered [confused] very greatly, because  
 potêrant nêque servare ordînes, nêque  
 they were able neither to keep (their) ranks, nor  
 insistere firmiter, nêque subsêqui signa,  
 to stand firmly, nor to follow the standards (closely),  
 atque aliûs ex aliâ navi  
 and one from one (another from another) ship  
 aggregabat se quibuscumque signis occurreret.  
 was attaching himself to whatever standards he should meet.  
 Verò hostes, omnibus vâdis notis,  
 But the enemy, all the shallows having been [being] known,  
 ubi conspexerant ex littore aliquos  
 when they had beheld from the shore some  
 egredientes singulares ex navi, equis  
 coming out single [singly] from a ship, (their) horses  
 incitatis, adoriebantur impeditos.  
 (having been) urged on, were attacking (them) encumbered.  
 Plures circumsistebant paucos: aliî  
 More [several] were surrounding a few: others

conjiciebant tela in universos ab aperto  
 were hurling (their) weapons upon the whole [the mass] from the open  
 latère. Quod quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl.  
 flank Which when Cæsar had observed,  
 perf. subj.), jussit scâphas longarum navium,  
 he ordered the skiffs of the long ships,  
 [war ships], item speculatoria-navigia compleri  
 likewise the spy-boats to be filled  
 militibus; et submittebat subsidia his,  
 with soldiers, and he was sending aid to these,  
 quos conspexerat laborantes. Nostri simul-  
 whom he had beheld laboring. Our (men) as soon  
 atque constiterunt in arido, omnibus  
 as they stood on dry (ground), all  
 suis consecutis, fecerunt impetum  
 their (comrades) having followed, made a charge  
 in hostes, atque dederunt eos in  
 upon the enemy, and gave (put) them to  
 fugam: neque potuerunt prossequi longius  
 flight: nor were they able to pursue rather far  
 quod equites non potuerant tenere  
 because the horsemen had not been able to hold  
 cursum, atque capere insulam. Hoc  
 (their) course, and to take [reach] the island. This  
 unum defuit Cæsari ad pristinam  
 one (thing) was wanting to Cæsar for (his) former  
 fortunam.  
 good fortune.

27. Hostes, superati prælio,  
 The enemy, having been overcome in the battle,  
 miserunt statim legatos ad Cæsarem de  
 sent immediately ambassadors to Cæsar about  
 pace, simul-atque receperunt se ex  
 peace, as soon as they recovered themselves from  
 fugâ; polliciti-sunt sese daturos  
 flight: they promised (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 obsides, que facturos quæ imperâset.  
 hostages, and about to [would] do what he might command.



Commiſus Atrēbas venit unā cum his  
 Commius the Atrebatian came together with these  
 legatis, quem demonstravēram suprā præmiss-  
 ambassadors. whom I had shown above to have [had]  
 um (-esse) in Britanniam: illi comprehendērant  
 been sent before into Britain: they had seized  
 hunc egressum ē navi, quum deferret  
 him having disembarked from the ships, when he was bearing,  
 (imp. subj.) modo oratoris mandata  
 in the character of an envoy, the commands  
 Cæsaris ad eos, atque coniecērant in  
 of Cæsar to them, and had thrown (him) into  
 vincula. Tum prœlio facto,  
 chains. Then the battle having been done [fought],  
 remiserunt et in petenda pace contulerunt  
 they sent (him) back and in seeking peace they laid  
 culpam ejus rei in multitudinem, et  
 the blame of this thing upon the multitude, and  
 petiverunt, ut ignosceretur propter  
 sought, that it might be pardoned on account of  
 imprudentiam. Cæsar questus quòd quum  
 ignorance. Cæsar, having complained that when  
 petissent (pl. perf. subj.) pacem à se,  
 they had sought peace from himself,  
 legatis missis ultrò in continentem,  
 ambassadors having been sent voluntarily into [to] the continent,  
 intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sine causâ,  
 they had waged war without cause,  
 dixit ignoscere imprudentiæ,<sup>47</sup> que  
 said to [he would] pardon (their) indiscretion, and  
 imperavit obsides: partem quorum illi dederunt  
 demanded hostages: part of whom they gave  
 statim: dixerunt sese daturus  
 immediately: they said (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 paucis diebus partem arcessitam ex longinqui-  
 in a few days a part sent for from more  
 oribus locis. Interēa jusserunt suos  
 distant places. Meantime they ordered their (people)

remigrare in agros; que principes  
to return into [to] the lands [country]; and the chiefs  
cœpèrunt convenère undique et commendâre  
began to assemble from every side and to recommend  
se que sũas civitates Cæsãri.  
themselves and their states to Cæsar.

28. Pace firmatâ his rebus,  
Peace having been established by these things,

octodécim naves de quibus demonstratum-est  
the eighteen ships concerning which it had been shown

suprà, quæ sustulèrant equites, solverunt  
above, which had taken up [embarked] the cavalry, cast loose

ex superiore portu leni vento, quar-  
from the upper harbor with a gentle wind, the

tum diem post<sup>48</sup> quàm ventum-est in  
fourth day after that it was come [they came] into

Britanniã: quum quæ appropinquant  
Britain: when which [these] were approaching

(imp. subj.) Britannæ (dat), et viderentur (imp.  
Britain, and were seen

subj.) ex castris (pl.), tanta tempestas  
from the camp, so great a storm

subitò coorta-est, ut nulla earum posset (imp.  
suddenly arose, that no one of them was able

subj.) tenere cursum, sed aliæ referrentur  
to hold the course, but some were carried back

(imp. subj.) eòdem unde profectæ èrant;  
to the same (place) whence they had set out;

aliæ dejicerentur (imp. subj.) ad inferiorem  
others were cast down [driven] to the lower

partem insulæ, quæ est propius occasum  
part of the island, which is nearer the setting

solis cum suo magno pericùlo quæ<sup>49</sup>  
of the sun [the west] with their great danger which [they]

tãmen, anchoris jactis, cùm complerentur  
however, anchors having been cast, when they were filled

(imp. subj.) fluctibus, propectæ necessariò  
with the waves, having been borne out necessarily

in altum adversâ nocte, petiverunt  
into the deep in an unfavorable night, they sought  
continentem.  
the continent.

29. Accidit eâdem nocte, ut luna  
It happened in the same night, that the moon  
esset (imp. subj.) plena, quæ dies con-  
was full, which day has been

suevit efficere maximos maritimos æstus  
accustomed to produce the greatest maritime tides  
in oceâno; que id erat incognitum nostris.  
in the ocean; and this was unknown to our

Ita æstus complebat uno tempore  
(men). Thus the tide was filling at one time

et longas naves, (quibus<sup>50</sup> Cæsar  
both the long ships [war ships], (in which Cæsar

curaverat exercitum transportandum)  
had taken care (that) the army to [should] be carried over)

quas Cæsar subduxerat in aridum; et  
which Cæsar had drawn up on dry (ground); and

tempestas afflictabat onerarias, quæ deligatae-  
the storm was shattering the transports, which had been

erant ad anchōras (pl.): neque ulla facultas  
fastened at anchor nor any opportunity

aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur  
either of managing or of aiding was given

nostris. Compluribus navibus fractis,  
to our (men). Very many ships having been broken

quum reliquæ essent (imp. subj.) inutiles  
[wrecked], since the rest were useless

ad navigandum, funibus, anchōris, que  
for sailing, ropes [cables], anchors, and

reliquis armamentis (pl.) amissis, magna  
the remaining rigging having been lost, a great

perturbatio totius exercitus facta-est, (id  
alarm of the whole army was occasioned, (this

quod erat necesse accidere). Enim neque  
which was inevitable to happen). For neither

ęrant alię naves, quibus possent (imp.  
 were (there) other ships, by which they were able  
 subj.) reportari; et omnia<sup>51</sup> deęrant,  
 to be carried back; and all (things) were wanting,  
 quę essent usui ad reficiendas; naves  
 which would be for [of] use for repairing; ships  
 et quod constabat omnibus oportere  
 and because it was evident to all (it) to be [was] expedient  
 hiemare in Galliā, frumentum non provisum  
 to winter in Gaul, corn had not been  
 ęrat in his locis in hięmem.  
 provided in these places against the winter.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britannię,  
 Which things having been known, the chiefs of Britain,  
 qui post pręlium convenęrant ad Cęsarem<sup>52</sup>  
 who after the battle had come together to Cęsar

collocti inter se; quum intelligęrent  
 having conferred among themselves; when they were understanding  
 (imp. subj.) ęquites, et naves et frumentum  
 (that) horsemen, and ships and corn

deesse Romanis, et cognoscęrent (imp.  
 to be [were] wanting to the Romans, and were ascertaining

subj.) paucitatem nostrorum militum ex exiguitate  
 the fewness of our soldiers from the smallness

castrorum (pl.); quę etiā ęrant (pl.) angustiora  
 of the camp; which also was more narrow

hęc, quod Cęsar transportavęrat  
 from this fact, because Cęsar had brought over

legiones sine impedimentis; duxerunt esse  
 the legions without baggage; considered (this) to be [was]

optimum factu, rebellione factā, prohibere  
 best to be done, a revolt having been made, to prevent

nostros frumento que commeatu, et producere  
 our (men) from corn and provisions, and to prolong

rem in hięmem; quod his superatis  
 the thing [campaign] into the winter; because these having been

aut interclusis reditu, confidebant  
 overcome, or intercepted from a return, they were trusting (that)

neminem postea transiturum in  
 no one afterwards about to [would] cross over into  
 Britanniam causâ inferendi belli. Itaque,  
 Britain for the sake of waging war. Therefore,  
 conjuratione factâ rursus, coeperunt  
 a conspiracy having been made again, they began  
 discedere paulatim ex castris (pl.), ac  
 to depart little by little from the camp, and  
 deducere clam suos ex agris.  
 to lead out secretly their (men) from the fields.

31. At Cæsar, etsi nondum, cognoverat  
 But Cæsar, although he had not yet, known  
 eorum consilia tamen suspicabatur id  
 their plans however he was suspecting (that) this  
 fore, quod accidit, et ex eventu  
 to be about to [would] be, which happened, both from the fate  
 suarum navium, et ex eo, quod  
 of his ships, and from this (fact), because  
 intermisérant dare obsides. Itaque  
 they had omitted [failed] to give hostages. Therefore  
 comparabat subsidia (pl.) ad omnes casus:  
 he was preparing aid [remedies] for all crises:  
 nam et conferebat frumentum quotidie ex  
 for both he was bringing corn daily from  
 agris in castra; (pl.) et utebatur materiâ  
 the fields into the camp; and was using the material  
 (abl.) atque ære earum naves, quæ afflictæ  
 [timber] and copper of these ships, which had been  
 erant gravissimè, ad reficiendas reliquas  
 shattered most severely [seriously], for repairing the rest  
 et jubebat comportari ex continenti,  
 and was ordering to be brought from the continent,  
 quæ erant usui ad eas res. Itaque,  
 what were for [of] use for these things. Therefore  
 quum id administraretur (imp. subj.) summo  
 since this was performed with the highest  
 studio à militibus, duodecim navibus  
 [greatest] zeal by the soldiers, twelve ships

amissis, offecit,<sup>53</sup> ut posset  
 having been lost, he accomplished, that it [they] might be able  
 navigari commōdè reliquis.  
 to be sailed [to sail] readily in the rest.

32. Dum ēa geruntur, unā legione,  
 While these (things) are transpiring, one legion,

quæ appellabatur septīma, missâ frumen-  
 which was called the seventh, having been sent to bring  
 tatum ex consuetudinē, nēque ullâ suspicione  
 corn according to custom, nor any suspicion

belli interpositâ ad id tempus, quum  
 of war having been offered [shown] to this time, when

pars hominum remaneret (imp. subj.) in  
 a part of the men were remaining in

agris, pars etiā ventitaret (imp. subj.)  
 the fields, a part also were coming often

in castra (pl.); ii, qui erant in statione  
 to the camp; those, who where on guard

pro portis castrorum (pl.), renuntiaverunt  
 before the gates of the camp, announced

Cæsari, majorem pulvĕrem, quā con-  
 to Cæsar, (that) a greater dust, than cus-

suetudo ferret, videri in ēa  
 tom bore [warranted], to be [was] seen in this

parte, in quam partem legio fecisset  
 part, into which part the legion had made

(pl. perf. subj.) iter. Cæsar suspicatus,  
 the march. Cæsar having suspected,

id quod erat, aliquid novi consilii  
 this which was, (that) some (thing) (of) new plan

inītum(esse) à barbaris. jussit  
 to have [had] been entered on by the barbarians, ordered

cohortes, quæ erant in stationibus (pl.), pro-  
 the cohorts, which were on guard, to

ficisci secum in eam partem, duas  
 set out with himself into this part, two (cohorts)

succedere in stationem, reliquas armari, et  
 to succeed on guard, the rest to be armed, and

se subsēqui confestim. Quum proces-  
 to follow himself closely immediately. When he had  
 sisset (pl. perf. subj.) paulō longiūs à castris  
 advanced a little farther from the camp,  
 (pl.), animadvertit sūos prēmi  
 he perceived (that) his own (men) to be [were] pressed  
 ab hostibus, atque agrē sustinere, et  
 by the enemy, and hardly (to) withstand, and  
 legione confertā, tela  
 the legion having been crowded together, (that) weapons  
 conjici ex omnibus partibus. Nam,  
 to be [were] thrown from all parts [sides]. For,  
 quōd omni frumento demesso ex  
 because all the corn having been cut down [reaped] from  
 reliquis partibus, una pars erat reliqua,  
 the remaining parts, one part was left,  
 hostes, suspicati nostros esse  
 the enemy, having suspected (that) our (men) to be [were]  
 venturos huc, delituērant noctu in silvis.  
 about to come hither, had lurked by night in the woods.  
 Tum subitō adorti dispersos,  
 Then suddenly having attacked (them) dispersed,  
 occupatos in metendo, armis depositis,  
 engaged in reaping, (their) arms having been laid aside,  
 paucis interfectis, perturbavērant reliquos  
 a few having been slain, they had disordered the rest  
 incertis ordinibus; simul circum-  
 in uncertain [confused] ranks; at the same time they had  
 dedērant equitatu atque essēdis.  
 surrounded (them) with cavalry and with chariots.  
 33. Hoc est gēnus pugnae ex essēdis:  
 This is the kind of battle from the chariots.  
 primō, perequitant per omnes partes, et  
 first, they ride through all parts, and  
 conjiciunt tela: atque perturbant<sup>54</sup> ordines  
 hurl (their) weapons: and they disorder the ranks  
 plerumque terrore ipso equorum, et  
 generally by the terror itself of the horses. and

strepĭtu rotarum : et quum insinuavĕre  
 rattling of the wheels: and when they have introduced  
 se inter turmas equĭtum, desiliunt  
 themselves among the troops of the horsemen, they leap down  
 ex essĕdis et prœliantur<sup>55</sup> pedĭbus.  
 from the chariots and fight on feet [on foot].

Intĕrim aurigæ excedunt paulum è  
 Meantime the charioters retire a little from

prœlio, atque collōcant se Ita, ut si  
 the battle, and place themselves so, that if

illi premantur à multitudĭne hostĭum, hab-  
 those are pressed by the multitude of the enemy, they

ĕant expeditum receptum ad sĭos. Ita  
 may have an unhindered retreat to their own (men). Thus

præstant mobilitatem equĭtum, stabilitem  
 they display the activity of cavalry, the steadiness

pedĭtum in prœliis; ac efficiunt tantum  
 of infantry in battles; and they accomplish so much

quotidiano usu et exercitatione, ut con-  
 by daily practice and exercise, that they have

suevĕrint (perf. subj.) in declivi ac præcipiti  
 been accustomed in a sloping and steep

lōco, sustinere ēquos incitatos, et moderari  
 place, to rein in (their) horses spurred on, and to control

ac flectĕre brĕvi, et percurrĕre  
 and (to) turn (them) shortly [sharply], and to run along

per temonem, et insistĕre in jugo,  
 though [on] the pole, and to stand on the yoke,

et recipĕre se inde citissimè in  
 and to betake themselves thence most quickly into

currus.

the chariots.

34. Nostris perturbatis quĭbus  
 To our (men) having been disordered by which [these]

rebus, novitate pugnæ, Cæsar tulit  
 things, by the novelty [strangeness] of the battle, Cæsar brought

auxilium opportunissĭmo tempore: namque hostes  
 aid at a most seasonable time: for the enemy



constiterunt ejus, adventu nostri receperunt  
halted on his, arrival our (men) recovered

se ex timore. Quo facto,  
themselves from fear. Which having been done,

arbitratus<sup>56</sup> tempus esse alienum ad  
having thought the time to be [was] improper for

laceddendum hostem et committendum prœlium,  
attacking the enemy and for engaging in battle,

continuit se suo loco; et brevi  
he kept himself in his own place; and a short

tempore intermisso,<sup>57</sup> reduxit legiones  
time having been passed [spent], he led back the legions

in castra. Dum hæc geruntur, omnibus  
into the camp. While these (things) are passing, all

nostris occupatis, qui erant in agris  
our (men) having been engaged, who were in the fields

reliqui<sup>58</sup> discesserunt. Tempestates secutæ sunt  
the rest departed. Storms followed

complures continuos dies, quæ et continerent  
many successive days, which both were restraining

(imp. subj.) nostros in castris (pl.), et prohib-  
our (men) in camp, and were

erent (imp. subj.) hostem à pugna. Intèrim  
hindering the enemy from battle. Meantime

barbãri dimiserunt nuncios in omnes  
the barbarians dispatched messengers into all

partes, quæ prædicaverunt suis paup-  
parts, and proclaimed to their own (people) the

citatem nostrorum militum; et demonstraverunt  
fewness of our soldiers; and showed

quanta facultas<sup>59</sup> daretur (imp. subj.) faciendæ  
how great an opportunity was given of making

prædæ atque liberandi sui in perpetuum,  
plunder and of freeing themselves forever,

si expulissent Romanos castris (pl.). Magna  
if they should drive the Romans from the camp. A great

multitudine peditatus quæ equitatus co-  
multitude of infantry and of cavalry having been

actâ celeriter his rebus, venerunt  
 assembled quickly with these things [objects], they came  
 ad castra (pl.).  
 to the camp.

35. Etsi Cæsar videbat idem  
 Although Cæsar was seeing (that) the same (things)  
 fore, quod accidêrat superioribus  
 to be about to [would] be, which had happened in former  
 diebus; ut, si hostes essent pulsi,  
 days; that, if the enemy should be routed,  
 effugêrent pericûlum celeritate; tamen  
 they would escape danger by speed; nevertheless  
 nactus circiter triginta equites, quos Commius  
 having got about thirty horsemen, whom Commius  
 Atrêbas, (de quo dictum-est antè)  
 the Atrêbatian, (of whom it has been mentioned before)  
 transportavêrat secum, constituit legiones  
 had brought over with himself, he drew up the legions  
 in acie pro castris (pl.). Prælio  
 in battle line before the camp. The battle  
 commisso, hostes potuerunt non ferre  
 having been joined, the enemy were able not to bear  
 impetum nostrorum militum diutius ac verterunt  
 the charge of our soldiers longer and turned  
 terga: quos secuti tanto spatîo,  
 (their) backs [retreated]: whom having followed for so great a distance,  
 quantum potuerunt efficere cursu et  
 as they were able to accomplish by running and  
 viribus (pl.), occiderunt complures ex iis;  
 by exertion, they killed many from [of] them:  
 deinde omnibus ædificiis incensis longè  
 then all the buildings having been burned far  
 que latè, receperunt se in castra (pl.).  
 and wide, they betook themselves into the camp.  
 36. Eodem diè legati missi ab  
 On the same day ambassadors (having been) sent by  
 hostibus venerunt ad Cæsarem de pace.  
 the enemy came to Cæsar concerning peace.

Cæsar duplicavit his num̃erum obsidum,  
Cæsar doubled for these [them] the number of hostages

quem imperaṽerat ant̃ea; que jussit eos  
which he had ordered before; and commanded them

adduci in continentem; quòd, d̃ie  
to be conducted to the continent; because, the day

æquinoc̃ti propinquâ, existimabat navigationem<sup>60</sup>  
of the equinox (being) near, he was thinking the voyage

non subjiendam hĩem̃ infirmis navibus:  
not to [would not] be exposed to winter with weak ships:

ipse nactus idoneam tempestatem solvit  
he himself having gained suitable weather cast loose

naves paulò post mediã noctem; omnes  
the ships a little after mid night; all

quæ pervenerunt incolũmes ad continentem.  
which [these] passed safe to the continent.

Ex his, dũ onerariæ potuerunt  
From [of] these, two burden [transport ships] were able

non cap̃ere eosdem portus, quos  
not to take [reach] the same harbors, which [as]

reliquæ; sed delatæ sunt paulò infrà.  
the rest; but were carried down a little below.

37. Ex quibus<sup>61</sup> navibus, quum circ̃ter  
From which ships, when about

trecenti milites expositi-essent (pl. perf. subj.),  
three hundred soldiers had been landed,

atque contend̃rent (imp. subj.) in castra (pl.),  
and were hastening into camp,

Morini, quos Cæsar reliqũerat pacatos  
the Morini, whom Cæsar had left subdued

proficiscens in Britanniam, adducti spe  
setting out into Britain, induced by hope

prædæ, primò circumsteterunt num̃ero  
of plunder, first surrounded (them) with a number

suorum non ita magno, ac jusserunt  
of their own (men), not so large, and ordered

poñere arma, si nollent<sup>62</sup>  
(them) to lay down (their) arms, if they were unwilling

sese interfici. Quum illi,  
 (that they) themselves to [should] be slain. When they,  
 orbe facto, defendērent (imp. subj.)  
 a circle having been formed, were defending  
 sese, circiter sex millia celeriter convenerunt  
 themselves, about six thousand quickly assembled  
 ad clamorem hominum. Quā re nun-  
 at the shout of the men. Which thing having been  
 tiatā, Cæsar misit omnem equitatum ex  
 announced, Cæsar sent all the cavalry from  
 suis castris (pl.) auxilio suis. Intērim nostri  
 his camp for aid to his (men). Meantime our  
 milites sustinuerunt impetum hostium, atque  
 soldiers bore the attack of the enemy, and  
 pugnaverunt fortissimē amplius quatuor horis;  
 fought most bravely more (than) four hours;  
 et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, occiderunt  
 and, a few wounds having been received, killed  
 complures ex iis. Verò posteaquā noster  
 many from them. But after (that) our  
 equitatus venit in conspectum, hostes,  
 cavalry came into sight, the enemy, (their)  
 armis abjectis, verterunt terga,  
 arms having been thrown away, turned (their) backs,  
 que magnus numerus eorum occisus-est.  
 [retreated] and a great number of them was killed.  
 38. Cæsar misit legatum Titum Labienum  
 Cæsar sent (his) lieutenant Titus Labienus  
 postero die, cum iis legionibus, quas  
 the following day, with these legions, which  
 reduxerat ex Britannia, in Morinos,  
 he had brought back from Britain, into the Morini,  
 qui fecerant rebellionem. Qui, quum habe-  
 who had made a rebellion. Who, when they were  
 rent (imp. subj.) non quò recipērent  
 having not [no] where they might betake  
 se propter siccitates (pl.) paludum,  
 themselves on account of the dryness of the marshes,

quo perfugio (abl.) usi-fuerant superiore anno,  
which refuge they had used in the former year,

fere omnes prevenerunt in potestatem Labieni.  
nearly all came into the power of Labienus.

At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati,  
But Quintus Titurius and Lucius Cotta, the lieutenants,

qui duxerant legiones in fines Me-  
who had led the legions into the territories of the

napiorum, omnibus eorum agris vastatis,  
Menapii, all their lands having been devastated,

frumentis (pl.) succisis, que edificis  
the corn having been cut down, and the buildings

incensis, quod omnes Menapii abdidérant  
having been fired, because all the Menapii had hid

se in densissimas silvas, receperunt  
themselves among the thickest woods, betook

se ad Cæsarem. Cæsar constituit hi-  
themselves to Cæsar. Cæsar established the winter

berna omnium legionum in Belgis. Eò  
quarters of all the legions among the Belgæ. There

dûæ civitates omnino ex Britannia miserunt  
two states altogether from Britain sent

obsides: reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus  
hostages: the rest neglected (it). These things

gestis, supplicatio viginti  
having been accomplished, a general thanksgiving of twenty

dierum decreta-est à senatu, ex  
days was decreed by the senate, from [because of]

litteris (abl.) Cæsaris.  
the letters of Cæsar.

## FIFTH BOOK

The fifth book includes the description of Cæsar's second campaign against the Britons and an account of certain internal trouble and revolts which endangered several Roman encampments. Cæsar in preparing to leave his winter quarters ordered a huge fleet of specially constructed ships to be made ready. A second expedition against Britain is undertaken, and boldly resisted by the tribesmen of the island. The Roman fleet suffers severe losses through storms. The Britons throw a fresh offensive against the Romans; but they are defeated. Cæsar with hostages returns to Gaul. There the tribes are involved in an internal war, and a revolution under Indutiomarus and Ambiorix is attempted. Contrary to his custom, Cæsar quarters his army in divisions and Gaul is finally brought again to a peaceful state.

1. Lucio	Domitio,	Appio	Claudio	
Lucius	Domitius,	Appius	Claudius	(being)
Consulibus,	Cæsar	discendens	ab	hibernis
Consuls,	Cæsar	departing	from	winter quarters
in	Italiam,	ut	consuerat	facere
into	Italy,	as	he had been accustomed	to do
quotannis,	impërat	legatis (dat.),	quos	
yearly [every year],	orders	the lieutenants,	whom	
præfecerat	legionibus (dat.),	uti		
he had appointed over	the legions,	that		
curent	quam plurimas <sup>1</sup>	naves		
they should take care	(that) as many	ships		
possent	ædificandas	hieme,	que	
as might be possible	to [should] be built	in the winter,	and	
vetëres	reficiendas.	Demonstrat eorum mōdum		
the old (ships) to [should] be repaired.	He shows	their	size	
que formam;	fācit	paulò humiliores	quàm	
and form;	he makes (them)	a little lower	than	
quibus (abl.)	consuevimus	uti	in	
(those) which	we have been accustomed	to use	in	

nostro mări, ad celeritatem onerandi, que  
 our sea, for quickness of loading, and  
 subductionis; atque id mägis ẽd,  
 of drawing up [beaching]; and this the more for this reason,  
 quòd cognovërat mĩnùs magnos  
 because he had learned (that) less [not so] great  
 fluctus<sup>2</sup> fieri ibi propter crebras  
 waves to be [are] found there on account of the frequent  
 commutationes æstuum; paulò latiores quàm  
 changes of the tides: a little wider than  
 quibus (abl.) utimur in reliquis maribus, ad  
 what we use in the other seas, for  
 onëra<sup>3</sup> et ad transportandum multitudinem  
 loads and for transferring a multitude  
 jumentorum. Impërat omnes has fieri  
 of beasts of burden. He commands all these to be made  
 actuarias: ad quam<sup>4</sup> rem humilitas adjüvat  
 fast sailing: for which thing [object] the lowness aids  
 multum. Jübet ea, quæ sunt usui ad  
 much. He orders these things, which are for use for  
 armandas<sup>5</sup> naves apportari ex Hispaniã.  
 rigging ships to be brought from Spain.  
 Ipse, conventibus citerioris Galliæ peractis,  
 He himself, the assemblies of nearer Gaul having been finished,  
 proficiscitur in Illyricum; quòd audiebat  
 sets out into Illyricum; because he was hearing (that)  
 finitimam partem Provinciæ vastari  
 the neighboring part of the Province to be [was] ravaged  
 incursionibus à Pirustis. Quum venisset  
 with incursions by the Pirustæ. When he had come  
 (pl. perf. subj.) ẽd, impërat<sup>6</sup> civitatibus (dat.)  
 there. he demands (of) the states  
 milites, que jübet convenire in certum locum.  
 soldiers, and orders (them) to assemble to [into] a certain place.  
 Quæ re nuntiata, Pirustæ  
 Which [This] thing having been announced, the Pirustæ  
 mittunt legatos ad eum, qui doceant nihil  
 send ambassadors to him, who may show that nothing

earum rerum factum (-esse) publico  
 of these things [acts] to have [had] been done by public  
 concilio: que demonstrant sese esse  
 council: and they show (that they) themselves to be  
 paratos satisfacere omnibus rationibus de  
 [are] prepared to satisfy by all means regarding  
 injuriis. Eorum oratione acceptâ,  
 the injuries. Their speech having been received [heard],  
 Cæsar impërat obsides, que jûbet eos adduci  
 Cæsar demands hostages, and orders them to be brought  
 ad certam diem: nisi fecerant ita,  
 to [on] a certain day: unless they should do so,  
 demonstrat<sup>7</sup> sese persecuturum  
 he shows (that he) himself about to [would] pursue  
 civitatem bello. His adductis ad  
 the state by war These having been brought on the  
 diem, ut imperaverat, dat arbitros  
 day, as he had commanded, he gives [appoints] arbitrators  
 inter civitates, qui æstiment litem  
 among the states, who may value the suit [the damage]  
 que constituant pœnam.  
 and may determine the penalty.

2. His rebus confectis, que  
 These things having been accomplished, and  
 conventibus peractis, revertitur in  
 the assemblies having been concluded, he returns into  
 citeriorem Galliam, atque inde proficiscitur ad  
 hither Gaul, and thence sets out to  
 exercitum. Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) eò,  
 the army. When he had come there,  
 omnibus hibernis circuitis, invenit  
 all the winter quarters having been visited, he found  
 circiter sexcentas naves ejus generis, cujus  
 about six hundred ships of this kind, (of) which  
 demonstravimus supra, et viginti octo longas  
 we have shown above, and twenty eight long  
 constructas, singulari studio militum,  
 [var ships] built, by the singular zeal of the soldiers.



in summâ inopiâ omnium rerum, neque multum  
 in the highest want of all things, nor much  
 abesse<sup>8</sup> ab eo, quin  
 to be [was] wanting from this (condition), but that  
 possent deduci paucis diebus.  
 they might be able [could] (to) be launched in a few days.  
 Militibus collaudatis, atque iis, qui  
 The soldiers having been commended and to those, who  
 praeſuērunt negotiō, ostendit quid  
 had presided in the business [undertaking], he shows what  
 vĕlit fieri; atque jūbet omnes convenire  
 he wishes to be done: and orders all to assemble  
 ad portum Itium: ex quo portu  
 to[at] the port Itius [Boulogne]: from which port  
 cognovĕrat trajectum in Britanniam esse  
 he had learned the passage into Britain to be [was]  
 commodissimum, circiter triginta millium  
 the most convenient, about thirty (of) thousand  
 passum à continenti. Relinquit quod  
 paces from the continent. He leaves what  
 visum-est esse satis militum huic rei:  
 seemed to be enough (of) soldiers for this thing  
 ipse proficiscitur cum quatuor  
 [expedition]: (he) himself sets out with four  
 expeditis legionibus, et octingentis equitibus,  
 light-armed legions, and eight hundred cavalry,  
 in fines Trevirorum; quod hi nēque  
 into the territories of the Treviri: because these neither  
 veniebant ad concilia, nēque parebant  
 were coming to the councils, nor were obeying  
 imperiō (dat.), que dicebantur sollicitare  
 (his) command, and were said to be inciting  
 Germanos transrhenanos.  
 the Germans beyond the Rhine.  
 3. Hæc civitas vālet<sup>9</sup> longè plurimum  
 This state prevails by far the most  
 totius Galliæ equitatu, que habet magnas  
 of the whole of Gaul in cavalry, and has great

copias peditum; que tangit Rhenum, ut  
 forces of infantry; and borders the Rhine, as  
 demonstravimus suprâ. In eâ civitate duo,  
 we have shown above. In this state two (men).  
 Indutiomârus et Cingetorix, contendebant<sup>10</sup> inter  
 Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, were striving among  
 se de principatu: alter ex  
 [between] themselves about the supreme authority: one from [of]  
 quibus, simul atque cognitum-est de adventu  
 whom, as soon as it was known concerning the approach  
 Cæsaris que legionum, venit ad eum; confirmavit  
 of Cæsar and of the legions, came to him; he declared  
 se que omnes suos futuros  
 (that he) himself and all his (people) about to [would] be  
 in officio, neque defecturos ab  
 in duty [allegiance], nor about to [would] revolt from  
 amicitia Romani populi; que ostendit,  
 the friendship of the Roman people; and he shows,  
 quæ gererentur (imp. subj.) in Treviris.  
 what (things) were transpiring among the Treviri,  
 At Indutiomârus instituit cogere equitatum que  
 But Indutiomarus began to collect cavalry and  
 peditatum; que iis, qui per ætatem poterant  
 infantry; and those, who through age were able  
 non esse in armis, abditis in silvam  
 not to be in arms, having been hid within the forest  
 Arduennam, (quæ ingenti magnitudine  
 of Arduenna [Ardennes], (which of great extent  
 pertinet à flumine Rheno ad initium  
 reaches from the river Rhine to the beginning  
 Rhemorum per medios fines Trevirorum)  
 of the Rhemi through the central territories of the Treviri)  
 parare<sup>11</sup> bellum. Sed posteaquàm nonnulli  
 (to) prepare [prepares] war. But after (that) some  
 principes ex eâ civitate, et adducti familiaritate  
 chiefs from this state, both induced by the intimacy  
 Cingetorigis, et perterriti adventu nostri  
 of Cingetorix, and alarmed by the approach of our

exercitūs, venerunt ad Cæsārem, et cœperunt petere  
 army, came to Cæsar and began to seek

ab eo de suis privatis rebus, quoniam  
 from him about their own private affairs, since

possent (imp. subj.) non consulere civitati:  
 they were able not to consult for the state:

Indutiomārus veritus ne desereretur  
 Indutiomarus having feared lest he might be abandoned

ab omnibus, mittit legatos ad Cæsārem;  
 by all, sends ambassadors to Cæsar: (to say)

se<sup>12</sup> discedere idcirco à  
 (that he) himself to withdraw [withdraws] for this reason from

suis, atque noluisse venire ad  
 his own (people), and to have [had] been unwilling to come to

eum, quod contineret civitatem facilius  
 him, in order that he might restrain the state more easily

in officio; ne discusso omnis  
 in duty [allegiance]; lest by the departure of all

nobilitatis, plebs laberetur propter  
 the nobility, the common people might slip through (their)

imprudentiā: itaque civitatem esse in sua  
 indiscretion: therefore the state to be [was] in his

potestate; que se venturum  
 power; and (that he) himself (to be) about to [would] come

ad eum in castra (pl.), si Cæsar permittēret;  
 to him into the camp, if Cæsar would permit

et permissurum suas fortunas que  
 and (to be) about to [would] consign his own fortunes and

civitatis ejus fidē.  
 (those) of the state to his faith.

4. Etsi Cæsar intelligebat de quā causā<sup>13</sup>  
 Although Cæsar was understanding from what cause

ea dicerentur (imp. subj.), que quæ res  
 these things were said, and what thing

detereretur (imp. subj.) eum ab instituto  
 was deterring him from (his) determined

consilio; tamen, ne cogeretur consumere  
 purpose: however, lest he might be compelled to waste

æstatem in Treviris, omnibus rebus  
 the summer among the Treviri. all things  
 comparatis ad Britannicum bellum, jussit  
 having been prepared for the Britannie war, he ordered  
 Indutiomārum venire ad se cum ducentis  
 Indutiomarus to come to himself with two hundred  
 obsidibus. His adductis, et filio  
 hostages. These having been brought, and (his) son  
 in his, que omnibus ejus propinquis, quos  
 among them, and all his relations, whom  
 evocaverat nominatim, consolatus est que  
 he had called out by name, he consoled and  
 hortatus (est) Indutiomārum, uti permaneret  
 encouraged Indutiomarus, that he might continue  
 in officio. Tamen, nihilo secius principibus  
 in duty [allegiance]. Yet, nevertheless the chiefs  
 Trevirorum convocatis ad se,  
 of the Treviri having been called together to himself,  
 conciliavit eos singulatim Cingetorigi: quod<sup>14</sup>  
 he reconciled them individually to Cingetorix: which  
 intelligebat cum fieri à se  
 (thing) he was understanding not only to be [was] done by himself  
 ejus merito (sing.) tum arbitrabatur interesse  
 by his deserts but also he was judging to concern  
 magni, ejus auctoritatem  
 [it concerned] (him) of great [greatly]. (that) his authority  
 valere quam plurimum inter suos,  
 to [should] prevail as much as possible among his own (people),  
 cujus voluntatem perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 whose (good) will he had perceived (was)  
 tam egregiam in se. Indutiomārus tulit  
 so excellent toward himself. Indutiomarus bore  
 id factum graviter, suam gratiam  
 this act heavily [bitterly]. his own favor  
 minui inter suos: et qui  
 to be [was] diminished among his own (people): and (he) who  
 fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) inimico animo antè  
 had been in [of] unfriendly spirit before

in nos exarsit multò graviùs hoc  
toward us blazed forth [raged] much more violently by this  
dolore.  
vexation

5. Iis rebus constitutis, Cæsar pervenit  
Those things having been settled, Cæsar arrived  
ad portum Itium cum legionibus. Cognoscit  
at the harbor Itus with the legions. He learns  
ibi, quadraginta naves, quæ factæ erant  
there, (that) forty ships, which had been made  
in Meldis, rejectas tempestate, non  
among the Meldi, thrown back by a storm. not  
potuisse<sup>15</sup> tenere cursum, atque  
to have [had not] been able to hold (their) course. and  
relatas eodem, unde profectæ erant:  
(were) carried back to the same (place) whence they had set out:  
invēnit reliquas paratas ad navigandum, atque  
he finds the rest prepared for sailing. and  
instructas omnibus rebus. Equitatus totius  
furnished with all things. The cavalry of the whole  
Galliæ convenit eodem, numero quatuor  
of Gaul assembled in the same (place) to the number of four  
millium, que principes ex omnibus civitatibus;  
thousand, and the chiefs from [of] all the states;  
perpaucos ex quibus, quorum fidem in  
a very few from [of] whom. whose fidelity toward  
se perspexerat, decreverat relinquere in  
himself he had clearly seen, he had resolved to leave in  
Galliā; ducere reliquos secum loco  
Gaul: (and) to lead [take] the rest with him in the place  
obsidum; quòd verebatur motum Galliæ,  
of hostages; because he was fearing a disturbance of Gaul,  
quum ipse abesset.  
when (he) himself was absent.  
6. Dumnōrix Ædūus erat una cum  
Dumnorix the Æduan was together with  
cætēris de quo dictum est  
the rest concerning whom it has been spoken

[mention was made]	à	nobis	antēa.	Constituērat
	by	us	before	He had resolved
ducere	hunc	secum	inprimis,	quod
to conduct	him	with him	in particular,	because
cognovērat	ēum	cupīdum	novarum	rerum,
he had known	him	desirous	of new	things
[revolution].	cupīdum	imperii,	magni animi,	magnæ
	desirous	of power.	of high spirit,	of great
auctoritatis	inter	Gallos.	Accedebat	huc, <sup>16</sup>
authority	among	the Gauls.	It was added	to this,
quod	Dumnōrix	dixērat	jam	in concilio
that	Dumnorix	had said	already	in a council
Æduorum,		regnum		civitatis
of the Ædui,	(that)	the government		of the state
deferri	sibi	à	Cæsare.	Quod
to be [was] conferred	to [on] himself	by	Cæsar.	Which
dictum	Ædūi	ferebant	graviter,	nēque
saying	the Ædui	were bearing	heavily [ill].	nor
audebant	mittere	legatos	ad	Cæsarem
were they daring	to send	ambassadors	to	Cæsar
causā	recusandi	nēque	deprecandi.	Cæsar
for the sake	of objecting	nor	of protesting.	Cæsar
cognovērat	id	factum (esse)		ex
had known	(that) this	to have been [was] done		from
suis <sup>17</sup>	hospitibus.	Ille	primò	contendit
his	guests.	He	at first	strove
omnibus	precibus,	ut	relinqueretur	in Galliā;
by all	entreaties,	that	he might be left	in Gaul;
partim	quod	insuetus	navigandi	timeret (imp.
partly	because	unused	of [to] voyaging	he was fearing
subj.)	māria;	partim	quod	dicēret (imp. subj.)
	the sea;	partly	because	he was saying
sese	impediri	religionibus.		
(that he) himself	to be [was] hindered	by religious scruples.		
Posteaquam	vidit	id	negari <sup>18</sup>	obstinatē
After (that)	he saw	this	to be [was] denied	obstinately
sibi,	omni spe	impetrandi	ademptā,	
to himself,	all hope	of obtaining (it)	having been taken away	

cœpit      sollicitare      principes      Galliæ,      sevocare  
 he began      to instigate      the chiefs      of Gaul,      to call apart  
 singulos      que      hortari,      ut      remanerent      in  
 individuals      and      to exhort,      that      they should remain      on  
 continenti;      territare<sup>19</sup>      mētū  
 the continent; (saying) he to be [was] alarmed with the fear (that this)  
 fieri      non      sine      causâ,      ut      Galliæ  
 to be [was] done      not      without      reason,      that      Gaul  
 spoliaretur      omni      nobilitate.      Id      esse  
 might be stripped from [of] all the nobility. (That) this to be [was]  
 consilium      Cæsaris,      ut      necaret      omnes  
 the plan      of Cæsar,      that      he might destroy      all  
 hos      transductos      in      Britanniam,      quos  
 these      conveyed over      into      Britain,      whom  
 vereretur (imp. subj.)      interficere      in      conspectu  
 he was fearing      to slay      in      the sight  
 Galliæ.      Interponere<sup>20</sup>      fidem      reliquis;  
 of Gaul.      To suggest [He suggests]      a pledge      to the rest;  
 poscere      iusjurandum,      ut      administrarent  
 to demand [he demands]      an oath,      that      they would perform  
 communi consilio, quod      intellexissent      esse  
 with common design, what      they should understand      to be  
 ex      usu      Galliæ.  
 [was] from [for]      the use [advantage]      of Gaul.  
 7. Hæc      deferebantur      ad Cæsarem      à  
 These (matters)      were reported      to      Cæsar      by  
 compluribus. Quâ re cognitâ, Cæsar, quod  
 very many. Which thing having been known, Cæsar, because  
 tribuebat tantum dignitatis Ædûæ civitati,  
 he was granting so much (of) honor to the Æduan state,  
 statuebat      Dumnorigem      coërcendum  
 was determining (that) Dumnorix      to [should] be restrained  
 atque deterrendum quibuscunque rebus  
 and to [should] be checked by whatever things [means]  
 posset; quod videbat ejus amentiam  
 he might be able; because he was seeing his madness  
 progrēdi      longius,      prospiciendum,<sup>21</sup>      ne  
 to [would] proceed further, (it was) to be provided,      lest

posset nocere sibi (dat.) ac  
 he might be able [should] (to) injure himself and  
 rei publicæ (dat.). Itaque commoratus in eo  
 the republic. Therefore having delayed in this  
 loco circiter viginti quinque dies, quod ventus  
 place about twenty five days, because the wind  
 Corus impediēbat navigationem, qui  
 Corus (North West wind) was hindering the passage, which  
 consuevit flare in his locis magnam partem  
 is accustomed to blow in these places a great part  
 omnis temporis, dabat operam,<sup>22</sup> ut  
 of every season. he was giving work [attention]. that  
 contineret Dumnorigem in officio; tamen  
 he might keep Dumnorix in (his) duty; yet (that)  
 cognoscēret nihilō-secūs omnia ejus consilia.  
 he should learn nevertheless all his designs.  
 Tandem nactus idoneam tempestatem, jubet  
 At length having got favorable weather, he orders  
 milites que equites conscendere in naves. At  
 the soldiers and cavalry to embark on the ships. But  
 animis omnium impeditis, Dumnorix cum  
 the minds of all having been occupied, Dumnorix with  
 equitibus Æduorum, Cæsare insciente, coepit  
 the cavalry of the Ædui, Cæsar not knowing, began  
 discedere domum à castris (pl.). Quā re  
 to depart home from the camp. Which [This] thing  
 nuntiata, Cæsar, profectio inter-  
 having been announced. Cæsar the departure having been  
 missa atque omnibus rebus postpositis,  
 discontinued and all things having been postponed,  
 mittit magnam partem equitatus ad insequendum  
 sends a large part of the cavalry to pursue  
 eum, que imperat retrahi: si faciat<sup>23</sup>  
 him, and orders (him) to be dragged back: if he may do  
 vim, neque pareat, jubet interfici:  
 violence, nor may obey, he commands (him) to be killed:  
 arbitratus hunc facturum nihil  
 having considered him (that he) about to [would] do nothing



pro sano, qui neglexisset (pluperf. subj.)  
for [as] a sound [sane] (man), who had disregarded

imperium præsentis. Enim ille revocatus  
the command of (him) present. For he having been summoned

cœpit resistere, ac defendere se manu,  
began to resist, and to defend himself by hand [force],

que implorare fidem suorum;  
and to entreat the faith [support] of his own (people):

clamitans sæpè, se esse liberum,  
crying out often, (that he) himself to be [was] a free (man),

quæ liberæ civitatis. Isti circumstant  
and of a free state. They surround

que interficiunt hominem, ut imperatum erat:  
and slay the man, as it had been ordered:

at omnes Ædū equites revertuntur ad  
but all the Æduan horsemen return to

Cæsārem.

Cæsar.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno  
These things having been performed, Labienus

relicto in continente cum tribus legionibus  
having been left on the continent with three legions

et duobus millibus equitum, ut tueretur  
and two thousand (of) cavalry, that he might defend

portus, et provideret frumentariæ rei, que  
the harbors, and might provide for the grain supply, and

cognosceret quæ gererentur in Galliâ, et  
might ascertain what might be transpiring in Gaul, and

caperet consilium pro<sup>24</sup> tempore et pro  
might take counsel for [according to] time and for

re: ipse cum quinque legionibus et  
the affair: (he) himself with five legions and

pāri numero equitum, quem relinquerat in  
an equal number of cavalry, which he had left on

continente, solvit naves ad occasum  
the continent, cast loose the ships at [about] the setting

solis; et provectus leni  
of the sun; and having been carried forward by a gentle

Afrīco, vento intermisso circiter  
 South West wind. the wind having discontinued about  
 mediā nocte, tenūit non cursum: et  
 mid night, he held not the course: and  
 delatus longius æstu, luce  
 being carried away farther by the tide, the light [day]  
 ortā, conspexit Britanniam relictam sub  
 having risen, he beheld Britain left [lying] under [on]  
 sinistrā. Tum rursus secutus commutationem  
 the left. Then again having followed the change  
 æstus, contendit remis, ut caperet  
 of the tide, he strove with oars, that he might take [reach]  
 eam partem insulæ, quâ cognoverat  
 this part of the island, on which he had known  
 superiore æstate esse optimum egressum. In  
 in the former summer to be [was] the best landing. In  
 quâ re virtus militum fuit  
 which [this] thing [attempt] the merit of the soldiers was  
 admōdum laudanda, qui, labore remigandi non  
 very much to be praised, who, the labor of rowing not  
 intermisso, adæquaverunt cursum longarum  
 having been interrupted, equalled the course of the long  
 navium, vectoriis que gravibus navigiis.  
 ships [war-ships], with transports and heavy vessels.  
 Accessum est<sup>25</sup> ad Britanniam omnibus navibus  
 It was [They] approached to Britain with all the ships  
 fere meridiano tempore. Neque<sup>26</sup> hostis visus est  
 nearly at noon time. Nor an enemy was seen  
 in eo loco. Sed, ut Cæsar postea compertit  
 in this place. But, as Cæsar afterwards discovered  
 ex captivis, quum magnæ manus convenissent  
 from the prisoners, when a great band had assembled  
 (pl. perf. subj.) eo, perterritæ multitudīne  
 there, having been alarmed by the multitude  
 navium, quæ amplius octingentæ visæ erant  
 of ships, which more (than) eight-hundred had been seen  
 unā cum annotinis que privatis,  
 together with last year's (ships) and the private (ones).

quas quisque fecerat causâ sui  
 which each had made for the sake of his own  
 commōdi, discesserant timore à littōre,  
 convenience, they had departed in fear from the shore,

ac abdidērant se in superiora loca.  
 and had concealed themselves in the higher places.

9. Cæsar, exercitū exposito, ac  
 Cæsar, the army having been disembarked, and

loco idoneo castris (pl.) capto, ubi  
 a place suitable for a camp having been taken, when

cognovit ex captivis, in quo loco copiæ  
 he learned from the prisoners, in what place the forces

hostium consedisent (pl. perf. subj.), decem  
 of the enemy had encamped, ten

cohortibus relictis ad mare, et trecentis  
 cohorts having been left at [near] the sea, and three-hundred

equitibus, qui essent præsidio navibus,  
 horsemen, who were (for) a guard to the ships,

contendit ad hostes de tertiâ vigiliâ;  
 hastened to the enemy on the third watch;

veritus eò minus navibus, quod  
 having feared for this reason the less for the ships, because

relinquebat deligatas ad anchōras (pl.) in molli  
 he was leaving (them) fastened at anchor on a soft

atque aperto littōre; et præfecit Quintum  
 and open shore; and he put in command Quintus

Atrium præsidio navibus. Ipse progressus  
 Atrius for protection to the ships. He himself having advanced

noctu circiter duodecim millia passuum  
 by night about twelve thousand (of) paces

conspicatus est copias hostium. Illi  
 discovered the forces of the enemy. They

progressi ad flumen equitatu atque  
 having advanced to the river with the cavalry and

essedis, coeperunt prohibere nostros ex  
 chariots, began to check our (men) from

superiore loco et committere prælium.  
 the higher place and to engage battle.

Repulsi ab equitatu, nacti lōcum.  
 Having been repulsed by the cavalry, having got a place.  
 egregiè munitum et naturâ et opère,  
 excellently fortified both by nature and by work [art].  
 quem; (ut videbantur,) præparverant jam  
 which, (as it was seeming,) they had prepared already  
 antè, causâ domestici belli, abdiderunt  
 before, for the sake of domestic war they hid  
 se in silvas: nam crebris arboribus.  
 themselves in the woods: for the thick trees  
 succissis, omnes introitus præclusi-erant.  
 having been cut down, all the entrances had been shut up.  
 Ipsi rari propugnabant ex  
 They themselves, few [in squads], were charging from  
 silvis, que prohibebant nostros ingredi<sup>27</sup>  
 the woods, and were preventing our (men) to enter  
 intra munitiones. At milites  
 [from entering] within the fortifications. But the soldiers:  
 septimæ legionis, testudinē factâ, et  
 of the seventh legion, a testudo having been made, and  
 aggere ad munitiones,  
 a mound having been thrown up against the fortifications,  
 ceperunt lōcum, que expulerunt eos ex silvis,  
 took the place, and drove them from the woods,  
 paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed Cæsar  
 a few wounds having been received But Cæsar  
 vetuit persëqui eos fugientes longius, et quòd  
 forbade to pursue them fleeing farther, both because  
 ignorabat naturam lōci, et quòd  
 he was not knowing the nature of the place, and because  
 magnâ parte diei consumptâ, volebat  
 a great part of the day having been spent, he was wishing  
 tempus relinquere munitioni  
 (that) time to [should] be left for the fortification  
 castrorum (pl.).  
 of the camp.

10. Postridie ejus diei, misit manè  
 The day after this day, he sent in the morning

milites que equites tripartitò in  
 the soldiers and cavalry in three divisions on  
 expeditionem, ut persequerentur eos, qui  
 an expedition, that they might pursue these, who  
 fugerant. Iis progressi aliquantum  
 had fled. These having advanced a considerable part  
 itinēris, quum jam extremi essent  
 of the march, when already the last [the rear] were  
 (imp. subj.) in conspectu, equites venerunt à  
 in sight, horsemen came from  
 Quinto Atrio ad Cæsārem, qui nuntiarent  
 Quintus Atrius to Cæsar, who announced (that)  
 maximā tempestate coortā superiori nocte,  
 a very great storm having arisen on the former night,  
 omnes naves propè afflictas-esse atque  
 all the ships nearly to have [had] been dashed and  
 ejectas in litōre; quòd neque anchōræ  
 thrown up on the shore; because neither the anchors  
 que funes subsisterent (imp. subj.), neque nautæ  
 and cables were holding, nor the sailors  
 que gubernatores possent (imp. subj.) pati  
 and pilots were able to endure  
 vim tempestatis. Itaque magnum  
 the violence of the storm. Therefore great  
 incommōdum acceptum esse ex eo  
 damage to have [had] been received from this  
 concursu navium.  
 collision of the ships.  
 11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar jubet  
 These things having been known, Cæsar orders  
 legiones que equitatum revocari, atque  
 the legions and the cavalry to be recalled, and  
 desistere itinēre, ipse revertitur ad  
 to halt from the march, he himself returns to  
 naves: perspicit coram fere eadem,  
 the ships: he observes when present nearly the same (things),  
 quæ cognoverat ex nuntiis (litteris<sup>28</sup> (pl.));  
 which he had known from the messengers (the letters);

sic ut, circiter quadraginta navibus amissis,  
 so that, about forty ships having been lost,  
 tamen reliquæ viderentur (imp. subj.) posse  
 however the rest were seeming to be able  
 refici magno negotio. Itaque deligit  
 to be repaired with great trouble. Therefore he selects  
 fabros ex legionibus, et jubet alios  
 mechanics from the legions, and orders others  
 arcessi ex continenti: scribit Labieno,  
 to be summoned from the continent: he writes to Labienus,  
 ut instituat quàm plurimas naves (acc.)  
 that he construct the greatest number (of) ships  
 posset iis legionibus, quæ sunt apud  
 he may be able with those legions, which are with  
 eum. Ipse, etsi res erat multæ  
 him. He himself, although the thing was (of) much  
 operæ ac laboris, tamen statuit esse  
 trouble and labor. however determined (that) to be  
 commodissimum, omnes naves  
 [it was] most convenient, (that) all the ships  
 subduci, et conjungi unâ munitione  
 (to) be drawn up, and (to) be united in one fortification  
 eum castris (pl.). Consumit circiter decem dies  
 with the camp. He spends about ten days  
 in his rebus, ne nocturnis<sup>29</sup> temporibus  
 in these things [matters], not the night time  
 (pl.) quidem intermissis ad laborem  
 even having been intermitted [lost] for the labor  
 militum. Navibus subductis que  
 of the soldiers. The ships having been drawn up and  
 castris (pl.) egregiè munitis, relinquit easdem  
 the camp excellently fortified, he leaves the same  
 copias quas antè, præsidio navibus:  
 forces which [as] before, for a guard to the ships:  
 ipse proficiscitur eodem, unde  
 (he) himself sets out to the same (place), whence  
 redierat. Quum venisset (plup. subj.) èd,  
 he had returned. When he had come there,

majores copiae Britannorum jam convenērant  
 greater forces of the Britons now had assembled  
 undique in eum locum. Summa<sup>30</sup>  
 from every side into this place. The supreme authority  
 imperii que administrandi belli permissa-est,  
 of command and of managing the war was assigned,  
 communi consilio, Cassivellauno, fines  
 by a common counsel, to Cassivellaunus, the territories  
 cujus flumen, quod appellatur Tamēsis,  
 of whom a river, which is called Tamesis [Thames],  
 dividit à maritimis civitatibus, circiter octoginta  
 divides from the maritime states, about eighty  
 millia passum à mari. Continētia bella  
 thousand (of) paces from the sea. Continual, wars  
 intercesserant huic (dat.) cum reliquis civitatibus,  
 had involved him with the rest of the states,  
 superiori tempore; sed Britanni, permoti  
 in former times; but the Britons, alarmed  
 nostro adventu, praeferant hunc toti bello  
 by our arrival, had appointed him over the whole war  
 que imperio (dat.).  
 and command.

12. Interior pars Britanniae incolitur ab iis,  
 The interior part of Britain is inhabited by those,  
 quos dicunt proditum<sup>31</sup> memoriā  
 whom they say (to have [it has] been) handed down by memory  
 natos in insula ipsa; maritima pars  
 (to) have been born in the island itself; the maritime part  
 ab iis, qui transierant ex  
 (is inhabited) by those, who had crossed over from  
 Belgis causā praeda ac inferendi, belli  
 the Belgae for the sake of plunder and of waging, war  
 qui omnes fere appellantur iis nominibus  
 who all nearly are called by those names  
 civitatum, ex quibus civitatibus orti  
 of states, from which states having sprung  
 pervenerunt eo, ex bello illato  
 they arrived there, and war having been waged

remanserunt ibi, atque cœperunt colere agros.  
remained there. and began to till the lands.

Multitudo hominum est infinita, que  
The multitude of men (inhabitants) is boundless, and

œdificia creberrima fere consimilia Gallicis:  
the buildings most numerous nearly similar to the Gallic:

numerus pecoris magnus. Utuntur aut  
the number of the cattle (is) great. They use either

ære (abl.), aut æreo nummio aut ferrëis taleis  
brass, or brass coin or iron bars

(abl.) examinatis<sup>32</sup> ad certum pondus, pro nummo.  
regulated to a certain weight, for coin.

Album plumbum nascitur idi in mediterraneis  
White lead (tin) is procured there in the midland

regionibus; ferrum in maritimis; sed  
countries; iron in the maritime (parts), but

copia ejus est exigua: utuntur importato  
the quantity of it is small: they use imported

ære. Est materia cujusque generis, ut in  
brass. (There) is timber of every kind, as in

Galliâ, præter fagum atque abietem. Putant  
Gaul, except the beech and the fir tree. They think (it)

non fas gustare leporem et gallinam et  
not right to taste the hare and the hen and

anserem: tamen alunt hæc causâ  
the goose: however they breed these for the sake

animi que voluptatis. Loca sunt  
of mind [the interest] and of pleasure. The places are

temperatiora quam in Galliâ, frigoribus (pl.)  
more temperate than in Gaul, the cold

remissioribus.  
(being) more mild.

13. Insula naturâ triquetra, unum latus  
The island (is) by nature triangular one side

cujus est contra Galliam. Alter angulus  
of which is opposite Gaul. The one angle

hujus lateris, qui est ad Cantium,  
of this side, which is near Cantium [Kent]



quò naves ex Galliâ fēre appelluntur,  
 where ships from Gaul generally are landed,  
 ad orientem solem; inferior  
 (is) toward the rising sun [the East]; the lower (angle)  
 spectat ad meridiem. Hoc lātus tēnet  
 looks [is directed] to the south. This side holds [extends]  
 circiter quingenta millia passūm. Altērum  
 about five hundred thousand (of) paces. The other (side)  
 vergit ad Hispaniā, atque occidentem solem:  
 inclines toward Spain, and the setting sun:  
 ex quā parte est Hibernia, mīnor  
 from [on] which side is Hibernia [Ireland]. less  
 dimidio quā Britannia, ut existimatur; sed  
 by half than Britain as it is thought. but  
 transmissus est pari spatio atque ex  
 the passage across is with [of an] equal distance as from  
 Galliâ in Britanniam. In medio hoc cursu  
 Gaul to Britain. In the middle of this course  
 est insula, quæ appellatur Mōna. Complures  
 is an island which is called Mona [Man]. Several  
 minores insulæ præterea existimantur objectæ,  
 lesser [smaller] islands besides are thought (to be) interposed,  
 de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, noctem  
 of which islands some have written. (that) the night  
 esse triginta continuos dies sub bruma.  
 to be [is] thirty successive days under [during] winter.  
 Nos reperiēbamus nihil de eo  
 We were discovering nothing concerning this  
 percuntationibus, nisi videbamus certis  
 by inquiries except we were seeing by certain  
 mensuris ex aqua, noctes esse  
 measures of water. (that) the nights to be [were]  
 breviores quā in continente. Longitudo hujus  
 shorter than on the continent. The length of this  
 latēris est septingentorum millium passūm,  
 side is (of) seven hundred thousand (of) paces,  
 ut opinio illorum fert. Tertium  
 as the opinion of them [their opinion] reports The third (side)

est contra Septentrionem; cui parti nulla  
 is opposite the North; to which part no  
 terra est objecta, sed angulus ejus lateris  
 land is opposed, but the angle of that side  
 spectat maximè ad Germaniam.  
 looks [is directed] chiefly toward Germany.  
 Existimatur octingenta millia passuum  
 It is thought (that) eight hundred thousand (of) paces:  
 in longitudinem esse huic. Ita  
 in length to be [is] to [on] this (side). Thus  
 omnis insula est vicies centena millia  
 all the island is twenty times a hundred thousand  
 passuum in circuitu.<sup>33</sup>  
 (of) paces in compass.  
 14. Ex omnibus his, qui incolunt  
 From [Of] all these, (those) who inhabit  
 Cantium, sunt longè humanissimi; omnis  
 Cantium [Kent], are by far the most civilized; all  
 quæ regio est maritima, nèque differunt multum  
 which tract is maritime, nor do they differ much  
 à Gallicâ consuetudine. Plerique interiores  
 from the Gallic custom. Most of the interior  
 sèrunt non frumenta (pl.), sed vivunt  
 (inhabitants) sow [plant] not corn, but live  
 lacte et carne, que sunt vestiti pellibus.  
 on milk and flesh (meat), and are clad with skins.  
 Verò omnes Britanni inficiunt se vitro,  
 But all the Britons stain themselves with woad,  
 quod efficit cærulèum colorem, atque hóc  
 which forms a bluish color, and by this  
 sunt horribiliores adspectu in pugnâ:  
 they are more frightful in appearance in battle:  
 que sunt<sup>34</sup> promisso capillo, atque omni parte  
 and they are with long hair, and every part  
 corpõris rasâ, præter cåput et superius  
 of the body shaved, except the head and upper  
 labrum. Deni que duodeni hābent uxores  
 lip. Ten and twelve (men) have wives

communes inter se, et maxime fratres  
 common among themselves, and chiefly brothers  
 cum fratribus, et parentes cum liberis. Sed si  
 with brothers, and parents with children. But if  
 qui sunt nati ex his, habentur  
 any are born from [of] these. they are considered  
 liberi eorum, quo quæque virgo primum  
 the children of those, to whom each virgin first  
 deducta est.  
 was married.

15. Equites que essedarii hostium  
 The cavalry and charioteers of the enemy  
 confixerunt acriter proelio cum nostro equitatu  
 engaged sharply in battle with our cavalry  
 in itinere, ita tamen, ut nostri fuerint  
 on the march, so, nevertheless, that our (men) were  
 (perf. subj.) superiores omnibus partibus, atque  
 superior in [on] all parts [sides], and  
 compulerint (perf. subj.) eos in silvas que  
 drove them into the woods and  
 colles; sed, compluribus interfectis, insecuti  
 hills; but, very many having been killed, having pursued  
 cupidius, amiserunt nonnullos ex  
 (them) rather eagerly. they lost some from [of]  
 suis. At illi, spatio intermisso,  
 their own. But they, an interval having been interposed  
 subito ejecerunt se ex silvis, nostris  
 suddenly cast themselves from the woods, our  
 imprudentibus atque occupatis in  
 (men) (being) unaware and engaged in  
 munitione castrorum (pl.); que impetu  
 the fortification of the camp; and an attack  
 facto in eos, qui collocati erant  
 having been made upon these, who had been stationed  
 in statione pro castris (pl.), pugnauerunt acriter;  
 on picket before the camp, they fought sharply:  
 que duabus cohortibus missis subsidio à  
 and two cohorts having been sent for aid by

Cæsäre, atque his primis duarum legionum,  
 Cæsar, and these the first of two legions,  
 quum hæ constitissent (pluperf. subj.), perexiguo  
 when these had taken stand, a very small  
 spatïo loci intermisso inter se,  
 space of ground having been left between themselves,  
 nostris perterritis novo genere pugnae,  
 our (men) having been alarmed by the new kind of battle,  
 proruperunt audacissimè per mediös  
 they burst most daringly through the midst (of our men)  
 que receperunt se inde incolümes.  
 and betook themselves from there safe [safely].  
 Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus  
 On this day Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune  
 militum interficitur: illi repelluntur, pluribus  
 of soldiers is slain: they are repulsed, more  
 cohortibus submissis.  
 cohorts having been sent up.  
 16. In hoc toto genere pugnae, quum  
 In this whole kind of battle, since  
 dimicaretur (imp. subj.) sub oculis omnium ac  
 it was fought under the eyes of all and  
 pro castris (pl.), intellectum est, nostros  
 before the camp, it was understood, (that) our (men)  
 esse minüs aptos ad hostem hujus generis,  
 to be [were] less adapted to an enemy of this kind,  
 propter gravitatem armorum, quòd possent  
 on account of the weight of the arms, because they were able  
 (imp. subj.) nèque insèqui cedentes, nèque  
 neither to pursue (them) yielding, nor  
 auderent (imp. subj.) discedere ab signis;  
 (did) they dare to depart from the standards;  
 autem equites dimicare prælio cum magno  
 but the cavalry (to) contend in battle with great  
 pericülo, propterëa quòd illi etiã cedèrent (imp.  
 danger. because (that) they also were giving way  
 subj.) plerumque consultò; et quum removissent  
 very often purposely; and when they had removed

(pluperf. subj.) nostros paulum ab legionibus,  
 our (men) a little from the legions,  
 desilirent ex essedis et contendērent  
 they would leap down from the chariots and would contend  
 pedibus dispāri praelio. (Autem ratio  
 with feet [on foot] in an equal fight. (But the method  
 equestris praelii, et cedentibus et  
 of the cavalry fight, (they) both yielding and  
 insequentibus, inferebat par atque idem  
 pursuing, was offering an equal and the same  
 periculum.) Accedebat huc,<sup>36</sup> ut  
 (a like) danger.) It was added to this, that  
 praeliarentur (imp. subj.) nunquam conferti, sed  
 they were fighting never in close order, but  
 rari que magnis intervallis, que  
 few [in open ranks] and at great distances, and  
 haberent (imp. subj.) stationes dispositas; atque alii<sup>36</sup>  
 were having pickets posted, and some  
 exciperent (imp. subj.) alios deinceps, que  
 were relieving others in succession, and  
 integri et recentes succedērent (imp. subj.)  
 fresh and new (men) were replacing

defatigatis.  
 the exhausted.

17. Postēro die hostes constiterunt  
 On the following day the enemy took stand  
 procul à castris (pl.) in collibus; que rari  
 far from the camp on the hills; and squads  
 coeperunt ostendēre se, et lacescere nostros  
 began to show themselves, and to provoke our  
 equites praelio lentius, quam pridie.  
 cavalry to battle more slowly, than the day before.  
 Sed meridie, quum Cæsar misisset (pluperf. subj.)  
 But at noon, when Cæsar had sent  
 tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caiō  
 three legions and all the cavalry with Caius  
 Trebonio legato causā pabulandi,  
 Trebonius the lieutenant for the sake of foraging.

advolaverunt    repentè    ad    pabulatores    ex  
 they flew    suddenly    to    the foragers    from  
 omnibus partibus,    sic    ūti    non  
 all    parts [sides],    so    that    they were    not  
 absistērent<sup>37</sup> (imp. subj.)    ab    signis    que  
 keeping apart    from    the standards    and  
 legionibus. Nostri,    impētu    facto    acriter  
 the legions    Our (men).    an attack    having been made    sharply  
 in eos, repulerunt,    nēque    fecerunt    finem  
 upon them, repulsed (them).    nor    did they make    an end  
 insequendi, quōdā    equites,    confisi    subsidio,  
 of pursuing.    while    the cavalry.    relying    on aid.  
 quum    viderent (imp. subj.)    legiones    post  
 since    they were seeing    the legions    behind  
 se,    egerunt    hostes    præcipites: que magno  
 themselves,    drove    the enemy    headlong.    and a great  
 numero eorum    interfecto,    nēque    dederunt  
 number    of them    having been killed    neither    they gave  
 facultatem<sup>38</sup>    colligendi    sibi    nēque  
 the power [the chance]    of collecting    themselves    nor  
 consistendi, aut    desiliendi    ex    essedis.  
 of halting.    or [nor]    of leaping down    from    the chariots.  
 Auxilia,    quæ    convenērant    undique,  
 The auxiliaries    which    had assembled    from every side.  
 discesserunt    protinus    ex    hac    fugā; nēque  
 departed    immediately    after    this    flight.    nor  
 post id tempus    hostes    unquam contenderunt  
 after this    time (did) the enemy    ever    contended  
 nobiscum    summis    copiis  
 [contend]    with us    with (their) highest [entire]    forces.  
 18. Cæsar, eorum consilio    cognito,    duxit  
 Cæsar,    their    design    having been known.    led  
 exercitum    ad    flumen    Tamēsin    in  
 the army    to    the river    Tamesis [Thames]    into  
 fines    Cassivellauni:    quod flumen    potest  
 the territories    of Cassivellaunus.    which    river    is able  
 transiri    pedibus (pl.) omnino    uno loco,    atque  
 to be crossed    on foot    only    in one    place,    and

hoc ægrè. Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.)  
 in this with difficulty When he had come  
 ðð, animadvertit magnas copias hostium  
 there. he perceived (that) great forces of the enemy  
 esse instructas ad altèram ripam fluminis.  
 to be [were] drawn up at [near] the other bank of the river.  
 Autem ripa erat munita acutis sudibus  
 But the bank was fortified with sharp stakes  
 præfixis, que sudes ejusdem generis defixæ  
 fixed in front. and stakes of the same kind driven  
 sub aquâ tegebantur flumine. Iis rebus  
 under water were covered by the river These things  
 cognitiss à captivis que perfugis,  
 having been learned from the prisoners and deserters,  
 Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, jussit  
 Cæsar the cavalry having been sent before. ordered  
 legiones subsequi confestim. Sed milites  
 the legions to follow immediately But the soldiers  
 ierunt celeritate atque eo  
 went with this [such] speed and with this [such]  
 impetu, quum exstarent (imp. subj.) ex  
 force. when they were standing out from  
 aquâ capite solo, ut hostes possent  
 the water with the head alone, that the enemy were able  
 (imp. subj.) non sustinere impetum legionum  
 not to withstand the attack of the legions  
 que equitum, que dimitterent (imp. subj.)  
 and of the cavalry. and were abandoning  
 ripas ac mandarent (imp. subj.) se  
 the banks and were consigning themselves  
 fugæ.  
 to flight.

19. Cassivellaunus, omni spe contentionis de-  
 Cassivellaunus all hope of a contest having been  
 positâ, ut demonstravimus suprâ, amplioribus  
 abandoned. as we have shown above (his) larger  
 copiis dimissis, circiter quatuor millibus  
 forces having been dismissed, about four thousand

essedariorum relicitis, servabat nostra  
 (of) charioteers having been left was watching our  
 itinēra, que excedebat paulum ex viā,  
 marches, and was withdrawing a little from the way,  
 que occultabat sese impeditis atque  
 and was concealing himself in entangled and  
 silvestribus locis, atque compellebat pecōra (pl.)  
 woody places, and was driving the cattle  
 atque homīnes ex agris in silvas iis  
 and men from the fields into the woods from these  
 regionibus, quibus cognovērat nos fac-  
 regions, in which he had known us [we] about to [would]  
 turos iter: et quum noster equitatus eiecerat  
 make the march and when our cavalry cast  
 se liberius in agros causā vastandi  
 itself more freely into the fields for the sake of ravaging  
 que prædandi, emittebat essedarios ex  
 and of plundering, he was dispatching the charioteers from  
 silvis omnibus viis que semitis; et conflagabat  
 the woods by all ways and paths and was combatting  
 cum iis cum magno periculo nostrorum equitum;  
 with them with great danger of [to] our horsemen:  
 atque hoc metu prohibebat vagari  
 and by this fear was hindering (them) to rove [from roving]  
 latius. Relinquebatur, ut Cæsar neque  
 more widely. It was left, that Cæsar neither  
 pateretur discedi<sup>39</sup> longius ab  
 would allow (it) to be departed [them to depart] farther from  
 agmine legionum; et noceretur  
 the marching-line of the legions: and it might be injured [they  
 might injure] (to) the enemy in ravaging the fields, and  
 faciendis incendiis tantum quantum legionarii  
 in making burnings [fires] as much as the legionary  
 milites potērant efficere labore atque itinēre.  
 soldiers were able to effect by labor and on the march.

20. Intērim Trinobantes, propē firmissima  
 Meanwhile the Trinobantes, nearly the strongest



civitas earum regionum, ex quâ Mandubracius  
state of these countries. from which Mandubracius  
adolescens, secutus fidem Cæsaris,  
a youth. having secured the good faith of Cæsar,  
venērat ad eum in continentem (Galliā), (cujus  
had come to him to the continent (Gaul), (whose  
pater obtinuērat regnum in eā  
father had obtained the kingdom [the throne] in this  
civitate, que interfectus erat à Cassivellauno:  
state and had been slain by Cassivellaunus;  
ipse vitavērat mortem fūgā,) mittunt  
he himself had avoided death by flight,) send  
legatos ad Cæsārem, que pollicentur dedit-  
ambassadors to Cæsar, and promise (that) to be about to  
uros (esse) sese ei et facturos  
[they would] surrender themselves to him and about to [would] do  
imperata. Pētunt ut defendat  
(his) commands. They request that he may defend  
Mandubratium ab injuriā Cassivellauni, atque  
Mandubracius from the injustice of Cassivellaunus. and  
mittat in civitatem, qui præsit  
may send (him) into (their) state. who may preside [be over it]  
que obtinēat imperium. Cæsar impērat his(dat.)  
and may obtain the authority. Cæsar orders these  
quadraginta obsides que frumentum  
(to furnish) forty hostages and corn  
exercitūi; que mittit Mandubratium ad eos.  
for the army. and sends Mandubracius to them.  
Illi fecerunt imperata celeriter; miserunt  
They did (his) commands quickly; they sent  
obsides ad numerum, que frumentum.  
hostages to the number (stated). and corn.

21. Trinobantibus defensis, atque  
The Trinobantes having been protected. and

prohibitis ab omni injuriā militum,  
having been kept from all injury of the soldiers.

Cenimagi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibrōci, Cassi,  
the Cenimagi, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi,

legationibus missis, dediderunt sese  
 embassies having been sent, surrendered themselves  
 Cæsari. Cognoscit ab his, oppidum  
 to Cæsar. He understands from these, (that) the town  
 Cassivellauni abesse non longè ex eo  
 of Cassivellaunus to be [is] distant not far from this  
 loco, munitum silvis que paludibus, quò  
 place, fortified by woods and by marshes, whither  
 numerus satis magnus hominum que pecoris  
 a number sufficiently great of men and of cattle  
 convenërit (perf. subj.). Autem Britanni vocant  
 has assembled. But the Britons call  
 oppidum, quò consueverunt convenire,  
 (that) a town, where they have been accustomed to assemble.  
 causâ vitandæ incursionis hostium, quum  
 for the sake of avoiding an invasion of the enemy, when  
 munierunt impeditas silvas vallo  
 they have fortified the entangled woods with a rampart  
 atque fossâ. Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus:  
 and a trench. Thither he sets out with the legions:  
 repërit locum egregiè munitum naturâ atque  
 he finds the place excellently fortified by nature and  
 opère; tamen contendit oppugnare hunc  
 by work [art]; however he endeavors to storm this  
 ex duabus partibus. Hostes morati  
 from [on] two sides. The enemy having delayed  
 paulisper, non tulerunt impetum nostrorum  
 a little while, did not bear the attack of our  
 militum, que ejecerunt sese ex aliâ parte  
 soldiers, and cast out themselves from another part  
 oppidi. Magnus numerus pecoris repertus (est)  
 of the town. A great number of cattle was found  
 ibi; que multi<sup>40</sup> comprehensi sunt atque interfecti  
 there; and many were seized and killed  
 in fugâ.  
 in the flight.  
 22. Dum hæc geruntur in his  
 While these (things) are transpiring in these

lōeis, Cassivellaunus mittit nuntios ad Cantium,  
 places, Cassivellaunus sends messengers to Cantium  
 quod demonstravimus suprā esse ad  
 [Kent], which we have shown above to be [is] at [near]  
 mare, quibus regionibus quatuor reges præerant,  
 the sea, which countries four kings ruled,  
 Cingetōrix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segōnax; atque  
 Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax: and  
 impērat his, ut omnibus copiis  
 he commands these, that all (their) forces  
 coactis, adoriantur navalia castra (pl.)  
 having been collected, they attack the naval camp  
 de improviso, atque oppugnent. Quum hi  
 unexpectedly, and storm (it). When these  
 venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad castra (pl.), nostri,  
 had come to the camp, our (men),  
 eruptione factā, multis eorum inter-  
 a sally having been made many of these having been  
 fectis, etiam nobili dūce Lugotorige  
 killed, also (their) noble leader Lugotorix  
 capto, reduxerunt suos incolūmes.  
 having been taken (they) led back their (men) safe.  
 Cassivellaunus, hoc prælio nuntiato, tot  
 Cassivellaunus, this battle having been announced so many  
 detrimentis acceptis, finibus  
 reverses having been received, (his) territories (having been)  
 vastatis, etiam maxime permotus defectione  
 ravaged also chiefly alarmed by the revolt  
 civitatum, mittit legatos ad Cæsarem per  
 of the states, sends ambassadors to Cæsar through  
 Commium Atrebatem de deditione. Quum  
 Commius the Atrebatian about a surrender. Since  
 Cæsar statuisset (pl. perf. subj.) agere hiemem  
 Cæsar had resolved to spend the winter  
 in continente propter repentinos motus  
 on the continent on account of the sudden commotions  
 Gallæ; neque multum æstatis superesset  
 of Gaul; nor much of the summer was remaining;

(imp. subj.); atque intelligēret (imp. subj.), id  
and he was understanding (that), this  
posse extrāhi facīlè, impērat  
to be able [could] (to) be protracted easily, he demands  
obsīdes; et constitūt quid vectigalis Britannia  
hostages; and decreed what (of) tribute Britain  
pendēret Romano popūlo in singūlos annos  
should pay to the Roman people (on) each year.  
(pl.). Interdicit<sup>41</sup> atque impērat Cassivellauno  
He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus,  
(dat.), ne nocēat Mandubracio (dat.), neu  
(that) he may not injure Mandubracius, nor

Trinobantibus.  
the Trinobantes.

23. Obsidibus acceptis, reducit  
The hostages having been received, he leads back  
exercitum ad mǎre: invenit naves repectas.  
the army to the sea: he finds the ships repaired.  
His deductis, constituit reportare  
These having been launched he resolved to carry back  
exercitum duobus commeatibus, et quod  
the army by two passages, both because  
habebat magnum numerum captivorum, et  
he was having a great number of prisoners, and  
nonnullæ naves deperiērant tempestate. Ac  
some ships had perished by the storm. And  
accidit sic, ut ex tanto numero navium  
it happened so, that from so great a number of ships  
tot navigationibus, nēque hoc nēque  
in so many voyages, neither in this nor  
superiore anno, ulla navis omnino, quæ  
in the foregoing year, any ship at all which  
portaret (imp. subj.) milites, desideraretur (imp.  
was carrying the soldiers, was missing  
subj.), at ex iis, quæ remitterentur  
but from [of] these, which were sent back  
(imp. subj.) inanes ad eum ex continente, et<sup>42</sup>  
empty to him from the continent, (and)

militibus prioris com meatus expositis,  
 the soldiers of the former [first] passage having been landed.  
 et quas<sup>43</sup> Labienus postea curaverat  
 and which Labienus afterwards had taken care  
 faciendas, numero sexaginta, perpaucae  
 to [should] be made. in number sixty, very few  
 caperent (imp. subj.) locum, fere omnes  
 were taking [reaching] the place, nearly all  
 reliqua rejicerentur (imp. subj.). Quas<sup>44</sup> quum  
 the rest were thrown back. Which when  
 Cæsar expectasset (pl. perf. subj.) aliquandiu frustra,  
 Cæsar had awaited some time in vain,  
 ne excluderetur navigatione tempore  
 lest he might be prevented from the voyage by the time  
 anni, quod æquinotium suberat, necessariò  
 of the year. because the equinox was near. (he) necessarily  
 collocavit milites angustius. Ac consecutus  
 stowed the soldiers more closely. And having secured  
 summam tranquillitatem quum solvisset  
 the utmost calm when he had cast loose.  
 (pl. perf. subj.), secundâ vigiliâ inîta,  
 the second watch having been begun.  
 attigit terram primâ luce, que  
 he touched land in the first light [early dawn]. and  
 perduxit omnes naves incolumes.  
 brought in all the ships safe

24. Navibus subductis, que concilio  
 The ships having been drawn up and a council

Gallorum Samarobrivæ peractò,  
 of the Gauls at Samarobriva having been completed.

coactus est collocare exercitum in hibernis  
 he was compelled to place the army in winter quarters

aliter ac superioribus annis, que distribuere  
 otherwise than in former years and distribute

legiones in plures civitates, quod èo anno  
 the legions into more states because in this year

frumentum provenerat angustius in  
 the corn had yielded more narrowly [scantily] in

Galliā, propter siccitates: ex quibus<sup>45</sup>  
 Gaul, on account of the droughts: from [of] which  
 dedit unam Caio Fabio legato ducendam  
 he gave one to Caius Fabius the lieutenant to be led  
 in Morinos, alteram Quinto Ciceroni in  
 among the Morini. another to Quintus Cicero among  
 Nervios, tertiam Lucio Roscio in Esuvios;  
 the Nervii, the third to Lucius Roscius among the Esuvii;  
 jussit quartam hiemare in confinio Trevirorum,  
 he ordered the fourth to winter on the border of the Treviri,  
 in Remis cum Tito Labieno: collocavit tres  
 among the Remi with Titus Labienus: he placed three  
 in Belgio: præfecit his Marcum Crassum  
 in Belgium: he appointed over these Marcus Crassus  
 quæstorem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum, et  
 (as) quæstor and Lucius Munatius Plancus, and  
 Caium Trebonium legatos. Misit unam  
 Caius Trebonius (as) lieutenants. He sent one  
 legionem, quam conscripsérat proximè trans Padum,  
 legion, which he had levied very lately across the Po,  
 et quinque cohortes, in Eburones, máxima  
 and five cohorts, into the Eburones, the greatest  
 pars quorum est inter Mösam et Rhenum,  
 part of whom is between the Mense and the Rhine.  
 qui erant sub imperio Ambiorigis et  
 who were under the authority of Ambiorix and  
 Catuvolci. Jussit legatos Quintum Titurium  
 of Catuvolcus. He ordered the lieutenants Quintus Titurius  
 Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam  
 Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta  
 præesse his militibus (dat.). Legionibus distri-  
 to command these soldiers. The legions having been  
 butis ad hunc modum, existimavit  
 distributed according to this manner, he thought (that he)  
 sese posse mederi facillimè frumentariæ  
 himself to be able [could] (to) relieve most easily (to) the corn  
 inopiæ: atque tamen hiberna omnium  
 scarcity: and moreover the winter quarters of all

harum legionum continebantur centum millibus  
 of these legions were contained in a hundred thousand  
 passuum (præter eam, quam dedērat Lucio  
 (of) paces (except this (one), which he had given to Lucius  
 Roscio ducendam in pacatissimam et  
 Roscius to be led into the most peaceful and  
 quietissimam partem). Interēa ipse constituit  
 calmest portion). Meanwhile (he) himself resolved  
 morari in Galliā, quoad cognovisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 to tarry in Gaul, until he had known  
 legiones collocatas, que hiberna  
 (that) the legions being [were] settled, and the winter quarters  
 munita.  
 fortified.

25. Erat in Carnutibus Tasgetius natus  
 There was among the Carnutes Tasgetius born  
 summo loco; cujus majores obtinuerant  
 in the highest place [rank]; whose ancestors had obtained  
 regnum in sua civitate. Cæsar  
 the kingdom [sovereignty] in their own state. Cæsar  
 restituerat locum majorum huic pro  
 had restored the position of (his) ancestors to him for  
 ejus virtute atque benevolentia in se,  
 his valor and (his) good will toward himself,  
 quod usus fuerat ejus singulari (abl.) opera  
 because he had used his remarkable works  
 in omnibus bellis. Inimici interfecerunt  
 [efforts] in all the wars. (His) enemies slew  
 hunc palam, regnantem jam tertium annum, multis  
 him openly, reigning now the third year, many  
 etiam ex civitate auctoribus. Ea  
 also from [of] the state (being) authors (of the deed). This  
 res defertur ad Cæsarem. Ille veritus,  
 matter is reported to Cæsar. He having feared,  
 ne civitas deficeret impulsu eorum,  
 lest the state might revolt by the instigation of these,  
 quod res pertinebat ad plures, celeriter  
 because the affair was relating to several, quickly

jūbet Lucium Plancum proficisci in Carnutes  
 orders Lucius Plancus to set out among the Carnutes  
 cum legione ex Belgio, que hiemare ibi;  
 with a legion from Belgium, and to winter there,  
 que mittere hos comprehensos ad se,  
 and to send those arrested to himself,

opĕrā<sup>46</sup> quorum cognovĕrit Tasgetium  
 by the work of whom he may have learned Tasgetius

interfectum. Intĕrim factus est certior  
 (to have [had] been) killed Meantime he was made more sure

ab omnibus legatis que  
 {was informed} by all the lieutenants and

quæstoribus, quibus tradidĕrat legiones,  
 quæstors, to whom he had delivered the legions.

perventum esse in hiberna, que  
 to have been [that they had] arrived into winter quarters, and

lōcum munitum hibernis.  
 the place (to have [had] been) fortified for winter quarters

26. Quindĕcim diebus circĭter quibus  
 In fifteen days about in which [since]

ventum est in hiberna, initium  
 it was come [they came] into winter quarters, the beginning

repentini tumultūs ac defectionis ortum est ab  
 of a sudden tumult and revolt arose by

Ambiorige et Catuvolco: qui quum fuissent  
 Ambiorix and Catuvolcus: who although they had been

(pl. perf. subj.) præstō Sabino que Cottæ  
 near (to) Sabinus and (to) Cotta

ad fines sūi regni, que comportavissent  
 at the borders of their kingdom, and had carried

(plup. subj.) frumentum in hiberna, impul-  
 corn into winter quarters, having been

si nuntĭis Indutiomāri Treviri,  
 instigated by the messengers of Indutiomarus the Treviri,

concitaverunt sūos que lignatoribus  
 incited their own (people); and the wood cutters

oppressis subitō, venerunt magnā  
 having been overwhelmed suddenly, they came with a great



mānu oppugnatum castra (pl.). Quum nostri  
 band to assault the camp. When our (men)  
 cepissent (pl. perf. subj.) arma celeriter, que  
 had taken arms quickly, and  
 adscendissent (pl. perf. subj.) vallum, atque  
 had ascended the rampart, and  
 Hispanis equitibus emissis ex unā  
 the Spanish cavalry having been sent out from one  
 parte, fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) superiores  
 part [side]. had been superior  
 equestri praelio, re desperatā,  
 in the cavalry fight. the thing [action] having been despaired of.  
 hostes reduxerunt suos ab oppugnatione.  
 the enemy led back their (men) from the assault.  
 Tum conclamaverunt suo more, uti aliqui  
 Then they cried out in their manner, that some  
 ex nostris prodirent ad colloquium;  
 from [of] our (people) should come forth to a conference;  
 sese habere, quæ vellent  
 (that they) themselves (to) have (things). which they wish  
 (imp. subj.) dicere de communi re, quibus  
 to say about a common matter, by which  
 sperarent (imp. subj.) controversias posse  
 they were hoping (that) the disputes to be able [could]  
 minui.  
 (to) be diminished.

27. Caius Arpineius, Romanus eques, familiaris  
 Caius Arpineius, a Roman knight, an acquaintance

Quinti Titurii mittitur ad eos causā  
 of Quintus Titurius is sent to them for the sake  
 colloquendi; que Quintus Junius, quidam ex  
 of conferring: and Quintus Junius, a certain (one) from  
 Hispaniā, qui jam antē consueverat  
 Spain, who already before had been accustomed  
 ventitare ad Ambiorigem, missu Cæsaris.  
 to come often to Ambiorix, on the mission of Cæsar.  
 Apud quos Ambiorix locutus est in hunc  
 Before whom Ambiorix spoke after this

mōdum: "Sese confiteri debere  
 manner: "He himself to confess [confesses] to owe [that he owed]  
 plurimum ei, pro beneficiis Cæsaris in  
 very much to him, for the kindnesses of Cæsar toward  
 se, quod ejus opĕrâ liberatus esset (pl. perf.  
 himself, because by his efforts he had been freed  
 subj.) stipendio, quod consuēset (pl. perf.  
 from the tribute, which he had been accustomed  
 subj.) pendere suis finitimis Aduatucis; que  
 to pay to his neighbors the Aduatuci; and  
 quod et filius et filius fratris,  
 because both (his) son and the son of (his) brother,  
 quos Aduatuci tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) in  
 whom the Aduatuci had held in  
 servitute et catenis apud se, missos  
 slavery and chains among themselves, having been sent  
 numero obsidum, remissi essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 in the number of hostages, had been returned  
 ab Cæsare: neque fecisse id,  
 by Cæsar: nor (that he) to have [had] done this  
 quod fecerit (perf. subj.) de oppugnatione  
 which he had done in the storming  
 castrorum (pl.), aut judicio aut  
 of the camp, either by (his own) judgment or  
 suâ voluntate, sed coactu civitatis: que  
 his own will, but by compulsion of the state: and  
 suâ imperia (pl.) esse ejusmodi, ut  
 his own authority to be [was] of this sort, that  
 multitudo haberet (imp. subj.) non minus  
 the multitude were having not less  
 juris in se, quam ipse in  
 (of) jurisdiction towards himself than (he) himself towards  
 multitudinem. Porro hanc fuisse causam  
 the multitude. Moreover this to have [had] been the cause  
 belli civitati: quod potuerit (perf. subj.)  
 of war for the state: because he was able  
 non resistere repentinæ conjurationi Gallorum;  
 not to withstand (to) the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls,

se posse probare id facile ex  
 he himself to be [was] able to prove this easily from  
 suā humilitate; quòd sit non adèd  
 his own humbleness [weakness]; because he is not so  
 imperitus rerum (gen.), ut confidat  
 unacquainted with things, that he may trust (that he)  
 se posse superare Romanum populum  
 himself to be able [can] (to) overcome the Roman people  
 suis copiis; sed esse commune consilium  
 with his forces; but to be [it is] the common design  
 Galliae. Hunc esse dictum diem omnibus  
 of Gaul. This to be [is] the said [appointed] day of all  
 hibernis Cæsaris oppugnandis, ne qua  
 the winter quarters of Cæsar to be assaulted, lest any  
 legio posset venire subsidio alteri  
 legion might be able [should] (to) come for aid to another  
 legioni: Gallos<sup>47</sup> non facile potuisse negare  
 legion: Gauls not easily to have been [are] able to refuse  
 Gallis (dat.); præsertim quum consilium videretur  
 Gauls; especially when a design was seeming  
 (imp. subj.) initum de recuperandâ  
 entered into concerning regaining  
 communi libertate. Quibus quoniam satisfacèrit  
 (the) common liberty. Whom since he has satisfied  
 (perf. subj.) pro pietate, se  
 for [as regarded] patriotism, (he) himself  
 habere nunc rationem officii; monere<sup>48</sup>  
 to have [had] now a regard of moral duty; to advise  
 Cæsarem pro beneficiis, orare Titurium pro  
 Cæsar for (his) kindnesses, to beseech Titurius for  
 hospitio, ut consulat suæ salutis  
 (his) hospitality, that he may consult for his own safety  
 ac militum: magnam manum Germanorum  
 and (that) of the soldiers: a great band of Germans  
 conductam transisse Rhenum; hanc  
 having been hired (to) have crossed the Rhine; this  
 affore biduo: esse<sup>49</sup> ipsorum  
 to be about to [would] be in two days: to be [it is] their

consilium vēlint ne deducere milites eductos  
 counsel whether they wish to conduct the soldiers led out  
 ex hibernis aut ad Ciceronem aut ad  
 from winter quarters either to Cicero or to

Labienum, prius quàm finitimi sentiant;  
 Labienus, before (that) (their) neighbors may perceive (it):

alter quorum absit (pres. subj.) circiter quinquaginta  
 the one of whom is distant about fifty

millia passuum, alter paulò ampliùs:  
 thousand (of) paces, the other a little more:

se polliceri illud et  
 (that he) himself to promise [promises] that [this] and

confirmare jurejurando, se dat-  
 to affirm [affirms] by oath, (that he) himself about to

urum tutum iter per suos fines:  
 [would] give a safe journey through his territories:

quod<sup>50</sup> quum faciat sese et consulere  
 which when he does (he) himself both to consult

civitati, quòd levetur  
 [consults] for the state, because it may be relieved

hibernis, et referre gratiam Cæsari  
 from winter quarters, and to return [returns] a favor to Cæsar

pro ejus meritis." Hæc oratione habita,  
 for his services." This speech having been delivered,

Ambiōrix discedit.  
 Ambiorix departs.

28. Caius Arpineius et Junius defērunt ad  
 Caius Arpineius and Junius report to

legatos quæ audiērant. Illi perturbati  
 the lieutenants what they had heard. They, much disturbed

repentinâ re, etsi hæc  
 by the sudden affair [condition], although these (things)

dicebantur ab hoste, tamen existimabant  
 were said by an enemy, however were thinking (that)

non negligenda: que maximè  
 they) not to [must not] be neglected and especially

permovebantur hæc re, quòd erat  
 were much alarmed by this affair [condition] because it was

vix credendum ignobilem atque humilem  
 hardly to be believed (that) the mean and humble  
 civitatem Eburonum ausam (esse) facere  
 state of the Eburones to [would] have dared to make  
 bellum sua sponte Romano populo.  
 war by [of] its own accord on the Roman people  
 Itaque defērunt rem ad concilium, que  
 Therefore they report the matter to a council and  
 magna controversia existit inter eos Lucius  
 a great controversy arises among them. Lucius  
 Aurunculeius que complures tribuni militum et  
 Aurunculeius and very many tribunes of soldiers and  
 centuriones primorum ordinum existimabant "nihil"<sup>51</sup>  
 centurions of the first ranks were thinking "nothing  
 agendum temerè, neque discedendum  
 to [must] be acted rashly nor to be departed [must they  
 ex hibernis injussu Cæsaris.  
 depart] from winter quarters without the command of Cæsar.  
 Docebant quantavis magnas copias  
 They were showing (that) howsoever great the forces  
 etiam Germanorum posse sustineri,  
 even of the Germans to be able [they could] (to) be withstood,  
 hibernis munitis. Rem<sup>52</sup>  
 the winter quarters having been fortified The thing [fact]  
 esse testimonio, quod sustinuērint (perf.  
 to be [is] for a testimony. that they have withstood  
 subj.) fortissimè primum impetum hostium,  
 most bravely the first attack of the enemy.  
 multis vulneribus illatis ultrò. Non  
 many wounds having been inflicted besides. Not  
 premi frumentaria re. Interèa<sup>53</sup>  
 to be [They are not] pressed by the corn supply Meantime  
 subsidia conventura et ex proximis  
 aids (to be) [are] about to assemble both from the nearest  
 hibernis et à Cæsare. Postremò, quid  
 winter quarters and from Cæsar Lastly what  
 esse levius aut turpius, quam capere  
 to be [is] lighter or more base than to take

consilium de summis rebus, hoste  
counsel about the most important matters, an enemy

auctore?

(being) the adviser?

29. Contra ęa Titurius clamitabat,  
Against those (reasonings) Titurius was exclaiming.

"facturos serò, quum majores manus  
"about to [they would] act late, when greater bands

hostium, Germanis adjunctis, conven-  
of the enemy. the Germans having been united, should have

issent; aut quum aliquid (neuter) calamitatis  
assembled; or when some (of) calamity

acceptum essent in proximis hibernis.  
might have [had] been received in the nearest winter quarters.

Occasionem consulendi esse brevem Arbitrari  
The opportunity of consulting to be [was] short. To believe

Cæsarem profectum (esse) in Italiam:  
[He believes] Cæsar to have [had] set out into Italy:

nēque<sup>54</sup> Carnutes aliter fuisse  
neither the Carnutes otherwise to have been [would have]

capturos consilium interficiendi Tasgeti;  
about to form [formed] the design of slaying Tasgetius;

nēque Eburones esse venturos ad castra  
nor the Eburones to be about to [would] come to the camp

(pl.) cum tantā contemptione nostri, si ille  
with so great contempt of [for] us. if he

adesset (imp. subj.). Non spectare hostem  
were near. He does not (to) regard the enemy

auctorem sed rem Rhenum subesse:  
(as) an adviser but the fact. The Rhine to be [is] near:

mortem Ariovisti et nostras superiores victorias,  
the death of Ariovistus and our former victories,

esse magno dolori Germanis: Galliam  
to be [are] a (for) great grief to the Germans: Gaul

ardere tot contumeliis acceptis, reductam  
is aflame so many insults having been received, reduced

sub imperium Romani populi, superiore  
under the authority of the Roman people, the former

gloriâ militaris rēi (sing.) extinctâ.  
glory of (its) military affairs having been extinguished.

Postremò, quis persuaderet<sup>55</sup> hoc sibi,  
Lastly. who should persuade this to himself, (that)

Ambiorigem descendisse ad consilium  
Ambiorix to have [had] descended to advice

ejusmodi sine certâ re? Sūam  
of this kind without a sure thing [reason]? His

sententiam esse tutam in utramque  
opinion to be [was] safe for either

partem: si sit nil durius,  
part [case]. if there may be nothing harder [worse].

perventuros (esse) ad proximam legionem  
to be about to [they would] arrive at the nearest legion

cum nullo pericūlo; si omnis Gallia consensit  
with no danger if all Gaul conspires

cum Germanis, unam salutem esse positam  
with the Germans the one safety to be [is] placed

in celeritate. Quidem quem exitum consilium  
in speed Indeed what result [would] the advice

Cottæ atque eorum, qui dissentirent, haberet?  
of Cotta and of those who might disagree. have?

In quo<sup>56</sup> si non præsens pericūlum, at certè  
In which if not present danger, still certainly

fames esset pertimescenda longinquâ obsidione."  
famine would be to [must] be dreaded in a long siege."

30. Hâc disputatione habitâ in utramque  
This dispute having been kept up on both

partem (sing.) quum resisteretur (imp. subj.) acriter  
sides since it was opposed sharply

à Cottâ que primis ordinibus; Sabinus inquit,  
by Cotta and the first ranks. Sabinus says.

"Vincite, si vultis ita," et id clariore  
"Conquer if ye wish so" and this with a louder

voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret:  
voice that a great part of the soldiers might hear:

"nèque sum is," inquit, "ex vobis.  
"neither am I this (man)" says he "from [of] you

qui terrëar gravissimè periculò mortis.  
 who is frightened most severely by the danger of death  
 Hi sapient; et, si quid gravius  
 These (men) will know; and, if any (thing) more severe  
 accidërit, reposcent rationem abs te:  
 shall have happened they will demand an account from thee:  
 qui, si licëat per te, conjuncti cum  
 who, if it were allowed by thee, being united with  
 proximis hibernis dië perendino,  
 the nearest winter quarters on the day after to-morrow.  
 sustinëant communem casum cum reliquis; nec  
 would endure a common chance with the rest nor  
 rejecti et relegati longè ab cætëris,  
 driven back and separated far from the rest.  
 intereant aut ferro aut fãmë."  
 would perish either by iron [the sword] or by famine "  
 Consurgitur ex concilio: comprehendunt  
 It is risen [They rise] from the council they seize  
 utrumque et orant; "ne deducant rem  
 both and beseech. "they may not bring the thing  
 in summum periculum suâ dissensione  
 [situation] into the highest danger by their dissension  
 et pertinaciâ: rem esse facilem, seu  
 and obstinacy: the matter to be [is] easy. whether  
 manëant seu proficiscantur, si modò omnes  
 they remain or set out. if only all  
 sentiant ac pröbent unum. Contrà,  
 may think and may approve one (thing) On the other hand.  
 se perspicëre nullam salutem in  
 (they) themselves (to) perceive no safety in  
 dissensione." Res perducitur disputatione ad  
 dissension." The matter is protracted in dispute to  
 mediâ noctem.  
 mid night.  
 31. Tandem Cotta permotus dat mânus:  
 At length Cotta having been moved gives hands  
 sententiâ Sabini supërat. Pronuntiatur  
 [yields]: the opinion of Sabinus prevails It is announced



ituros	primâ	luce		
about to (that they) [would] go	at the first	light [day-break].		
Reliqua	pars	noctis	consumitur	vigiliis (pl.);
The remaining	part	of the night	is spent	in sleeplessness;
quum	quisque	miles	circumspiceret (imp. subj.)	
since	each	soldier	was examining	
sua,	quid	posset	portare	cum
his own (things)	what	he might be able	to carry	with
se,	quid	cogeretur	relinquere	ex
himself.	what	he might be compelled	to leave	from
instrumento	hibernorum	Omnia <sup>57</sup>		
the equipment	of the winter quarters	All (things)		
excogitantur,	quare	maneatur		
are devised.	wherefore	it may be remained [they may remain]		
ne sine	periculo,	et periculum	augeatur	
not without	danger	and the danger	may be increased	
languore	et	vigiliis (pl)	militum.	
by the weariness	and	by the sleeplessness	of the soldiers.	
Proficiscuntur <sup>58</sup>	primâ	luce	ex	
They set out	at the first	light [early dawn]	from	
castris (pl)	sic,	ut	quibus esset (imp.	
the camp	so [just].	as (they)	to whom it was	
subj.)	persuasum	consilium	datum esse	
	persuaded	(that) the advice	to have [had] been given	
non ab	hoste,	sed <sup>59</sup>	ab amicissimo	homine
not by	an enemy	but by	a most friendly	man
Ambiorige,	longissimo	agmine	que	magnis
Ambiorix	in a very long	marching line	and	with great
impedimentis (pl.)				
baggage.				
32 At	posteaquam	hostes	senserunt	de
But	after (that)	the enemy	learned	about
eorum	profectione	ex	nocturno	fremitu
their	departure	from	the night	din
				and
vigiliis,	insidiis	collocatis	bipartito	
sleeplessness.	ambuscades	having been placed	in two divisions	
in	silvis,	opportuno	atque	occulto
in	the woods.	in a convenient	and	secret
				place

expectabant adventum Romanorum à circiter  
 they were waiting the approach of the Romans at about  
 duobus millibus passuum: et quum major  
 two thousand (of) paces: and when the greater  
 pars agminis demississet (pl. perf. subj.)  
 part of the marching-line had sent down  
 se in magnam convallem, ostenderunt  
 itself [descended] into a great valley, they showed  
 sese subito ex utraque parte ejus vallis;  
 themselves suddenly on each side of this valley,  
 que coeperunt premere novissimos et prohibere  
 and began to press the newest [rear] and to hinder  
 primos adscensu, atque committere praelium  
 the first [van] from the ascent, and to engage battle  
 loco iniquissimo nostris.  
 in a place most unfavorable to our (men).  
 33. Tum demum Titurius trepidare,  
 Then at last Titurius to bustle [bustled],  
 concursare que disponere cohortes, uti  
 to run [ran] about and to arrange [arranged] the cohorts, as  
 qui providisset (pl. perf. subj.) nihil antè,  
 (one) who had foreseen nothing before,  
 tamen, hæc ipsa timide, atque  
 however, (he did) these (things) themselves timidly, and  
 ut omnia viderentur (imp. subj.) deficere  
 as (if) all (things) were seeming to fail (him)  
 quod plerumque consuevit accidere iis qui  
 which usually is accustomed to happen to those who  
 coguntur capere consilium in negotio ipso.  
 are forced to take counsel in the business itself.  
 At Cotta, qui cogitasset (pl. perf. subj.) hæc  
 But Cotta, who had thought these  
 posse accidere in itinere, atque  
 (things) to be able to [could] happen on the march, and  
 ob eam causam non fuisset (pl. perf.  
 on account of this reason had not been  
 subj.) auctor profectionis, deerat communi  
 the adviser of the departure, was failing for the common

salutē in nullā re; et praeſtabat<sup>60</sup> officiā  
 safety in no thing; and was performing the duties  
 imperatoris in appellandis quae cohortandis militibus  
 of a general in addressing and exhorting the soldiers  
 et militis in pugna. Quae quum propter  
 and of a soldier in the battle. And when on account of  
 longitudinem agminis, possent (imp. subj.)  
 the length of the marching-line, they were able  
 minus facile obire omnia per se,  
 less easily to perform all (things) by themselves,  
 et providere, quid esset faciendum quoque  
 and to provide, what might be to [must] be done in every  
 loco; jusserunt pronuntiari, ut relinquerent  
 place; they ordered (it) to be proclaimed that they should leave  
 impedimenta atque consistere in orbem.  
 the baggage and should take stand in a circle.  
 Quod consilium, etsi est non  
 Which [This] plan although it is not  
 reprehendendum in casu ejusmodi, tamen  
 to be blamed in a case of this kind. however  
 accidit incommode: nam minuit spem nostris  
 happened badly: for it diminished hope to [in] our  
 militibus, et effecit hostes alacriores  
 soldiers and rendered the enemy more eager  
 ad pugnandum; quod id videbatur<sup>61</sup> factum (esse)  
 for fighting: because this was seeming to have been done  
 non sine summo timore et  
 not without the highest [utmost] fear and  
 desperation. Praeterea accidit, quod erat  
 despair Besides it happened, what was  
 necesse fieri, ut milites  
 necessary to be done [to occur] that the soldiers  
 discederent (imp. subj.) vulgo ab signis;  
 were withdrawing generally from the standards:  
 quae quisque eorum properaret (imp. subj.) petere  
 and every one of them was hastening to seek  
 atque arripere ab impedimentis, quae  
 and to seize from the baggage, what

habēret carissīma; et omnia complerentur  
 he might hold most dear; and all (places) were filled  
 (imp. subj.) clamore ac fletu.  
 with noise and with bewailing [lamentation]

34. At consilium defuit non barbaris.  
 But prudence was wanting not to the barbarians

Nam dūces eorum jusserunt  
 For the leaders of them [their leaders] commanded (it)

pronuntiari totā acie, ne quis  
 to be announced in the whole battle-line. that not any (one)

discederet ab lōco: quæcunque Romani  
 should depart from (his) place: whatsoever the Romans

reliquissent, esse illorum prædam, atque  
 might have left. to be [was] their plunder, and

reservari illis: proinde existimarent  
 to be [was] reserved for them: wherefore they should think

omnia posita in victoriâ. Nostri  
 (that) all (things) (were) placed [hung] on victory. Our (men)

erant pæres pugnando et virtute et numero:  
 were equal in fighting both in valor and in number.

tametsi deserebantur è dūce et  
 although they were deserted by (their) general and by

fortunâ, tamen ponebant omnem spem salutis  
 fortune, however they were putting all hope of safety

in virtute; et quoties quæque cōhors  
 in valor: and as often as every cohort

procurreret (imp. subj.), magnus numerus hostium  
 was charging, a great number of the enemy

cadebat ab eâ parte. Quâ re  
 were falling on that side. Which thing

animadversâ, Ambiorix jussit pronuntiari,  
 having been observed, Ambiorix ordered (it) to be announced,

ut conjiciant tela procul neu  
 that they cast (their) weapons from a distance. nor

accedant propius; et in quam partem  
 approach nearer: and on what (-ever) side

Romani fecerint impetum, cedant:  
 the Romans made an attack. (that) they give way;

nihil<sup>62</sup> posse noceri iis  
nothing to be able [could] (to) be injured [injure] to them [them]

levitate armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione:  
by the lightness of (their) arms and by daily exercise:

insequantur recipientes se rursus  
(that) they pursue (them) betaking themselves again

ad signa  
to the standards.

35 Quo præcepto observato diligentissimè  
Which direction having been observed most carefully

ab iis, quum quæpiam cōhors excesserat ex  
by them, when any cohort had gone out from

orbe, atque fecerat impetum, hostes  
the circle and had made an attack. the enemy

refugiebant velocissimè; intèrim erat necesse  
were retiring most swiftly meantime it was necessary

nudari eâ parte, et tela  
to be exposed on this side and (that) weapons

recipi ab aperto latere. Rursus, quum  
to [would] be received on the open flank Again, when

cœperant adverti in eum locum, unde  
they had begun to return into this place. whence

egressi erant, circumveniebantur et ab iis,  
they had gone out. they were surrounded both by those

qui cesserant et ab iis, qui steterant  
who had given way and by those who had stood

proximi; autem sin vellent (imp. subj.) tenere  
nearest but if they wished to hold

locum, nêque locus relinquebatur  
(their) place [ground]. neither a place [opportunity] was left

virtuti, nêque conferti poterant vitare tela  
for valor nor crowded were they able to avoid the weapons

conjecta à tantâ multitudine. Tâmen confictati  
hurled by so great a multitude However having struggled

tam multis incommôdis, multis vulneribus  
with so many disadvantages many wounds

acceptis, resistebant; et magnâ  
having been received, they were withstanding; and a great

parte diei consumptâ, committebant nihil,  
 part of the day having been spent, they were doing nothing,  
 quod esset indignum ipsis (abl.), quum  
 which would be unworthy themselves, although  
 pugnaretur (imp. subj.) à primâ luce  
 it was fought [they fought] from the first light [early dawn]  
 ad octavam horam. Tum<sup>63</sup> utrumque fémur  
 to the eighth hour [two o'clock] Then each thigh  
 transjicitur tragulâ Tito Balventio, forti  
 is pierced with a javelin to [of] Titus Balventius, a brave  
 viro, et magnæ auctoritatis, qui<sup>64</sup> duxerat primum  
 man and of great authority, who had led the first  
 pilum superiore anno. Quintus Lucanius  
 century in the former year. Quintus Lucanius  
 ejusdem ordinis pugnans fortissimè interficitur,  
 of the same rank fighting most bravely is slain,  
 dum subvenit filio (dat.) circumvento.  
 while he aids (his) son having been surrounded.  
 Lucius Cotta, legatus adhortans omnes  
 Lucius Cotta, the lieutenant encouraging all  
 cohortes que ordines, vulneratur fundâ in  
 the cohorts and ranks is wounded with a sling on  
 adversum os.  
 the front face [squarely in the face].  
 36 Quintus Titurius permotus his rebus,  
 Quintus Titurius much alarmed by these things  
 quum conspexisset (pl perf subj) Ambiorigen  
 when he had beheld Ambiorix  
 procul cohortantem suos, mittit suum  
 at a distance exhorting his (men) sends his  
 interpretem, Cnæium Pompeium ad eum, rogatum,  
 interpreter Cnæius Pompey to him, to beseech.  
 ut parcat sibi (dat.) que militibus (dat.). Ille  
 that he may spare himself and the soldiers He  
 appellatus respondit, "licere  
 having been addressed answered "to be [it is] allowed  
 colloqui secum, si velit; sperare  
 to confer with himself. if he wishes to hope [he hopes it]

posse impetrari à multitudīne,  
 to be able [can] (to) be obtained from the multitude.  
 quod pertinēat ad salutem militum: verò  
 what may relate to the safety of the soldiers: but  
 nīhil nocitum iri ipsi: que  
 nothing to be about to be hurt [should harm] (to) himself: and  
 se interponere suam fidem in eam  
 (he) himself to put [puts] his own good faith on this  
 rem " Ille communicat cum saucio Cottā;  
 thing." He communicates with the wounded Cotta:  
 "si videatur, ut excedant pugnā,  
 "if it may seem (best), that they retire from the battle.  
 et colloquantur unā cum Ambiorīge; se  
 and confer together with Ambiorix; (he) himself  
 sperare posse impetrari ab eo  
 to hope [hopes] to be able to [that it can] be obtained from him  
 de suā salute ac militum." Cotta  
 about his own [safety and (that) of the soldiers." Cotta  
 nēgat se iturum ad armatum  
 refuses (that he) himself (about) to [should] go to an armed  
 hostem atque perseverat in eo. (37.) Sabinus jūbet  
 enemy and persists in this. Sabinus orders  
 tribuno militum, quos habebat circum  
 the tribunes of soldiers, whom he was having about  
 se in præsentiā, et centuriones primorum  
 himself at present, and the centurions of the first  
 ordinum, sequi se; et quum accessisset  
 ranks, to follow himself; and when he had approached  
 (pl. perf. subj.) propiūs Ambiorīgem, jussus  
 nearer Ambiorix, having been ordered  
 abjicere arma, facit imperatum, que  
 to throw aside (his) arms, he performs the command, and  
 impērat suis (dat.), ut faciant idem. Intērim,  
 commands his (men), that they do the same. Meantime,  
 dum agunt inter se de conditionibus,  
 while they treat between themselves about conditions,  
 que longior sermo instituitur consultò ab  
 and a rather long speech is undertaken designedly by

Ambiorige, circumventus paulatim, interficitur.  
 Ambiorix. having been surrounded gradually he is killed.

Tum verò conclamant victoriā atque tollunt  
 Then indeed they shout victory and raise

ululatum sūo more que impētu facto  
 a whoop in their manner and an attack having been made

in nostros, perturbant ordines. Ibi  
 upon our (men) they disorder the ranks There

Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur, cum maximā  
 Lucius Cotta fighting is killed with the greatest

parte militum; reliqui recipiunt se in  
 part of the soldiers: the rest betake themselves into

castra (pl.), unde egressi erant. Ex  
 the camp. whence they had gone out. From [Of]

quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer projecit  
 whom Lucius Petrosidius the eagle bearer [ensign] cast

aquilam intra vallum, cum premeretur (imp.  
 the eagle within the rampart when he was pressed

subj) magnā multitudine hostium; ipse  
 by a great multitude of the enemy. (he) himself

pugnans fortissimè pro castris (pl) occiditur.  
 fighting most bravely before the camp is slain.

Alii ægrè sustinent oppugnationem ad  
 The others hardly [barely] support the assault until

noctem; ipsi omnes ad unum, salute  
 night (they) themselves all to one [to a man] safety

desperatā, interficiunt se noctu  
 having been despaired of kill themselves by night.

Pauci elapsi ex prælio perveniunt  
 A few having escaped from the battle arrive

incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum  
 by uncertain routes through the woods to Titus

Labienum legatum in hiberna; atque  
 Labienus the lieutenant into winter quarters and

faciunt eum certiores de rebus  
 make him more sure [inform him] of the things

gestis.  
 carried on



38. Ambiorix sublatu hâc victoriâ, statim  
Ambiorix elated by this victory, immediately

proficiscitur cum equitatu in Aduatucos,  
sets out with (his) cavalry unto the Aduatuci.

qui erant finitimi ejus regno; neque  
who were neighbors to his kingdom; neither

intermittit diem neque noctem; que jubet  
does he pause day nor night, and he orders

peditatum subsequi se. Re demonstratâ,  
the infantry to follow himself. The affair having been explained.

que Aduatucis concitatis, pervenit postero  
and the Aduatuci having been incited he arrives on the following

die in Nervios, que hortatur  
day among the Nervii, and exhorts (them) "(that)

"ne dimittant occasionem liberandi sui  
they may not let slip [lose] the opportunity of freeing themselves

in perpetuum, atque ulciscendi Romanos pro  
forever, and of punishing the Romans for

his injuriis, quas acceperint (perf. subj.);  
those injuries, which they have received.

demonstrat duos legatos interfectos esse,  
he shows (that) two lieutenants (to) have been killed,

que magnam partem exercitus interisse: esse,  
and a great part of the army (to) have perished: to be

nil<sup>65</sup> negotii legionem  
[that there is] nothing of business [no trouble] the legion

subito oppressam, quæ hiemet (pres. subj.)  
suddenly having been overwhelmed, which winters

cum Cicerone interfici: profitetur se  
with Cicero (that it) to [should] be slain: he declares himself

adjutorem ad eam rem.  
a helper for this thing.

39 Persuadet Nervii (dat.) facile hac oratione.  
He persuades the Nervii easily by this speech.

Itaque nuncios dimissis confestim ad  
Therefore messengers having been dispatched immediately to

Centrones, Grudios Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos,  
the Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumoxii, Geidumni.

qui omnes sunt sub eorum imperiō, cogunt  
 who all are under their authority, they collect  
 mānus quān maxīmas<sup>66</sup> possunt; et  
 bands as greatest [great as] they can, and  
 advōlant de improvīso ad hiberna Ciceronis,  
 fly unexpectedly to the winter quarters of Cicero.  
 famā de morte Titurī nondum  
 the report about the death of Titurius not yet  
 perlatā ad eum. Accēdit quōque huic,  
 having been brought to him. It happened also to him,  
 quod fuit necesse,<sup>67</sup> ut nonnulli milites,  
 which [as] was necessary, that some soldiers,  
 qui discessissent (pl. perf. subj.) in silvas  
 who had departed into the woods  
 causā lignationis que munitionis  
 for the sake of wood cutting and of fortification  
 interciperentur (imp. subj.) repentino adventu  
 were cut off by the sudden arrival  
 equitum. His circumventis, Eburones,  
 of the cavalry. These having been surrounded, the Eburones,  
 Aduatuci, Nervii, atque socii et clientes  
 Aduatuci, Nervii, and the allies and dependents  
 omnium horum, incipiunt oppugnare legionem  
 of all these, begin to assault the legion  
 magnā manu. Nostri celeriter concurrunt  
 with a great throng. Our (men) quickly run together  
 ad arma; conscendunt vallum. Is dies  
 to arms; they mount the rampart. This day  
 sustentatur ægrè, quod hostes  
 is supported hardly [with difficulty], because the enemy  
 ponebant omnem spem in celeritate, atque  
 were placing all hope in haste, and  
 adepti hanc victoriā, confidebant  
 having obtained this victory, they were trusting  
 se fore virores  
 (that they) themselves to be about to [would] be conquerors  
 in perpetuum.  
 forever.

40. Litērae (pl.)	mittuntur (pl.)	confestim	ad
A letter	is sent	immediately	to
Cæsārem	à Cicerone,	magnis	præmiis
Cæsar	by Cicero,	great	rewards
positis,	si pertulissent.	Omnibus	vīs
offered,	if they should carry (it).	All	the ways
obsessis,	missi	intercipiuntur.	Centum
having been blockaded,	(those) sent	are intercepted.	A hundred
et viginti	turres excitantur	incredibili	celeritate
and twenty	towers are raised	with incredible	speed
noctu	ex	ēā materiā,	quam comportavērant <sup>65</sup>
by night	from this	material,	which they had brought together
causā	munitionis.	Quæ	videbantur
for the sake	of fortification.	What (things)	were appearing
deesse	opēri	perficiuntur.	Hostes, multò
to be wanting	to the work	are completed.	The enemy. much
majoribus	copiis	coactis,	oppugnant
greater	forces	having been collected,	assault
castra (pl.)	postēro	diē,	complent fossam.
the camp	on the following	day.	they fill up the trench.
Resistitur	à nostris	eādem	ratione,
It is withstood	by our (men)	in the same	manner,
quā	pridie:	hoc	idem
in which [as]	the day before:	this	same (thing)
deinceps	reliquis	diebus.	Nulla pars
afterwards	on the remaining	days.	No part
nocturni	tempōris	intermittitur	ad laborem:
of the night	time	is discontinued	for the labor:
facultas	quietis	datur	non ægris, non
an opportunity	of [for] rest	is given	not to the sick, nor
vulneratis	Quæcunque	sunt	opus
to the wounded	Whatever (things)	are	necessary
ad oppugnationem	proximi	diei,	comparantur
for the assault	of the next	day.	are prepared
noctu.	Multæ	sūdes	præustæ,
by night.	Many	stakes	burnt at the point,
numērus	muralium	pilorum	instituitur;
number	of mural [wall-]	javelins	is prepared.
			towers

contabulantur;<sup>69</sup> pinnæ que lorica attexuntur  
 are built up; battlements and parapets are woven  
 ex cratibus. Cicero ispe, quum esset  
 from [of] hurdles. Cicero himself although he was  
 (imp. subj.) tenuissimâ valetudine, relinquebat  
 in very delicate health, was leaving  
 ne nocturnum<sup>70</sup> tempus quidem sibi ad  
 not the night time even to himself for  
 quietem; ut cogeretur (imp. subj.) parcere  
 rest; so that he was compelled to spare  
 sibi (dat.) ultrô concursu  
 himself beyond [contrary to] (his wishes) by the running  
 ac vocibus militum.  
 [thronging] (to him) and voices [words] of the soldiers.  
 41. Tunc dūces que principes Nerviorum,  
 Then the leaders and chiefs of the Nervii,  
 qui habebant aliquem aditum sermonis que  
 who were having some access of speech and  
 causam amicitiae cum Cicerone, dicunt  
 cause of friendship with Cicero, say  
 sese velle collōqui. Potestate  
 (that they) themselves (to) wish to parley. The opportunity  
 factâ, commemorant eādem, quæ  
 having been made, they relate the same (things). which  
 Ambiorix egerat cum Titurio: "Omnem  
 Ambiorix had treated with Titurius. "All  
 Galliam esse in armis: Germanos transisse  
 Gaul to be [is] in arms: the Germans (to) have crossed  
 Rhenum: hiberna Cæsaris que reliquorum  
 the Rhine. the winter quarters of Cæsar and of the rest  
 oppugnari." Addunt etiam de morte  
 to be [are] stormed." They add also about the death  
 Sabini. Ostentant<sup>71</sup> Ambiorigem causâ  
 of Sabinus. They display Ambiorix for the sake  
 faciundæ fidēi. Dicunt eos  
 of making faith [credit]. They say (that) these  
 errare, si sperent quidquam præsidiū ab  
 (to) mistake, if they hope any (of) protection from

iis, qui diffidant (pres. subj)      suis rebus:  
 those. who distrust      (to) their own affairs.  
 tamen sese esse hoc animo  
 however (they) themselves to be [are] with [of] this mind  
 in Ciceronem que Romanum populum, ut  
 towards Cicero and the Roman people, that  
 recusent nihil, nisi hiberna, atque  
 they may refuse nothing, except the winter quarters, and  
 nolint hanc consuetudinem inveter-  
 are unwilling (that) this custom to [should] be  
 ascere;<sup>72</sup> licere per se illis  
 established: (it) to be [is] allowed by themselves to them  
 discedere incolumibus ex / hibernis, et  
 to depart safe from the winter quarters, and  
 proficisci sine metu in quascunque partes  
 to set out without fear into whatever parts  
 velint. Cicero respondit modo unum  
 they may wish. Cicero answered only one (thing)  
 ad hæc: "Non esse consuetudinem  
 to these: "Not to be [It is not] the custom  
 Romani populi accipere ullam conditionem ab  
 of the Roman people to receive any condition from  
 armato hoste: si velint discedere ab  
 an armed enemy if they wish to withdraw from  
 armis, utantur se adiutore, que  
 arms, they may use himself (as) a helper, and  
 mittant legatos ad Cæsarem: se  
 may send ambassadors to Cæsar. (he) himself  
 sperare impetraturos, quæ  
 to hope [hopes] them (to be) about to [they may] obtain, what  
 petierint, pro<sup>73</sup> ejus justitiâ."  
 they have sought, on account of his justice."  
 42. Nervii repulsi ab hac spe,  
 The Nervii having been repulsed from this hope,  
 cingunt hiberna vallo undecim  
 surround the winter quarters with a rampart of eleven  
 pedum et fossâ quindecim pedum. Cognoverant  
 feet and a ditch of fifteen feet. They had learned

hæc et à nostris consuetudine  
 these (things) also from our (men) by the custom  
 superiorum annorum; et nacti quosdam  
 of former years; and having got some  
 captivos de exercitu, docebantur ab his.  
 prisoners of (our) army. they were taught by these.  
 Sed nulla copia ferramentorum his,  
 But (there was) no supply of iron tools for them,  
 quæ esset idonea ad hunc usum.  
 which might be suitable for this use.  
 Cogebantur circumcidere cæspitem gladüs,  
 They were forced to cut round the sod with swords,  
 exhaurire terram manibus que  
 to draw out the earth with (their) hands and (carry it)  
 sagulis. Ex quâ re quidem, multitudo  
 in cloaks. From which thing indeed, the multitude  
 hominum potuit cognosci. Nam minus  
 of men was able to be known. For in less (than)  
 tribus horis perfecerunt munitionem quindécim  
 three hours they finished a fortification of fifteen  
 millium passuum in circuitu. Que cœperunt  
 thousand (of) paces in compass. And they began  
 parare ac facere turres reliquis diebus  
 to prepare and to make towers on the remaining days  
 ad altitudinem valli, falces que  
 to the height of the rampart, wall hooks and  
 testudines, quas iidem captivi docuerant.  
 shelters, which the same prisoners had taught (them).  
 43. Septimo —die oppugnationis, maximo  
 On the seventh day of the siege. a very great  
 vento coorto, cœperunt jacere fundis  
 wind having arisen, they began to throw with slings  
 ferventes glandes ex fusili argillâ, et fervefacta  
 hot balls of fusible clay and heated  
 jacula in cæsas, quæ tectæ erant stramentis  
 javelins on the cottages, which had been covered with straw  
 (pl.) Gallico more. Hæ comprehenderunt  
 in the Gallic manner. These caught

ignem celeriter, et magnitudine venti,  
 fire quickly, and from the greatness of the wind,  
 distulerunt<sup>74</sup> in omnem locum castrorum (pl.).  
 spread (it) into every place of the camp.

Hostes insecuti maximo clamore,  
 The enemy having followed with a very great shout,

quasi victoriâ partâ atque exploratâ  
 as if the victory (had) been obtained and assured

jam, coeperunt agere turres que  
 already, began to drive the towers and

testudines et ascendere vallum scalis.  
 shelters and to mount the rampart with ladders.

At tanta fuit virtus atque praesentia animi  
 But so great was the valor and the presence of mind

militum, ut, quum torrerentur (imp. subj.)  
 of the soldiers, that, although they were scorched

flammâ undisque, que premerentur (imp. subj.)  
 by the flame on every side. and were pressed

maximâ multitudîne telorum, que  
 with a very great multitude of weapons, and

intelligerent (imp. subj.) omnia sua impedimenta  
 were understanding (that) all their baggage

atque omnes fortunas conflagrare, non  
 and all (their) fortunes to be [were] on fire, not

modo nemo decederet (imp. subj.) de vallo  
 only no one was withdrawing from the rampart

causâ demigrandi, sed<sup>75</sup> ne quisquam pæne  
 for the sake of going away, but not any one hardly

respiceret (imp. subj.) quidem; ac tum  
 was looking back even; and besides

omnes pugnarent (imp. subj.) acerrimè que  
 all were fighting most vigorously and

fortissimè. Hic dies fuit longè gravissimus  
 most bravely. This day was by far the most severe

nostris; sed tamen habuit hunc eventum, ut  
 for our (men); but however it had this issue, that

eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur  
 on this day the greatest number of the enemy was wounded

(imp. subj.) atque interficeretur (imp. subj.); ut  
 and was killed ; as  
 constipavērant se sub vallo ipso,  
 they had crowded themselves under the rampart itself  
 que ultimi dābant non recessum  
 [the very rampart] and the last were giving no retreat  
 primis. Quīdem flammā intermissā paulūm,  
 to the first. Indeed the flame [fire] having ceased a little,  
 et turri adactā quodam lōco, et  
 and a tower having been forced up in a certain place. and  
 contingente vallum, centuriones tertiæ  
 touching the rampart. the centurions of the third  
 cohortis recesserunt ex ěo lōco, quo  
 cohort retired from this place. in which  
 stabant, que removerunt omnes sūos;  
 they were standing. and removed all their (men);  
 ceperunt vocare hostes nutu que vocibus,  
 they began to call the enemy by nod [sign] and by voices  
 si vellent introire, nemo quorum  
 [words]. if they wished to enter no one of whom  
 ausus est progrēdi. Tum deturbati (sunt).  
 dared to advance. Then they were beaten off  
 lapidibus coniectis ex omni parte, que turris  
 by stones thrown from every side. and the tower  
 succensa est.  
 was set on fire.

44. Erant in ěā legione fortissīmi  
 (There) were in this legion (two) very brave  
 vīri, centuriones, Titus Pullo et Lucius Varenus,  
 men. centurions. Titus Pullo and Lucius Varenus,  
 qui jam appropinquarent (imp. subj.) primis  
 who now were approaching (to) the first  
 ordinibus. Hi habebant perpetūas  
 ranks (of centurions). These were having constant  
 controversias inter se, ūter  
 controversies between themselves. (as to) which of the two  
 anteferretur altēri; que contendebant  
 should be preferred to the other; and they were striving



summis simultatibus de lōco  
 with the highest [greatest] bickerings about place [precedence]  
 omnibus annis. Ex iis Pullo inquit,  
 in all the years. (One) from [of] these, Pullo. says,  
 quum pugnaretur<sup>76</sup> (imp. subj.—pass. sing.)  
 when they were fighting  
 acerrimè ad munitones, "Quid dubitas,  
 most vigorously at the fortifications, "Why dost thou hesitate.  
 Varene? aut quem lōcum<sup>77</sup> probandæ tūæ virtutis  
 O Varene? or what place of proving thy valor  
 exspectas? Hic dñes, hic dñes judicabit  
 dost thou wait for? This day, this day shall decide  
 de nostris controversiis." Quum dixisset (pl. perf.  
 about our disputes." When he had said  
 subj.) hæc, procedit extra munitiones, et  
 these (words). he advances outside the fortifications, and  
 quæ pars hostium visa est confertissima,  
 what part of the enemy seems most dense [most crowded]  
 irrumpit in eam. Nec Varene quidem tum  
 he dashes upon this. Nor Varene indeed then  
 continet sese vallo; sed veritus  
 restrains himself on the rampart; but having feared  
 existimationem omnium, subsequitur mediocri  
 the opinion of all. he follows closely, a moderate  
 spatio relicto. Pullo mittit pilum in  
 distance being left. Pullo sends (his) javelin against  
 hostes, atque transjicit unum ex multitudīne  
 the enemy, and transfixes one from [of] the multitude  
 procurentem: quo percusso et exanimato,  
 running forward: who having been struck and laid senseless  
 hostes protēgunt hunc secutis, et  
 the enemy protect him with (their) shields, and  
 universi conjiçunt tela in illum,  
 all hurl (their) weapons upon him [Pullo]  
 nēque dant facultatem regrediendi.  
 nor do they give (him) a chance of returning.  
 Scutum<sup>78</sup> Pulloni transfigitur et verutum  
 The shield for [of] Pullo is pierced and a javelin

defigitur	in	baltëo.	Hic	casus	avertit
is fixed	in	(his) belt.	This	mishap	turns away
vaginam	et	moratur	dextram	mānum	
the scabbard	and	retards	(his) right	hand	
conantis	educere	gladium,	que	hostes	
endeavoring	to draw out	(his) sword,	and	the enemy	
circumsistunt	impeditum.	Varenus	inimicus		
surround	(him) entangled.	Varenus	(his) rival		
succurrit	illi(dat.), et	subvenit			
succours [runs to help]	him,	and comes up [brings aid]	(to him)		
laboranti.	Omnis	multitudo	fonfestim	convertit	
laboring.	All	the multitude	immediately	turns	
se	à	Pullone	ad hunc.	Arbitrantur	illum
itself	from	Pullo	to him.	They think	him
	transfixum	verūto.	Illic	verò	
[Pullo]	run through [pierced]	with the javelin.	There,	however	
Varenus	occursat	ociūs	gladiō	que	
Varenus	runs up	very quickly	with (his) sword	and	
gërit	rem	cominūs;	atque	uno	
carries on	the affair	hand to hand.	and	one	
interfecto,	propellit	reliquos	paullum.	Dum	
having been killed.	he repulses	the rest	a little.	While	
instat	cupidiūs	dejectus	concidit		
he presses on	more eagerly.	having been thrown down	he fell		
in	inferiorem	locum.	Pullo	rursus	fert
upon	a lower	place	Pullo	again	brings
subsidiūm	huic	circumvento;	atque	ambo	incolūmes,
aid	to him	surrounded.	and	both	safe.
compluribus	interfectis,	recipiunt	sese		
several	having been killed	betake	themselves		
cum	summā	laude	intra		
with	the highest [greatest]	praise [applause]	within		
munitiones.	Sic	fortuna	versavit	utrumque	
the fortifications.	Thus	fortune	turned [treated]	each	
in	contentione	et	certamine,	ut	alter
in	(their) strife	and	contest,	(so) that	the one
inimicus	esset (imp. subj.)	auxilio	que	saluti	
rival	was	(for) an aid	and	safety	

altēri;      nēque      posset (imp. subj.)      dijudicari,  
to the other,      nor      was it possible      to be decided,

ūter      videretur      antefereendus      ūtri  
which of the two      should seem      to be preferred      to the other  
virtute.  
in valor.

45. Quantō      gravior      atque      asperior  
As much      more severe      and      more arduous

oppugnatio ērat indies, et maxime quod,  
the siege was daily, and chiefly because

magna parte militum confecta vulneribus,  
a great part of the soldiers having been spent with wounds

res pervenerat ad paucitatem  
the case had come to a fewness [scarcity]

defensorum; tantō crebriores litteræ que  
of defenders. so much more frequent letters and

nuncii mittebantur ad Cæsarem; pars quorum  
messengers were sent to Cæsar; a part of whom

deprehensa necabatur cum cruciati in  
having been caught was put to death with torture in

conspectu nostrorum militum. Erat unus  
sight of our soldiers. There was one

Nervius intus, nomine Vertico, natus honesto  
Nervian within, by name Vertico, born in an honorable

loco, qui profugerat ad Ciceronem à  
place [rank], who had fled to Cicero from

primâ obsidione, que præstiterat suam fidem  
the first siege, and had exhibited his fidelity

ēi. Hic persuadet servo (dat.), spe  
to him. This (man) persuades a slave, with the hope

libertatis que magnis præmiis, ut defērat  
of liberty and by great rewards, that he carry

litteras (pl.) ad Cæsarem. Ille affert has (pl.)  
a letter to Cæsar. He bears this

illigatas in jaculo; et Gallus versatus  
tied up in a javelin; and the Gaul having mingled

inter Gallos sine ullâ suspitione, pervenit  
among the Gauls without any suspicion, comes

ad Cæsārem. Cognoscit ab ěo de pericūlo  
to Cæsar He learns from him of the danger

Ciceronis que legionis.  
of Cicero and of the legion.

46. Cæsar, litēris (pl) acceptis circiter  
Cæsar the letter having been received about

undecimā horā diei, mittit nuncium  
the eleventh hour of the day. sends a messenger

statim ad Marcum Crassum quæstorem in  
immediately to Marcus Crassus the quæstor among

Bellovācos, cuius hiberna abērant ab  
the Bellovaci, whose winter quarters were distant from

ěo viginti quinque millia passuum. Jūbet  
him twenty five thousand (of) paces. He orders

legionem proficisci mediā nocte, que venire  
the legion to set out at mid- night, and to come

celeriter ad se. Crassus exiit cum  
speedily [quickly] to himself. Crassus came out with

nuncio. Mittit alterum ad Caium  
the messenger. He sends another (messenger) to Caius

Fabium legatum, ut adducat legionem  
Fabius the lieutenant, that he lead (his) legion

in fines Atrebatium, quā sciebat  
into the territories of the Atrebates, where he was knowing

iter faciendum sibi (dat.). Scribit  
the march to [would] be made by himself. He writes

Labieno, si posset facere commōdo  
to Labienus, if he might be able to do (it) with the advantage

rei publicæ, veniat cum legione ad  
of the state, (that) he come with (his) legion to

fines Nerviorum. Pūtat reliquam  
the territories of the Nervii He thinks the remaining

partem exercitūs non exspectandam,  
part of the army (must) not (to) be waited for,

quōd abērat paulō longius: cogit circiter  
because it was distant a little farther: he collects about

quadringentos equites ex proximis hibernis.  
four hundred cavalry from the nearest winter quarters.

47. Factus est certior de adventu  
 He was made more sure [was informed] of the arrival

Crassi ab antecursoribus circiter tertiâ horâ  
 of Crassus by scouts about the third hour.

(abl.): progreditur viginti millia passuum  
 he advances twenty thousand (of) paces

eo die. Præficit Cassum Samarobrivæ,  
 on this day. He appoints Crassus to Samarobriva,

que attribuit legionem ei; quod relinquebat  
 and assigns a legion to him; because he was leaving

ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum,  
 there the baggage of the army, the hostages of the states,

publicas litteras, que omne frumentum, quod  
 the public letters, and all the corn, which

devexerat eo causâ<sup>79</sup> tolerandæ  
 he had conveyed down there for the sake of enduring

hiemis. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, moratus  
 the winter. Fabius, as it had been commanded, having delayed

non ita multum, occurrit cum legione in  
 not so (very) much, meets (him) with a legion on

itinere. Labienus, interitu Sabini, et  
 the march. Labienus, the destruction of Sacinus, and

cæde cohortum cognita, quum omnes  
 the slaughter of the cohorts having been known, when all

copiæ Trevirorum venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
 the forces of the Treviri had come to

eam, veritus ne, si fecisset  
 [against] him, having feared lest, if he should make

profectionem ex hibernis similem fugæ,  
 the departure from winter quarters like (to) a flight,

ut posset non sustinere impetum  
 that he might be able not to support the attack

hostium, præsertim quos sciret (imp. subj.)  
 of the enemy, especially whom he was knowing

efferri recenti victoriâ, dimittit litteras  
 to be [were] elated by the late victory, despatches a letter

(pl.) Cæsari, cum quanto periculo esset  
 to Cæsar, (to say) with how great danger he was

(imp. subj.)	educturus	legionem	ex
	about to [he would] lead out	the legion	from
hibernis:	perscribit	rem	gestam
winter quarters:	he details	the affair	carried on
Eburonibus:	dōcet	omnes	copias
the Eburones:	he shows (that)	all	the forces
que	equitatus	Trevirorum	consedissee
and	of cavalry	of the Treviri	(to) have halted
millia	passuum	longè	ab suis castris (pl.).
thousand	(of) paces	away	from his camp.
48. Cæsar,	ejus consilio	probato,	etsi
Cæsar,	his plan	having been approved,	although
	dejectus	opinione	trium
(having been)	disappointed	in the expectation	of three
legionum,	reciderat <sup>80</sup>	ad duas,	tamen ponebat
legions,	was reduced	to two,	however he was putting
unum	auxilium	communis	salutis in celeritate.
the one	aid	of the common	safety in haste.
Vēnit	magnis	itineribus	in fines
He comes	by great	marches	into the territories
Nerviorum.	Ibi	cognoscit	ex captivis,
of the Nervii.	There	he learns	from the prisoners
quæ	gerantur (pres. subj.)	apud Ciceronem,	
what (things)	are transpiring	with Cicero,	
que in quanto	periculo	res	sit (pres. subj.).
and in how great	danger	the case [matter]	is.
Tum	persuadet	cuidam	ex Gallis
Then	he persuades	(to) a certain (person)	from [of] the Gallic
equitibus magnis	præmiis,	ut	deferat epistolam
horsemen	by great	rewards,	that he carry a letter
ad Ciceronem.	Mittit	hanc conscriptam	Græcis
to Cicero.	He sends	this written	in Greek
litteris;	ne,	epistolâ	interceptâ,
letters;	lest,	the letter	having been intercepted,
consilia	cognoscantur	ab hostibus.	Monet,
plans	may be learned	by the enemy.	He advises (him).
si non	posset	adire,	ut objiciat
if he may not	be able	to approach to (Cicero),	that he cast

tragūlam cum epistōlā deligatā ad amentum  
 a javelin with the letter tied to the thong  
 intra munitiones castrorum (pl.). Scribit  
 within the fortifications of the camp. He writes  
 in litēris (pl.), se profectum  
 in the letter, (that he) himself having set out to be about  
 affōre celerīter cum legionibus,  
 to [would] be present speedily [quickly] with the legions,  
 hortatur ut retinēat pristīnam virtutem.  
 he encourages (him) that he retain (his) ancient valor.  
 Gallus veritus pericūlum, mittit  
 The Gaul having feared danger, sends [throws]  
 tragūlam, ut praeceptum erat. Hæc adhæsit  
 the javelin, as it had been ordered. This stuck  
 ad turrim casu, nēque animadversa (est)  
 to a tower by chance, nor was perceived.  
 bidūo ab nostris; tertio die  
 for two days by our (men); on the third day  
 conspicitur à quodam milite; dempta  
 it is seen by a certain soldier, having been taken down  
 defertur ad Ciceronem. Ille recitat per-  
 it is carried to Cicero. He reads aloud, (it) having  
 lectam in conventu militum, que  
 been read through, in an assembly of the soldiers, and  
 afficit omnes maximā lætitiā. Tum  
 affects all with the greatest gladness. Then  
 fumi (pl.) incendiōrum videbantur (pl.) prœcul,  
 the smoke of the fires was seen afar off,  
 quæ res expulit omnem dubitationem adventūs  
 which thing banished all doubt of the approach  
 legionum.  
 of the legions.

49. Galli, re cognitā per  
 The Gauls, the fact having been learned by  
 exploratores, relinquunt obsidionem; contendunt  
 spies, leave [raise] the siege: they set out  
 ad Cæsārem omnibus copiis: hæc erant  
 to Cæsar with all (their) forces; these were

circiter sexaginta millia armatorum. Cicero,  
 about sixty thousand (of) armed (men) Cicero,  
 facultate datâ, repetit Gallum ab  
 the opportunity having been given. requests the Gaul from  
 eodem Verticone, quem demonstravimus supra,  
 the same Vertico, whom we have pointed out above,  
 qui defērat litēras (pl.) ad Cæsārem. Admōnet  
 who carried a letter to Cæsar He admonishes  
 hunc, faciat iter cautē que  
 him, (that) he make the journey cautiously and  
 diligenter. Perscribit in litēris (pl.),  
 carefully. He writes in the letter, (that)  
 hostes discessisse ab se, que omnem  
 the enemy (to) have departed from himself and all  
 multitudīnem convertisse ad eum. Quibus  
 the multitude (to) have turned to him. Which  
 litēris (pl.) allatis Cæsāri circiter mediā  
 letter having been brought to Cæsar about mid  
 noctē, facit certiores suos que  
 night, he makes more sure [informs] his (men) and  
 confirmat eos animo ad dimicandum. Postēro  
 strengthens them in mind for fighting On the following  
 diē mōvet castra (pl.) primā luce,  
 day he moves the camp at the first light [early dawn],  
 et progressus circiter quatuor millia  
 and having advanced about four thousand  
 passūm, conspicatur multitudīnem hostium  
 (of) paces. he discovers the multitude of the enemy  
 trans magnam vallem et rivum. Erat res  
 beyond a great valley and rivulet It was a matter  
 magni periculi dimicare cum tantulis copiis  
 of great danger to contend with such small forces  
 iniquo loco. Tamen quoniam sciebat  
 in an unfavorable place However since he was knowing  
 Ciceronem liberatum (fuisse) obsidione,  
 (that) Cicero to have [had] been delivered from the siege  
 que ideo existimabat remittendum<sup>81</sup>  
 and therefore was thinking (it) to be [he must relax] relaxed



æquō animō de celeritate, consedit, et  
 with an easy mind from speed. he halted, and  
 communit castra (pl.) lōco quā æquissīmo  
 fortifies the camp in a place as (most) favorable  
 pōtest: atque etsi hæc ěrant (pl.)  
 (as) he is able [possible]: and although this was  
 exigūa per se (pl.), vis septem  
 small by itself, scarcely (of) [for] seven  
 millium homīnum, præsertim cum nullis  
 thousand men. especially with no  
 impedimentis; tāmen contrāhit quā maxīmē  
 baggage: yet he contracts (it) as much as  
 pōtest, angustūs viarum ěo consiliō, ut  
 he is able. by narrow passages, with this design, that  
 veniāt in summam contemptionem  
 he may come into the highest contempt  
 hostibus. Intērim speculatoribus dimissis  
 to [with] the enemy. Meantime scouts having been sent  
 in omnes partes, explorat quo itinēre  
 into all parts, he examines by what route  
 posset transire vallem commodissimē.  
 he may be able to cross the valley most conveniently.  
 50. Eo diē, parvūlis equestribus praeliis  
 On this day, trifling cavalry battles  
 factis ad āquam, utrique continent  
 having been made at the water, each [both] keep  
 sese sūo lōco. Galli, quōd expectabant  
 themselves in their place. The Gauls, because they were awaiting  
 ampliores copias, quæ nondum convenērant:  
 more extensive forces, which had not yet assembled:  
 Cæsar, si fortē posset elicēre hostes  
 Cæsar. if perhaps he might be able to entice the enemy  
 in sūum lōcum citra vallem  
 into his own place on this side the valley  
 simulatione timoris, ut contendēret  
 by a pretence of fear. (so) that he might contend  
 proelio pro castris (pl): si posset non  
 in battle before the camp: if he would be able not

efficere id, ut, itineribus exploratis,  
 to effect this, that the routes having been examined,  
 transiret vallem que rivum cum minore  
 he might cross the valley and rivulet with less  
 periculo. Primâ luce, equitatus  
 danger. At the first light [early dawn], the cavalry  
 hostium accedit ad castra (pl.), que  
 of the enemy approaches to the camp, and  
 committit prælum cum nostris equitibus. Cæsar  
 joins battle with our cavalry. Cæsar  
 consulto jûbet equites cedere que recipere  
 designedly orders the horse men to yield and to betake  
 se in castra (pl.), simul jûbet  
 themselves into the camp, at the same time he orders  
 castra (pl.) muniri altiore vallo ex  
 the camp to be fortified with a higher rampart from [on]  
 omnibus partibus, que portas obstrui,  
 all parts [sides], and the gates (to be) barricaded,  
 atque concursari<sup>82</sup> quam maximâ in  
 and to be hurried [to hurry] as much as possible in  
 administrandis iis rebus, et âgi  
 performing these things, and to be acted [to act]  
 cum simulatione timoris.  
 with a pretence of fear.

51. Omnibus quibus rebus hostes invitati  
 By all which things the enemy having been induced  
 transducunt copias, que constituunt aciem  
 lead over (their) forces, and station the battle-line  
 iniquo loco. Verò nostris etiam  
 in an unfavorable place. But our (men) also  
 deductis de vallo, accedunt<sup>83</sup>  
 having been led down from the rampart. they approach  
 propius; et coniciunt tela ex omnibus  
 nearer; and throw (their) weapons from all  
 partibus intra munitionem: que præconibus  
 sides within the fortification: and criers  
 circummissis, jûbent pronuntiari; seu  
 having been sent about, they order (it) to be declared: whethe

quis Gallus seu Romanus vēlit transire ad  
 anyone. Gaul or Roman, may wish to pass over to  
 se ante tertiam horam, licere  
 themselves before the third hour, to be [it, is] allowed  
 sine pericūlo: post<sup>84</sup> id tempus, potestatem  
 without danger: after this time, the opportunity  
 non fore: ac contempserunt  
 not to be about to [will not] be: and they despised  
 nostros sic, ut, portis obstructis  
 our (men) so. that. the gates having been barricaded  
 in speciem singulis ordinibus cāspitum,  
 in [for] appearance with single rows of sods,  
 quōd videbantur non posse introrumpere  
 because they were seeming not to be able to burst in  
 eā, alii incipērent (imp. subj.) scandere  
 by that (way). some were beginning to climb  
 vallum mānu, alii complere fossas.  
 the rampart by hand, others to fill up the trenches.  
 Tunc Cāsar, eruptione factā omnibus  
 Then Cāsar, a sally having been made from all  
 portis que equitatu emissō, dat  
 the gates and the cavalry having been sent out, gives [puts]  
 hostes celeriter in fugam; sic ut nemo  
 the enemy quickly to flight; so that no one  
 omnino resistēret (imp. subj.) causā pugnandi,  
 of all was withstanding for the sake of fighting,  
 que occidit magnum numerum ex his,  
 and he slew a great number from [of] these,  
 atque exiit omnes armis (abl.).  
 and stripped off all (their) arms.  
 52. Veritus prosēqui longius, quōd  
 Having feared to pursue (them) farther, because  
 silvæ que paludes intercedebant; (nēque<sup>85</sup>  
 woods and marshes were intervening; (nor,  
 videbat locum relinqui parvūlo  
 (was) he was seeing the place (to be) left with trifling  
 detrimento illorum); omnibus suis copiis  
 loss of them [on their part]); all his forces

incolumibus, pervēnit eodem diē ad Ciceronem.  
 safe, he comes on the same day to Cicero.  
 Admiratur turres, testudines, que munitiones  
 He admires the towers, shelters, and the fortifications  
 hostium, institutas. Legione  
 of the enemy, (which they) prepared. The legion  
 productā, cognoscit quemque decimum  
 having been drawn out. he learns (that) every tenth  
 militem non relictum esse sine  
 soldier (was) not (to have been) left without  
 vulnere. Ex omnibus his rebus, iudicat,  
 a wound. From [Of] all these things, he judges,  
 cum quanto periculo, et cum quantā virtute,  
 with how great danger, and with how great valor,  
 res administratæ sint (perf. subj.). Collaudat  
 affairs were managed. He commends  
 Ciceronem pro ejus merito (sing.), que  
 Cicero according to his deserts, and  
 legionem: appellat sigillatim centuriones que  
 the legion: he addresses individually the centurions and  
 tribunos militum, quorum virtutem cognovērat  
 tribunes of the soldiers whose valor he had known  
 fuisse egregiam testimonio Ciceronis.  
 to have [had] been excellent by the testimony of Cicero.  
 Cognoscit certius de casu Sabini  
 He learns more surely of the calamity of Sabinus  
 et Cottæ ex captivis. Postero diē,  
 and of Cotta from the prisoners. On the following day,  
 concione habitā, proponit rem  
 an assembly having been held, he sets before (them) the affair  
 gestam: consolatur et confirmat  
 (as it) transpired: he consoles and encourages  
 milites: docet detrimentum, quod  
 the soldiers: he shows (that) the loss, which  
 acceptum sit (perf. subj.) culpā et temeritate  
 has been received by the fault and rashness  
 legati, ferendum æquiore animo  
 of the lieutenant. to [must] be borne with more even mind

hoc; from this [on this account]:	quòd because	beneficìo by the kindness		
immortalium of the immortal	deorum, gods.	et and	eorum by their	virtute, valor,
incommodò the disadvantage	expiato, having been atoned for.	nēque neither	diutīna a lasting	
lætatio rejoicing	relinquatur (pres. subj.) is left	hostibus, to the enemy,	nēque nor	
longior longer	dōlor grief	ipsis. to themselves.		
53. Intērim Meantime	fama the report	de of	victoriā the victory	Cæsarīs of Cæsar
perfertur is carried	ad to	Labienum Labienus	per by	Remos the Remi
celeritate; expedition.	ut, (so) that,	quum though	abesset (imp. subj.) he was distant	incredibili with incredible
quingenta fifty	millia thousand	passuum (of) paces	ab from	hibernis the winter quarters
Ciceronis, of Cicero.	que and	Cæsar Cæsar	pervenisset (pl. subj.) had arrived	ed there
post after	nonam the ninth	horam hour	diei, of the day	clamor a shout
(imp. subj.)	ante before	mediam mid	noctem night	ad at
castrorum (pl.); of the camp:	quo by which	clamore shout	significatio an indication	
victoriæ of victory	que and	gratulatio congratulation	fiēret (imp. subj.) was made	
Labieno to Labienus	ab by	Remis. the Remi.	Hæc This	famâ report
ad to	Treviros, the Treviri.	Indutiomārus, indutiomarus.	qui who	decreverat had resolved
oppugnare to assault	castra (pl.) the camp	Labieni of Labienus	postēro on the following	
diē, day.	profūgit flees	noctu by night	que and	reducit leads back
copias (his) forces	in among	Treviros. the Treviri.	Cæsar Cæsar	remittit sends back

Fabium cum legione in sua hiberna.  
 Fabius with the legion into their winter quarters.  
 Ipse constituit hiemare trinis hibernis  
 He himself resolved to winter in triple winter quarters.  
 cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam: et  
 with three legions about Samarobriua; and  
 quod tanti motus Gallie exstiterant  
 because so great disturbances of Gaul had arisen  
 ipse decrevit manere totam hiemem  
 (he) himself determined to remain the whole winter  
 ad exercitum. Nam, illo incommodo de  
 at [with] the army. For. that calamity from  
 morte Sabini perlato, fere  
 the death of Sabinus having been carried through (them), nearly  
 omnes civitates Gallie consultabant de  
 all the states of Gaul were deliberating about  
 bello: dimittebant nuntios que legationes  
 war: they were dispatching messengers and embassies  
 in omnes partes; et explorabant, quid  
 into all parts, and were searching out, what  
 consilii reliqui caperent, atque unde initium  
 (of) counsel the rest might take, and whence a beginning  
 belli fieret; que habebant nocturna  
 of war might be made, and they were holding night  
 concilia in desertis locis: neque ullum  
 assemblies in desert places: nor (did) any  
 tempus fere totius hiemis intercessit sine  
 time nearly of the whole winter pass without  
 sollicitudine Cæsaris,<sup>86</sup> quin acciperet (imp.  
 the anxiety of Cæsar, but that he was receiving  
 subj.) aliquem nuntium de conciliis  
 some messenger concerning the assemblies  
 et motu Gallorum. In his factus est  
 and disturbance of the Gauls. Among these he was made  
 certior ab Lucio Roscio legato,  
 more sure [was informed] by Lucius Roscius the lieutenant,  
 quem præfecerat decimæ tertię legioni,  
 whom he had appointed to the thirteenth legion, (that)

magnas copias Gallorum earum civitatum, quæ  
 great forces of the Gauls of these states, which  
 appellantur Armoricæ, convenisse causâ  
 are called Armoricæ, to have [had] assembled for the sake  
 oppugnandi sui; neque abfuisse  
 of assaulting himself; nor to have [had] been distant  
 longius octo millia passuum ab suis  
 farther (than) eight thousand (of) paces from his  
 hibernis; sed, nuntio allato de  
 winter quarters; but, a message having been brought about  
 victoriâ Cæsaris, discessisse, ad eo  
 the victory of Cæsar, to have (that they) departed, so  
 ut discessus videretur (imp. subj.) similis  
 that (their) departure was seeming like  
 fugæ.  
 (to) a flight.

24. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitatis  
 But Cæsar, the chiefs of each state  
 vocatis ad se, tenuit magnam partem  
 having been called to himself, kept a great part  
 Galliæ in officio, aliàs territando, quum  
 of Gaul in duty, at one time by alarming, when  
 denuntiaret (imp. subj.), se scire  
 he was announcing, (that he) himself to know  
 quæ fierent (imp. subj.), aliàs  
 [knew] what (things) were done, at another time  
 cohortando. Tamen Senones, quæ est civitas  
 by encouraging. However the Senones, which is a state  
 in primis firma, et magnæ auctoritatis inter  
 particularly strong, and of great authority among  
 Gallos, conati (sunt) interficere publico consilio  
 the Gauls, attempted to slay by public counsel  
 Cavarinum, quem Cæsar constituêrat regem  
 Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king  
 apud eos, (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu  
 among them, (whose brother Moritasgus, at the coming  
 Cæsaris in Galliâ, que cujus majores  
 of Cæsar into Gaul, and whose ancestors

obtinuerant regnum); quum ille præsensisset  
 had held the sovereignty; when he had forknown  
 (pl. perf. subj.) ac profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),  
 and had escaped.  
 insecuti usque ad fines, expulerunt  
 having pursued (him) even to the borders, they expelled  
 (him) domo que regno; et legatis  
 (him) from home and the kingdom; and ambassadors  
 missis ad Cæsarem causâ satis-  
 having been sent to Cæsar for the sake of making  
 faciendi, quum is jussisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnem  
 satisfaction, when he had ordered all  
 senatum venire ad se, fuerunt non  
 (their) senate to come to himself, they were not  
 audientes<sup>87</sup> dicto (dat.). Valuit tantum  
 hearing [obedient] to the word, it availed so much  
 apud barbaros homines, aliquos  
 among barbarian men, (that) some  
 repertos esse principes inferendi belli,  
 to have been [were] found leaders of [in] waging war.  
 que attulit tantam commutationem voluntatum  
 and it brought so great a change of wills  
 omnibus, ut fere nulla civitas fuerit  
 [heart] to all that scarcely no [any] state was  
 non suspecta nobis, præter Æduos et  
 not suspected by us, except the Ædui and  
 Remos, quos Cæsar semper habuit præcipio  
 Remi, whom Cæsar always had in particular  
 honore, altēros pro vetēre ac perpetuâ fide  
 honor, the former for ancient and constant faith  
 erga Romanum populum; altēros pro recentibus  
 toward the Roman people: the latter for the recent  
 officiis Galliei belli: que scio haud, ne  
 duties of the Gallic war: and I know not, whether  
 id sit mirandum adde, cum  
 this may be (to be) wondered at so not only from  
 compluribus aliis causis, tum maxime quod  
 many other causes, but also chiefly because



qui præferebantur omnibus gentibus (dat.)  
 (those) who were surpassing all nations  
 virtute belli, dolebant gravissimè,  
 in bravery in war, were grieving most severely. (that they)  
 se deperdidisse tantum opinionis ejus,  
 themselves to have [had] lost so much of the reputation of it,  
 ut perferrent imperia Romani  
 that they should endure the commands of the Roman  
 populi.  
 people.

55. Verò Treviri atque Indutiomārus  
 But the Treviri and Indutiomarus  
 intermiserunt<sup>88</sup> nullum tempus totius hiemis,  
 omitted no time of the whole winter,  
 quin mitterent legatos trans Rhenum;  
 but that they might send ambassadors across the Rhine;  
 sollicitarent civitates; pollicerentur  
 (that) they might solicit the states; (that) they might promise  
 pecunias (pl.): dicērent, magnā  
 money: (that) they might say. (that) a great  
 parte nostri exercitūs interfectā, multò  
 part of our army having been slain. by far  
 minorem partem superesse. Nēque tamen  
 the lesser part to remain [remains]. Nor yet  
 potuit persuaderi<sup>89</sup> ulli  
 was it possible to be persuaded to any [to persuade any]  
 civitati Germanorum, ut transiret Rhenum;  
 state of the Germans, that it should cross the Rhine;  
 quum dicērent (imp. subj.) se  
 since they were saying (that they) themselves,  
 expertos bis, bello Ariovisti, et  
 having tried twice in the war of Ariovistus, and  
 transitu Tencterorum, non esse  
 in the crossing of the Tencteri. not to be [are not]  
 tentaturos fortunam amplius. Indutiomārus  
 about [going] to try fortune further. Indutiomarus  
 lapsus hāc spe, nihilo minùs cœpit  
 having slipped [failed] in this hope, nevertheless began

cogĕre copias, exigĕre à finitimis,  
 to collect forces, to demand (them) from the neighboring  
 parare ĕquos, allicĕre exules que damnatos  
 (states), to procure horses, to entice exiles and condemned  
 ad se magnis præmiis totâ Galliâ:  
 (persons) to himself by great rewards in all Gaul:  
 ac comparavĕrat jam tantam auctoritatem sibi  
 and he procured now so great authority for himself  
 his rebus in Galliâ, ut legationes  
 by these things in Gaul, that embassies  
 concurrĕrent (imp. subj.) undique ad ĕum;  
 were assembling from every side to him;  
 petĕrent (imp. subj.) gratiam atque amicitiam  
 they were seeking (his) favor and friendship  
 publicĕ que privatim.  
 publicly and privately.

56. Ubi intellexit veniri  
 When he understood (it) to be come [that they came]  
 ultrò ad se; Senōnes que Carnutes  
 voluntarily to himself; (that) the Senones and Carnutes  
 instigatos conscientiâ facinoris ex altĕrâ  
 to be [were] instigated by a consciousness of crime on one  
 parte, Nervios que Aduaticos parare  
 side, (that) the Nervii and Aduatuci (to) prepare  
 bellum Romanis (dat.) altĕrâ nĕque  
 war against the Romans on the other side nor (that)  
 copias voluntariorum defōre  
 forces of volunteers to be about to [would] be wanting  
 sibi, si cœpisset (pl. subj.) progrĕdi ex  
 to himself, if he was beginning to advance from  
 suis finibus; indicit armatum concilium.  
 his own borders; he proclaims an armed council.  
 Hoc, more Gallorum, est initium  
 This, by the custom of the Gauls, is a commencement  
 belli; quò omnes pubĕres coguntur  
 of war; where all full grown (persons) are compelled  
 convenire armati, communi lege; et qui  
 to assemble armed. by a common law. and who

ex iis vēnit novissimus, effectus  
 [whoever] from [of] them comes last, having been visited  
 omnibus cruciatibus necatur in conspectu  
 with all tortures is put to death in sight  
 multitudinis. In eo concilio curat  
 of the multitude. In this council he takes care  
 Cingetorigem, principem alterius factionis, suum  
 Cingetorix, the chief of the other party, his own  
 genērum, judicandum hostem (quem demonstravimus  
 son in law. to be [is] judged an enemy (whom we have shown  
 suprā, secutum fidem Cæsaris, non  
 above, having secured the good-faith of Cæsar, not  
 discessisse ab eo), que publicat  
 to have [had not] departed from him), and he confiscates  
 ejus bona. His rebus confectis,  
 his goods. These things having been finished,  
 pronūciat in concilio se  
 he declares in the council (that he) himself  
 accersitum (esse) à Senonibus et Carnutibus,  
 to have [has] been sent for by the Senones and Carnutes,  
 que compluribus aliis civitatibus Galliarum;  
 and by very many other states of Gaul:  
 facturum (esse) iter huc per  
 to be [that he is] about to make (his) march hither through  
 fines Remorum, que populaturum eorum  
 the territories of the Remi and [is] about to ravage their  
 agros; ac oppugnaturum castra (pl.) Labieni  
 lands, and [is] about to assault the camp of Labienus  
 prius quàm faciat id, que præcipit,  
 before (that) he may do this and he prescribes.  
 quæ vēlit fieri.  
 what he wishes to be done.  
 57. Labienus timebat nihil de suo  
 Labienus was fearing nothing about his own  
 periculo ac legionis, quum contineret  
 danger and (that) of the legion, since he was keeping  
 sese castris (pl.) munitissimis et naturā  
 himself in a camp most fortified both by the nature

lōci, et mānu; sed cogitabat<sup>9n</sup>  
of the place, and by hand [art]. but he was thinking  
ne dimittēret quam occasionem gerendæ  
he should not lose any opportunity of carrying on.  
rei bēnē. Itaque oratione Indutiomāri,  
a matter well. Therefore the speech of Indutiomarus.  
quam habuērat in concilio, cognitā  
which he had delivered in the council, having been known  
à Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis, mittit  
from Cingetorix and his relations, he sends  
nuntios ad finitimas civitates, que  
messengers to the neighboring states, and  
convocat equites undique. Dicit  
calls together cavalry from every side. He says [fixes]  
certam diem conveniendi iis. Intērim  
a certain day of meeting for them. Meantime  
Indutiomārus vagabatur prōpē quotidie cum omni  
Indutiomarus was roving almost daily with all  
equitatu sub ejus castris (pl.); aliās ut  
(his) cavalry near his camp; at one time that  
cognosceret situm castrorum (pl.); aliās  
he might learn the situation of the camp: at another time  
causā colloquendi aut territandi: omnes  
for the sake of parleying or of alarming: all  
equites plerumque conjiciebant tela intra  
(his) cavalry generally were hurling weapons within  
vallum. Labienus continebant suos intra  
the rampart. Labienus was keeping his (men) within  
munitiones, que augebat opinionem timoris  
the fortifications, and was increasing the supposition of fear  
quibuscunque rebus potērat.  
by whatsoever things [means] he was able  
58. Quum Indutiomārus accedēret (imp. subj.)  
When Indutiomarus was approaching  
indies ad castra (pl.) majore contempnōne,  
daily to the camp with greater contempt.  
equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos  
the cavalry of all the neighboring states, which

curavērat accessendos, intromissis unā  
 he had taken care to be sent for. having been admitted in one  
 nocte, continūit omnes sūos custodiīs (pl.) intra  
 night, he kept all his (men) on guard within  
 castra (pl.) tantā diligentīā, ut ēa res  
 the camp with so great diligence. that this thing  
 posset enuntiari nullā ratione, aut  
 might be able to [could] be told by no means, or  
 perferri ad Trevīros. Intērim, ex  
 (to) be carried to the Treviri. Meantime, according to  
 quotidianā consuetudinē, Indutiomārus accedit  
 daily custom. Indutiomarus approaches  
 ad castra (pl.), atque consumit magnam partem  
 (to) the camp. and spends a great part  
 diei ibi. Equītes conjiūnt tela, et  
 of the day there (His) cavalry hurl weapons. and  
 evōcant nostros ad pugnam magnā<sup>91</sup>  
 call out our (men) to battle with great  
 contumeliā verborum. Nullo responso dāto  
 insult of words No answer having been given  
 à castris (pl.), ūbi visum est, discedunt  
 from the camp when it seemed (well). they depart  
 dispersi ac dissipati sub vespērum. Labienus  
 dispersed and scattered about evening Labienus  
 subitō emittit omnem equitatum duabus  
 suddenly sends forth all the cavalry from two  
 portis: prācipit atque interdicīt,<sup>92</sup> hostibus  
 gates he prescribes and enjoins. the enemy  
 perterritis, atque coniectis in fūgam,  
 having been dismayed and thrown into flight.  
 (quod videbat fōre, sicut  
 (which he was seeing to be about to [would] be. just as  
 accidit) omnes petērent Indutiomārum  
 it happened) (that) all should seek Indutiomarus  
 unum, neu quis vulneraret quemquam,  
 one [alone] nor any (man) should wound any one,  
 priūs quā videret illum interfectum: quōd  
 before (that) he should see him killed. because

nolebat illum, nactum spatium  
 he was unwilling (that) him [he], having got space [time]  
 mōrâ reliquorum, effugere. Proponit  
 by delay of [with] the rest. to [should] escape. He offers  
 magna præmia iis, qui occiderint: submittit  
 great rewards to those, who should kill (him): he sends up  
 cohortes subsidio equitibus. Fortuna comprobat  
 cohorts for aid to the cavalry. Fortune approves  
 consilium hominis; et quum omnes  
 [favors] the plan of the men: and since all  
 petèrent (imp. subj.) unum, Indutiomarus  
 were seeking one, Indutiomarus  
 prehensus in vado ipso fluminis  
 having been caught in the ford itself [the very ford] of the river  
 interficitur, que ejus caput refertur in  
 is slain, and his head is carried back into  
 castra (pl.). Equites redeuntes consecretantur atque  
 the camp The cavalry returning pursue and  
 occidunt, quos possunt. Hæc re cognita,  
 slay (those), whom they can This thing having been known,  
 omnes copię Eburorum et Nerviorum,  
 all the forces of the Eburones and of the Nervii,  
 quæ convenérant, discedunt; que paulò post id  
 which had assembled, depart; and a little after this  
 factum, Cæsar habuit Galliam quietiorem.  
 deed [action], Cæsar had Gaul more tranquil.

## SIXTH BOOK

The sixth book begins with a description of Cæsar's rapid and successful campaign against the Senonnes and Carnutes. The Triveri attack Labienus who conquers them in battle after luring them by a stratagem into an unfavorable place. Cæsar builds another bridge across the Rhine. He enters Germany and receives the surrender of the Ubii. He learns that the Suevi have taken refuge in the Bacenis forest. Cæsar makes a digression in his narrative and compares the Gauls and Germans in a long descriptive passage. He returns to Gaul, having demolished the farther end of the bridge and fortified the Gallic approach to it. He marches in pursuit of Ambiorix into the Ardennes forest. Meantime the Sugambri cross the Rhine, attack Cicero and return. During this period the Eburones are being plundered and exterminated by a general proclamation as punishment for their treachery of the previous year. Ambiorix is pursued continuously but with a few horsemen succeeds in evading capture. After condemning Acco for the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes, Cæsar quarters the legions for winter and departs for Italy to hold assemblies.

1. Cæsar de multis causis expectans majorem  
 Cæsar for many reasons expecting (a) greater  
 motum Gallæ instituit per legatos,  
 commotion of Gaul determines through (his) lieutenants,  
 M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium,  
 N. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus, (and) T. Sextius,  
 habere delectum. Simul p̄tit ab Cneio  
 to hold a levy. At the same time he requests from Cneius  
 Pompeio, proconsule, quoniam ipse maneret  
 Pompey, proconsul, (that) because he was remaining  
 ad urbem cum imperio, causâ  
 near the city with (military) command, for the sake of  
 rei publicæ, juberet quos  
 the public business, (that) he should order (those) whom  
 rogavisset (pl. perf. subj.) sacramento consûl ex  
 he had enrolled by oath (as) consul in

Cisalpinâ Galliâ convenire ad signa et  
 Cisalpine Gaul to assemble at the standards and  
 proficisci ad se; existimans interesse magni  
 march to him: deeming (it) to be of great  
 ad opinionem Galliæ  
 (importance) regarding the opinion of Gaul (which they might  
 etiam in reliquum tempus  
 have) even for remaining [future] time (that the)  
 facultates Italiæ videri tantas ut si  
 resources of Italy to [should] be seen so great that if  
 quid (neut.) detrimenti acceptum esset in bello,  
 any (of) detriment [harm] should be received in war.  
 id non modò posset sarciri brevī tempore, sed  
 this not only could be repaired in a short time, but  
 posset etiam augeri<sup>1</sup> majoribus copiis. Quod  
 could also be supplemented by greater forces. Which  
 quum Pompeius tribuisset et rei publicæ et  
 when Pompey had granted both for the republic and  
 amicitia; delectu celeriter confecto  
 for (his) friendship, a levy quickly having been made  
 per suos, tribus legionibus et  
 through his (lieutenants), three legions both  
 constitutis et adductis ante hiemem exactum;  
 having been raised and brought on before the winter had passed;  
 et numero earum cohortium, quas amisérat cum  
 and the number of these cohorts, which he had lost under  
 Q. Titurio, duplicato, docuit et  
 Q. Titurius, having been doubled, he showed both  
 celeritate et copiis, quid disciplina  
 by (his) promptness and by (his) forces, what the discipline  
 atque opes Romani populi posset.  
 and resources of the Roman people were able (to do).  
 2. Indutiomaro interfecto ut docuimus,  
 Indutiomarus having been slain as we have shown,  
 imperium defertur à Trevis ad ejus propinquos.  
 the government is conferred by the Treviri on his relations.  
 Illi non desistunt sollicitare finitimos Germanos  
 They (do) not cease to invite the neighboring Germans



et polliceri pecuniam. Quum possent non impetrare  
and to promise money. When they could not obtain

ab proximis,<sup>2</sup> tentant ulteriores.<sup>3</sup>  
(this) from the neighboring, they try the more remote.

Nonnullis, civitatibus inventis,  
Some, states having been found (compliant),

confirmant<sup>4</sup> jurejurando inter se, que  
they pledge by an oath among themselves, and

cavent obsidibus de pecuniâ; adjungunt  
give security by hostages for the money. they unite

sibi Ambiorigem societate et fœdere. Quibus  
to themselves Ambiorix by alliance and by treaty Which

rebus cognitis, Cæsar quum videret bellum  
things having been known. Cæsar as he perceived war

parari<sup>5</sup> undique; Nervios, Aduatucos  
to be [was] preparing on all sides. (that) the Nervii, the Aduatuci

ac Menapios, omnibus cisrhenanis Germanis  
and the Menapii, all the hither-Rhine Germans

adjunctis esse in armis; Senones non  
having been added were in arms; (that) the Senones (did) not

venire ad imperatum, et communicare  
come at (his) command, and (that) they exchange

consilia cum Carnutibus que finitimis civitatibus;  
counsel with the Carnutes and neighboring states;

Germanos sollicitari a Trevis crēbris  
(that) the Germans were invited by the Treviri in frequent

legationibus; putavit cogitandum,  
embassies; he thought to [it must] be considered [he must

sibi (dat.) maturiùs de bello.  
consider] by himself earlier regarding the war.

3. Itaque hieme nondum confectâ,  
Therefore the winter not yet having been completed

quatuor proximis legionibus coactis,  
the four nearest legions having been assembled

contendit improvise in fines Nerviorum; et  
he marched suddenly into the territories of the Nervii; and

priùs quàm illi aut possent convenire, aut  
before (that) they either could assemble, or

profugere magno numero pecoris atque hominum  
 escape a great number of cattle and of men  
 capto, atque eâ prædâ concessâ  
 having been captured and this booty having been given up  
 militibus, que agris vastatis, coëgit  
 to the soldiers, and (their) fields having been laid waste, he forced  
 venire in deditionem, atque dare  
 (them) to come into a surrender, and to give  
 obsides sibi. Eo negotio celeriter  
 hostages to himself. This business [campaign] having been quickly  
 confecto, reduxit rursus legiones in hiberna.  
 performed, he led back again the legions into winter quarters.  
 Concilio Galliæ indicto primo vere, ut  
 A council of Gaul having been called in early spring, as  
 instituërat, quum reliqui præter Senones,  
 he had determined, since the rest except the Senones,  
 Carnutes que Treviros venissent, arbitratus  
 the Carnutes and Treviri had come, having judged (that)  
 hoc esse initium belli ac defectionis,  
 this to be [was] the beginning of war and of revolt,  
 ut videretur postponere omnia, transfert  
 although he might seem to postpone every thing, he transfers  
 concilium in Lutetiam Parisiorum. Hi erant  
 the council to Lutetia of the Parisii (Paris). These were  
 confines Senonibus, que memoriâ patrum  
 neighbors to the Senones, and in the memory of the fathers  
 conjunxerant<sup>6</sup> civitatem, sed existimabantur  
 had united their state with (them), but they were thought  
 abfuisse ab hoc concilio. Hæc re  
 to have been absent from this council. This thing  
 pronuntiata pro suggestu, proficiscitur  
 having been proclaimed from the tribunal, he marches  
 eodem die cum legionibus in Senones, que  
 on the same day with the legions into the Senones, and  
 pervenit eò magnis itineribus.  
 arrives there by long [forced] marches.  
 4. Ejus adventu cognito, Acco, qui fuerat  
 His arrival having been learned. Acco, who had been

princeps ejus concilii, jubet multitudinem convenire  
 the author of this council. orders the people to assemble  
 in oppida. Nuntiatur conantibus,  
 in the towns. It is announced to (those) attempting, (and)  
 prius quam id posset effici Romanos  
 before (that) it could be accomplished (that) the Romans  
 adesse. Necessariò desistunt sententiâ, que  
 to have [had] come. Necessarily they desist from the design, and  
 mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem causâ deprecandi;<sup>7</sup>  
 send ambassadors to Cæsar for the purpose of imploring;  
 adeunt per Æduos, in fide  
 they approach (him) through the Ædui, under the protection  
 quorum civitas erat antiquitùs. Æduis  
 of whom (their) state was formerly. The Ædui  
 petentibus Cæsar libenter dat veniam, que accipit  
 petitioning Cæsar readily gives pardon, and receives  
 excusationem, quòd arbitrabatur æstivum  
 (their) excuse, because he was judging (that) the summer  
 tempus esse instantis belli non  
 time to be [was] (one) of [for] impending war (and) not  
 quæstionis. Centum obsidibus imperatis,  
 of [for] investigation. A hundred hostages having been ordered,  
 tradit hos Æduis custodiendos. Carnutes  
 he delivers these to the Ædui to be guarded. The Carnutes  
 mittunt legatos que obsides eòdem,  
 send ambassadors and hostages to the same place,  
 usu Remis deprecatoribus, in clientelâ  
 having made use of the Remi as intercessors. under the protection  
 quorum erant; ferunt eadem responsa.  
 of whom they were. they carry (back) the same answer.  
 Cæsar peragit concilium, que imperat equites  
 Cæsar held the council, and orders horsemen  
 civitatibus (dat.).  
 (of) the states.  
 5. Hâc parte Galliæ pacatâ, insistit  
 This part of Gaul having been pacified, he applied  
 totus et mente et animo in bellum  
 (himself) altogether both in mind and soul to the war

Trevirorum et Ambiorigis. Jubet Cavarinum  
 of the Treviri and Ambiorix. He orders Cavarinus  
 proficisci secum cum equitatu Senonum, ne quis  
 to march with him with the cavalry of the Senones, lest any  
 motus civitatis existat aut ex hujus  
 commotion of the state may arise either from his  
 iracundiâ, aut ex eo, quod meruêrat odio.  
 irascibility, or from this (fact), that he had merited hatred.  
 His rebus constitutis, quòd habebat pro  
 These things having been settled, because he was holding for  
 explorato Ambiorigem non esse certaturum<sup>8</sup>  
 [as] well known (that) Ambiorix would not contend  
 prælio, circumspiciebat animo ejus reliqua consilia.  
 in battle, he was considering in mind his other plans.  
 Menapii erant propinqui finibus Eburonum,  
 The Menapii were neighboring to the frontiers of the Eburones,  
 muniti perpetuis paludibus que silvis; qui uni ex  
 protected by continuous marshes and woods; who alone of  
 Galliâ nunquam misêrant legatos ad Cæsarem  
 Gaul never had sent ambassadors to Cæsar  
 de pace; sciebat hospitium esse  
 concerning peace; he was knowing (that) hospitality was [existed]  
 cum iis Ambiorigi (dat.); item  
 with [between] them (and) Ambiorix, also  
 cognoverat venisse in amicitiam  
 he had discovered (that he) to have [had] come into friendship  
 Germanis per Treviros. Existimabat  
 to [with] the Germans through the Treviri. He was thinking (that)  
 hæc auxilia detrahenda illi, prius quàm  
 these auxiliaries to [must] be detached from him, before (that)  
 ipsum lacessendum bello; ne salute des-  
 (he) himself to be [was] assailed in war; lest safety having been  
 peratâ, aut abderet se in Menapios,  
 despaired of, either he might hide himself among the Menapii.  
 aut cogeretur congregi cum transrhenanis.  
 or be forced to unite with the over-Rhine (Germans)  
 Hoc consilio inito, mittit impedimenta  
 This plan having been formed, he sends the baggage

totius exercitûs ad Labienum in Treviros, que  
 of all the army to Labienus among the Treviri, and  
 jubet duas legiones proficisci ad eum. Ipse  
 orders two legions to proceed to him. (He) himself

proficiscitur cum quinque expeditis legionibus in  
 marches with five light armed legions against

Menapios. Illi, nullâ mânu coactâ,  
 the Menapii They. no force having been assembled,

freti præsidio loci, confugiunt in silvas  
 trusting to the protection of the place, retreat to the woods

que paludes, que conferunt eoddem suâ.  
 and marshes, and convey to the same place their property

6. Cæsar, copiis partitis cum C. Fabio,  
 Cæsar, the forces having been divided with C. Fabius,

legato, et M. Crasso, quæstore, que pontibus  
 the lieutenant, and M. Crassus, the quæstor, and bridges

effectis celeriter, adiit tripartitò;  
 having been constructed hastily, he invades in three divisions:

incendit ædificia que vicos, potitur magno  
 he burns the houses and villages (and) gets possession of a great

numero pecõris, atque hominum. Coacti  
 number of cattle, and of men Having been forced

quibus rebus, Menapii mittunt legatos ad  
 by which [these] things, the Menapii send ambassadors to

eum, causâ petendæ<sup>9</sup> pacis. Ille, obsidibus,  
 him, for the purpose of seeking peace. He, the hostages,

acceptis confirmat se habit-  
 having been received declares (that he) himself about to

urum numero hostium, si recepissent  
 [would] hold (them) in the number of enemies, if they received

aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legatos suis finibus.  
 either Ambiorix, or his ambassadors in their territories

His rebus confirmatis, relinquit Commium,  
 These things having been settled, he leaves Commius,

Atrebatem, cum equitatu in Menapiis loco  
 the Atrebatian, with the cavalry among the Menapii in place

custodis; ipse proficiscitur in Treviros.  
 of a guard; he himself marches into the Treviri.

7. Dum hæc geruntur à Cæsare, Treviri,  
 While these (things) are performed by Cæsar, the Treviri,  
 magnis copis peditatûs, que equitatûs coac-  
 a great force of foot soldiers, and of cavalry having been  
 tis, parabant adoriri Labienum cum unâ  
 assembled, were preparing to attack Labienus with one  
 legione, quæ hiemaverat in eorum finibus. Que  
 legion, which had wintered in their territories. And  
 jam aberant ab eo non longius  
 already they were distant from him not farther (than)  
 viâ bidui, quum cognoscunt duas  
 a journey of two days, when they learn (that) two  
 legiones venisse missu Cæsar.  
 legions had arrived by the sending [dispatched] of [by] Cæsar.  
 Castris positis à quindecim<sup>10</sup> millibus  
 Their camp having been pitched by fifteen thousand  
 passûm constituunt expectare auxilia (pl.)  
 (of) paces they determine to wait for the aid [auxiliaries]  
 Germanorum. Labienus, consilio hostium cog-  
 of the Germans. Labienus the plan of the enemy having  
 nito sperans temeritate eorum  
 been learned (and) hoping (that) by the rashness of them  
 fore aliquam  
 [by their rashness] to be about to [there would] be some  
 facultatem dimicandi, præsidio quinque cohortium  
 opportunity of fighting, a guard of five cohorts  
 relicto impedimentis, proficiscitur contra hostem  
 having been left for the baggage, he marches against the enemy  
 cum viginti quinque cohortibus, que magno  
 with twenty five cohorts, and a great [much]  
 equitatu, et communit castra, spatio mille  
 cavalry, and he fortifies (his) camp, an interval of a thousand  
 passûm intermisso. Erat, inter Labienus  
 paces having intervened. There was, between Labienus  
 atque hostem, flumen difficili transtitu, que  
 and the enemy, a river with a difficult crossing, and  
 præruptis ripis. Neque ipse habebat in animo  
 with steep banks. Neither he himself had in mind

transire hoc, neque existimabat hostes  
 to cross this, nor was he thinking (that) the enemy  
 transituros. Spes auxiliorum augebatur quotidie.  
 would cross. The hope of auxiliaries was increased daily.  
 Loquitur palàm in concilio, "quoniam Germani  
 It was said openly in council, "because the Germans  
 dicuntur appropinquare sese non  
 are said to be approaching (that he) himself (would) not  
 devocaturum in dubium suas que fortunas  
 (about to) call into doubt [hazard] his own and the fortunes  
 exercitûs, et moturum castra  
 of the army. and (that he) about to [would] move the camp.  
 primâ luce<sup>11</sup> postero die." Hæc deferuntur  
 at early dawn on the next day." These (words) are carried  
 celeriter ad hostes, ut ex magno numero  
 quickly to the enemy. as from [of] the great number  
 equitatûs Gallorum, natura cogebat nonnullos  
 of cavalry of the Gauls, nature was forcing some  
 favere Gallicis rebus. Noctû Labienus, tribunis  
 to favor the Gallic affairs. At night Labienus, the tribunes  
 militum que primis ordinibus coac-  
 of the soldiers and the first orders (of centurions) having been  
 tis, proponit quid sit sui  
 assembled, propounds [proposes] what may be (of) his  
 consilii; et quò facilius det hostibus  
 plan; and that the more easily he may give to the enemy  
 suspicionem timoris, jubet castra moveri  
 a suspicion of fear he orders the camp to be moved  
 majore strepitu et tumultu, quàm fert consuetudo  
 with greater noise and confusion, than was the custom  
 Romani populi. His rebus efficit profectionem  
 of the Roman people. By these things he makes the departure  
 similem fugæ. Hæc quoque deferuntur ad  
 like to a flight. These (things) also are announced to  
 hostes per exploratores ante lucem, in  
 the enemy through spies before light, in  
 tanta propinquitate castrorum.  
 so great [such] nearness of the camps.

8. Vix novissium agmen processerat extra  
 Scarcely the rear marching-line had proceeded beyond  
 munitiones, cum Galli cohortati inter se<sup>12</sup>  
 the fortifications, when the Gauls having encouraged one another  
 ne dimitterent speratam prædam ex  
 (that) they should not lose the hope for booty from  
 manibus; esse longum expectare  
 (their) hands, (that) it would be long [tedious] to wait for  
 auxilium Germanorum, Romanis perterritis;  
 the assistance of the Germans, the Romans having been terrified:  
 neque suam dignitatem pati ut non  
 (that) neither their dignity suffers that they should not  
 audeant adoriri tantis copiis, tam exiguam  
 dare to attack with so great forces, so small  
 manum, præsertim fugientem atque impeditam;  
 a band, especially fleeing and encumbered;  
 non dubitant transire flumen et committere  
 they do not hesitate to cross the river and to join  
 proelium iniquo loco. Quæ Labienus  
 battle in an unfavorable place. Which Labienus  
 suspicatus fore, ut eliceret  
 having suspected to be about to [would] be, that he would lure  
 omnes citra flumen, progrediebatur placidè  
 all to this side the river, he was marching on quietly  
 usus eadem simulatione (abl.) itineris. Tum,  
 having used the same pretence of a march. Then,  
 impedimentis præmissis paulum, atque  
 the baggage having been sent forward a little. and  
 collocatis quodam tumulo; "habetis," inquit,  
 having been placed on a certain eminence: "you have" says he.  
 "milites, facultatem quam petistis; tenetis  
 "soldiers, the opportunity which you have sought: you hold  
 hostem impedito atque iniquo loco;  
 the enemy in an encumbered and unfavorable place  
 præstate eandem virtutem nobis ducibus, quam  
 exhibit the same courage to us (your) generals which  
 sæpenumero præstitistis imperatori: existimate  
 so often you have displayed to your commander: suppose



ĕum adesse, et cernere hæc  
 him to be present, and to observe these (deeds as if)  
 coràm." Simul jubet signa con-  
 in his presence." At the same time he orders the standards to be  
 verti ad hostem, que aciem dirigi; et  
 turned to the enemy, and the battle-line to be formed, and  
 paucis turmis dimissis præsidio ad  
 a few troops of horsemen having been sent for [as] a guard to  
 impedimenta, disponit reliquos equites ad latera.  
 the baggage, he stations the remaining cavalry on the wings.  
 Nostri, clamore sublato, celeriter jaciunt  
 Our men, a shout having been raised, quickly throw  
 pila in hostes. Illi, ubi, præter  
 (their) weapons at the enemy. They, when, contrary  
 spem, viderunt quos credebant fugere  
 to expectation, they saw those whom they believed to flee  
 ire ad se infestis signis, non ferre  
 come at them with hostile standards, (to) [could] not sustain  
 impetum nostrorum; ac primo concursu,  
 the attack of our (men); and on the first encounter,  
 coniecti in fugam, petiverunt proximas  
 having been thrown into flight, they sought the nearest  
 silvas; quos Labienus consecutus equitatu  
 woods; whom Labienus having followed with (his) cavalry  
 magno numero interfecto, compluribus  
 (and) a great number having been slain, and very many  
 captis, recepit civitatem, paucis  
 having been captured he received the state (in submission). a few  
 diebus pòst. Nam Germani, qui veniebant  
 days afterwards. For the Germans, who were coming  
 auxilio, fugâ Trevirorum perceptâ  
 for [as] aid, the flight of the Treviri having been known  
 contulerunt sese domum. Cum iis propinqui  
 betook themselves home. With them the relations  
 Indutiomari, qui fuèrant auctores defectionis  
 of Indutiomaris, who had been the authors of the revolt  
 comitati eos excessere ex civitate,  
 having accompanied them departed from the state.

Principatus atque imperium traditum est Cingetorigi,  
The leadership and command was assigned to Cingetorig.

quem demonstravimus permansisse in  
whom [who] we have shown to have [had] remained in  
officio ab initio  
allegiance from the beginning

9. Cæsar, postquam venit ex Menapus in  
Cæsar after he came from the Menapii into

Treviros constituit de duabus causis transire Rhenum;  
the Treviri resolved for two reasons to cross the Rhine.

altera quarum erat, quod (Germani) miserant  
the one of which was because (the Germans) had sent

auxilia Trevis contra se; altera  
auxiliaries to the Treviri against himself the other (that)

Ambiorix ne haberet receptum ad eos. His  
Ambiorix might not have a refuge among them. These

rebus constitutis, instituit facere pontem  
things having been determined he resolved to make a bridge

paulum supra eum locum, quo antea trans-  
a little above this place, at which before he had

duxerat exercitum. Ratione notâ atque  
transported the army. The plan having been known and

institutâ, opus efficitur, paucis diebus, magno  
adopted, the work is completed, in a few days, by the great

studio militum. Firmo præsidio relicto ad  
zeal of the soldiers. A strong guard having been left at

pontem in Trevis, ne quis motus oriretur  
the bridge among the Treviri lest any commotion might arise

subitò ab iis. transducit reliquas copias que  
suddenly among them. he leads across the remaining forces and

equitatum. Ubii, qui antè dederant obsides,  
the cavalry The Ubii, who before had given hostages.

atque venerant in deditionem, mittunt legatos ad  
and had come to a surrender send ambassadors to

eum causâ purgandi sui,<sup>18</sup> qui doceant,  
him for the purpose of clearing themselves who may show

neque auxilia missa in Trevis ex  
(that) neither auxiliaries had been sent to the Treviri from

suâ civitate, neque fidem læsam ab se;  
 their state. nor faith (had been) violated by them.

petunt atque orant ut parcat sibi, ne  
 they beg and pray that he may spare them, lest

communi odio Germanorum innocentes pendant  
 in (his) common hatred of the Germans the innocent pay.

pœnas pro nocentibus; si velit amplius obsidum,  
 the penalties for the guilty. if he desires more hostages,

pollicentur dare. Causâ cognitâ,  
 they promise to give (them) The case having been investigated.

Cæsar reperit auxiliâ missa esse ab  
 Cæsar finds the auxiliaries to have [had] been sent by

Suevis; accepit satisfactionem Ubiorum;  
 the Suevi. he accepts the excuses of the Ubi. and

perquiri aditus que vias in Suevos.  
 carefully seeks out the approaches and roads into the Suevi.

10. Interim fit certior<sup>14</sup> ab Ubiis, paucis  
 In the meanwhile he is informed by the Ubi. a few

diebus pōst, Suevos cogere omnes  
 days after (that) the Suevi to collect [were collecting] all

copias in unum locum, atque denuntiare  
 (their) forces into one place, and also to warn [were

iis nationibus quæ sunt sub eorum imperio.  
 warning] these nations who are under their command.

ut mittant auxilia peditatûs que equitatûs  
 that they should send auxiliaries of foot [infantry] and of cavalry

His rebus cognitis providet rem frumentaria,  
 These things having been known he provides a corn supply.

deligit idoneum locum castris; imperat  
 he selects a suitable place for the camp. he commands

Ubiis, ut deducant pecora, que conferant  
 the Ubi. that they drive away the cattle, and collect

omnia sua ex agris in oppida; sperans  
 all their (property) from the fields into the towns. hoping

barbâros atque imperitos homines adductos  
 (that) the barbarous and ignorant men led

inopiâ cibariorum posse deduci ad  
 by the want of food to be able [might] (to) be brought into

iniquam conditionem pugnandi. Mandat  
 an unfavorable condition of fighting. He orders (the Ubi)  
 ut mittant crebros exploratores in Suevos,  
 that they send frequent scouts among the Suevi  
 cognoscant quæque gerantur (pl.) apud eos.  
 that they may learn whatever is carried on among them.  
 Illi faciunt imperata, et, paucis diebus intermissis,  
 They execute the orders and, a few days having passed.  
 referunt; "omnes Suevos, posteaquam certiores  
 report: "all the Suevi. after (that) more certain  
 nuncii venerant de exercitū  
 n.essengers [news] had come concerning the army  
 Romanorum, recepisse sese penitus ad  
 of the Romans to have [had] betaken themselves quite to  
 extremos fines cum omnibus suis copiis que  
 the extreme boundaries with all their forces and (those)  
 sociorum, quas coëgissent Esse  
 of (their) allies. which they had collected. To be [There is]  
 silvam ibi infinitæ magnitudinis, quæ  
 a forest there of boundless extent, which  
 appellatur Bacenis, hanc pertinere longè  
 is called Bacenis. this to extend [extends] far  
 introrsus, et objectam pro nativo muro,  
 into the interior and is opposed for [as] a natural wall [defence]  
 prohibere injuriis que incursionibus Cheruscos  
 to check [it checks] from injuries and incursions the Cherusci  
 à Suevis, que Suevos à Cheruscis; Suevos  
 from the Suevi and the Suevi from the Cherusci. the Suevi  
 constituisse expectare adventum Romanorum,  
 to have [had] resolved to await the arrival of the Romans  
 ad initium ejus silvæ  
 at the entrance of this forest  
 11 Quoniam perventum est ad hunc locum.  
 Because it has come to this place  
 videtur non esse alienum proponere  
 it seems not to be foreign [improper] to present (an account)  
 de moribus Galliæ que Germaniæ, et  
 of the manners of Gaul and of Germany and

quo hæ nationes differant inter  
in what (respects) these nations may differ among  
sese.<sup>15</sup> In Galliâ sunt factiones,  
themselves In Gaul (there) are factions.  
non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque  
not only in all the states and  
pagis que partibus, sed etiam pæne in singulis  
cantons and parts. but also almost in the several  
domibus; que principes earum factionum sunt  
houses and the chiefs of those factions are (those)  
qui existimantur habere, iudicio eorum  
who are considered to have. in the judgement of them [their  
judgement] summam auctoritatem; ad arbitrium que  
the highest authority to the will and  
iudicium quorum, summa omnium rerum que  
judgement of whom, the management of all affairs and  
consiliorum redeat. Que id videtur  
counsels may return. And this seems (to have been)  
institutum (esse) antiquitus causâ ejus rei,  
instituted anciently for the sake of this thing.  
ne quis ex plebe egæret auxilii (gen.)  
(that) no one from [of] the people should want assistance  
contra potentiores, enim quisque non patitur  
against the more powerful. for each one does not suffer  
suos opprimi que circumveniri; neque si faciat  
his own to be oppressed and overreached: nor if he do  
aliter habeat ullam auctoritatem inter suos.  
otherwise has he any authority among his (people).  
Hæc eadem ratio est in summâ  
This same plan [system] is in the management [authority]  
totius Galliæ. Namque omnes civitates divisæ sunt  
of all Gaul For indeed all the states are divided  
in duas partes.  
into two parties.  
12 Quum Cæsar venit in Galliam, Ædui erant  
When Cæsar came into Gaul. the Ædui were  
principes alterius factionis, Sequani alterius. Hi,  
the chiefs of one faction. the Sequani of the other These

quum valerent minus per se,  
 [The latter] as they prevailed less by themselves,  
 (quòd summa auctoritas erat in Æduis  
 (because the supreme authority was among the Ædui  
 antiquitus, que magnæ erant eorum  
 anciently [of old] and great (states) were their  
 clientelæ), adjunxerant Germanos atque  
 tributaries). they [the Sequani] had united the Germans and  
 Ariovistum sibi, que perduxerant eos ad  
 Ariovistus to themselves, and had brought them over to  
 se magnis jacturis que pollicitationibus. Verò  
 themselves by great sacrifices and promises. Indeed  
 compluribus secundis præliis factis, atque  
 very many successful battles having been fought, and  
 omni mobilitate Æduorum interfectâ,  
 all the nobility of the Ædui having been slain,  
 antecesserant tantum potentiâ, ut  
 they [the Sequani] had surpassed so much in power, that  
 transducerent ad se magnam partem clientium  
 they brought over to themselves a great part of the clients  
 ab Æduis, que acciperent ab iis  
 (tributaries) from the Ædui, and received from these  
 filios principum obsides, et cogèrent jurare  
 the sons of the chiefs as hostages, and forced (them) to swear  
 publicè, se inituros<sup>16</sup> nihil consilii  
 publicly, (that) they would enter (into) nothing of [no] design  
 contra Sequanos; et possiderent partem  
 against the Sequani, and they kept a part  
 finitimi agri occupatam per vim, que  
 of the neighboring territories seized by force, and  
 obtinerent principatum totius Galliæ. Divitiacus  
 obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul. Divitiacus  
 adductus quâ necessitate, profectus Romam  
 led by which [this] necessity, having proceeded to Rome  
 ad senatum causâ petendi auxilia, re  
 to the senate for the purpose of asking aid, the thing  
 infectâ redierat. Adventu  
 [purpose] having been accomplished had returned. By the arrival

Cæsaris, commutatione rerum factâ,  
 of Cæsar, a change of affairs having been effected,  
 obsidibus redditis Æduis, veteribus  
 the hostages having been returned to the Ædui, old  
 clientelis restitutis, nôvis comparatis  
 tributaries having been restored, (and) new having been acquired  
 per Cæsarem, (quòd ii, qui aggregaverant  
 through Cæsar, (because these, who had united  
 se ad eorum amicitiam, videbant se  
 themselves to their friendship, were seeing (that) they  
 uti<sup>17</sup> meliore conditione atque æquiore  
 to use [possessed] a better condition and more equitable  
 imperio) reliquis rebus eorum gratiâ  
 government) (their) other affairs, their authority  
 que dignitate amplificatâ, Sequani  
 and dignity [influence] having been enlarged, the Sequani  
 dimisserant principatum, Remi successerant  
 had lost the sovereignty, the Remi succeeded  
 in eorum locum; quos<sup>18</sup> quòd  
 in their place; whom [who] as  
 intelligebatur adæquare gratiâ apud  
 it was perceived equaled (the Ædui) in favor with  
 Cæsarem, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias  
 Cæsar, these, who on account of old hostilities  
 poterant nullo modo conjungi cum Æduis,  
 could in no manner be united with the Ædui,  
 dicabant se in clientelam Remis.  
 were declaring themselves under the protection of the Remi.  
 Illi tuebantur hos diligenter; et ita tenebant  
 They were protecting them carefully, and so they held  
 nôvam et repentè collectam auctoritatem. Res  
 a new and suddenly acquired influence. Affairs  
 erat tum eo statu, ut Ædui haberentur  
 were then in this state, that the Ædui were held  
 longè principes, Remi obtinerent secundum  
 by far as the principal (people) the Remi obtained the second  
 locum dignitatis.  
 place of dignity [influence].

13. In omni Galliâ eorum hominum, qui sunt  
 In all Gaul of these men who are  
 aliquo numero atque honore, sunt duo genera.  
 of any account and honor, there are two classes.  
 Nam plebs habetur pæne loco servorum,  
 For the common people are held almost in place of slaves.  
 quæ audet nihil per se, et adhibetur nulli  
 who dare nothing by themselves, and are admitted to no  
 concilio. Plerique quum premuntur aut ære alieno,  
 council. Many when they are oppressed either by debt,  
 aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injuriâ  
 or by the greatness of the tributes, or by the injury [violence]  
 potentiorum, dicant sese in servitutem  
 of the more powerful, declare themselves in servitude  
 nobilibus; omnia eadem jura sunt in hos, quæ  
 to the nobles, all the same rights are over these, which  
 dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus  
 [as] to masters over slaves. But of these two  
 generibus, alterum est Druidum, alterum  
 classes, the one is (that) of the Druids, the other (that)  
 Equitum. Illi intersunt divinis rebus,  
 of the knights. They (the Druids) are occupied with sacred things,  
 procurant publica ac privata sacrificia, inter-  
 they have charge of public and private sacrifices, (and) inter-  
 pretantur religiones. Magnus numerus adolescentium  
 pret religion. A great number of youths  
 concurrunt ad hos causâ disciplinæ, que ii,  
 resort to these for the purpose of training, and they  
 sunt magno honore apud eos. Nam  
 (the Druids) are in great honor among them For  
 constituunt de ferè omnibus controversiis  
 they decide concerning almost all controversies (both)  
 publicis que privatis; et si quod facinus est  
 public and private; and if any crime had been  
 admissum, si cædes facta, si est  
 committed, if (any) murder had been done, if (there) is  
 controversia de hæreditate, si de finibus, iidem  
 a dispute about inheritance, if about boundaries, the same



decernunt; que constituunt præmia que pœnas.  
decide (it). and determine the recompenses and punishments.

Si quis, aut privatus aut publicus, non  
If any (person). either a private or public, should not  
steterit eorum decreto, interdicunt sacrificiis.  
submit to their decree, they forbid (him) the sacrifices.

Hæc est gravissima pœna apud eos. Hi  
This is a very great punishment among them. These

quibus<sup>19</sup> est ita interdictum, habentur numero  
who are thus interdicted, are held in number

impiorum ac sceleratorum; omnes decedunt iis,  
of the impious and wicked, all avoid them,

que defugiunt eorum aditum que sermonem; ne  
and flee from their approach and conversation; lest

accipiant quid (neut.) incommodi ex  
they might receive some (of) evil from (their)

contagione; neque jus redditur eis  
contagion; neither (is) justice administered to them

petentibus neque ullus hōnos communicatur. Autem  
petitioning nor any honor is attributed. But

omnibus his Druidibus unus præest, qui habet  
over all these Druids one presides, who has

summam auctoritatem inter eos. Hoc mortuo,  
supreme authority among them. This (chief) being dead,

si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate succedit.  
if any one from [of] the others excels in dignity he succeeds.

At si plures sunt pares deligitur suffragio  
But if<sup>20</sup> many are equal he is elected by the suffrage

Druidum; etiam nonnunquam contendunt armis  
of the Druids, also sometimes they contend with arms

de principatu. Hi considunt in consecrato  
for the chieftainship. These (Druids) assemble in a consecrated

lōco, certo tempore anni in finibus  
place, at a certain time of the year in the territories

Carnutum, quæ regio habetur media totius Galliæ.  
of the Carnutes, which region is held as the center of all Gaul.

Huc omnes undique, qui habent controversias,  
Here all from all sides, who have disputes,

conveniunt, que parent eorum judiciis que decretis.  
assemble, and submit to their judgment and decrees.

Disciplina existimatur reperta in Britannîâ,  
(This) institution [cu't] is supposed (to have) originated in Britain.

atque inde (esse) translata in Galliam. Et  
and from thence (to have been) transferred into Gaul And

nunc, qui volunt diligentius cognoscere eam  
now those who wish more perfectly to know this

rem, plerumque proficiscuntur illò causâ  
thing [sect] often go there for the purpose

discendi.  
of learning (it)

14. Druides consueverunt abesse à bello, neque  
The Druids are accustomed to be absent from war nor

pendunt tributa unâ cum reliquis; (habent vaca-  
do they pay tribute together with the rest. (they have an exemp-

tionem militiæ, que immunitatem omnium  
tion from military service. and immunity of [in] all

rerum.) Excitati tantis præmiis, et multi suâ  
things) Excited by such advantages and many of their

sponte conveniunt in disciplinam, et mittuntur à  
own accord assemble for instruction, and they are sent by

parentibus que propinquis. Dicuntur ediscere  
parents and relations. They are said to learn by heart

magnum numerum versuum ibi. Itaque nonnulli  
a great number of verses there Therefore many

permanent vicanos annos in disciplinâ; neque  
remain twenty years under instruction nor

existimant esse fas mandare âa  
do they consider (it) to be lawful to commit these (things)

litteris, quum utantur Græcis litteris, in ferè  
to writing although they use the Greek letters in nearly

reliquis rebus, publicis que privatis rationibus.  
(all) other affairs, in public and in private transactions.

Id videtur mihi instituisse de duabus causis;  
This seems to me to have been established for two reasons

quòd neque velint disciplinam efferi in  
because they neither wish their discipline to be divulged to

volgos, neque eos qui discunt, confisos  
 the common people nor (that) those who learn relying  
 litteris, studere memoriae minùs.  
 on writing should cultivate (their) memory the less [too little].  
 Quod ferè accidit plerisque, ut præsidio  
 Which ordinarily happens to the most so that by the aid  
 litterarum remittant diligentiam in perdiscendo,  
 of writing they relax (their) application in thoroughly learning.  
 ac memoriam. In primis volunt persuadere  
 and (their) memory. In particular they wish to inculcate  
 hoc: animas non interire, sed post mortem  
 this (that): souls [do] not (to) die, but after death  
 transire ab aliis ad alios;<sup>20</sup> atque putant  
 (to) pass from one (body) to another; and they think  
 hōc maximè excitari ad virtutem,  
 (that) by this (men) greatly to be [are] excited to courage,  
 mētū mortis neglecto. Præterea disputant,  
 the fear of death having been disregarded. Moreover they discuss,  
 et tradunt juventuti, multa, de sideribus,  
 and impart to the youths, many things, concerning the stars,  
 atque eorum motu, de magnitudine mundi  
 and their motion, concerning the size of the world  
 ac terrarum, de naturâ rerum, de  
 and the earth, concerning the nature of things, concerning  
 vi ac potestate immortalium deorum.  
 the power and majesty of the immortal gods.  
 15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, quum  
 The other class is the knights. These, when there  
 est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante  
 is need, and any war occurs, (which before  
 adventum Cæsaris solebat accidere ferè quotannis,  
 the arrival of Cæsar was wont to happen nearly every year,  
 uti aut ipsi inferrent injurias, aut  
 as either they themselves inflicted injuries, or  
 propulsarent illatas) omnes versantur in  
 repelled (them) inflicted) all are employed in  
 bello, atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus  
 war, and as any one of them is most noble

genere que copïis, ita habet plurimos ambactos  
 by family and resources so he has very many vassals  
 que clientes circum se. Noverunt hanc  
 and clients about himself [him] They have known this  
 gratiam que potentiam unam.  
 authority and power only

16. Omnis natio Gallorum est admodum dedita  
 The whole nation of the Gauls is very much given  
 religionibus, atque ob eam causam,  
 to religion [superstitions] and for this reason (those)  
 qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, que qui  
 who are afflicted with very severe diseases and (those) who  
 versantur in prœliis que periculis, aut immolant  
 are engaged in war and dangers either sacrifice  
 homines pro victimis, aut vovent se  
 men for [as] victims or they vow (that they) themselves  
 immolatu<sup>21</sup>ros, que utuntur Druidibus  
 to be about to [will] sacrifice (them): and they use the Druids  
 (abl.) administris ad eam sacrificia; quòd arbitrantur,  
 as performers of these sacrifices: because they think.  
 nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vitâ  
 (that) unless the life of a man be rendered for the life  
 hominis, numen immortalium deorum  
 of a man, the divine will [divinity] of the immortal gods  
 non posse aliter placari, que habent sacrificia  
 could not be otherwise appeased and they have sacrifices  
 ejusdem generis instituta publicè Alii habent  
 of the same kind performed publicly Others have  
 simulacra immani magnitudine, membra quorum  
 images with [of] vast size the limbs of which  
 contexta viminibus complent vivis hominibus,  
 woven with twigs they fill with living men  
 quibus succensis homines exanimantur  
 which having been set on fire the men are put to death  
 circumventi flammâ Arbitrantur supplicia  
 by the surrounding flame. They think (that) the sacrifices  
 eorum, qui sint comprehensi in furto aut in  
 of those, who may be taken in theft or in

latrocinia, aut aliquā noxā esse gratiora  
robbery or in any culpable act to be [are] more acceptable

immortalibus diis; sed quum copia ejus  
to the immortal gods but when a supply of this

generis deficit, etiā descendunt ad supplicia  
kind is wanting also they descend to the sacrifice

innocentium  
of the innocent

17 Maximè colunt deum Mercurium: sunt  
They principally worship the god Mercury there are

plurima simulacra hujus; ferunt hunc inventorem  
many images of him they regard him (as) the inventor

omnium artium; hunc ducem viarum  
of all arts (they consider) him the guide of their journeys

atque itinèrum; arbitrantur hunc habere maximam  
and marches they believe him to have very great

vim ad quæstus pecuniæ que mercaturas (pl.).  
power for the acquisition of money and (for) trade

Post hunc Apollinem et Martem, et  
After him (they worship) Apollo and Mars and

Jovem, et Minervam De his habent ferè  
Jupiter and Minerva About these they have nearly

ëandem opinionem, quam reliquæ gentes;  
the same opinion which [as] other nations (that)

Apollinem depellere<sup>22</sup> morbos. Minervam tradere  
Apollo drives away diseases (that) Minerva imparts

initia operum atque artificiorum; Jovem  
the principles of crafts and of arts (that) Jupiter

tenere imperium cœlestium; Martem regere  
holds the empire of the celestials (that) Mars rules

bella. Huic, quum constituerunt dimicare prœliò,  
wars. To him when they have resolved to engage in battle.

plerumque devovent, ëa quæ ceperint  
they often vow these (things) which they may take

bello; animalia quæ superaverint, capta  
in war the animals which may have survived (when) captured

immolant, conferunt reliquas res in  
they sacrifice. they bring together the remaining things into

unum locum. In multis civitatibus licet conspicari  
 one place. In many states there may be seen  
 tumulos exstructos harum rerum, consecratis locis.  
 piles built of these things, in consecrated places.  
 Neque sæpe accidit, ut quisquam, religione  
 Nor does it often happen, that any one, religion  
 neglectâ, auderet aut occultare capta,  
 being disregarded, should dare either to conceal the things captured,  
 apud se, aut tollere posita, que  
 at his home, or to take away the things deposited, and  
 gravissimum supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est  
 the most grievous punishment with torture has been ordained  
 ei rei.  
 for this thing.

18. Omnes Galli prædicant se prognatos  
 All the Gauls assert (that) they are descended  
 ab Dite patre, que dicunt id  
 from Dis [Pluto] as progenitor, and they say (that) this  
 proditum<sup>23</sup> ab Druidibus. Ob eam causam  
 has been handed down by the Druids. For this reason  
 finiunt spatia (pl.) omnis temporis non  
 they determine the duration of all time not  
 numero dierum, sed noctium: et sic observant  
 by the number of days, but of nights: and so observe  
 natales dies, et initia (pl.) mensium et  
 birth days, and the commencement of the month and  
 annorum, ut dies subsequatur noctem. In  
 of years, so that the day may follow the night. In  
 reliquis institutis vitæ differunt hâc ab ferè  
 other usages of life they differ in this from nearly all  
 reliquis, quòd non patiantur suos liberos adire  
 others, that they do not suffer their children to approach  
 se palàm, nisi quum adoleverint, ut  
 them publicly, unless when they may have grown up, so that  
 possint sustinere munus militiæ; que  
 they may be able to bear the duty of military service, and  
 ducunt turpe filium in puerili ætate  
 they consider (it) shameful (for) a son in boyish age

assistere in conspectu patris, in publico.  
to attend in the presence of his father, in public.

19. Quantas pecunias viri acceperunt ab  
As much money (as) the husbands may receive from

uxoribus, nomine, dotis, tantas, aestimatione  
wives, in the name, of dower, so much, an estimate

facta, communicant cum dotibus ex suis  
having been made, they join with the dower from their own

bonis. Omnis hujus pecuniae ratio conjunctim  
goods. Of all this money an account in common

habetur, que fructus servantur; uter eorum  
is kept, and the profits are reserved; whoever of them

superarit vitam, pars utriusque cum fructibus  
may have survived in life, the part of both with the profits

superiorum temporum (pl.) pervenit ad eum. Viri  
to the previous time reverts to him. Husbands

habent potestatem vitae que necis in uxores,  
have the power of life and death against [over] the wives,

sicuti in liberos. Et quum pater  
as well as against [over] the children. And when the father

familias natus illustriore loco decessit,  
of a family born in a more illustrious place [rank] has died,

eius propinqui conveniunt, et si res venit  
his relations assemble, and if the event has come

in suspicionem, habent de morte quaestionem  
into suspicion, they hold about his death an examination

de uxoribus in servilem modum,<sup>24</sup> et si est  
of his wives after the slave manner, and if it is

compertum interficiunt excruciatas igni atque  
discovered they kill (them) tortured by fire and

omnibus tormentis. Funera, pro cultu  
all torments. The funerals, for the civilization

Gallorum, sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, que omnia,  
of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly, and all,

quae arbitrantur fuisse cordi<sup>25</sup> vivis, inferunt  
which they judge to have been dear to the living, they cast

in ignem, etiam animalia; ac paulò supra hanc  
into the fire. even animals, and a little before this

memoriam, servi et clientes, quos constabat  
 memory [time], slaves and clients, whom it was understood  
 dilectos esse ab iis, cremabantur unâ,  
 to have [had] been beloved by them, were burnt together  
 justis funeribus confectis.  
 (with them), the proper funeral rites having been performed.

20. Quæ civitates existimantur administrare  
 Those states (which) are believed to administer  
 suam rem publicam (sing.) commodiùs, habent  
 their public affairs more advantageously, have  
 sanctum legibus si quis acceperit  
 established by law (that) if any one shall have heard  
 quid à finitimis de re publicâ rumore aut  
 any thing from neighbors about the state by rumor or  
 famâ, uti deferat ad magistratum, neve  
 by report, that he should bring (it) to the magistrate, nor  
 communicet cum quo alio; quòd cognitum est  
 communicate with any other, because it has been known  
 sæpe temerarios atque imperitos homines  
 (that) often rash and inexperienced men  
 terri fâlsis rumoribus, et impelli  
 to be [are] terrified by false rumors, and to be [are] impelled  
 ad faciûs, et capere consilium de summis  
 to crime, and to form plans about the most important  
 rebus. Magistratus occultant quæ visa sunt que  
 things. The magistrates conceal what seem best and  
 produnt multitudini, quæ judicaverint esse ex usu.  
 disclose to the people, what they judge to be of use.  
 Non conceditur loqui de re publicâ nisi  
 It is not allowed to speak concerning a public matter unless  
 per concilium.  
 in the council.

21. Germani differunt multum ab hac consue-  
 The Germans differ much from these cus-  
 tudine; nam habent neque Druides, qui præsint  
 toms, for they have neither Druids, who preside over  
 divinis rebus; neque student sacrificiis Ducunt  
 sacred things; nor do they regard sacrifices They hold



eos solos numēro deorum, quos cernunt,  
those only in the number of the gods, whom they perceive,

et quorum opibus (pl.) juvantur apertē,  
and by whose assistance they are benefitted obviously.

Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam; acceperunt  
as the Sun, and Vulcan, (fire) and the Moon: they are heard

reliquos ne famā quidem. Omnis vita  
(of) the others not by report even. All (their) life

consistit in venationibus (pl.) atque in studiis  
is employed in hunting and in the pursuits

militaris rei (sing.); ab parvulis student  
of military affairs; from children they accustom themselves

labori ac duritiæ. Qui permanserunt diutissimē  
to labor and hardships. Those who have remained the longest

impuberes, ferunt maximam laudem inter suos.  
chaste, obtain the greatest praise among their (people).

Putant hōc staturam ali,  
(They) believe (that) by this the statue to be [is] increased,

hōc vires ali, que nervos  
by this the strength to be [is] increased, and the nerves

confirmari. Verō habuisse notitiam  
to be [are] strengthened. Indeed to have had the knowledge

feminæ intra vicesimum annum habent in  
of a woman within [under] the twentieth year they hold among

turpissimis rebus; cuius rei est nulla  
the most shameful things, of this thing there is no

occultatio, et quōd perluuntur promiscuē in  
concealment, both because they bathe promiscuously in

fluminibus, et utuntur pellibus, aut parvis tegimentis  
the rivers, and use skins, or small coverings

(abl.) renonum, magnā parte corpōris nudā.

of deer hides, a great part of the body being naked.

22. Non studentī agri culturæ; que major  
They do not attend to agriculture, and the greater

pars eorum victūs consistit in lacte et casēo  
part of their food consists in [of] milk and cheese

et carne. Neque habet quisquam certum mōdum  
and meat. Nor has any one a fixed portion

agri, aut proprios fines; sed magistratus ac  
 of land, or proper boundaries; but the magistrates and  
 principes, in singulos annos, attribunt quantum  
 chiefs, in each year, assign as much

agri, et quo loco visum est, gentibus que  
 (of) land, and in what place it seems best, to the tribes and  
 cognationibus hominum, qui coierunt unâ,  
 to the families of men, who may have united together,  
 atque anno post cogunt transire aliò.  
 and the year after they compel (them) to go somewhere else.

Adferunt multas causas ejus rei (gen); ne capti  
 They offer many reasons for this thing, lest captivated  
 assiduâ consuetudine commutent studium  
 by continued custom they may change (their) zeal

gerendi belli agri culturâ; ne student  
 of (for) waging war for agriculture, lest they may be eager

parare latos fines, que potentiores expellant  
 to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful may expel

humiliores possessionibus; ne ædificent  
 the more humble from possessions, lest they may build

accuratiùs ad vitandos frigora atque æstus; ne qua  
 with more care for avoiding cold and heat, lest any

cupiditas pecuniæ oriatur, ex quâ re factiones  
 desire of money may arise, from which thing factions

que dissensiones nascuntur; ut contineant  
 and dissensions originate, that they may keep

plebem æquitate animi, quum quisque  
 the common people in peace of mind, since each one

videat suas opes æquari cum  
 may see (that) his own means to be (are) equaled with

potentissimis.  
 the most powerful.

23. Est maxima laus civitatibus, habere  
 It is the greatest praise to the states, to have

solitudines quàm latissimas<sup>26</sup> circum se,  
 deserts as (most) wide (as possible) about themselves,

finibus vastatis. Existimant hoc  
 their frontiers having been laid waste. They consider this

proprium a peculiar (evidence)	virtutis, of valor,	finitimos (that) their neighbors	expulsos expelled
agris from (their) lands	cedere, (to) abandon (them),	neque nor (that)	quemquam any
(sing)	audere (to) dare	consistere (to) settle	se themselves
Simul At the same time	arbitrantur they think	(that)	se they themselves.
före to be about to [will] be	tutiores more safe	hęc, timöre by this, the fear	repentinę of sudden
incursionis raids	sublato. having been removed.	Quum When	civitas aut the state either
defendit repels	bellum war	illatum, waged against it,	aut infert; or wages war;
magistratus magistrates	deliguntur, are chosen,	qui pręsint who preside	ęi bello, over this war,
ut so that	habeant they may have	potestatem the power	vitę que nęcis. of life and death.
In pace In peace	est there is	nullus communis no general	magistratus, sed. magistrate, but
principes the chiefs	regionum of the provinces	atque and	pagorum dicunt cantons say [administer]
jus justice	inter among	suos, their (people),	que minũunt controversias. and settle disputes.
Habent They hold	latrocinia robberies	nullam as no	infamiam, quę fiunt disgrace, which are comitted
extra beyond	fines the boundaries	cujusque of any	civitatis; atque prędicant state; and they assert
(that)	ęa this	fieri to be [is] done	causę for the purpose
juventutis; the youth;	ac and	minuendę of preventing	desidię. sloth.
quis any one	ex from [of]	principibus the chiefs	dixit in concilio, "se has said in council,
före "he to be about to [will] be	ducem, the leader,	ut that	qui velint those who may wish
sequi to follow	profiteantur;" let them volunteer;"	ęi those	qui probant et who approve both

causam et hominem consurgunt, que pollicentur  
the cause and the man rise up, and promise

suum auxilium, atque collaudantur ab multitudine.  
their aid, and are applauded by the multitude.

Qui ex iis, non secuti sunt, ducuntur  
Those of them, (who) have not followed, are reckoned

in numero desertorum ac proditorum; que  
in the number of deserters and of traitors, and

postea fides abrogatur iis omnium  
afterwards credit is taken away from them in all

rerum (gen.) Putant non fas violare  
things. They consider it not lawful to injure

hospites; qui venerunt ad eos de quaque  
their guests, those who have come to them for any

causa, prohibent ab injuria, que habent  
reason. they defend from harm, and they hold (them)

sanctos; domus omnium patent iis, que  
inviolable, the houses of all are open to them, and

victus communicatur.  
food is shared (with them).

24. Ac antea fuit tempus, quum Galli  
And formerly (there) was a time, when the Gauls

superarent Germanos virtute, et ultro  
excelled the Germans in bravery, and of their own accord

inferrent (imp. subj.) bella ac propter  
were waging war and on account of

multitudinem hominum, que inopiam agri  
the multitude of men, and the scarcity of land

mitterent (imp. subj.) colonias trans Rhenum.  
they were sending colonies across the Rhine.

Itaque Volcæ Tectosages occuparunt ea loca  
Therefore the Volcæ Tectosages occupied those places

Germaniæ, quæ sunt fertilissima, atque consederunt  
of Germany, which are the most fruitful, and settled

ibi, circum Hercyniam silvam, (quam video  
there, about the Hercynian forest, (which I perceive

esse notam Eratostheni et quibusdam  
to have been [was] known to Eratosthenes and some other

Græcis famâ; quam illi appellant Orcyniam).  
Greeks by report, which they call Orcynia).

Quæ gens continet se iis sedibus  
Which [This] nation maintains itself in these settlements

ad hoc tempus, quæ habet summam opinionem  
to this time, and has the highest reputation

justitiæ et bellicæ laudis; quæ nunc  
of [for] justice and (of) warlike praise, and now

permanent in eâdem inopiâ, egestate,  
they remain in the same privation [want] poverty [need],

patientiâ, quâ Germani; utuntur  
(and) patience, in which [as] the Germans, they use

eodem victu et cultu corporis. Propinquitas  
the same food and care of the body. The proximity

provinciæ Gallis, et notitiâ transmarinarum  
of (our) province to the Gauls, and the knowledge of transmarine

rerum largitur (sing.) multa ad copiam  
things provides many (things) for supply [wealth]

atque usus. Paulatim assuefacti superari, quæ  
and use. By degrees accustomed to be overcome, and

victi multis prœliis ipsi ne se  
conquered in many battles they do not themselves

quidem<sup>27</sup> comparant virtute cum illis.  
indeed compare in valor with them [the Germans].

25. Latitudo hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ  
The breadth of this Hercynian forest, which

demonstrata est suprâ, patet iter novem dierum  
has been mentioned above, extends a journey of nine days

expedito. Enim potest non finiri aliter,  
to an active (man) For it can not be bounded otherwise,

neque noverunt mensuras itinerum. Oritur  
nor do they know measures of roads. It begins

ab finibus Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et  
at the frontiers of the Helvetii, and of the Nemetes, and

Rauracorum, quæ rectâ regione fluminis  
of the Rauraci, and in a straight direction (along) the river

Danuvi, pertinet ad fines Dacorum et  
Danube, it extends to the territories of the Daci and

Anartium; hinc flectit se sinistrorsus diversis  
of the Anartes; thence it bends itself to the left in different  
regionibus à flumine, que attingit fines  
directions from the river, and it touches the boundaries  
multarum gentium propter magnitudinem. Neque  
of many nations on account of the great extent. Nor  
est quisquam hujus Germaniæ, qui dicat  
is (there) any one of this (part) of Germany, who may say  
(aut audisse) aut adisse  
(that) (either to have [he had] heard) or to have [had] gone  
ad initium ejus silvæ, quum processerit  
to the beginning of this forest, though he may have proceeded  
iter sexaginta dierum; aut acceperit ex quo  
a journey of sixty days; or may have heard from what  
lōco oriatur. Constat multa genera  
place it may take its origin It is certain (that) many kinds  
ferarum nasci in ea, quæ sint non visa in  
of wild beasts are born in it, which are not seen in  
reliquis lōcis; ex quibus quæ maximè differant  
other places: from which (those) that greatly differ  
ab cæteris, et videantur prodenda  
from others, and may seem worthy to be handed down  
memoriæ, sunt hæc.  
to memory, are these.

26. Est bos figurâ cervi, à mediâ  
There is an ox [animal] in the shape of a stag, from the mid  
fronte cujus, inter aures, unum cornu existit  
forehead of which, between the ears, a horn grows  
excelsius, que mägis directum his cornibus,  
higher, and more straight (than) these horns,  
quæ sunt nota nobis. Ab summo ejus rami  
which are known to us. From the top of this branches  
diffunduntur latè sicut palmæ. Natura  
are spread out broadly like palm (leaves) The nature  
feminæ que maris est eādem, eādem forma  
of the female and male is the same, the same form  
que magnitudo cornuum.  
and size of the horns.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur alces.  
There are also (animals), which are called elks.

Figura harum, et varietas pellum est  
The shape of these, and the variety of the skins is

consimilis capris, sed magnitudine antecedunt  
very like to goats, but in size they surpass

paulo; que sunt multilæ cornibus, et habent  
a little, and they are devoid of horns, and (they) have

crura sine nodis que articulis; neque  
legs without articulations and joints; neither

procumbunt causâ quietis, neque si afflictæ  
do they lie down for the purpose of rest, nor, if afflicted

quo casu conciderint, possunt erigere  
by any accident they may fall down, can they raise

sese aut sublevare. Arbores sunt his pro  
themselves or get up. The trees are to them for [as]

cubilibus; applicant se ad eas, atque  
beds, they support themselves against these, and

ita reclinatæ modò paulum capiunt quietem;  
so reclined merely a little they take rest;

quum ex vestigiis quarum animadversum est  
when from the footsteps of which [these] it has been discovered

à venatoribus, quò consueverint recipere  
by the hunters, where they have been accustomed to betake

se, aut subrunt omnes eo  
themselves, either they undermine all (the trees) in that

lòco, à radicibus, aut accidunt arbores tantum ut  
place, at the roots, or they cut the trees so that

summa species earum stantium relinquatur.  
the total [mere] appearance of them standing may be left.

Huc quum ex consuetudine reclinaverint se,  
Here when by custom they have reclined themselves,

affligunt infirmas arbores pondere, atque ipsæ  
they overturn the weak trees by (their) weight, and they

concidunt unà.  
fall down together (with them).

28. Est tertium genus eorum, qui  
There is a third kind of these (animals), which

appellantur uri. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo  
 are called the wild ox. These are in size a little  
 infrâ elephantos, specie et colore et  
 below the elephant, with the appearance and color and  
 figurâ tauri. Forum vis est magna, et  
 form of the bull. Their strength is great, and (their)  
 velocitas magna; parcunt neque homîni neque ferâ  
 speed great: they spare neither man nor beast  
 quam conspexerint; hos interficiunt captos  
 that they may have seen; these they kill captured  
 studiose foveis. Adolescentes durant se  
 with much zeal in pits. The youths harden themselves  
 hâc labore; atque exercent hâc genere  
 by this task; and they exercise by this kind  
 venationis; et qui interfecerunt plurimos.  
 of hunting; and (those) who have killed the most  
 ex his, ferunt magnam laudem, cornibus  
 from [of] these, obtain great praise, the horns  
 relatis in publicum quæ sint  
 having been brought into public which may be (as)  
 testimonio. Sed ne parvuli quidem excepti  
 evidence. But not the young even (when) taken  
 possunt assuescere ad homines, et  
 [captured] can be accustomed to men, and  
 mansueferi. Amplitudo et figura et species  
 tamed. The size and shape and appearance  
 cornûum differt multum à cornibus nostrorum  
 of (their) horns differs much from the horns of our  
 bœum. Hæc studiosè conquisita,  
 oxen. These having been carefully sought,  
 circumcludunt ab labris argento, atque  
 they enclose (them) from [on] the brims with silver, and  
 utuntur in amplissimis epulis pro  
 use (them) in (their) most splendid feasts for  
 poculis.  
 cups.

29. Cæsar postquam compërit per Ubios  
 Cæsar after he discovered through the Ubian



exploratores, Suevos recepisse sese in  
 scouts, (that) the Suevi had withdrawn themselves into  
 silvas, veritus inopiam frumenti, (quod, ut  
 the forests, fearing a scarcity of corn, (because, as  
 demonstravimus suprâ, omnes Germani student  
 we have shown above, all the Germans attend  
 minimè agri culturæ), constituit non progredi  
 very little to agriculture, he resolved not to proceed  
 longius; sed ne tolleretur omnino metum  
 further, but that he might not take away altogether the fear  
 sui reditus barbaris, atque ut tardaret  
 of his return from the barbarians, and that he might retard  
 eorum auxilia, reducto exercitu, rescindit  
 their auxiliaries, having led back the army he breaks down  
 ultimam partem pontis, quæ continebat  
 the farthest part of the bridge, which was touching  
 ripas Ubiorum, in longitudinem ducentorum  
 the shores of the Ubi, to the length of two hundred  
 pedum, atque in extremo ponte (abl.)  
 feet, and on the extreme [end] (of the) bridge  
 constituit turrim quatuor tabularum, que ponit  
 he constructs a tower of four stories, and places  
 præsidium duodecim cohortium causâ tuendi  
 a guard of twelve cohorts for the purpose of defending  
 pontis, que firmat eum locum magnis  
 the bridge, and strengthens this place with great  
 munitionibus. Præfecit ei loco que præsidio,  
 fortifications. He placed over this place and garrison  
 C. Volcatium Tullum, adolescentem; ipse, quum  
 C. Volcatius Tullus, a young man; he himself, when  
 frumenta inciperent maturescere, profectus ad  
 the corn began to ripen, having set out to  
 bellum Amborigis, per Arduennam  
 the war of [with] Amborix, through the Arduennan [Ardennes]  
 silvam, quæ est maxîma totius Galliæ, atque  
 forest, which is the largest of all Gaul, and  
 pertinet ab ripis Rheni que finibus  
 extends from the shores of the Rhine and the territories

Trevirorum ad Nervios. que patet ampliùs  
 of the Treviri to the Nervii, and reaches more than  
 quingentis millibus in longitudinem; præmittit  
 five hundred miles in length, he sends forward

L. Minucium Basilium, cum omni equitatu, si  
 L. Minucius Basilus, with all the cavalry, if

possit proficere quid celeritate itinēris,  
 he may be able to gain anything by quickness of march,

atque opportunitate temporis; monet ut  
 and by the favorableness of the time, he warns that

prohibeat ignes fieri in castris (pl.), ne  
 he should prohibit fires to be made in the camp, lest

qua significatio fiat præcul ejus  
 any intimation [sign] might be made at a distance of his

adventus; dicit sese subsequi confestim.  
 coming; he says that he himself to [would] follow speedily.

30. Basilus facit ut imperatum est; itinere  
 Basilus does as he was commanded, the march

confecto celeriter, que contra opinionem  
 having been performed quickly, and contrary to the opinion

omnium, deprehendit multos inopinantes in agris;  
 of all, he captures many unaware in the fields.

eorum indicio contendit ad Ambiorigem ipsum,  
 by their information he marches to Ambiorix himself,

in loco quo dicebatur esse cum paucis  
 in the place in which he was said to be with a few

equitibus. Fortuna potest multum, quum in  
 horsemen. Fortune can do much, not only in

omnibus rebus, tum in militari re (sing.).  
 all things, but also in military affairs.

Nam sicut accidit magno casu, ut incideret.  
 For as it happened by great chance, that he fell

in ipsum incautum atque imparatum, que ejus  
 on him off his guard and unprepared, and his

adventus videretur ab hominibus prius quàm  
 arrival was seen by the men before (that)

afferretur famâ ac nunciis; sic fuit  
 it was brought by report and messengers; so it was

magnæ fortunæ, omni militari instrumento, quod  
 (of) great fortune, all the military implements, that  
 habebat circum se erepto, rhedis  
 he was having about him having been seized, his chariots  
 que equis comprehensis, ipsum  
 and horses having been captured, (that) he himself  
 effugere mortem. Sed hoc factum est eo  
 should escape death. But this was effected in this

quod ædificiō circumdato silvâ  
 (manner) for the house (having been) surrounded by a wood  
 ut domicilia Gallorum ferè sunt, qui causâ  
 as the dwellings of the Gauls generally are, who for the sake  
 vitandi æstûs, plerumque petunt propinquitates  
 of avoiding the heat, often seek the vicinity  
 silvarum ac fluminum, ejus comites que familiares  
 of woods and rivers, his attendants and friends  
 sustinuerunt paulisper vim nostrorum equitum  
 sustained for a little while the force of our cavalry  
 in angusto loco. His pignantibus (abl.  
 in a narrow place. (While) these (are) fighting,  
 abs.), quidam ex suis intulit illum in  
 some one from [of] his (men) placed him on  
 equum; silvæ texerunt fugientem; sic fortuna  
 a horse; the woods covered (him) fleeing; thus fortune  
 valuit multum; et ad subeundum pericûlum; et  
 availed much, both for encountering danger, and  
 ad vitandum.  
 for avoiding (it).

31. Ne Ambiorix non conduxerit suas copias  
 Whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces  
 judicio, quod existimaverit non dimicandum<sup>28</sup>  
 on purpose, because he thought (it) not to [must not] be engaged  
 prælio; an exclusus tempore, et prohibitus  
 in battle; or he had been cut off by time, and had been  
 fuerit repentino adventu equitum, quum  
 prevented by the sudden arrival of the cavalry, when  
 crederet reliquum exercitum subsequi,  
 he believed (that) the remainder of the army was following

est dubium, sed certè nunciis dimissis  
 is doubtful, but certainly messengers having been sent  
 clàm per agros jussit  
 secretly through the fields [country] he ordered  
 quemque consulere sibi; quorum pars  
 that each one should take care of himself, of whom a part  
 profugit in Arduennam silvam,  
 fled into the Arduennan [Ardunes] forest,  
 pars in continentes paludes. Qui  
 a part into the continuous marshes. (Those) who  
 fuerunt proximi Oceanum, hi occultaverunt  
 were nearest the Ocean, these hid  
 sese in insulis, quas æstus  
 themselves in the islands, which the tides  
 consuêrunt efficere. Multi egressi ex suis  
 are accustomed to form. Many having emigrated from their  
 finibus crediderunt se que omnia  
 territories confided [consigned] themselves and all  
 sua alienissimis. Catuvolcus rex dimidiæ  
 their (property) to entire strangers. Catuvolcus king of the half  
 partis Eburonum qui inierat consilium  
 part of the Eburones who had entered into counsel  
 unà cum Ambiorige, jam confectus ætate,  
 together with Ambiorix, now worn out with age,  
 quum posset non ferre laborem aut belli aut  
 since he could not bear the fatigue either of war or  
 fugæ, detestatus Amborigem omnibus  
 of flight, having cursed Ambiorix with all (kinds of)  
 precibus qui fuisset auctor ejus consilii.  
 imprecations who was the author of this plan [design].  
 exanimavit se taxo, (cujus est  
 killed himself by yew (leaves). (of which (tree) there is  
 magna copia in Gallia que Germaniâ).  
 a great abundance in Gaul and in Germany).  
 32. Segni que Condrusi, ex gente et  
 The Segni and Condrusi, from [of] the nation and  
 numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones  
 the number of the Germans, who are between the Eburones

que Treuios, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem,  
 and Treviri, sent ambassadors to Cæsar,  
 oratum "ne duceret se in numëro  
 to pray "that he would not place them in the number  
 hostium, neve iudicaret causam omnium  
 of enemies, nor should he judge (that) the cause of all  
 Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum esse  
 the Germans, who might be on this side of the Rhine to be  
 unam;  
 [was] one [the same]. (that) they to have [had] thought nothing  
 de bello, misisse nulla auxilia  
 about war, (that) they to have [had] sent no auxiliaries  
 Ambiorigi." Cæsar, re exploratâ  
 to Ambiorix." Cæsar, the thing [matter] having been investigated  
 quæstione captivorum, imperavit si qui  
 by the questioning of the prisoners, commanded (that) if any  
 Eburones convenissent ad eos ex fugâ ut  
 Eburones had come to them from flight that  
 reducerentur ad se. Si fecissent ita,  
 they should be brought back to him. If they did so,  
 negavit se violaturum eorum  
 he disavowed (that) himself [he] about to [would] harm their  
 fines. Tum copïis distributis in  
 territories. Then (his) forces having been distributed into  
 tres partes, contulit impedimenta omnium legionum  
 three parts, he removed the baggage of all the legions  
 Aduatucam. Id est nomen castelli. Hoc est  
 to Aduatua. This is the name of a fortress. This is  
 ferè in mediis finibus Eburonum, ubi  
 nearly in the middle (of the) territories of the Eburones, where  
 Titurius atque Aurunculeius consederunt causâ  
 Titurius and Aurunculeius had encamped for the purpose  
 hiemandi. Cæsar probat hunc locum quum  
 of wintering. Cæsar approves this place not only  
 reliquis rebus, tum quòd munitiones  
 for other things, but also because the fortifications  
 superioris anni manebant integræ, ut  
 of the preceding year were remaining entire. (so) that

sublevaret laborem militum: reliquit quatuor-  
 he might relieve the labor of the soldiers; he left the  
 decimam legionem præsidio impedimentis unam  
 fourteenth legion for [as] a guard to the baggage one.  
 ex iis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas,  
 of those three which lately (having been) enrolled,  
 transduxerat ex Italiâ. Præfecit ei legioni  
 he had brought over from Italy. He appointed over this legion  
 que castris, Q. Tullium Ciceronem, que attribuit  
 and the camp, Q. Tullius Cicero, and assigned  
 ducentos equites.  
 (him) two hundred horsemen.

33. Exercitu partito, jubet T. Labienum  
 The army having been divided, he orders T. Labienus

proficisci cum tribus legionibus ad versùs  
 to march with three legions in the direction

Oceanum, in eas partes quæ attingunt Menapios.  
 of the Ocean, into these parts which touch on the Menapii

Mittit C. Trebonium cum pari numero legionum  
 He sends C. Trebonius with a like number of legions

ad depopulandum eam regionem,<sup>29</sup> quæ adjacet  
 for to be laid [laying] waste this district, which borders on

Aduatucis. Ipse cum tribus reliquis  
 the Aduatuci. (He) himself with the three remaining (legions)

constituit ire ad flumen Scaldim, quod  
 resolves to go to the river Scaldis [Scheldt], which

influit in Mosam, que extremas partes  
 flows into the Mosa [Meuse], and (to) the extreme parts

Arduennæ, quò audiebat  
 of the Arduennian [Ardennes] (forest), whither he heard

Ambiorigem profectum cum paucis equitibus.  
 Ambiorix had gone with a few horsemen.

Discedens confirmat sese reversurum  
 On departing he promises (that) (he) himself about to [would] return

post septimum diem; ad quam diem sciebat  
 after the seventh day; on which day he was knowing

frumentum deberi ei legioni, quæ  
 (that) corn to be [was] due to this legion, which

relinquebatur in præsidiō. Horatur Labienum que  
was left in garrison. He exhorts Labienus and

Treboniūm revertantur ad eam diem, si  
Trebonius that they should return on this day, if

possint facere commodō rei publicæ, ut,  
they could do (it) to the advantage of the republic, that,

concilio communicato rursus, que rationibus  
counsel having been communicated mutually, and the plans

hostium exploratis, possint capere  
of the enemy having been ascertained, they might take [adopt]

aliud initium belli.  
another start [beginning] of [in] the war.

34. Erat, ut demonstravimus suprā, nulla certa  
There was, as we have shown above, no fixed

mānus, non præsidiū, non oppidum, quod  
body of men, not a garrison, not a town, that

defendēret se armis, sed multitudo dispersa in  
could defend itself by arms, but a multitude scattered in

omnes partes. Ubi cuique aut abdita vallis, aut  
all parts. Where to any one either a hidden valley, or

silvestris locus, aut impedita palus, offerebat  
a woody place, or a difficult swamp, was offering

aliquam spem præsidiū aut salutis, consederat.  
some hope of protection or of safety, he had settled

Hæc loca erant nota vicinitatibus, que res  
These places were known to the neighbors, and the thing

requirebat magnam diligentiam, non in  
[condition] was requiring great care not in

tuendā summā (abl.) exercitūs (enim nullum  
protecting the total of the army (for no

periculum, universis, potērat accidere ab  
danger, to the whole, could happen from (them)

perterritis ac dispersis), sed in conservandis singulis  
terrified and dispersed), but in preserving individual

militibus; quæ res tamen ex parte pertinebat  
soldiers; which thing however in part was appertaining

ad salutem exercitūs. Nam et cupiditas prædæ  
to the safety of the army. For both the desire of booty

evocabat multos longtūs, ac silvæ incertis  
 was enticing many too far and the woods by their uncertain  
 que occultis itineribus prohibebant confertos  
 and hidden paths were preventing (them) collected  
 adire. Si vellet confici negotiū, que  
 to advance. If he wished to finish the business, and  
 interfici stirpem sceleratorum hominum,  
 to exterminate a race of infamous men,  
 plures mānus dimittendæ, que milites  
 a great many bands to [must] be sent out, and the soldiers  
 diducendi erant; si vellet continere manipulos  
 to [must] be detached; if he desired to keep the companies  
 ad signa, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo  
 to the ensigns, as the constituted order and custom  
 Romani exercitūs postulabat, locus ipse erat  
 of the Roman army was demanding, the place itself was  
 præsidio barbaris; neque dēerat  
 (for) a protection to the barbarians; neither was there wanting  
 audaciā singulis insidiandi ex occulto, et  
 the daring to individuals of ambushing in secret, and  
 circumveniendi dispersos. At in difficultatibus  
 of surrounding dispersed (soldiers). But in difficulties  
 ejusmodi quantum diligentia potērat provideri  
 of this nature whatever by diligence could be provided  
 providebatur; ut potiūs aliquid omitteretur  
 was provided: so that rather something might be omitted  
 in nocendo, etsi animi omnium  
 in injuring (the enemy), although the minds of all  
 ardebant ad ulciscendum, quā nocere-  
 were burning to be avenged than that (the enemy) might  
 tur cum aliquo detrimento militum.  
 be injured with any loss of soldiers.  
 Cæsar dimittit nuncios ad finitimas civitates;  
 Cæsar sends off messengers to the neighboring states;  
 evocat omnes ad se, spe prædæ, ad  
 he invites all to himself, by the hope of plunder, for  
 diripiendos Eburones; ut potiūs vita Gallorum  
 ravaging the Eburones; that rather the life of the Gauls



periclitetur in silvis, quàm legionariorum;  
might be hazarded in the woods, than (that) of the legionary

simul, ut magnâ multitudine  
(soldiers); at the same time. that a great multitude

circumfusâ, stirps ac nomen civitatis  
having been sent abroad. the race and name of the state

tollatur pro tali facinore. Magnus numerus  
might be destroyed for such a crime. A great number

celeriter convenit undique.  
quickly assembled from all places.

35. Hæc gerebatur in omnibus partibus  
These (things) were carried on in all parts

Eburonum, quæ septimus dies appetebat,  
of the Eburones, and the seventh day was approaching

ad quem diem Cæsar constituerat reverti ad  
on which day Cæsar had resolved to return to

impedimenta quæ legionem. Hic potuit cognosci,  
the baggage and the legion. Here it might be learned,

quantum fortuna possit in bello, et quantum  
how much fortune can do in war. and how great

casus affërat. Hostibus dissipatis  
mischances it may bring. The enemy having been dispersed

ac perterritis, ut demonstravimus, erat nulla  
and terrified, as we have shown, there was no

mânus, quæ affëret mōdō parvam causam  
body of men, which might create only a slight cause

timōris. Fama pervenit trans Rhenum ad  
of fear. The report spread beyond the Rhine to

Germanos, Eburones diripi, atque  
the Germans, (that) the Eburones to be [were] pillaged. and

omnes evocari ultrò ad prædam.  
(that) all to be [were] invited freely to the booty

Sugambri cogunt duo millia equitum,  
[plunder]. The Sugambri collect two thousand horse,

qui sunt proximi Rheno, à quibus Tencteros  
they are the nearest to the Rhine. by whom the Teucteri

atque Usipetes receptos ex fugâ,  
and Usipetes were received in (their) flight, (as)

suprâ docuimus; transeuntes Rhenum navibus  
 we have above shown, crossing the Rhine in ships  
 que ratibus triginta millibus passuum infra eum  
 and boats thirty thousand paces below this  
 locum ubi pons erat perfectus, que præsidium  
 place where the bridge was made and the garrison  
 relictum ab Cæsare, adeunt primos fines  
 left by Cæsar they enter the first [nearest] territories  
 Eburonum; excipiunt multos dispersos ex fugâ;  
 of the Eburones; they surprise many dispersed in flight:  
 potiuntur magno numero pecoris, cujus  
 they obtain possession of a great number of cattle. of which  
 barbâri sunt cupidissimi. Invitati prædâ  
 the barbarians are very covetous. Enticed by booty  
 procedunt longius. Non palus, non silvæ,  
 they proceed farther. Neither swamps, nor woods  
 morantur hos natos in bello, que latrociniis.  
 impede these men born in war and plundering.  
 Quærent ex captivis in quibus locis Cæsar  
 They inquire of the prisoners in what place Cæsar  
 sit; reperiunt profectum longius, quo  
 may be: they find (that) he has gone further. and  
 cognoscunt omnem exercitum discessisse.  
 learn (that) all the army to have [has] departed  
 Atque unus ex captivis inquit, "quid vos  
 Moreover one from [of] the captives said "why do you  
 sectamini hanc miseram et tenuem prædam, quibus  
 follow these wretched and trifling spoils to whom  
 jam licet esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis  
 it is now allowed to be most fortunate? In three hours  
 potestis venire Aduatucam, huc exercitus Romanorum  
 you can come to Aduatuca, there the army of the Romans  
 contulit omnes suas fortunas; est tantum  
 has collected all its property: there is so little  
 præsidi, ut ne murus quidem possit cingi,  
 [of a] garrison, that not the wall even could be manned  
 neque audet quisquam egredi extra munitiones."  
 nor dares any one go beyond the fortifications.

(Hac) spe oblatâ, Germani relinquunt  
 (This) hope having been offered. the Germans leave  
 in occulto prædam quam nacti erant;  
 in hiding the booty which they had obtained;  
 ipsi contendunt Aduatucam, usi eodem  
 they proceed to Aduatuca, using the same  
 dūce cujus indicio cognovērunt  
 (person) as guide by whose information they had learned

hæc.

these things.

36. Cicero, (qui per omnes superiores dies,  
 Cicero, (who through all the former days,  
 præceptis Cæsaris continuisset milites in  
 according to the orders of Cæsar had kept the soldiers in  
 castris summâ diligentîâ, ac passus est ne  
 camp with the greatest diligence, and allowed not  
 quemquam calonem quidem egredi extra  
 any camp follower even to go beyond  
 munitionem); septimo dñe diffidens Cæsarem  
 the fortification): on the seventh day distrusting (that) Cæsar  
 servaturum fidem de numëro dierum,  
 about to [would] keep faith about the number of days,  
 quòd audiebat eum progressum longiùs,  
 because he was hearing (that) he had proceeded further,  
 neque ulla fama de ejus reditu afferebatur,  
 nor was any report of his return brought,  
 simul permotus vocibus eorum, qui  
 at the same time moved by the voices of those, who  
 appellabant illius patientiam pænè obsessionem si  
 were calling his endurance nearly a siege if  
 quidem non liceret egredi ex castris;  
 indeed it was not allowed to go out from camp;  
 expectans nullum casum hujusmodi quo  
 expecting no event of such kind by which [that]  
 posset offendi, in tribus milibus,  
 he could be injured, within three miles (of the camp)  
 novem legionibus oppositis, que maximo  
 nine legions having been opposed and a numerous

equitatu, hostibus, dispersis ac pænè  
 cavalry. the enemy. having been dispersed and almost  
 deletis, misit quinque cohortes frumentatum in  
 annihilated. he sent five cohorts to forage in  
 proximās segētes, inter quas et castra  
 the neighboring corn-fields. between which and the camp  
 unus collis omnino intererat. Complures ex  
 one hill in all [alone] intervened. Many from  
 legionibus erant relictī ægri in castris; ex quibus,  
 the legions had been left sick in the camp: of whom.

qui, hōc spatio dierum, convaluerant,  
 (those) who, in this period of time, had recovered.

circiter trecenti, mittuntur sub vexillo unā;  
 about three hundred are sent under a standard together.

præterea magna multitudo calonum magna  
 besides a great multitude of camp followers (and) a great

vis jumentorum, quæ subsederat in castris,  
 force of beasts of burden. that remained in the camp.

sequitur, potestate factā.  
 followed (them). permission having been given.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani  
 At this very time and by chance the German

equites interveniunt, quæ protinus eodem illo  
 horsemen arrived. and immediately with that same

cursu, quo venerant, conantur irrumpere in  
 speed, with which they had come, try to break into

castra ab decumanā portā; nec sunt visi,  
 the camp at the decuman gate. nor were they seen.

silvis objectis ab eā parte, prius  
 a wood being interposed at [on] this part [side], before

quàm appropinquarent castris, usque eò, ut  
 (that) they had approached the camp, even so, that

mercatores, qui tenderent sub vallo,  
 the merchants (sutlers). who encamped under the rampart,

habèrent facultatem recipiendi sui.  
 had not an opportunity of taking themselves away.

Nostri inopinantes perturbantur novā  
 Our (men) taken unawares are confused with this new

re, ac cohors in statione vix sustinet  
 condition, and the cohort on guard scarcely sustains  
 primum impetum; hostes circumfunduntur ex  
 the first attack: the enemy are spread out on  
 reliquis partibus, si possent reperire quem aditum;  
 the other sides, if they could find some approach;  
 nostri ægre tuentur portas; locus  
 our (men) with difficulty defend the gates: the place  
 ipse per se que munitio defendit  
 itself through itself and by the fortification defends  
 reliquos aditus, totis castris trepidatur, atque  
 the other approaches, in all the camp there is alarm, and  
 alius quærit ex alio causam tumultus; neque  
 one inquires of an other the cause of the confusion; neither  
 provident quod signa ferantur, neque in  
 do they provide where the ensigns may be carried, nor into  
 quam partem quisque conveniat. Alius pronunciat  
 what part each one may assemble. One declares  
 castra jam capta, alius contendit,  
 (that) the camp to be [is] already taken, another affirms (that),  
 exercitu atque imperatore delecto,  
 the army and the commander having been destroyed.  
 victores barbaros venisse; plerique fingun  
 the victorious barbarians (to) have come: the greater part form  
 novas religiones sibi ex loco. Que  
 strange superstitions for themselves from the place. And  
 ponunt ante oculos calamitatem Cottæ et  
 they put before (their) eyes the calamity of Cottæ and  
 Titurii, qui occiderint in eodem castello. Omnibus  
 Titurius, who had fallen in the same fortress. All  
 perterritis tali timore, opinio  
 (having been) alarmed by such fear, the opinion  
 confirmatur barbaris, ut audierant ex  
 is confirmed to [among] the barbarians, as they had heard from  
 captivo nullum præsidium esse intus;  
 the captive (that) no garrison to be [was] within;  
 nituntur perrumpere, que ipsi adhortantur  
 they endeavor to force an entrance, and they exhort

se, ne dimittant tantam fortunam ex  
 one another, 'est they may let go so great a prize from  
 manibus.  
 their hands.

38. P. Sextius Baculus, qui duxerat primum  
 P. Sextius Baculus, who led the first

pilum apud Cæsarem cujus fecimus mentionem  
 company under Cæsar of whom we have made mention

superioribus præliis, erat relictus æger in præsidio,  
 in former battles, was left sick in the garrison,

ac caruerat cibo jam quintum diem. Hic,  
 and had been without food now the fifth day. He,

diffusus suæ saluti ac omnium, inermis  
 mistrusting his safety and (that) of all, unarmed

prodit ex tabernaculo, videt hostes  
 goes out from the tent, he sees (that) the enemy

imminere, atque rem esse in  
 to be [were] pressing on, and that the affair to be [was] in

summo discrimine; capit arma à proximis,  
 the greatest danger; he seizes arms from the nearest,

atque consistit in portâ. Centuriones ejus  
 and places himself in the gate. The centurions of this

cohortis quæ erat in statione sequuntur hunc;  
 cohort which was on guard follow him;

paulisper sustinent proelium unâ; animus  
 for a little while they sustain the battle together; the mind

relinquit Sextium<sup>30</sup> gravis vulneribus acceptis;  
 leaves Sextius severe wounds having been received:

tractus per manus (pl.) ægrè servatur.  
 drawn away by hand with difficulty he is saved.

Hoc spatium interposito, reliqui confirmant  
 This period having been interposed, the others encourage

sese tantum, ut audeant consistere  
 one another so much, that they dare take stand

in munitionibus, que præbent speciem  
 on the fortifications, and show the appearance

defensorum.  
 of defenders.

39. Intērim frumentatione confectā,  
 In the mean time the foraging having been completed,  
 nostri milites exaudiunt clamorem, equites  
 our soldiers hear the shout, the horsemen  
 præcurrunt cognoscunt in quanto pericūlo  
 hasten on before, they ascertain in what great danger  
 res sit. Verò hic est nulla munitio,  
 the matter is. But here there is no fortification,  
 quæ recipiat perterritos. Modò conscripti  
 which may receive (those) affrighted. (Those) lately enrolled  
 atque imperiti militaris usūs convertunt ora ad  
 and unskilled in military practice turn faces to  
 tribunum militum que centuriones; expectant  
 the tribunes of the soldiers and centurions; they await  
 quid præcipiatur ab his. Nemo est tam  
 what may be commanded by them. No one is so  
 fortis, quin perturbētur novitate rei.  
 brave, but (that) he is disconcerted by the novelty of the affair  
 Barbāri, conspicati signa prōcul,  
 [condition]. The barbarians, having seen the standard at a distance.  
 desistunt ab oppugnatione; primò credunt  
 desist from the attack; at first they believe (that)  
 legiones redisse, quas cognovērant ex  
 the legions had returned, which they had learned from  
 captivis discessisse longiùs; postea, paucitate  
 the captives had gone further; afterwards, the fewness  
 despectā, faciunt impētum, ex  
 having been perceived, they make an attack, from [on]  
 omnibus partibus.  
 all parts [sides].

40. Calones procurrunt in proximum tumūlum  
 The camp followers run to the nearest eminence  
 celeriter dejecti hinc, coniciunt se  
 having been quickly driven thence, they throw themselves  
 in signa que manipulos; èd magis  
 among the standards and companies; so much the more  
 perterrent timidos milites. Alii censent  
 they alarm the affrighted soldiers. Some are of the opinion

cunēo factō celeriter  
 (that) a wedge having been formed they may quickly  
 perrumpant, quoniam castra sint tam propinqua,  
 break through, and as the camp is so near,  
 etsi aliqua pars circumventa ceciderit,  
 although some part having been surrounded might fall,  
 at confidunt reliquos posse  
 still they trust (that) the remainder to be able [can]  
 servari. Alii ut consistant in  
 (to) be saved. Others (advise) that they take stand on  
 jigo, atque omnes ferant eundem casum.  
 the hill-top, and (that) all undergo the same fate.  
 Veteres milites, quos documus  
 The veteran soldiers, whom [who] we have mentioned  
 perfectos unā sub vexillo non  
 (to have) marched out together under a standard do not  
 probant hoc. Itaque cohortati inter se,  
 approve this. Therefore having encouraged one another,  
 C. Trebonio, Romano equite, qui erat præpositus  
 C. Trebonius, a Roman knight, who had been placed over  
 eis, duce, perrumpunt per medios<sup>31</sup>  
 them, being their commander, they break through the middle  
 hostes que omnes ad unum perveniunt  
 [central] enemies and all to one [a man] arrive  
 incolumnes in castra (acc.). Calones que  
 safe in the camp. The camp followers and  
 equites subsecuti hos eodem impetu,  
 the horsemen having followed these with the same dash,  
 servantur virtute militum. At ii, qui  
 are saved by the bravery of the soldiers. But those, who  
 constiterant in jugo, etiam nunc nullo  
 had taken stand on the hill-top, even now no  
 usu militaris rei (sing.) percepto,  
 experience of military affairs having been acquired,  
 neque permanere in eo consilio, quod proba-  
 neither persisted in this design, which they have  
 verant, ut defenderent se superiore  
 approved. that they should defend themselves in the higher



lōco, neque potuerunt imitari ēam vim que  
position, nor were able to imitate this vigor and

celeritatem, quam vidērant profuisse  
speed, which they had seen to have [had] availed

aliis; sed conati recipere se in  
the others; but having attempted to betake themselves into

castra demiserant in iniquū lōcum.  
the camp they descended into a disadvantageous place.

Centuriones, nonnulli quorum transducti erant  
The centurions, some of whom had been transferred

ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum,  
from the lower ranks of the other legions,

causā virtutis, in superiores ordines hujus  
by reason of bravery, into the higher ranks of this

legionis, ne amittērent laudem militaris  
legion, lest they might lose renown in military

rēi (sing.) partam antē conciderunt pugnantes  
affairs acquired before, fell fighting

fortissimē. Pars militum, hostibus  
most valiantly. A part of (these) soldiers, the enemy

summotis virtute horum,  
having been removed by the bravery of these [by their bravery],

pervenit in castra incolūmis, præter spem,  
arrived in the camp safe, beyond expectation,

pars circumventa à barbāris periit.  
a part surrounded by the barbarians perished.

41. Germani, expugnatione castrorum des-  
The Germans, the storming of the camp having

peratā, quōd videbant nostros  
been despaired of, because they saw (that) our men

jam constitisse in munitionibus receperunt  
had now taken stand on the fortifications betook

sese trans Rhenum, cum ēa prædā quam  
themselves beyond the Rhine, with this booty which

deposuerant in silvis. Ac tantus fuit  
they had deposited in the woods. And so great was

terror, etiam post discessum hostium, ut  
the alarm, even after the departure of the enemy, that

31. *hæc nocte, quum C. Volusenus venisset ad*  
 this night, when C. Volusenus had come to  
*castra, missus cum equitatu, non*  
 the camp, having been sent with the cavalry, he could not  
*faceret fidem Cæsarem adesse cum*  
 make [create] confidence (that) Cæsar was near with  
*exercitu incolûmi. Timor præoccupaverat animos*  
 the army safe. Fear had preoccupied the souls  
*omnium sic, ut mente pæne alienatâ,*  
 of all so, that with a mind almost unbalanced.  
*dicerent, equitatum tantum recepisse se*  
 they were saying, (that) the cavalry only to have [had] returned  
*ex fugâ, omnibus copiis deletis,*  
 from the flight, all the forces having been destroyed.  
*que contendèrent Germanos ne fuisse*  
 and they asserted (that) the Germans not to have been  
*oppugnâuros<sup>32</sup> castra exercitu*  
 about to assault [had not assaulted] the camp (if) the army  
*incolûmi; quem timorem Cæsaris adventus*  
 being [was] safe: which fear Cæsar's arrival  
*sustulit.*  
 removed.

42. *Ille reversus, non ignarus eventûs*  
 He [Cæsar] having returned, not ignorant of the casualty  
*belli, questus unum quod cohortes essent*  
 of war, complained (of) one (thing) that the cohorts had been  
*emissæ ex statione et præsidio; indicavit*  
 sent from the post and from the garrison; he pointed out  
*locum ne minimum quidem debuisse*  
 (that) the place not the least even ought  
*relinqui casui, fortuna potuisse*  
 to be left to chance, fortune might have been able [done]  
*multum in repentino adventu hostium; etiam multo*  
 much by the sudden arrival of the enemy; also much  
*amplius, quod avertisset barbâros ab*  
 more, because she had turned away the barbarians from  
*vallo ipso que portis castrorum. Omnium*  
 the rampart itself and the gates of the camp Of all

quarum rerum videbatur maximè admirandum,  
which things it seemed most to be wondered at.

quòd Germani, qui transiērant Rhenum èo  
that the Germans. who had crossed the Rhine with this

consilio, ut depopularentur fines Ambiorigis,  
design. that they might lay waste the territories of Ambiorix.

delati ad castra Romanorum, obtulerunt  
having been led to the camp of the Romans. brought

Ambiorigi optatissimum beneficium.  
to Ambiorix a most desirable benefit.

43. Cæsar rursus profectus ad vexandos<sup>33</sup>  
Cæsar having again departed to harass

hostes; magno numēro coacto ex  
the enemy: a great number having been assembled from

finitimis civitatibus dimittit in omnes  
the neighboring states he sends (them) into all

partes. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia,  
parts All the villages and all the buildings

quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; præda  
which any one might see were set on fire: spoils

agebatur ex omnibus locis; frumenta non  
were driven off from all places the corn not

solūm consumebantur (pl) à tantā multitudine  
only was consumed by such a multitude

jumentorum atque hominum; sed etiam procubuērant  
of cattle and men: but also had fallen down

tempore anni atque imbribus; ut si qui  
by the time of year and the rains so that if any

etiam in præsentia occultassent se, tamen  
even in [for] the present had concealed themselves yet

videretur his perendum<sup>34</sup> inopiā omnium  
it would seem (that) they must perish through want of all

rerum exercitū deducto. Ac sæpe  
things the army having been withdrawn. And often

ventum est in eum locum, equitatu diviso  
it came to this pass, the cavalry having been divided

tanto in omnes partes, ut captivi  
so much into [in] all directions. that the prisoners

contenderunt Ambiorigem non modò visum  
 declared (that) Ambiorix was not only seen  
 ab se in fugâ, sed etiam nec abisse  
 by them in flight, but also (that) he had not gone  
 planè ex conspectu; ut spe consequendi  
 clearly out of sight; (so) that the hope of overtaking  
 illatâ, atque infinito labore  
 (him) having been raised, and an immense labor  
 suscepto, qui putarent se  
 having been undertaken, those who thought (that) they  
 ituros summam gratiam à Cæsare, pænè  
 would obtain the highest favor from Cæsar, nearly  
 vincèrent naturam studio, que sempèr paulum  
 conquered nature by (their) efforts, and always a little  
 videretur defuisse ad summam felicitatem;  
 seemed to be wanting to complete success;  
 atque ille eripèret se latebris ac silvis  
 but he rescued himself by hiding places and woods  
 aut saltibus, et occultatus noctu peteret alias  
 or forests, and concealed by night he sought other  
 regiones, que partes, non majore præsidio  
 regions, and places, with no greater guard  
 equitum quàm quatuor, quibus solis audebat  
 of horsemen than four, to whom alone he was daring  
 committere suam vitam.  
 to commit his life.

44. Regionibus vastatis tali modo,  
 The country having been laid waste in such manner.

Cæsar reducit exercitum damno duarum  
 Cæsar marches back the army with the loss of two

cohortium Durocortorum Rhemorum; que concilio  
 cohorts to Durocortorum of the Rhemi; and a council

indicto in eum locum Galliæ, instituit  
 having been convoked in this part of Gaul, he resolved

habere quæstionem de conjuratione Senonum  
 to have an investigation about the conspiracy of the Senones

et Carnutum; et graviore sententiâ pronun-  
 and Carnutes: and a very severe sentence having been

ciatâ de Accone, qui fuerat princeps  
pronounced on Acco, who had been the chief

ejus consilii, sumpsit supplicium, more  
of this counsel, he took [inflicted] punishment, after the custom  
majorum.<sup>35</sup> Nonnulli veriti judicium profugerunt,  
of our ancestors. Some afraid of a trial fled.

quum interdixisset aquâ atque igni quibus,  
when he had interdicted water and fire to them,

collocavit in hibernis duas legiones ad fines  
he stationed in winter quarters two legions on the frontiers

Trevirorum, duas in Lingonibus, reliquas  
of the Treviri, two among the Lingones, the remaining

sex Agendici in finibus Senonum, que  
six at Agendicum in the territories of the Senones and

frumento proviso exercitui, ut  
corn having been provided for the army as

instituerat, profectus est in Italiam ad agendos  
he had resolved. he departed for Italy to hold

conventus.  
the assemblies.

## SEVENTH BOOK

The seventh book opens with a statement of the rising of the Gauls upon knowledge of civil disturbances in Rome which might detain Cæsar in the city. Cæsar at length sets out for his province and unexpectedly crosses the Alps with an army through deep snows. Meantime Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, had been chosen leader of the revolution. Cæsar by rapid marches here and there holds the people in check. He captures Velaunodunum, Cenavum, Noviodunum and Avaricum. Labienus goes on an expedition to the north as far as Lutetia, which the Gauls burn, and after defeating the Gauls in battle he rejoins Cæsar. In spite of Cæsar's efforts the Ædni join the revolt. Cæsar obtains cavalry from Germany and with their aid defeats Vercingetorix in several battles. He is forced to raise the siege of Gergovia on account of the increasing activity of the Gallic nations. Cæsar concentrates his forces against Vercingetorix and drives him to Alesia. The investment of Alesia and a general uprising of all Gaul now follow. Cæsar is attacked by an army of a quarter of a million from without and holds eighty thousand within the city. After having built extensive works and conquering in fierce contests, he defeats the outside forces, repulses the besieged and compels the surrender of the city. Vercingetorix is sent to Rome in chains, and six years later takes part in Cæsar's triumph, after which he is executed. The nations make peace with Cæsar who quarters his troops in various places in Gaul. He himself winters at Bibracte. On receiving Cæsar's letters the senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days.

1. Galliâ quietâ, Cæsar ut constituërat  
 Gaul being at peace, Cæsar as he had resolved  
 proficiscitur in Italiam ad agendos conventus;  
 proceeded to Italy to hold the assemblies;  
 ubi cognoscit de cæde P. Clodii, que  
 there he learned of the murder of P. Clodius, and  
 factus certior de consulto Senatûs,  
 having been made acquainted with the decree of the Senate.

ut omnes juniores Italiæ conjurarent,  
 that all the young men of Italy should take military oath,  
 instituit habere delectum totâ provinciâ. Eæ  
 he resolved to hold a levy in all the province. These

res celeriter perferuntur in Transalpinam Galliam.  
 things quickly are spread into Transalpine Gaul.

Galli ipsi addunt et affingunt rumoribus,  
 The Gauls themselves add to and enlarge the rumors,

(quod res videbatur poscère,) Cæsarem  
 (what the case seemed to demand.) (that) Cæsar

retineri urbano motu (sing.), neque posse  
 was detained by the city commotions, nor could

venire ad exercitum in tantis dissentionibus. Impulsi  
 come to the army in such dissensions. Incited

hâc occasione, qui jam antè dolèrent  
 by this opportunity, those who even before lamented

se subjectos imperio Romani populi,  
 (that) they were subjected to the dominion of the Roman people,

incipiunt inire consilia de bello liberius  
 begin to enter into plans concerning war more freely

atque audaciùs. Principes Galliæ,  
 and more daringly. The principal men of Gaul,

conciliis indictis inter se silvestribus  
 councils having been convoked among themselves in woody

ac remotis locis, queruntur de morte  
 and remote places, complain concerning the death

Acconis; demonstrant hunc casum posse  
 of Acco; they represent (that) this fate might

recidere ad ipsos; miserantur communem  
 occur to themselves; they bewail the common

fortunam Galliæ; deprecantur omnibus pollicitationibus  
 lot of Gaul; they demand by all promises

ac præmiis, qui faciant initium belli,  
 and rewards, (that) some make a beginning of war,

et vindicent Galliam in libertatem  
 and defend Gaul into [for] (its) freedom

pericûlo sui capitis.<sup>1</sup> Dicunt in primis  
 at the peril of their lives. They say especially

ut rationem habendam ejus, ut  
that care was to [must] be had of [for] this, that

Cæsar intercludatur ab exercitu, priusquàm eorum  
Cæsar should be cut off from the army, before their

clandestina consilia efferantur. Id esse facile,  
secret designs are reported. (That) this was easy.

quòd neque legiones, imperatore absente,  
because neither the legions, the commander being absent,

audeant egrèdi ex hibernis, neque possit  
dare to come forth from winter quarters, nor could

imperator pervenire ad legiones sine præsidio.  
the commander arrive at the legions without a guard.

Postremò præstare interfici in acie,  
Finally (that) it was better to be killed in the battle-line,

quàm non recuperare vetèrem gloriàm  
than not to recover (their) ancient glory

belli que libertatem quam accepèrint à  
of [in] war and the liberty which they have received from

majoribus.  
the forefathers.

2. His rebus agitatis, Carnutes profitentur  
These things having been discussed, the Carnutes proclaim

se recusare nullum pericūlum causâ  
(that) they to [will] refuse no danger for the sake

commūnis salutis; pollicentur se principes  
of the common safety; they promise (that) they the first

ex omnibus facturos bellum; et  
from [of] all about to [would] make war; and

quoniam in præsentia possent non cavere  
since at the present (time) they could not give security

inter se obsidibus, ne res efferatur,  
among themselves by hostages, lest the matter be divulged,

petunt ut sanciat jurejurando ac fide,  
they request that it be ratified by oath and pledge,

militaribus signis collatis, (quo  
the military standards having been stacked together, (by which

more eorum gravissima cærimonia continetur  
usage their most solemn ceremony is guarded [confirmed]



ne initio belli facto,  
 lest the commencement of the war having been made,  
 deserantur à reliquis. Tunc, Carnutibus  
 they might be deserted by the others. Then, the Carnutes  
 collaudatis, jurejurando dato ab  
 having been applauded, the oath having been given by  
 omnibus qui adērant, tempore ejus  
 all who were present, (and) the time of [for] this  
 rei constituto, disceditur<sup>2</sup> ab  
 movement having been determined, they departed from  
 concilio.  
 the council.

3. Ubi ēa dies venit, Carnutes, Cotuato et  
 When this day came, the Carnutes. Cotuatus and  
 Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus,  
 Conconnetodumnus as leaders, desperate men,  
 concurrunt Cenabum, signo  
 assembled hastily at Cenabum [Orleans], the signal  
 dato, que interficiunt Romanos cives,  
 having been given, and kill the Roman citizens,  
 qui constitērant ibi causā negotiandi, in  
 who had settled there for the purpose of trading, among  
 iis C. Fufium Citam, honestum Romanum equitem,  
 them C. Fufius Cita, an honorable Roman knight,  
 qui præerat frumentariæ rei, jussu Cæsaris;  
 who presided over the grain supply, by order of Cæsar;  
 que diripiunt eorum bona. Fama celeriter  
 and they plunder their property. The report quickly  
 perfertur ad omnes civitates Galliæ. Nam ubi  
 is spread to all the states of Gaul. For when  
 major atque illustrior res incidit, significant  
 a greater and more notable affair occurs, they indicate  
 per agros que regiones clamore; alii  
 (it) through the lands and territories by a shout; some  
 deinceps excipiunt hunc, et tradunt proximis,  
 in succession receive this, and transmit (it) to the nearest  
 ut tunc accidit. Nam quæ gesta essent  
 as then happened. For what (things) had been done

Cenabi sole oriente (abl. abs.),<sup>2</sup>  
 at Cenabum [Orleans] at sun rise,  
 audita sunt in finibus Arvernorum ante  
 are heard in the territories of the Arverni before  
 primam vigiliam<sup>4</sup> confectam, quod est spatium  
 the first watch is completed, which is a space  
 circiter centum et sexaginta millium  
 [distance] of about a hundred and sixty thousand  
 passuum.  
 paces.

4. Ibi simili ratione Vircingetorix, Arvernus,  
 There in like manner Vircingetorix, an Arvernian,  
 filius Celtilli, adolescens summæ potentiæ,  
 the son of Celtillus, a young man of the highest power,  
 (cujus pater obtinuërat principatum totius Galliæ,  
 (whose father had held the foremost place of all Gaul,  
 et ob eam causam, quod appetebat regnum  
 and for this reason, that he was seeking sovereign  
 interfectus erat ab civitate), suis clientibus  
 power was put to death by the state), his clients  
 convocatis facile incendit eos. Ejus  
 having been called together he easily inflamed them. His  
 consilio cognito concurritur<sup>5</sup> ad arma.  
 design having been known they rush to arms.  
 Prohibetur ab Gobannitione suo patruo, que  
 He was prevented by Gobannitio his uncle, and  
 reliquis principibus, qui non existimabant  
 the other chiefs, who were not thinking (that)  
 hanc fortunam temptandam, expellitur  
 this fortune [hazard] ought to be attempted, he is expelled  
 ex oppido Gergoviâ. Tamen non  
 from the town (of) Gergovia. However he does not  
 desistit, atque in agris habet delectum  
 desist, and in the fields [country] holds a levy  
 egentium ac perditorum. Hæc manu coac-  
 of needy and desperate (men). This band having  
 to, quoscunque ex civitate adit  
 been collected, whomever of the state he approaches

perducit in suam sententiam. Hortatur, ut  
he brings over to his opinion. He exhorts, that

capiant arma causâ communis libertatis;  
they take arms for the sake of the common liberty;

que magnis copiis coactis, expellit ex  
and great forces having been collected, he expels from

civitate suos adversarios à quibus ejectus erat  
the state his adversaries by whom he had been evicted

paulò antè. Appellatur rex ab suis;  
a little before. He is called king by his (followers);

dimittit legationes quoquoversùs; obtestatur ut  
he sends embassies in every direction; he implores that

manèant in fide. Celeriter adjungit sibi  
they remain in faith. Speedily he attaches to himself

Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones,  
the Senones, the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci, the Turones,

Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, que omnes reliquos,  
the Aulerci, the Lemovici, the Andes, and all the rest,

qui attingunt Oceanum. Imperium defertur  
who border on the Ocean. The chief command is conferred

ad eum consensu omnium. Quâ potestate  
on him by the consent of all. Which (This) power

oblatâ, impërat obsides omnibus iis  
having been obtained, he demands hostages from all these

civitatibus: jubet certum numërum militum  
states: he orders a fixed number of soldiers

celeriter adduci ad se; constituit quantum  
speedily brought to him; he decrees what number

armorum quæque civitas efficiat domi, que  
of arms each state should prepare at home, and

ante quod tempus; in primis studet equitatui.  
before what time; especially he attends to the cavalry.

Summæ diligentiae addit summam severitatem  
To the highest diligence he adds the highest severity

imperii; magnitudine supplicii cogit  
of command; by the greatness of punishment he forces

dubitantes. Nam majore delicto commissio  
the hesitating. For, a greater crime having been committed,

necat igni atque omnibus tormentis;  
 he puts to death by fire and all (kinds of) tortures;  
 de leviori causâ, auribus desectis, aut  
 for a slighter cause, the ears having been cut off, or  
 singulis oculis effosis, remittit  
 a single eye (having been) put out, he sends (them)

domum; ut sint documento reliquis, et  
 home; that they may be (for) an example to the rest, and

perterrëant alios magnitudinæ poenæ.  
 may terrify others by the greatness of the punishment.

5. Exercitu coacto celeriter his  
 An army having been assembled quickly by these

supplicis, mittit Lucterium Cadurcum hominem  
 punishments, he sends Lucterius the Cadurcan a man

summæ audaciæ cum parte copiarum in  
 of the highest daring with a part of the forces to

Rutenos; ipse proficiscitur in Bituriges.  
 the Ruteni; he himself sets out into the Bituriges.

Ejus adventu Bituriges mittunt legatos ad  
 On his arrival the Bituriges send ambassadors to

Æduos, (in quorum fide erant,) rogatum  
 the Ædui, (in whose alliance they were,) to ask for

subsidium, quo possint facilius  
 aid, by which [that] they may be able the more easily

sustinere copias hostium. Ædûi de consilio  
 to resist the forces of the enemy. The Ædui by the advice

legatorum, quos Cæsar reliquerat ad  
 of the lieutenants, whom Cæsar had left at [with]

exercitum, mittunt copias equitatûs que peditatûs  
 the army, send forces of cavalry and foot

Biturigibus; qui quum venissent ad flumen  
 to the Bituriges; who when they had arrived at the river

Ligerim, quod dividit Bituriges ab Æduis,  
 Loire, which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui.

morati paucos dies ibi, neque ausi  
 having delayed a few days there, nor having dared

transire flumen, revertunt domum; que renunciant  
 to cross the river, they return home; and they report

nostris legatis se veritos perfidiam  
to our lieutenants (that) they having feared the treachery

Biturigum revertisse; quibus<sup>6</sup> cognoverint  
of the Bituriges to have [had] returned; to whom they had ascertained

id consilii fuisse, ut si transissent  
this plan to have [had] been, that if they crossed

flumen, ex unâ parte ipsi, alterâ  
the river, on the one side they [the Bituriges] on the other

Arverni circumsisterent se. Ne fecerint  
the Arverni would surround them. Whether they did

id de eâ causâ, quam pronunciârunt  
this from [for] this reason, which they alleged

legatis, an adducti perfidiâ, quod nihil  
to the lieutenants, or were induced by treachery, because nothing

constat nobis, non videtur esse ponendum  
is evident to us, it does not seem (best) to be put down

pro certo. Biturges eorum discessu statim  
for certain. The Bituriges on their retreat immediately

conjungunt se cum Arvernīs.  
unite themselves with the Arverni.

6. His rebus nunciatis Cæsari, in Italiam,  
These things having been reported to Cæsar, in Italy,

quum jam ille intelligeret urbanas res  
when already he understood (that) the city affairs

pervenisse in commodiorem statum virtute<sup>7</sup>  
[had come into a more satisfactory state by the conduct

Cn. Pompeii, profectus est in Transalpinam Galliam.  
of Cn. Pompey, he set out for Transalpine Gaul.

Quum venisset eò afficiebatur magnâ  
When he had arrived there he was affected with the great

difficultate, quâ ratione posset pervenire  
difficulty, in [as to] what manner he might reach

ad exercitum. Nam si arcesseret legiones in  
the army. For if he should summon the legions into

Provinciam, intelligebat dimicatura  
the province, he was understanding (that) they about to [must] fight

proelio in itinere, se absente; si ipse  
in battle on the march, he being absent; if he himself

contendēret ad exercitum, videbat, suam  
 should hasten to the army, it was seeming (that) his  
 salutem rectè committi ne iis,  
 safety properly to [could] be committed not to those,  
 quidem qui eo tempore viderentur  
 even who at this time were appearing (to be)

pacati.  
 peaceable.

7. Intērim Lucterius Cadurcus missus  
 In the mean time Lucterius the Cadurcan having been sent

in Rutenos conciliat eam civitatem Arvernīs.  
 to the Ruteni gains over this state to the Arverni.

Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos, accipit  
 Having marched into the Nitiobriges and Gabali, he receives

obsides ab utrisque; et magnā manu co-  
 hostages from each one; and a large band having been

actā, contendit facere eruptionem in Provinciam  
 collected, he hastens to make an invasion into the province

versus Narbonem. Quā re nunciatā,  
 toward Narbo. Which [This] thing having been reported,

Cæsar existimavit, antevertendum omnibus  
 Cæsar thought, that (it) to [must] be preferred to all

consiliis, ut proficisceretur Narbonem.  
 (other) plans, that he should set out to Narbo.

Quum venisset eò, confirmat timentes, constituit  
 When he had arrived there, he encourages the timid, he places

præsidia in provincialibus Rutenis, Volcis  
 garrisons among the provincial Ruteni, the Volci

Arecomicis, Tolosatibus, que circum Narbonem, quæ  
 Arecomici, the Tolosates, and about Narbo, which

loca erant finitima hostibus; jubet partem copiarum  
 places were near the enemy; he orders a part of the forces

ex Provinciâ que supplementum, quod adduxerat  
 from the province and the recruits, which he had brought

ex Italiâ convenire in Helvios qui contingunt  
 from Italy to assemble among the Helvii who border on

fines Arvernorum.  
 the territories of the Arverni.

8. His rebus comparatis, Lucterius jam  
 These things having been arranged, Lucterius now  
 represso et remoto, quòd putabat  
 having been checked and removed, because he thought (it)  
 periculosum intrare intra præsidia, pro-  
 dangerous to enter within [among] the garrison, he [Cæsar]  
 ficiscitur in Helvîos. Etsi mons Cebenna,  
 marches into the Helvii Although mount Cevennes,  
 qui discludit Arvernos ab Helvîis impediēbat  
 which separates the Arverni from the Helvii was barring  
 iter altissimâ nive durissîmo tempore  
 the road with very deep snow at the severest time [season]  
 anni; tamen nive sex pēdum in altitudinem  
 of the year: however the snow six feet in height [depth]  
 discussâ, atque vîis ita patefactis,  
 having been removed, and the roads thus having been opened,  
 pervenit ad fines Arvernorum summo  
 he arrives at the territories of the Arverni by the utmost  
 labore militum. Quibus oppressis,  
 labor of his soldiers. Who [They] (having been) astounded,  
 inopinantibus, quòd existimabant se  
 taken unawares, because they were thinking (that they) themselves  
 munitos Cebennâ ut muro, ac ō  
 (were) defended by the Cevennes as by a wall, and in this  
 tempore anni semitæ unquam patuērant  
 season of the year the paths never had lain open  
 homini ne singulari quidem, impērat  
 to a man (not) by himself even, he [Cæsar] commands  
 equitibus, ut vagentur quam latissimè  
 the cavalry, that they should roam as far  
 possent, et infērant quàm maximum  
 as they could, and should occasion the very greatest  
 terrorem hostibus. Hæc celeriter perferuntur  
 fear to the enemy. These (things) are quickly announced  
 ad Vercingetorigem famâ ac nunciis; quem  
 to Vercingetorix by report and messengers; whom  
 omnes Arverni perterriti circumstant atque  
 all the Arverni alarmed beset and

obsecrant ut consulat suis fortunis, neu  
 entreat that he look out for their property, nor  
 patiatur se diripi ab hostibus,  
 suffer themselves to be plundered by the enemy  
 præsertim quum videat omne bellum trans-  
 especially when he sees (that) all the war was trans-  
 latum ad se. Percibus quorum<sup>8</sup> per-  
 ferred to themselves. By the entreaties of whom having been  
 motus ille movet castra ex Biturigibus  
 stirred he moves (his) camp from the Bituriges  
 versus in Arvernos.  
 towards the Arverni.

9. At Cæsar moratus biduum in his locis  
 But Cæsar having delayed two days in these places  
 quod<sup>9</sup> præceperat opinione, hæc  
 because he had anticipated in [through] surmise, (that) these  
 ventura usu de Vercingetorige,  
 (things) would come in use [fact] regarding Vercingetorix,  
 discedit ab exercitu per causam cogendi  
 he departs from the army (as) for the cause of raising  
 supplementi que equitatus; præfecit Brutum,  
 recruits and cavalry; he placed Brutus.  
 adolescentem, his copiis; monet hunc, ut  
 a young man, over these forces; he instructs him, that  
 equites pervagentur quam latissimè in  
 the cavalry should range about as far as possible in  
 omnes partes, se daturum operam  
 all directions, (that) he about to [would] take care  
 absit ab castris ne longius  
 (that) he may be absent from the camp no longer (than)  
 triduo. His rebus constitutis, pervenit  
 three days. These things having been arranged, he arrived  
 Viennam maximis itineribus quam potest,  
 at Vienna [Vienne] by as great marches as he was able,  
 suis inopinantibus. Ibi nactus recentum  
 his (men) not expecting (him). There having found the fresh  
 equitatum, quem præmiserat eo multis  
 [newly enrolled] cavalry, which he had sent there many



diebus antè itinère intermisso neque  
days before the march having been interrupted neither

diurno neque nocturno contendit per fines  
by day nor by night he hastens through the territories

Æduorum in Lingones, ubi duæ legiones  
of the Ædui into the Lingones, where two legions

hiemabant, ut si etiam quid consilii de  
were wintering, that if also any plan respecting

suâ salute iniretur ab Æduis præcurreret,  
his safety was entered into by the Ædui he might anticipate

celeritate. Quum pervenisset eò mittit  
(it), by (his) quickness. When he had arrived there he sends

ad reliquas legiones, que cogit omnes in unum  
to the other legions, and gathers all into one

locum, prius quàm possit nunciari  
place, before (that) it was possible [could] (to) be announced

Arvernīs de ejus adventu. Hæc re  
to the Arverni concerning his arrival. This thing

cognitâ, Vercingetorix rursus reducit  
having been known, Vercingetorix again marches back (his)

exercitum in Bituriges, atque inde profectus  
army to the Bituriges, and thence having set out

Gorgobinam, oppidum Boiorum, quos  
to Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, whom (having been)

victos Helvetico prælio, Cæsar collocaverat  
conquered in the Helvetian battle, Cæsar had placed

ibi, que attribuërat Æduis; instituit oppugnare.  
there, and had assigned to the Ædui; he resolved to assault (it).

10. Hæc res afferebat magnam difficultatem  
This affair was causing great perplexity

Cæsari ad capiendum consilium,<sup>10</sup> si contin-  
to Cæsar for taking [forming] a plan, if he should

eret legiones in uno loco reliquam partem  
keep together the legions in one place the remaining part

hiemis, ne, stipendiariis Ædui expugnatis,  
of the winter, lest, the tributaries of the Ædui having been stormed,

cuncta Gallia deficëret, quòd videretur  
all Gaul might revolt, because it would seem (that)

nullum præsidium positum esse in eo  
 no protection about to [could] be placed in him  
 amicis; sin educeret maturiùs ex  
 for (his) friends; but if he should lead too early from  
 hibernis, ne laboraret ab re frumentariâ,  
 winter quarters, lest he be troubled by the grain supply,  
 subvectionibus (pl.) duris. Visum est præstare  
 transportation (being) difficult. It seemed to be better  
 tamen perpeti omnes difficultates, quàm tantâ  
 however to endure all difficulties, than so great  
 contumeliâ acceptâ, alienare voluntates  
 an insult having been received, to alienate (the) good will  
 omnium suorum. Itaque cohortatus Æduos  
 of all his (allies). Therefore having exhorted the Ædui  
 de supportando commeatu præmittit ad Boios,  
 about transporting provisions he sends before to the Boii,  
 qui doceant de sũo adventu, que  
 (those) who may inform (them) of his arrival, and  
 hortentur ut maneat in fide, atque  
 he exhorts (them) that they remain in alliance, and  
 sustineant impetum hostium magno anĩmo.  
 resist the attack of the enemy with great courage [spirit].  
 Dũabus legionibus, atque impedimentis totius  
 Two legions, and the baggage of the entire  
 exercitũs relictis, Agendici, profisciscitur  
 army having been left, at Agendicum [Sens], he marches  
 ad Boios.  
 to the Boii.

11. Quum altẽro die venisset ad Vellaunodunum  
 When on the next day he had come to Vellaunodunum

oppidum Senonum, ne relinqueret quem  
 [Beauns] a town of the Senones, lest he might leave any  
 hostem post se, instituit oppugnare,  
 enemy behind him, he resolved to attack (it), (and)  
 quo uteretur expeditiore re frumentariâ; que  
 that he might use more easily the grain supply; and  
 bidũo circumvallavit id, tertio die legatis  
 in two days he invested it, on the third day ambassadors

missis ex oppīdo de deditione,  
 having been sent from the town concerning a surrender,  
 jubet arma proferri, jumenta produci,  
 he orders the arms to be brought out, the cattle to be produced,  
 sexcentos obsides dari. Relinquit C. Trebonium,  
 six hundred hostages to be given. He leaves C. Trebonius,  
 legatum, qui conficeret ea. Ipse  
 (his) lieutenant, who should execute these things. He himself  
 proficiscitur, ut faceret iter quam primū  
 sets out, that he may make the march as soon as possible  
 Cenabum Carnutum; qui, nuncīo de  
 to Cenabum of the Carnutes; who, the information of  
 oppugnatione Vellaunoduni tum primū  
 the siege of Vellaunodunum then first [immediately]  
 allato, comparabant præsidiū causā  
 having been brought, were preparing a garrison for the purpose  
 tuendi Cenabi, quod mitterent eò quū  
 of defending Cenabum, which they might send there as  
 existimarent eam rem ire ductum  
 they thought this affair was to be drawn out  
 longius. Pervenit huc biduo. Castris  
 longer. He arrived there in three days. The camp  
 positus ante oppīdum, exclusus  
 having been placed before the town, (being) prevented  
 tempore diei, differt oppugnationem in  
 by the time of day, he defers the attack to  
 postērum; imperat militibus quæque  
 the next (day); he demands from the soldiers whatever  
 sint usui ad eam rem; et quod pons  
 may be of use for this affair; and as the bridge  
 fluminis Ligēris continebat oppīdum Cenabum;  
 of the river Loire was joining the town (of) Cenabum;  
 veritus ne profugerent ex oppīdo noctu,  
 having feared lest they might flee from the town at night,  
 jubet duas legiones excubare in armis.  
 he orders two legions to keep watch under arms.  
 Cenabenses egressi ex oppīdo silentio  
 The people of Cenabum having departed from the town in silence

paulò ante mediam noctem cœperunt transire  
a little before mid night began to cross

flumen. Quâ re nunciatâ per  
the river: Which [This] thing having been announced by

exploratores, Cæsar, portis incensis  
the scouts, Cæsar, the gates having been set afire

intromittit legiones, quas jussêrat esse  
sends in the legions, which he had ordered to be

expeditas, atque potitur oppido (abl.); perpaucis<sup>11</sup>  
ready, and seizes the town; very few

ex numëro hostium desideratis quin  
from [of] the number of the enemy having escaped but that

cuncti caperentur, quòd angustiae (pl.) pontis  
the whole were taken, because the narrowness of the bridge

atque itinerum intercluserant fugam multitudinis.  
and of the roads had cut off the flight of the multitude.

Diripit atque incendit oppidum; donat prædam  
He pillages and burns the town; he gives the booty

militibus; transducit exercitum Ligerim, atque  
to the soldiers; he leads his army over the Loire, and

pervenit in fines Biturigium.  
arrives in the territories of the Bituriges.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi cognovit de adventu  
Vercingetorix, when he learned of the arrival

Cæsar, desistit oppugnatione, atque proficiscitur  
of Cæsar, desists from the siege, and marches

obviâm Cæsari. Ille instituêrat oppugnare  
to meet Cæsar. He [Cæsar] had begun to besiege

Noviodunum, oppidum Biturigum, positum  
Noviodunum [Saucerre] a town of the Bituriges, situated

in viam. Ex quo<sup>12</sup> oppido quum legati  
on the road. From which town when ambassadors

venissent ad eum oratum ut ignosceret sibi,  
had come to him to entreat that he would pardon them,

quæ consuleret suæ vitæ (sing.), ut conficêret  
and would spare their lives, that he might accomplish

reliquas res celeritate, quâ pleraque  
the remaining affairs with the speed, by which the most

erat consecutus, jubet arma proferri  
 had been effected, he orders the arms to be brought forth  
 equos produci, obsides dari. Parte  
 the horses to be produced, (and) hostages to be given. A part  
 obsidum jam transditâ, quum reli-  
 of the hostages now having been surrendered, while the other  
 qua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis  
 things were being executed, the centurions and a few  
 militum intromissis, qui conquirerent  
 of the soldiers having been introduced, who should collect  
 arma que jumenta, equitatus hostium est  
 the arms and the horses, the cavalry of the enemy was  
 visus procul, qui antecesserat agmen  
 seen at a distance, which had preceded the army  
 Vercingetorigis; quem<sup>13</sup> atque simul oppidani  
 of Vercingetorix; which as soon as the townsmen  
 conspexerunt, atque venerunt in spem auxilii  
 had seen, and had come to the hope of aid,  
 clamore sublato cœperunt capere arma,  
 a shout having been raised they began to take arms,  
 claudere portas, complere murum. Centuriones  
 to shut the gates, (and) to fill the walls. The Centurions  
 in oppido, quum intellexissent ex significatione  
 in the town, when they had understood from the signals  
 Gallorum aliquid novi consilii iniri ab  
 of the Gauls (that) some (of) new plans was formed by  
 iis, gladiis districtis occupaverunt  
 them, their swords having been drawn they took possession of  
 portas, que receperunt omnes suos incolumes.  
 the gates, and received all their (men) safe.  
 13. Cæsar jubet equitatem educi ex castris,  
 Cæsar orders the cavalry to be led from the camp.  
 que committit equestre prælium. Suis jam  
 and joins in a cavalry battle. His (men) being now  
 laborantibus submittit circiter quadringentos  
 hard pressed he sends about four hundred  
 Germanos equites, quos ab initio instit-  
 German horsemen, whom from the beginning he had

uērat habere cum se. Galli potuerunt  
 determined to keep with himself. The Gauls could  
 non sustinere eorum impētum; atque coniecti  
 not sustain their attack; and having been thrown  
 in fugam, receperunt se ad agmen, multis  
 into flight, betook themselves to the army, many  
 amissis. Quibus profligatis, oppidani  
 having been lost. Who [These] having been routed, the townsmen  
 rursus perterriti, perduxerunt ad Cæsarem eos  
 again alarmed, led out to Cæsar those  
 comprehensos quorum operâ existimabant  
 (having been) arrested by whose means they were thinking  
 plebem concitatam, que dediderunt sese  
 (that) the people were incited, and surrendered themselves  
 ei. Quibus rebus confectis, Cæsar  
 to him. Which things having been accomplished, Cæsar  
 profectus est ad oppidum Avaricum, quod  
 marched to the town (of) Avaricum [Bourges], which  
 erat maximum que munitissimum in finibus  
 was the largest and best fortified in the territories  
 Biturigum, atque fertilissimâ regione agri,  
 of the Bituriges, and in a most fertile district of country.  
 quod eo oppido recepto, confidebat  
 because this town having been taken, he was confident  
 se redacturum civitatem Biturigum  
 (that) he about to [would] reduce the state of the Bituriges  
 in potestatem.  
 into (his) power.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis  
 Vercingetorix, so many continual reverses

Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni, ac-  
 at Vellaundunum, Cenabum, (and) Noviodunum, having been  
 ceptis convocat suos ad concilium; docet  
 received calls his (followers) to a council; he shows  
 "bellum gerendum esse longè aliâ  
 that) "the war to [must] be carried on with a far different  
 ratione, atque sit gestum antea, huic rei  
 plan, than it had been carried on before, to this thing

studendum omnibus modis, ut Romani  
it must be attended by all means, that the Romans  
prohibeantur pabulatione, et commeatu:  
should be prohibited from foraging, and from provisions: (that)  
id esse facile, quòd ipsi abundant equitatu,  
this to be [was] easy, because they abound in cavalry,  
et quòd sublevèntur tempore anni;  
and because they are assisted by the season of the year;  
pabulum posse non secari; hostes  
(that) forage could not (to) be cut; (that) the enemy  
dispersos necessariò petere ex ædificiis;  
dispersed (must) necessarily (to) seek (it) from the buildings;  
omnes hos posse quotidie deleri ab  
(that) all these could daily (to) be destroyed by  
equitibus. Præterea causâ salutis commoda  
the horsemen. Moreover for the sake of safety the advantages  
familiaris rei (sing.) negligenda;  
of private affairs to [must] be disregarded; (that)  
oportere vicos atque ædificia incen-  
to be [it was] necessary (for) the villages and houses to be  
di, hoc est, spatio à Boiâ quoquoersus,  
burnt, that is, in a space from Boia in every direction,  
quòd videantur posse adire causâ  
where (the Romans) might seem to be able to go for the purpose  
pabulandi. Harum rerum suppetere copiam  
of foraging. Of these things there is at hand an abundance  
ipsis, quòd, in quorum finibus bellum  
for themselves, because, in whose territories war  
geratur, eorum opibus sublevantur;  
may be waged, by their means they would be assisted; (that)  
Romanos aut non laturos<sup>14</sup> inopiam,  
the Romans either not to be about to [would not] bear privation,  
aut progressuros longiùs à  
or (that they) to be about to [would] proceed farther from  
castris cum magno pericùlo; neque inter-  
the camp with great danger; nor to be [was it] any  
esse, ne interficiant ipsos ne exuant  
difference. if they kill them or strip away

impedimentis, quibus amissis, bellum possit  
(their) baggage, which having been lost, war can

non geri. Præterea, oportere  
not (to) be waged. Moreover, (that it) to be [was] necessary

oppida incendi, quæ sint non tuta ab  
(for) the towns to be burnt, which were not safe from

omni pericûlo munitione et naturâ loci;  
all danger by fortifications and by the nature of the place;

neu sint suis receptacula ad  
that neither they may be for our (people) retreats for

detrectandam militiam neu proposita Romanis  
evading military service nor offered to the Romans

ad tollendam copiam commeatûs que prædam.  
for taking away an abundance of provisions and plunder.

Si hæc videantur gravia aut acerba, debere(inf.)  
If these (things) seemed severe or cruel, they ought

æstimare, illa multo gravius  
to consider, (that) those things (are) much more severe (that

libros conjuges abstrahi in  
their) children (and) wives to [should] be dragged into

servitutem, ipsos interfici; quæ  
slavery, (and they) themselves (to be) slain; which

sit necesse accidere victis.  
would be certain to befall the conquered.

15. Hæc sententiâ probatâ consensu  
This opinion having been approved by the consent

omnium, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum  
of all, in one day more than twenty cities of the Bituriges

incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus.  
are burned. This same is done in the remaining states.

In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quæ  
In all parts conflagrations are seen; which

etsi omnes ferebant cum magno dolore, tamen  
although all were bearing with great grief, yet

proponebant sibi hoc solaci,  
they were placing before themselves this (as) a consolation,

confidebant quòd se, victoriâ prope  
they were trusting that they, the victory being nearly



exploratâ, celerîter recuperaturos amissa.  
assured, quickly about to [would] recover (their) losses.

Deliberatur in communi concilio de Avarîco,  
it was deliberated in general council about Avaricum,

placeat, incendi  
(whether) it was pleasing, (that it) (to) [should] be burnt

an defendi. Bituriges procumbunt  
or (to) be defended. The Bituriges fell

ad pedes omnibus Gallis,  
at the feet (of) all the Gauls, (that)

ne cogerentur succendere suis  
they should not be forced to set fire with their own

manibus pulcherrimam urbem propè totius Galliæ,  
hands (to) the most beautiful town nearly of all Gaul,

quæ sit et præsidio et ornamento civitati;  
which was both (for) a protection and an ornament to the state;

dicunt se defensuros facile  
they say (that) they about to [would] defend (it) easily

naturâ loci, quòd circumdata propè  
by the nature of the place, because (it was) surrounded almost

ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude; habeat  
on all sides by the river and by a marsh; (that) it had

unum et perangustum aditum. Venia  
one [a single] and very narrow entrance. Permission

datur petentibus, Vercingetorige primò dissuadente,  
is given to those petitioning. Vercingetorix at first opposing,

post concedente et ipsorum precibus et  
afterwards conceding both because of their entreaties and

misericordiâ volgi. Idonei defensores  
because of compassion to [for] the multitude. Suitable defenders

deliguntur oppido.  
are selected for the town.

16. Vercingetorix subsequitur Cæsarem minoribus  
Vercingetorix follows near Cæsar by lesser

itineribus, et deligit locum castris munitum  
marches, and selects a place for the camp defended

paludibus que silvis, longè ab Avarîco quindécim  
by marshes and woods, distant from Avaricum fifteen

millia passuum. Ibi cognoscebat per certos  
 thousand paces. There he was learning by faithful  
 exploratores in singula tempora (pl.) diēi quæ  
 scouts at each time [hour] of the day what things  
 agerentur (pl.) ad Avaricum; et imperabat  
 were done at Avaricum. and he was commanding  
 quid vellet fieri; observabat omnes nostras  
 what he wished to be done: he watched all our  
 pabulationes que frumentationes, que quum  
 foragings and corn-raids. and when  
 necessariō procedērent longius, adoriebatur  
 they had necessarily proceeded rather far. he was attacking  
 dispersos, que afficiebat magno incommodo  
 (them) dispersed. and was inflicting great injury,  
 (dat.); etsi occurrebatur ab nostris  
 although (this) was obviated by our (men)  
 quantum potērat provideri ratione, at  
 as much as (it) could (to) be provided against by foresight. that  
 irētur (pass. sing.)<sup>15</sup> incertis temporibus que  
 they should go at uncertain times and  
 diversis itineribus.  
 by different routes

17. Castris positis ad eam partem  
 The camp having been pitched at this part  
 oppidi, quæ intermissa à flumine et  
 of the town. which having been left by the river and  
 palude, ut diximus supra, habebat angustum  
 marsh, as we have said above, was having a narrow  
 aditum, Cæsar cœpit apparare aggerem, agere  
 approach, Cæsar began to prepare the mound. to move  
 vineas, constitūere duas turres; nam  
 the shelters. (and) to construct two towers; for  
 natura loci prohibebat circumvallare.  
 the nature of the place was preventing to blockade [investment].  
 Non destitit adhortari Boios atque Æduos de  
 He did not cease to exhort the Boii and Ædui about  
 frumentariā re; altēri quorum, quōd agebant  
 the corn supply; the latter of whom. because they acted

nullo studio, adjuvabant non multum; alteri non  
 with no zeal. were assisting not much: the others not  
 magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et  
 with great means because the state was small and  
 infirma, consumpserunt celeriter quod habuerunt.  
 weak. they consumed quickly what they had.

Exercitu affecto summâ difficultate  
 The army (having been) afflicted with the greatest want

frumentarie rei, tenuitate Boiorum, indigentia  
 of provisions, by the poverty of the Boii. by the negligence

Æduorum, incendiis ædificiorum, usque  
 of the Ædui, (and) by the burning of the buildings, even

eo<sup>16</sup> ut milites caruerint frumento  
 to this [so] that the soldiers wanted corn (for)

complures dies, et pecore adacto è  
 many days, and cattle having been driven from

longinquioribus vicis, sustentarent extremam  
 the more distant villages, they satisfied the extreme

famem; tamen nulla vox audita est ab iis  
 hunger; yet not a word was heard from them

indigna maiestate Romani populi et  
 unworthy the majesty of the Roman people and (their)

superioribus victoriis. Quin etiam quum Cæsar  
 former victories. Moreover also when Cæsar

appellaret singulas legiones in opere, et diceret  
 addressed the several legions at work and said

se dimissurum oppugnationem, si ferrent  
 (that) he would abandon the siege, if they bore

ioptiam acerbius; universi petebant ab  
 the want too severely; all to a man were begging from [of]

eo ne faceret id; "se sic  
 him that he would not do this; "they themselves so

meruisse complures annos, illo imperante,  
 to have [had] served very many years, he commanding,

ut acciperent nullam ignominiam nunquam  
 that they should suffer no dishonor never

discederent, re infecta; se  
 had they withdrawn, the thing (having been) unaccomplished: they

laturos hoc loco ignominia, si  
 about to [would] bear this (as) an occasion of dishonor, if  
 relinquissent oppugnationem inceptam; præ-  
 they should abandon the siege commenced. to be [it  
 stare perferre omnes acerbitates, quam  
 was] preferable to endure all hardships than (that)  
 non parentarent Romanis civibus, qui  
 they should not avenge the Roman citizens, who  
 interissent perfidiâ Gallorum Cenabi. Hæc  
 had perished by the perfidy of the Gauls at Cenabum. These  
 eadem mandabant centurionibus que  
 same (things) they were consigning to the centurions and  
 tribunis, ut per eos deferrentur  
 tribunes, that through them they might be communicated  
 ad Cæsarem.  
 to Cæsar.

18. Quum turres jam appropinquassent muro,  
 When the towers had already approached the wall,  
 Cæsar cognovit ex captivis Vercingetorigem,  
 Cæsar ascertained from the prisoners (that) Vercingetorix,  
 pabulo consumpto, movisse  
 the forage having been consumed, to have [had] moved (his)  
 castra propius Avaricum, atque ipsum, cum  
 camp nearer to Avaricum, and (that) he, with  
 equitatu que expeditis, qui consuissent  
 the cavalry and the light armed, who were accustomed  
 proeliari inter equites, causâ insidiarum  
 to fight among the horsemen, for the purpose of ambushes  
 profectum eod, quod arbitrabatur  
 to have [had] marched thither, where he was thinking (that)  
 nostros venturos pabulatum postero  
 our (men) about to [would] come to forage on the following  
 die. Quibus rebus cognitis profectus  
 day. Which [These] things having been known having set out  
 silentio mediâ nocte pervenit ad castra hostium  
 in silence at mid night, he arrived at the camp of the enemy  
 manè. Illi, adventu Cæsaris celeriter  
 early in the morning. They, the arrival of Cæsar speedily

cognito per exploratores, abdiderunt  
 having been learned through scouts, concealed  
 carros que sua impedimenta in arctiores silvas,  
 the wagons and their baggage in the thicker woods,  
 instruxerunt omnes copias in edito  
 (and) drew up all (their) forces on an elevated  
 atque aperto loco. Quâ re nunciata,  
 and open place. Which thing having been announced,  
 Cæsar celeriter jussit sarcinas conferri,  
 Cæsar quickly ordered the packs to be collected together,  
 arma expediri.  
 (and) the arms to be got ready.

19. Erat collis leniter acclivis ab infimo.  
 There was a hill gently sloping from below.

Difficilis atque impedita palus cingebat hunc  
 A difficult and impassable swamp was surrounding this  
 ex ferè omnibus partibus, non latior  
 on nearly all sides, not wider than  
 quinquaginta pedibus. Hoc colle, pontibus  
 fifty feet. On this hill, the bridges  
 interruptis, Galli continebant se,  
 having been broken down, the Gauls stationed themselves  
 fiducia loci; que distributi generatim  
 in confidence of the place; and, arranged in tribes  
 in civitates, obtinebant omnia vada  
 according to their states, they were holding all the shallows  
 ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodibus; sic  
 and passes of this swamp, by trusty guards; thus  
 parati animo, ut, si Romani conarentur  
 prepared in mind, that, if the Romans should attempt  
 perrumpere eam paludem, premerent,  
 to break through this swamp, they would crush (them),  
 ex superiore loco, hæsitantes; ut  
 from the higher station, while sticking fast; so that  
 qui viderent propinquitatem loci,  
 those who should see the nearness of the position  
 existimarent paratos ad dimicandum  
 would think (that) they were prepared for fighting

prope æquo Marte; qui perspicērent  
 almost on equal terms; (but) those who perceived  
 iniquitatem conditionis, cognoscērent  
 the disadvantage of the condition [place], would understand (that)  
 sese ostentare inani simulatione. Cæsar  
 they (to) make show with an empty pretense. Cæsar  
 edocet milites indignantes, quòd hostes  
 shows the soldiers indignant, because the enemy  
 possent ferre sūum conspectum, tantulo spatio  
 could endure their sight, so small a space  
 interjecto, et exposcentes signum  
 (having been) interposed, and earnestly demanding the signal  
 prœlii, quanto detrimento, et morte  
 of [for] battle, with how great loss, and with the death  
 quot fortium virorum sit necesse  
 of how many brave men it would be necessary  
 constare victoriam; quos<sup>17</sup> quum vidēret sic  
 to assure the victory; whom since he saw so  
 paratos animo, ut recusarent nullum pericūlum  
 prepared in mind, that they refused no danger  
 pro sūa laude, se debere condemnari summæ  
 for his glory, he ought to be condemned for the greatest  
 iniquitatis, nisi habēat eorum vitam cariorem  
 injustice, unless he holds their lives dearer  
 sūa salute. Consolatus milites sic,  
 than. his safety. Having consoled the soldiers thus,  
 reducit in castra eodem diē; instituit  
 he returns to the camp on the same day; he undertook  
 administrare reliqua, quæ pertinebant ad  
 to perform the other things, which were belonging to  
 oppugnationem oppidi.  
 the siege of the town.

20. Vercingetorix, quum redisset ad sūos  
 Vercingetorix, when he had returned to his (men)

insimulatus proditiōis, quòd movisset castra  
 was accused of treason, because he had moved (his) camp  
 propiūs Romanos, quòd discessisset cum omni  
 nearer to the Romans, because he had departed with all

equitatu; quòd relinquisset tantas copias sine  
 the cavalry; because he had left such great forces without  
 imperio; quòd ejus discessu Romani venissent  
 a command; because on his departure the Romans had come  
 tantā opportunitate, et celeritate; omnia  
 with so great timeliness, and celerity; (that) all  
 hæc potuisse non accidere fortuito, aut  
 this could not (to) happen accidentally, or  
 sine consilio; illum malle<sup>18</sup> habere regnum  
 without design; (that) he to prefer to have the sovereignty  
 Galliæ concessu Cæsaris, quàm ipsorum  
 of Gaul with the permission of Cæsar, than by their  
 beneficio. Accusatus tali modo, respondit  
 favor. Having been accused in such manner, he replied  
 ad hæc "Quod movisset castra, factum  
 to these (things) "That he had moved the camp, it was done  
 inopiā pabuli, ipsis etiam hortantibus, quòd  
 by want of forage, they themselves even urging, that  
 accessisset propius Romanos, persuasum  
 he had approached nearer the Romans, he was induced  
 opportunitate loci, qui defenderet, se ipsum  
 by the advantage of the place, which would protect, its own self  
 munitione; verò opem equitum  
 by the defence; (that) indeed the service of the horsemen  
 debuisse (inf.) neque desiderari in palustri loco,  
 ought not to be wanted in a marshy place,  
 et fuisse utilem illic, quòd  
 and they to have been [were] useful there, where  
 profecti sint; se consultò discedentem  
 they had gone; (that) he on purpose (when) departing  
 tradidisse summam imperii nulli, ne  
 to have [had] conferred the chief command on no one, lest  
 is impelleretur ad dimicandum studio multi-  
 he might be driven to fighting by the zeal of the  
 tudinis; cui rei, videret omnes studere,  
 multitude; to which thing, it seemed all to be [was] eager.  
 propter mollitiem<sup>19</sup> animi, quòd possent  
 on account of (their) weakness of mind, because they could

non diutiùs ferre laborem. Si Romani-  
 no longer endure labor. If the Romans  
 intervenerint casu gratiam habendam  
 had come up by chance, that, thanks must be given  
 fortunæ, si vocati indicio alicujus, huic,<sup>20</sup>  
 to fortune, if invited by the information of any one to him,  
 quòd et potuèrint cognoscère eorum paucitatem  
 because they could both (to) perceive their small number  
 ex superiore loco, et despicère  
 from the higher ground, and (could) (to) despise  
 virtutem qui non ausi dimicare turpiter  
 the courage (of those) who not having dared to fight basely  
 receperint se in castra. Se desiderare (inf.)  
 had betaken themselves into camp. He desires  
 nullum imperium à Cæsare per proditionem,  
 no sovereign power from Cæsar by treason,  
 quòd posset habere victoriâ, quæ esset  
 because he was able (to) have (it) by victory, which was  
 jam explorata sibi ac omnibus Gallis; quin  
 now certain to himself and to all the Gauls; but,  
 etiam remittere ipsis, si videantur tribuere  
 even he to [would] resign to them, if they seemed to confer  
 honorem sibi magis, quàm accipere (inf.)  
 honor on him rather, than (that) they had received  
 salutem ab se." Inquit, "ut intelligatis  
 safety from himself." He said, "in order that you may know  
 hæc pronunciari sincerè à me, audite  
 these things to be [are] announced truly by me, hear  
 Romanos milites." Producit servos quos  
 the Roman soldiers." He brings forward slaves whom  
 exceperat in pabulatione, paucis diebus antè,  
 he had captured in foraging, a few days before,  
 et excruciaverat et fame que vinculis.  
 and had tortured both by hunger and chains.  
 Hi edocti jam antè, quæ pronunciarent  
 They having been taught already before, what they should declare  
 interrogati, dicunt se esse legionarios,  
 (when) interrogated, say that they were legionary soldiers



adductos fame et inopiâ  
 (and) (having been) led by hunger and want  
 exisse clam ex castris si possent  
 to have [had] gone out secretly from camp if they were able  
 reperire quid frumenti aut pecoris in  
 [could] (to) find any (of) corn or cattle in  
 agris; omnem exercitum premi  
 the fields; (that) all the army to be [was] oppressed  
 simili inopiâ; nec vires cujusquam jam  
 by a like want: nor (does) the strength of any one now  
 sufficere, nec posse ferre laborem  
 (to) suffice, nor to be [are they] able to bear the labor  
 opëris. Itaque imperatorem statuisse, si  
 of the work. Therefore the commander to have [had] resolved, if  
 profecissent nihil in oppugnatione oppidi,  
 he accomplished nothing in the siege of the town,  
 deducere exercitum triduo. "Hæc beneficia,"  
 to withdraw (his) army in three days "These benefits,"  
 inquit Vercingetorix, "habetis à me, quem  
 said Vercingetorix, "you have from me, whom  
 insimulatis proditiōis, cujus opërâ videtis tantum  
 you accuse of treason. by whose means you see so great  
 victorem exercitum pænè consumptum fame,  
 a conquering army nearly destroyed by hunger,  
 sine vestro sanguine; quem, turpiter recipientem  
 without your blood, which, disgracefully betaking  
 se ex hac fugâ, provisum est à me, ne  
 itself on this flight it had been provided by me, not  
 qua civitas recipiat suis finibus."  
 any state shall receive in its territories."  
 21. Omnis multitudo conclamat et concrepat  
 All the multitude shout and rattle  
 armis suo more, quod consueverunt  
 with (their) arms in their manner, which they are accustomed  
 facere in eo cujus orationem approbant,  
 to do for him whose speech they were approving.  
 "Vercingetorigem esse summum ducem, nec  
 "Vercingetorix to be [is] the greatest general, nor

dubitandum de ejus fide, nec  
must it be doubted concerning his faithfulness, nor

posse bellum administrari majore  
to be possible [could] the war (to) be carried on with greater  
ratione." Statuunt ut decem millia hominum  
judgement." They decree that ten thousand men

delecta ex omnibus copiis snbmittantur in  
selected from all the forces should be sent into

oppidum; nec censent communem salutem  
the town: nor do they think the general safety

committendum Biturigibus solis, quodd  
to [must] be committed to the Bituriges alone, because

intelligebant summam victoriae  
they were understanding (that) the completeness of the victory

constare pænè in eo, si retinuissent  
would depend almost upon this, if they should hold

oppidum.  
the town.

22. Consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant  
The plans of every kind of the Gauls were opposing

singulari virtuti nostrorum militum, ut est (sing.)  
the uncommon bravery of our soldiers, as they are

genus summæ sollertiæ, atque aptissimum ad  
a nation of the greatest ingenuity, and very apt for [at]

imitandi atque efficienda, quæ traduntur  
imitating and making (things), which are imparted

ab quoque. Nam avertebant falces laqueis,  
by any one. For they were turning the hooks with nooses.

quos<sup>21</sup> quum destinaverant, reducebant introrsus  
which when they had caught, they were hauling within

tormentis, et subtrahebant aggerem cuniculis,  
by engines, and they were undermining the mound by tunnels,

eò scientiùr, quodd apud eos sunt magnæ  
the more skilfully, because among them are great

ferrariæ, atque omne genus cuniculorum est notum  
iron mines, and all kinds of tunnels are known

atque usitatam. Autem contabulaverant totum  
and employed. Moreover they had fortified the entire

murum ex omni parte turribus, atque intexerant  
 wall on all parts with towers, and had covered  
 has coriis: tum crebris diurnis que nocturnis  
 these with hides: also in (their) frequent daily and nightly  
 eruptionibus, aut inferebant ignem aggeri,  
 sallies, either they were setting fire to the mound,  
 aut adoriebantur milites occupatos in opere; et  
 or were attacking our soldiers occupied in the work; and  
 adæquabant altitudinem nostrarum turrium,  
 they were equaling the height of our towers,  
 quantum agger quotidianus expresserat has,  
 as much as the mound daily raised them.  
 malis suarum turrium commissis; et  
 the masts of their towers having been joined [spliced]; and  
 morabantur apertos cuniculos præustâ et  
 they were retarding (our) open tunnels by burnt and  
 præacutâ materiâ, et fervefactâ pice, et saxis  
 very sharp stakes, and by boiling pitch, and by stones  
 maximi ponderis, que prohibebant  
 of very great weight, and they were checking (us from)  
 appropinquare (inf.) mœnibus.  
 approaching the walls.

23. Autem hæc est ferè forma omnibus Gallicis  
 Moreover this is generally the form of all the Gallic

muris. Directæ trabes perpetuæ in longitudinem,  
 walls. Straight beams continuous in length,

binos pedes distantes paribus intervallis inter  
 two feet distant at equal intervals between

se<sup>22</sup> collocantur in solo. Hæ revinciuntur  
 themselves are placed on the ground. These are made fast

introrsus, et vestiuntur multo aggere.  
 within, and are covered with much mound-filling.

Autem hæc intervalla, quæ diximus  
 But those intervals, which we have mentioned,

effarciuntur in fronte grandibus saxis. Iis  
 are filled up in front with great stones. These

collocatis et coagmentatis, alius ordo  
 having been placed and united together. another row

adjicitur insuper, ut illud idem intervallum  
is put above, so that, this same interval

servetur, neque trabes contingant inter  
may be observed, nor the beams may touch among

se,<sup>23</sup> sed intermissæ paribus spatiis, singulæ  
themselves, but are separated by equal spaces, each

contineantur (pl.) artè singulis interjectis saxis:  
kept in place closely by the several interposed stones

sic deinceps omne opus contextitur, dum  
so successively the whole work is bound together, till

justa altitudo muri expleatur. Quum hoc  
the proper height of the wall is completed. Not only this

opus est non deforme in speciem que varietatem  
work is not unsightly in appearance and variety

alternis trabibus ac saxis, quæ servant suos  
by the alternate beams and stones, which preserve their

ordines rectis lineis, tum habet ad utilitatem,  
order in straight lines, but also it has for utility,

et defensionem urbium summam opportunitatem,  
and defence of cities great advantage,

quòd et lapis defendit ab incendio, et  
because both the stone protects from fire, and

materia ab ariete, quæ  
the wood-work from the battering-ram, which (having been)

revincta introrsùs trabibus plerumque perpetuis  
fastened internally by beams mostly continuous (for)

quadragenos pedes, potest neque perrumpi,  
forty feet, can neither be broken through,

neque distrahi.  
nor rent apart.

24. Oppugnatione impedita tot iis  
The siege having been impeded by so many these

rebus, quum milites tardarentur tōto  
(such) things, though the soldiers were retarded the whole

tempore luto, frigore, et assiduis imbribus, tamen  
time by mud, cold, and continual rains, yet

superaverunt omnia hæc continenti labore,  
they overcame all these (things) by their continual labor,

et viginti quinque diebus, extruxerunt aggerem  
 and in twenty five days, they constructed a mound  
 trecentos et triginta pedes latum, octoginta  
 three hundred and twenty feet wide, (and) eighty  
 pedes altum. Quum is pænè contingeret  
 feet high. When this (mound) had nearly touched  
 murum hostium, et Cæsar excubaret ad opus  
 the wall of the enemy, and Cæsar kept watch at the work  
 consuetudine, que exhortaretur milites, quod ne  
 by his custom, and encouraged the soldiers, that no  
 tempus omnino intermitteretur ab opere, paula  
 time at all should be lost from the work a little  
 ante tertiam vigiliam, est animadversum  
 before the third watch, it was observed (that)  
 aggerem fumare (inf.), quem hostes succendèrant  
 the mound (to) smoked, which the enemy had fired  
 cuniculo; que eodem tempore clamore sublato  
 by a mine; and at the same time a shout having been raised  
 toto muro, eruptio fiebat duabus portis ab  
 on all the wall, a sally was made from two gates on  
 utroque latere turrium. Alii eminus jaciebant  
 each side of the towers. Some from a distance were throwing  
 faces atque aridam materiem de muro in  
 torches and dry material from the wall on  
 aggerem; alii fundebant picem que reliquas res,  
 the mound; others were pouring pitch and other things,  
 quibus ignis potest incitari; ut ratio posset  
 by which the fire might be encouraged; so that a plan could  
 vix iniri, quò primum occurreretur,<sup>24</sup> aut  
 scarcely be adopted, where first they should obstruct, or  
 cui rei auxilium ferretur;  
 to which affair [predicament] aid should be brought;  
 tamen quòd, instituto Cæsar, duæ legiones  
 however as, by the arrangement of Cæsar, two legions  
 semper excubabant pro castris, que plures partitis  
 always were watching before the camp, and many at allotted  
 temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut  
 times were at work, it was quickly managed, that

alli resisterent eruptionibus, alli reducèrent  
 some should oppose the sallies, others should draw back  
 turres que interscindèrent aggerem; verò  
 the towers and cut off the mound; and indeed

omnis multitudo concurrent ex castris ad  
 (that) a whole multitude should run from the camp to  
 restinguendum.  
 extinguish (the fire).

25. Quum pugnaretur<sup>25</sup> in omnibus locis,  
 When it was fought in all places,

reliquâ parte noctis jam consumptâ, que  
 the remaining portion of the night now having been spent, and

spes victoriæ semper redintegraretur hostibus(dat.),  
 the hope of victory continually was renewed in the enemy,

magis eò quòd videbant pluteos turrium  
 the more so because they were seeing the coverings of the towers

deustos, animadvertabant apertos nec  
 burnt off. (and) were observing (that we) unprotected not

facile adire ad auxiliandum, que ipsi  
 easily to go [approached] for aiding, and they

recentes semper succedèrent defessis(dat.).  
 fresh all the time were succouring the wearied,

que arbitrarentur omnem salutem Gallie  
 and (they) were judging (that) all the safety of Gaul

positam<sup>26</sup> in illo vestigio temporis, accidit  
 (was) placed in that instant of time, there happened

nobis inspectantibus quod visum dignum  
 to us observing (that) which seemed (to be) worthy

memoriâ existimavimus non prætermittendum.  
 (of) memory we have thought to [it must] not be passed over.

Quidam Gallum ante portam oppidi, qui è  
 A certain Gaul before the gate of the town, who from

regione turris projiciebat glebas sevi ac  
 the locality of the tower was throwing lumps of tallow and

picis in ignem, transditas per manus(pl.);  
 pitch into the fire, passed along by hand,

transjectus ab dextra latere scorpione, que  
 having been pierced on the right side by the cross-bow, and

exanimatus concidit; unus ex proximis  
 struck lifeless fell; one from [of] the nearest  
 transgressus hunc jacentem fungebatur illo  
 having stepped over him lying prostrate, was discharging that  
 eodem manere; eadem ratione altero exani-  
 same duty; in the same manner the other having been  
 mate ictu scorpionis, tertius successit,  
 killed by a stroke of the cross-bow, a third succeeded,  
 et quartus tertio; nec ille locus relictus est  
 and a fourth to the third; nor that place was left  
 vacuus à propugnatoribus, prius quàm aggere  
 vacant by the defenders, before (that) the mound  
 restincto atque hostibus submotis  
 (having been) extinguished and the enemy having been repulsed  
 omni parte, finis factus est pugnandi.  
 on every side, an end was made of the fighting.

26. Galli experti omnia, quod nulla res  
 The Gauls having tried all things, because no thing

successerat, postero die ceperunt consilium profugere  
 had succeeded, on the next day adopted the plan to flee  
 ex oppido, Vercingetorige hortante et jubente.  
 from the town, Vercingetorix advising and commanding.

Sperabant, conati id silentio noctis  
 They were hoping, having attempted it in the silence of the night

sese effecturos non magnâ  
 (that) they about to [would] accomplish (it) with no great

jacturâ suorum, propterea quòd castra  
 loss of their (men), because (that) the camp

Vercingetorigis aberant neque longè ab oppido,  
 of Vercingetorix was distant not far from the town,

et perpetua palus, quæ intercedebat, tardabat<sup>27</sup>  
 and a continuous marsh, which was intervening, would retard

Romanos ad insequendum. Que jam  
 the Romans for [in] following. And already

apparabant facere hoc noctu, quum matres  
 they were preparing to do this by night, when the mothers

familias repente procurrerunt in publicum,  
 of families [matrons] suddenly ran out into public.

que flentes projectæ ad pedes suorum  
and weeping having thrown (themselves) at the feet of their

petierunt omnibus precibus, ne  
(husbands) they begged with all entreaties, that they would not  
dederent se et communes liberos hostibus  
give up themselves and (their) common children to the enemy

ad supplicium, quos natura, et infirmitas  
for punishment, whom nature, and the weakness

virium (pl.) impediret ad capiendam fugam.  
of (their) strength prevented for [from] taking flight.

Ubi viderunt eos perstaré (inf.) in  
When they saw (that) they persisted in (their)

sententiâ, quòd plerumque in summo periculo  
design, because generally in the greatest danger

timor recipit non misericordiam, cæperunt conclamare,  
fear admits not mercy, they began to cry out,

et significare de fugâ Romanis;  
and to give warning concerning the flight to the Romans;

quo timore Galli perterriti, ne viâ  
by which fear the Gauls having been alarmed, lest the road

præoccuparentur ab equitatu Romanorum destiterunt  
should be preoccupied by the cavalry of the Romans they desisted

consilio.

from (their) design.

27. Cæsar, postéro die turri pro-  
Cæsar, on the next day the tower having been

motâ, que operibus directis, quæ  
moved forward, and the works having been arranged, which

instituërat facere, magno imbri coorto,  
he had determined to make, a great storm having arisen,

arbitratus est hanc tempestatem non inutilè ad  
thought this time not unsuited for

capiendum consilium, quòd videbat custodias  
carrying out the plan, because he was seeing the guards

in muro dispositas paulò incautiùs; que  
on the wall arranged a little more carelessly; and

jussit suos versari in opere langui-  
he ordered his (men) to be occupied in the work rather



diùs, et ostendit quid vellet fieri.  
 sluggishly, and showed what he wished to be done.

Cohortatus legiones expeditas in occulto  
 Having exhorted the legions prepared in a concealed place

intra vineas, ut aliquando perciperent fructum  
 within the sheds, that at length they would receive the fruit

victoriæ pro tantis laboribus, proposuit præmia  
 of victory for such great labors, he offers rewards

his, qui primi ascendissent murum, que dedit  
 to those, who first should scale the wall, and gave

signum militibus. Illi subito evolaverunt ex  
 the signal to the soldiers. They suddenly flew out from

omnibus partibus, que celeriter complerunt murum.  
 all sides, and quickly filled the wall.

28. Hostes perterriti novâ re,  
 The enemy having been alarmed by the sudden affair

dejecti muro que turribus,  
 [action], (having been) driven from the wall and towers,

constiterunt cuneatim foro ac patentioribus  
 they drew up as a wedge in the square and more open

locis, hâc animo, ut si ex quâ parte venire-  
 places, with this idea, that if on any side (any one) should

tur<sup>28</sup> contra obviam depugnarent acie  
 come against they might fight with a line of battle

instructâ. Ubi viderunt neminem demittere  
 drawn up. When they saw (that) no one lowered

sese in æquum locum, sed undique circum-  
 himself into the level place, but on every side they were

fundi toto muro, veriti ne omnino  
 spread around on the whole wall, having feared lest altogether

spes fugæ tolleretur, armis  
 the hope of flight might be taken away, (their) arms

abjectis petiverunt ultimas partes  
 having been thrown away they sought the farthest parts

oppidi continenti impetu; que ibi pars,  
 of the town with a continuous rush; and there a part,

quum ipsi premerent se angusto exitu  
 as they crowded themselves in the narrow passage

portarum, interfecta est à militibus, pars  
of the gates, was killed by the soldiers, (and) a part

jam egressa portis, ab equitibus; nec  
already having passed the gates, by the horsemen; nor

fuit quisquam qui studeret prædæ.  
was there any one who was attending to plunder. (Having

Incitati sic et cæde Cenabensi,  
been) excited so much both by the slaughter at Cenabum,

et labore opëris perpecerunt non  
and by the labor of the work they spared neither (those)

confectis ætate, non mulieribus non infantibus.  
worn out with age, nor women nor children.

Denique ex omni eo numero, qui fuit circiter  
Finally out of all this number, which was about

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo  
forty thousand, scarcely eight hundred, who, the first

clamore audito, ejecerant se ex  
shout having been heard, had thrown themselves from

oppido, pervenerunt incolumes ad Vercingetorigem;  
the town, came safe to Vercingetorix;

quos ille, nocte jam multâ, excepit  
whom he, the night (being) now much [late], received

sic ex fugâ silentio (veritus ne qua seditio  
thus from the flight in silence (having feared lest some sedition

oreretur in castris ex eorum concursu, et  
might arise in the camp from their gathering, and

misericiordiâ volgi) ut suis familiaribus, que  
from the compassion of the throng) that his friends, and

principibus civitatum, dispositis procul  
the chiefs of the states, having been located at a distance

in viâ curaret disparandos que  
on the road he took care (that) they should be separated and

deducendos ad suos, quæ<sup>29</sup> pars castris  
be conducted to their (own people). which part of the camp

obvenerat cuique civitati ab initio.  
had fallen to each state from the beginning.

29. Postero die concilio convocato,  
On the following day a council having been called

consolatus que cohortatus est "ne  
 he consoled and exhorted, "they should not be  
 admodum demitterent se animo, neve perturbarentur  
 too much cast down in mind, nor troubled  
 incommodo: Romanos non vicisse virtute  
 by (their) loss; (that) the Romans had not conquered by bravery  
 neque in acie, sed quodam artificio et  
 nor in a battle-line, but by a certain skill and  
 scientiâ oppugnationis, ejus rei ipsi fuerint  
 by the science of siege, of which thing they were  
 imperiti; errare, si qui expectent in bello  
 unskilled; (those) err, if they expect in war  
 omnes eventus rerum secundos; nunquam  
 all results of affairs (to be) prosperous; never  
 placuisse sibi Avaricum defendi,  
 had it pleased him (that) Avaricum to [should] be defended,  
 ejus rei haberet ipsos testes; sed  
 of which thing he had themselves as witnesses; but  
 factum imprudentiâ Biturigum et  
 to have been (it was) done by the imprudence of the Bituriges and  
 niminâ obsequentîâ reliquorum, uti hoc  
 by the too great compliance of the rest, that this  
 incommodum acciperetur; tamen se sanaturum  
 disaster was received; however he would remedy  
 id celeriter majoribus commodis. Nam civitates  
 this quickly by greater advantages. For the states  
 quæ dissentirent ab reliquis Gallis, has suâ  
 which dissented from the other Gauls, these by his  
 diligentîâ adjuncturum, atque unum consilium totius  
 exertion would be united, and one counsel of all  
 Galliæ effecturum, ejus consensui (dat.) orbis  
 Gaul would be effected, whose union the whole  
 terrarum quidem possit ne obsistere;  
 world indeed would be able [could] not (to) oppose;  
 que se habere prope jam effectum id.  
 and he to have [had] nearly already effected this  
 Interâ esse æquum impet-  
 in the mean time to be [it was] just (that) to [it should]

rari ab iis causâ communis salutis,  
 be obtained from them for the sake of the general safety,  
 ut instituèrent munire castra, quo  
 that they should decree to fortify their camp, so that  
 possent facilius sustinere  
 they would be able [could] the more easily (to) resist  
 repentinos impetus hostium."  
 the sudden attacks of the enemy."

30. Hac oratio fuit non ingrata Gallis, quòd  
 This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls, because  
 ipse non defecerat animo, tanto incommodo  
 he himself had not failed in courage, so great a loss  
 accepto, neque abdiderat se in occultum,  
 having been received, neither had he hid himself in secret,  
 neque fugerat conspectum multitudinis: que  
 nor fled the sight of the multitude: and  
 existimabatur providere et præsentire, plus  
 he was thought to foresee and to forecast, more  
 animo quòd, re integrâ, con-  
 in mind because, the matter (being) not begun, he ha  
 suerat primo Avaricum incendendum,  
 decided first (that) Avaricum to [should] be burnt  
 post deserendum. Itaque ut adversæ  
 afterwards (that) it to [should] be deserted. And so as adverse  
 res minuunt auctoritatem reliquorum imperatorum;  
 affairs diminish the authority of other commanders;  
 sic ex contrario dignitas hujus incommodo  
 so on the contrary the authority of this one a loss  
 accepto, augebatur in dies:  
 having been sustained, was increased (from day) to day:  
 simul vinebant in, spem, ejus  
 at the same time they were coming into, the hope, of his  
 affirmatione, de adjungendis reliquis civitatibus; que  
 assertion, of uniting the other states; and  
 primùm Galli eo tempore instituerunt munire  
 first the Gauls at this time undertook to fortify  
 castra; et sic homines insueti laboris  
 their camp; and so men unaccustomed to labor

confirmati sunt animo, ut existimarent omnia  
were encouraged in mind. that they sought (that) all

quæ imperarentur patienda sibi.  
(things) which were commanded must be endured by them.

31. Nec Vercingetorix laborabat minùs animo  
Nor Vercingetorix was exerting himself less in mind

quam pollicitus est, ut adjungeret reliquas  
than he had promised, that he might attach the other

civitates, atque alliciebat eorum principes donis  
states, and he was enticing their chiefs by presents

que pollicitationibus. Deligebat idoneos homines  
and promises. He selected suitable men

huic rei, aut subdolâ oratione aut amicitia  
for this affair, either by the wily speech or friendship

quorum quisque posset facillime capi.  
of whom each (chief) might most easily be gained.

Qui refugerant Avarico expugnato,  
Those who had escaped, Avaricum having been stormed,

curat armandos que vestiendos. Simul  
he takes care should be armed and clothed. At the same time

ut diminutæ copiae redintegrarentur, imperat  
that his diminished forces might be renewed, he orders

certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et  
a certain number of soldiers from the states, whom, and

ante quam diem, velit adduci in castra;  
before what day, he wishes to be brought into the camp;

que jubet omnes sagittarios, quorum erat  
and he orders all the archers, of whom there was

permagnus numerus in Galliâ, conquiri, et mitti  
a very great number in Gaul, to be sought, and sent

ad se. His rebus, id quod deperierat  
to him. By these means, this which he had lost

Avarici celeriter expletur. Interim  
at Avaricum was speedily replaced In the mean time

Teutomatus, filius Olloviconis, rex Nitiobrigum,  
Teutomatus, the son of Ollovicon, king of the Nitiobriges,

cujus pater appellatus erat amicus ab nostro Senatu,  
whose father had been called friend by our Senate,

pervenit ad eum, cum magno numero suorum equitum,  
 came to him, with a great number of his cavalry.

et quos conduxerat ex Aquitaniâ.  
 and (those) that he had hired from Aquitania.

32. Cæsar commoratus complures dies Avarici,  
 Cæsar having delayed several days at Avaricum,

que nactus ibi summam copiam frumenti et  
 and having obtained there the greatest supply of corn and

reliqui commeatus, refecit exercitum ex labore  
 of other provisions, refreshed his army from labor

atque inopiâ. Hieme jam prope confectâ,  
 and want. The winter having been now nearly ended,

quum tempore ipso anni vacaretur ad  
 when by the season itself of the year he was at leisure for

gerendum bellum, et constituisset proficisci  
 carrying on war, and he had determined to march

ad hostem, sive elicere eum ex paludibus  
 against the enemy, either to entice him from the marshes

que silvis, sive posset premere obsidione,  
 and woods, or that he might crush by a siege,

legati principes Æduorum veniunt ad eum  
 ambassadors chiefs of the Ædui come to him

oratum ut maxime necessario tempore  
 to entreat that in an especially necessary [critical] time

subveniat civitati; "rem esse in summo  
 he should assist the state; "their affairs to be [are] in extreme

periculo; quòd quum singuli magistratus cre-  
 danger; that whereas single magistrates had been

ari antiquitus, atque consuèssent obtinere  
 appointed of old, and were accustomed to possess

regiam potestatem annum; duo gerant magistratum,  
 a kingly power for one year; two hold the magistracy,

et uterque eorum dicat se creatum esse  
 and each of them asserts (that) he was appointed

legibus. Horum alterum esse Convictrolitavem  
 by the laws. Of these the one was Convictrolitavis

florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum  
 a distinguished, and illustrious young man, the other Cotus

natum antiquissimâ familiâ, atque ipsum hominem  
sprung from a most ancient family, and himself a man

summæ potentiae, et magnæ cognationis, cujus  
of the highest power, and of great connections, whose

frater Valetiacus gesserit eundem magistratum  
brother Valetiacus had held the same magistracy

proximo anno; omnem civitatem esse in armis;  
the last year; the whole state was in arms;

senatum divisum, populum divisum, suas  
the senate was divided, the people divided, their

clientelas<sup>30</sup> cujusque eorum: quod si controversia  
partisans of each of them: that if the dispute

alatur diutiùs, fore uti pars civitatis  
is formed longer, it would happen that a part of the state

confligat cum parte; id ne accidat  
would collide with a part; (that) this may not happen

positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.  
was placed [rested] in his exertion and authority.

33. Cæsar, etsi existimabat detrimentosum  
Cæsar, although he thought it injurious

descedere à bello atque hoste; tamen non  
to depart from the war and the enemy; yet not

ignorans quanta incommoda consuissent oriri  
being ignorant how great wrongs were wont to arise

ex dissensionibus; ne tanta civitas et tam  
from dissensions; lest so great a state and so

conjuncta Romano populo, quam ipse semper  
connected with the Roman people, which he always

aluisset, que ornasset omnibus rebus, descenderet  
had cherished, and honored in all things, should resort

ad vim atque ad arma; atque ea pars quæ  
to violence and to arms, and this part which

confidëret minùs sibi accerseret auxilia à  
might confide least in him should call for assistance from

Vercingetorige; existimavit huic rei præ-  
Vercingetorix; he thought (that) this action ought

vertendum; et quòd legibus Æduorum,  
to be anticipated; and because by the laws of the Ædui,

iis qui obtinērent summum magistratum  
to these who possessed the chief magistracy  
non liceret excedere ex finibus; ne  
it was not allowed to depart from (their) territories, lest  
videretur deminuisse quid de eorum  
he should seem to have curtailed any thing respecting their  
jure aut legibus, ipse statuit proficisci in  
authority or laws, he himself resolved to set out to  
Æduos, que evocavit omnem senatum, et  
the Ædui, and he summoned all the senate, and (those)  
intra quos controversia esset, ad se  
among whom the controversy might be, to (meet) him  
Decetiam. Quum propè omnis civitas  
at Decetia [Decize]. When nearly the whole state  
convenisset eò, que doceretur fratrem  
had assembled there, and he was informed (that) a brother  
renunciatum à fratre, paucis clam vocatis,  
had been proclaimed by a brother, a few having been secretly called,  
alio loco, alio tempore, atque  
in another place, (and) at another time, than  
oportuērit; quum leges non solum vetarent  
was proper, when the laws not only were forbidding  
duos ex unâ familiâ, utroque vivo, creari  
two of one family, both being alive, to be chosen  
magistratus, sed etiam prohibērent esse in  
magistrates, but also were forbidding (them) to be in  
senatu; coēgit Cotum deponere magistratum;  
the senate; he compelled Cotus to resign the magistracy  
jussit Convictolitavem, qui esset creatus per  
he ordered Convictolitavis, who had been chosen through  
sacerdotes more civitatis, magistratibus  
the priests after the custom of the state, the magistracy  
intermissis, obtinere potestatem.  
having lapsed, to hold the power [office].  
34. Hic decreto interposito, cohortatus  
This decree having been delivered, he exhorted  
Æduos ut obliviscerentur controversiarum  
the Ædui that they should forget (their) controversies



ac dissensionum, atque omnibus rebus omis-  
 and dissensions, and all things having been  
 sis, servirent huic bello, que expectarent  
 laid aside, they should attend to this war, and might expect  
 ea præmia, quæ meruissent, ab se, Galliâ  
 those rewards, which they should merit, from him, Gaul  
 devictâ, que mitterent omnem  
 having been conquered, and (that) they should send all  
 equitatum, et decem millia peditum celeriter  
 the cavalry, and ten thousand footmen speedily  
 sibi, quæ disponeret in præsiis causâ  
 to him, whom he might place in garrisons for the sake  
 rēi frumentariæ; divisit exercitum in duas  
 of the grain supply; he divided (his) army into two  
 partes; dedit quatuor legiones Labieno ducendas  
 parts; he gave four legions to Labienus to be led  
 in Senones que Parisios; ipse duxit sex in  
 into the Senones and Parisii; he himself led six into  
 Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen  
 the Arverni to the town (of) Gergovia down the river  
 Elaver: attribuit partem equitatûs illi,  
 Allier: he gave a part of the cavalry to him (Labienus)  
 reliquit partem sibi. Quâ re cognitâ,  
 he left a part for himself. Which thing having been known  
 Vercingetorix, omnibus potibus ejus fluminis  
 Vercingetorix, all the bridges of this river  
 interruptis, cœpit facere iter ab  
 having been demolished, began to make his march on  
 alterâ parte fluminis.  
 the other side of the river.

35. Quum uterque exercitus exisset in conspectu  
 When each army led out in view  
 que utrimque ponebant castra ferè è  
 and on each side they were pitching a camp almost over  
 regione castris. Exploratoribus dispositis,  
 against a camp. Scouts having been stationed,  
 necubi Romani, transducerent copias,  
 (so) that in no place the Romans, could lead across the forces

ponte effecto; res erat  
a bridge having been built; (this) thing [condition] was

Cæsari in magnis difficultatibus, ne imped-  
to [placed] Cæsar in great difficulties, lest he should

iretur flumine, majorem partem æstatis,  
be hindered by the river, for the greater part of the summer,

quòd Elaver soleat non transiri vado  
because the Allier is wont not to be crossed by fording

ferè ante autumnum. Itaque ne id  
(till) nearly before autumn. Therefore lest this

accidèret, castris positis silvestri lōco  
might happen, the camp having been pitched in a woody place

è regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercin-  
opposite one of these bridges, which Vercin-

getorix curaverat rescindendos, postèro die  
getorix had provided should be destroyed, on the next day

restitit in occulto, cum duabus legionibus;  
he remained in a concealed place, with two legions;

misit, ut consueverat reliquas copias  
he sent, as he had been accustomed the remaining forces

cum omnibus impedimentis, quibusque quartis  
with all the baggage, each fourth

cohortibus demptis, uti numèrus legionum  
cohort having been removed, so that the number of the legions

videretur constare. Iis jussis progredi  
should seem to agree. These having been ordered to advance

quàm longissimè possent, quum jam ex  
as far (as) they could, when at last from

tempore diei caperet conjecturam per-  
the time of day he could make the conjecture (that) they

ventum in castra, cœpit reficere pontem  
had arrived to [in] camp, he began to rebuild the bridge

iisdem publicis inferior pars quarum remanebat  
on the same piles the lower part of which was remaining

integra. Opère celeriter effecto, que  
entire. The work quickly having been completed. and

legionibus transductis, et idoneo loco  
the legions having been led over, and a suitable place

castris delecto, revocavit reliquas copias.  
for a camp having been selected, he recalled the remaining forces.

Vercingetorix, re cognitâ, ne  
Vercingetorix, the thing [event] having been learned, lest

cogeretur dimicare contra suam voluntatem,  
he might be forced to fight against his will,

antecessit magnis itineribus.  
preceded (him) by great [forced] marches.

36. Cæsar pervenit Gergoviam, ex eo loco,  
Cæsar reached Gergovia, from this place,

quintis castris que levi equestri prælio  
on the fifth encampment and a slight cavalry battle

facto eo die, situ urbis  
having been fought on this day, the situation of the town

perspecto, quæ posita in  
having been reconnoitred, which (having been) placed on

altissimo monte, habebat omnes aditus  
a very high mountain, was having all the approaches

difficiles, desperavit de expugnatione; constituit  
difficult, he despaired of an assault; he determined

non agendum<sup>31</sup> de obsessione  
(that) not to be [it must not be] acted respecting the siege

prius quam expedisset rem frumentariam. At  
before (that) he had secured a grain supply. But

Vercingetorix castris positis prope oppidum,  
Vercingetorix (his) camp having been placed near the town,

in monte, collocaverat copias singularum  
on the mountain, had stationed the forces of each

civitatum separatim, circum se, mediocribus  
state separately, around himself, at moderate

intervallis; atque omnibus collibus ejus jugi  
intervals; and all the hills of this range

occupatis quâ poterat despici,  
having been occupied where it was possible to be viewed,

præbebat horribilem speciem: que jubebat  
he was presenting a formidable appearance; and he was ordering

principes earum civitatum, quos delegerat  
the chiefs of these states, whom he had selected

sibi ad capiendum consilium, convenire ad  
 for himself for taking counsel, to come to  
 se quotidie primâ luce seu quid  
 him daily at first light [early dawn], whether anything  
 videretur communicandum, seu quid minis-  
 might seem best to be discussed, or anything (to) be  
 trandum; neque intermittebat ferè ullum diem,  
 performed; nor was he omitting scarcely any day,  
 quin periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis  
 but that he was trying what (of) spirit and (of) courage  
 esset in quoque suorum equestri prælio,  
 might be in each of his men by cavalry engagements,  
 sagittariis interjectis. Erat collis è  
 the archers having been intermixed. There was a hill  
 regione oppidi sub ipsis radicibus montis  
 opposite the town at the very roots [foot] of the mountain  
 egregiè munitus, atque circumcisis ex omni parte  
 excellently fortified, and precipitous on every side  
 (quem si nostri tenerent, videbantur  
 (which if our men could hold, they would seem (able)  
 prohibitori hostes et<sup>32</sup> ex magnâ parte  
 to prevent the enemy both in great part (from)  
 aquæ (gen.), et liberâ pabulatione); sed is  
 water, and from free foraging); but this  
 locus tenebatur ab iis præsidio non nimis  
 place was held by them with a garrison not very  
 firmo; tamen, Cæsar egressus ex castris  
 strong; however, Cæsar having marched out from the camp  
 silento noctis, priùs quàm subsidium posset  
 in the silence of the night, before (that) aid could  
 venire ex oppido, præsidio dejecto,  
 come from the town, the garrison having been dislodged,  
 potitus loco, collocavit duas legiones, ibi,  
 having seized the place, he stationed two legions there,  
 que perduxit duplicem fossam duodenûm pedum  
 and led a double trench (of) twelve feet  
 à majoribus castris ad minora, ut  
 (wide) from the greater camp to the lesser, (so) that

etiam singuli posset commeare tuto ab  
even a single (soldier) could pass safely from [on]

repentino incursu hostium.  
the sudden attack of the enemy.

37. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,  
While these things are passing at Gergovia,

Convictolitis, Æduus, cui demonstravimus  
Convictolitis, the Æduan, to whom we have shown

magistratum abjudicatum à Cæsare sollicitatus  
the magistracy was adjudged by Cæsar having been solicited

pecuniâ ab Arvernīs colloquitur cum quibusdam  
with money by the Arverni confers with certain

adolescentibus quorum Litavicus erat princeps, atque  
young men of whom Litavicus was the chief, and

ejus fratres, adolescentes nati amplissimâ familiâ,  
his brothers, young men born of most illustrious family,

communicat præmium cum iis, que hortatur eos  
he shares the money with them, and exhorts them

ut meminerint se liberos, et natos  
that they should remember (that) they (were) free, and born

imperio: "esse unam civitatem Æduorum quæ  
for empire: "it was alone the state of the Ædui which

distineat certissimam victoriam Galliæ; reliquas  
retards the most certain victory of the Gauls, the rest

contineri ejus auctoritate, quâ trans-  
were restrained by its authority, which having been brought

ductâ, non fore locum Romanis consistendi  
over, there would not be a place for the Romans to stand on

in Galliâ, se esse affectum nonnullo beneficio  
in Gaul, he was affected by a considerable benefit

Cæsar tamen sic ut obtinuerit justissimam  
of Cæsar however so that he had obtained a most just

causam apud eum; sed tribuere (inf.) plus  
cause through him; but (he) assigns more

communi libertati. Enim cur Ædui  
to (their) common liberty. For why should the Ædui

veniant ad Cæsarem disceptatorem de suo jure  
come to Cæsar as arbiter about their rights

et de legibus potiùs quàm Romani ad  
and about their laws rather than the Romans to  
Æduos?" Adolescentibus deductis  
the Ædui?" The young men having been brought over

celeriter, et oratione magistratûs, et præmio,  
speedily, both by the speech of the magistræte, and the bribe,  
quum profiterentur, se vel fore principes  
when they promised, that they indeed would be leaders

ejus consilii, ratio perficiendi quærebatur,  
of this enterprise, a plan of executing (it) was inquired into,  
quòd confidebant civitatem non posse  
because they were confident (that) the state could not be

adduci temerè ad suscipiendum bellum.  
induced rashly for [to] undertaking the war.

Placuit ut Litavicus præficeretur illis  
It was resolved that Litavicus should be appointed to those

decem millibus quæ mitterentur Cæsari ad bellum,  
ten thousand that were to be sent to Cæsar for the war,

atque curarat ducenda ea, quæ ejus  
and should have charge of conducting them, and (that) his

fratres præcurrent ad Cæsarem; constituunt  
brothers should go before (him) to Cæsar, they determine

quâ ratione placeat agi reliqua.  
in what manner it may be well to perform the rest.

38. Litavicus, exercitu, accepto quum  
Litavicus, the army, having been received when

abesset circiter triginta millia passuum ab  
he was distant about thirty thousand paces from

Gergoviâ, subito convocatis militibus,  
Gergovia, having suddenly called together the soldiers,

lacrymans inquit, "Quo milites proficiscimur?"  
weeping he said, "Whither O soldiers are we going?"

omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit.  
all our knights, all the nobility have perished,

Eporedorix et Viridomarus principes civitatis  
Eporedorix and Viridomarus chiefs of the state

insimulati prodicionis interfecti sunt ab  
having been accused of treason have been killed by

Romanis causâ indictâ. Cognoscite hæc  
the Romans the case not having been called. Know this

ab iis, qui fugerunt ex ipsâ cæde. Nam  
from these, who have fled from the very massacre. For

ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis  
I (my) brothers and all my relations

interfectis prohibeor dolore pronunciare quæ  
having been killed am prevented by grief from announcing what

gesta sunt." Ii producantur, quos ille edocuerat,  
has been done." Those are produced, whom he had taught

quæ vellet dici, atque eadem, quæ Litavicus  
what he wished to be said, and the same, which Litavicus

pronunciavêrat, exponunt multitudini: "omnes  
had announced, they explain to the multitude: "all

equites Æduorum interfectos, quòd dicerentur  
the knights of the Ædui were slain, because they were said

collocuti cum Arvernīs; ipsos occultasse se  
to have conspired with the Arverni; they had hid themselves

inter multitudinem militum, atque profugisse ex  
among the multitude of soldiers, and had fled from

mediâ cæde." Ædui conclamant, et  
the midst (of the) massacre." The Ædui exclaim, and

obsecrant Litavicum ut consulat sibi,  
conjure Litavicus that he should deliberate for themselves,

"Quasi verò," inquit ille, "res sit  
"As if indeed," said he, "the thing were (a matter)

consilii, ac non sit necesse nobis contendere  
of [for] a plan, and it were not necessary for us to hasten

Gergoviam et conjungere nosmet cum Arvernīs?  
to Gergovia and to unite ourselves with the Arverni?

An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinore  
Or can we doubt, but that, so nefarious a crime

admisso, Romani jam concurrant ad  
having been committed, the Romans now gather for

interficiendos nos? Proinde si est quid animi  
slaying us? Therefore if there is any spirit

in nobis persequamur eorum mortem, qui  
in us let us follow [avenge] their death, who

interierunt indignissimè, atque interficiamus hos  
 have perished most ignobly, and let us slay these  
 latrones." Ostendit Romanos cives, qui erant  
 robbers." He shows the Roman citizens, who were

unà fiduciâ ejus præsidii. Continuo diripit  
 with them in the confidence of his protection. He forthwith seizes  
 magnum numerum frumenti que commeatus;  
 a great quantity of corn and provisions;

interficit ipsos crudeliter excruciatos;  
 he kills them (the Romans) having cruelly tortured (them);

dimittit nuncios totâ civitate Æduorum; permovet  
 he sends messengers in all the state of the Ædui; he excites

ëodem mendacio de cæde  
 (them) with the same falsehood about the massacre

equitum et principum; hortatur ut simili  
 of knights and chiefs; he exhorts (them) that in like

ratione, atque ipse fecerit, persequantur suas  
 manner, as he had done, they should avenge their

injurias.  
 injuries.

39. Eporedorix adolescens natus summo loco,  
 Eporedorix a young man born in the highest rank,

et summæ potentiæ domi, et unà Viridomarus,  
 and of the highest power at home, and also Viridomarus,

pari ætate et gratiâ, sed dispari genere,  
 of equal age and influence, but of unequal lineage,

quem Cæsar perduxerat ad summam dignitatem  
 whom Cæsar had elevated to the highest dignity

ex humili loco, traditum sibi  
 from an humble station, he having been recommended to him

ab Divitiaco, convenërant in numero equitum,  
 by Divitiacus, had come in the number of the horsemen

evocati nominatim ab ëo. Erat  
 (having been) called by name by him (Cæsar). There was

contentio his inter se de  
 a contest (with) these (two) among themselves concerning

principatu; et in illâ controversiâ magistratum  
 rank; and in that dispute of the magistrates



alter pugnaverat pro Convictolitae alter pro  
 the one had contended for Convictolitais the other for  
 Coto summis opibus. Ex iis Eporedorix,  
 Coto with (their) greatest resources. Of these Eporedorix,  
 consilio Litavici cognito defert rem  
 the designs of Litavicus having been learned announced the thing  
 ad Casarem ferè mediâ nocte; orat  
 to Caesar about mid night; he begs (that)  
 ne patiat<sup>ur</sup> civitatem pravis consiliis  
 he would not suffer the state by the wicked counsels  
 adolescentium deficere ab amicitia Romani  
 of young men to fall from the friendship of the Roman  
 populi, quod provideat futurum, si tot millia  
 people, which he foresaw would be, if so many thousands  
 hominum conjunxerint se cum hostibus,  
 of men should have united themselves with the enemy,  
 quorum salutem neque propinqui  
 whose safety neither (their) relations (could)  
 negligere neque posset civitas aestimare levi  
 neglect nor could the state consider (it) of slight  
 momento.  
 importance.

40. Cæsar affectus magnâ sollicitudine  
 Cæsar, (having been) affected with great anxiety  
 hoc nuncio, quod semper præcipuè  
 by this intelligence, because he had always particularly  
 indulserat civitati Æduorum, nullâ debitatione  
 favored the state of the Ædui, no delay  
 interpositâ, educit ex castris quatuor  
 having been interposed, led forth from the camp four  
 expeditas legiones, que omnem equitatum. Nec  
 light-armed legions, and all the cavalry. Nor  
 fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda  
 was there an interval at such a time for contracting  
 castra, quòd res videbatur posita  
 the camp, because the matter seemed placed [depending]  
 in celeritate. Relinquit C. Fabium legatum  
 on speed [dispatch]. He leaves C. Fabius (his) lieutenant

eum duabus legionibus præsidio castris;  
 with two legions for [as] a garrison to the camp,  
 quum jussisset fratres Litavici comprehendi,  
 when he had ordered the brothers of Litavicus to be arrested,  
 reperit profugisse paulo antè ad hostes.  
 he finds (that) they had fled a little before to the enemy.  
 Adhortatus milites, ne permoveantur  
 Having encouraged (his) soldiers, (that) they should not be troubled  
 labore itinèris necessario tempore, omnibus  
 by the labor of the march at (so) necessary a time, all  
 cupidissimis, progressus viginti quinque  
 (being) most eager, having proceeded twenty five  
 millia passuum, conspicatus agmen Æduorum,  
 thousand paces [miles], having seen the army of the Ædui,  
 equitatu immisso, moratur atque  
 the cavalry having been sent against (them), he retards and  
 impedit eorum iter; que interdicat omnibus,  
 impedes their march: and he forbade all,  
 ne interficiant quemquam. Jubet Eporedorigem  
 that they should not kill any one. He orders Eporedorix  
 et Viridomarus, quos ille existimabant interfectos,  
 and Viridomarus, whom they were thinking had been killed,  
 versari inter equites, que appellare suos.  
 to mingle among the horsemen, and to address their  
 his cognitis, et fraude  
 (countrymen). These having been recognized, and the fraud  
 Litavici perspecta, Ædui incipiunt  
 of Litavicus having been perceived; the Ædui began  
 tendere manus et significare deditionem, et  
 to extend (their) hands and to signify submission, and  
 projectis armis deprecari mortem.  
 having thrown away (their) arms to beg off death.  
 Litavicus profugit Gergoviam, cum suis clientibus,  
 Litavicus fled to Gergovia, with his clients,  
 quibus est nefas, more Gallorum, deserere  
 with whom it is a crime, by the custom of the Gauls, to desert  
 patronos, etiam in extremâ fortuna.  
 (their) patrons, even in extreme [bad] fortune.

41. Cæsar, nunciis missis ad civitatem  
 Cæsar, messengers having been sent to the state  
 Æduorum, qui docerent conservatos suo  
 of the Ædui, who should show (that they) had been saved by his  
 beneficio, quos potuisset interficere jure belli,  
 favor, whom he could have killed by the right of war,  
 que tribus horis noctis datis exercitui  
 and three hours of the night having been given to the army  
 ad quietem, movit castra ad Gergoviam.  
 for rest, he moves the camp toward Gergovia.  
 Ferè medio itinère equites, missi à Fabio,  
 About the middle (of the) march horsemen, sent by Fabius,  
 exponunt in quanto periculo res fuerit;  
 reveal in how great danger the affair shall have been  
 demonstrant castra oppugnata summis  
 [wars]; they explain (that) the camp was attacked by very great  
 copiis, quum integri crebrò succederunt  
 forces, as fresh (men) frequently succeeded  
 defessis, que defatigarent nostros assiduo  
 the tired, and exhausted our (men) by the continual  
 labóre, quibus (dat.)<sup>38</sup> propter magnitudinem  
 labor, by whom on account of the size  
 castrorum perpetuò permanendum esset  
 of the camp it must continually be remained [stationed]  
 vallo iisdem, multos vulneratos  
 on the rampart (by) the same, (that) many were wounded  
 multitudine sagittarum, atque omnis generis  
 by the multitude of arrows, and of every kind  
 telorum; ad sustinenda hæc tormenta  
 of weapons; for resisting these the hurling engines  
 fuisse mágno usui; Fabium eorum dicessu,  
 were (of) great use; (that) Fabius on their departure,  
 duabus portis relictis obstruere  
 two gates having been left (open) was blocking up  
 cæteras, que addere pluteos vallo, et se  
 the rest, and adding breastworks to the wall, and (that) he  
 parare ad similem casum in posterum diem  
 was preparing for a like fate on the next day.

his rebus cognitis, Cæsar pervenit in  
 These things having been learned. Cæsar arrived at  
 castra ante ortum solis summo studio  
 the camp before the rising of the sun by the highest exertion  
 militum.  
 of the soldiers.

42. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,  
 While these things are going on at Gergovia,

Ædui, primis nunciis a Litavico accep-  
 the Ædui, the first messages from Litavicus having been  
 tis, relinquunt sibi nullum spatium ad  
 received, leave to themselves no time for  
 cognoscendum. Avaritia impellit alios iracundia  
 ascertaining. Avarice impels some, passion

et temeritas alios, quæ est maximè innata  
 and rashness others, which (last) is especially natural

illi genèri hominum, ut habèant levem  
 to that kind of men, (so) that they hold a slight

auditionem pro re compertâ. Deripiunt bona  
 hearsay for a thing assured. They plunder the goods

Romanorum civium, faciunt cædes, abstra-  
 of Roman citizens, they commit murder, they drag (them)

hunt in servitutum. Convictolitavis adjuvat  
 away into slavery. Convictolitavis advances

proclinatam rem, que impellit plebem ad  
 the ruined condition, and drives the people to

furorem, ut facinore admisso  
 madness, that an enormity having been committed,

pudeat reverti ad sanitatem.  
 it may shame (them) to return to soundness of mind.

Educunt ex oppido Cobillono M. Aristium  
 They drag out from the town (of) Cobillonus M. Aristium

tribunum militum facientem iter ad  
 a tribute of the soldiers making (his) way to (his)

legionem, fide datâ; cogunt eos  
 legion, a pledge having been given; they force those

facere idem, qui constiterant ibi causâ  
 to do the same, who had sojourned there for the purpose

negotiandi. Continuo adorti hos in  
 of trading. Having continually attacked these on (their)  
 itinere, exuunt omnibus impedimentis;  
 journey, they strip (them) of all (their) baggage;  
 obsident repugnantes diem que noctes (pl.);  
 they besiege (those) opposing day and night,  
 multos utrimque interfectis, concitant maiorem  
 many on both sides having been slain, they summon a greater  
 multitudinem ad arma.  
 multitude to arms.

43. Intērim nuntiis allatis, omnes  
 Meantime news having been brought, (that) all  
 eorum milites teneri in potestate Cæsaris,  
 of their soldiers to be [were] held in the power of Cæsar,  
 concurrunt ad Aristium, demonstrant nihil  
 they gather to Aristium, they show (that) nothing  
 factum publico consilio; decernunt quæstionem  
 (was) done by public design; they decree an investigation  
 de bonis direptis; publicant bona  
 concerning the goods plundered, they confiscate the goods  
 Litavici que fratrum; mittunt legatos ad  
 of Litavicus and (his) brothers, they send ambassadors to  
 Cæsarem gratiâ purgandi sui. Hæc,  
 Cæsar for the sake of clearing themselves. These things,  
 faciunt gratiâ recuperandorum suorum;  
 they do for the sake of recovering their (soldiers);  
 sed contaminati facinore et capti compendio  
 but implicated in the crime and taken by the income  
 ex direptis bonis, quod ea res pertinebat  
 from the plundered goods, because this matter was relating  
 ad multos et exterriti timore pœnæ,  
 to many and having been alarmed by the fear of punishment,  
 incipiunt clam inire consilia de bello  
 they begin secretly to entertain plans concerning war  
 que sollicitant legationibus reliquas civitates.  
 and incite with embassies the remaining states.  
 Quæ<sup>34</sup> tametsi Cæsar intellegebat, tamen quam  
 Which things although Cæsar was knowing, yet <sup>34</sup>

mitissime potuit appellat legatos "Nihil  
 mildly as he was able he addresses the ambassadors "In no wise  
 se judicare gravius de civitate propter  
 he judges more severely concerning the state on account of  
 inscientiam que levitatem volgi, neque  
 the ignorance and fickleness of the common people, nor  
 deminuere de sua benevolentia in Æduos."  
 does he abate from his good will toward the Ædui."

Iipse expectans majorem motum Galliæ,  
 He himself apprehending a greater commotion of Gaul,  
 ne circumstisteretur ab omnibus civitatibus,  
 lest he should be surrounded by all the states,

inibat consilia, quemadmodum discederet à  
 was devising plans, as to what manner he might depart from

Gergoviâ ac rursus contraheret omnem  
 Gergovia and again might draw together all (his)

exercitum, ne profectio nata à timore  
 army, lest a departure arising from fear

defectionis, videretur similis fugæ.  
 of a revolt, might seem like (to) a flight.

44. Facultas gerendæ rei bene visa est  
 An opportunity of executing the affair well seemed

accidere cogitanti hæc. Nam quum  
 to occur (to him) meditating these (things). For when

venisset in minora castra causâ perspiciendi  
 he had come to the smaller camp for the purpose of inspecting

operis, animadvertit collem, qui tenebatur  
 the work. he observed (that) the hill, which was held

ab hostibus nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus  
 by the enemy was bared of men, which on former

diebus vix poterat cerni præ multitudine.  
 days scarcely could be discerned for the multitude.

Admiratus quærit causam ex perfugis, quorum  
 Surprised, he inquires the cause of the deserters, of whom

magnus numerus quotidie confluebat ad eum.  
 a great number daily were pouring in, to him.

Constabat inter omnes, quod Cæsar ipse  
 It was agreed by all, which [as] Cæsar himself

cognovērat jam per exploratores, dorsum  
had known already through (his) scouts, (that) the back

ejus jugi esse prope æquum, sed silvestre  
[summit] of this hill was nearly level, but woody

et angustum, quā esset aditus ad altēram  
and narrow where was a passage to the other

partem oppidi, illos timere vehementer  
part of the town, (that) they feared exceedingly

huic lōco; viderentur jam sentire nec aliter,  
for this place, they appeared now to feel not otherwise,

uno colle occupato ab Romanis, si  
one hill having been occupied by the Romans, if

amisissent altērum, quin circumvallati  
they should lose the other. (but) that they would be surrounded

pæne, atque interclusi omni exitu et pabulatione;  
nearly, and cut off from all egress and foraging;

omnes evocatos à Vercingetorige ad muniendum  
all were called out by Vercingetorix for fortifying

hunc lōcum.  
this place.

45. Hac re cognitā, Cæsar mittit  
This thing having been learned, Cæsar sends

complures turmas equitum eò de mediā  
several troops of horsemen thither at mid

nocte; imperat iis, ut pervagentur  
night, he commands them, that they should range about

in omnibus lōcis paulò tumultuosius. Primā  
in all places somewhat more tumultuously [goisily]. At the first

luce jubet magnum numerum  
light [early dawn] he orders a great quantity

impedimentorum produci ex castris, que  
of baggage to be brought forth from the camp. and

mulorum, que stramenta detrahi iis, que  
of mules, and the pack-saddles to be taken from them, and

muliones cum cassidibus circumvehi collibus  
the muleteers with helmets to go round the hills

specie ac simulatione equitum. His  
in the appearance and manner of horsemen. To these

addit paucos equites, qui vagarentur latiùs  
 he adds a few horsemen, who might range more widely  
 causâ ostentationis. Jubet omnes  
 for the purpose of display. He orders (them) all  
 petere easdem regiones longo circuitu. Hæc  
 to seek the same places by a long circuit. These  
 videbatur procul ex oppido, ut erat  
 things were seen at a distance from the town, as there was  
 despectus à Gergoviâ in castra; neque, tanto  
 a view from Gergovia into the camp; nor, at such  
 spatio, poterat explorari quid certi  
 a distance, could it be made out what of [to a] certainty  
 esset. Mittit unam legionem eodem jugo, et  
 it might be. He sends one legion on the same hull, and  
 constituit progressam paulum, inferiore  
 he stations (it) (having been) advanced a little in a lower  
 loco, que occultat silvis. Suspicio  
 place, and hides (it) in the woods The suspicion (of)  
 Gallis augetur, atque omnes copiae munitionum  
 the Gauls is increased, and all the forces of the fortifications  
 transducuntur illò. Cæsar conspicatus  
 are brought over thither Cæsar having perceived (that)  
 castra hostium vacua, insignibus suorum  
 the camp of the enemy was deserted. the insignias of his  
 tectis, que militaribus signis  
 (men) having been covered, and the military ensigns  
 occultatis, transducit milites ex  
 having been concealed, he leads out (his) soldiers from  
 majoribus castris in minora raros, ne animad-  
 the larger camp into the smaller in squads, lest they should  
 verterentur ex oppido; que ostendit  
 be observed from the town, and he shows [explains]  
 legatis, quos præfecerat singulis legionibus,  
 to the lieutenants whom he had appointed to each legion.  
 quid vellet fieri: in primis monet, ut  
 what he wishes to be done, especially he admonishes that  
 contineant milites, ne progrediantur  
 they should restrain the soldiers, lest they should proceed



longiùs, studio pugnandi aut spe prædæ.  
too far. by the desire of fighting or by the hope of plunder,

Proponit quid incommodi iniquitas  
He explains what (of) disadvantage the unfavorableness

lōci habeat hoc posse vitari  
of the place may have, (that) this could be avoided

celerīte unā, rem occasionis, non  
by quickness [speed] alone, (that it is) a matter of opportunity, not

præli. His rebus expositis, dat signum;  
of battle. These things having been stated, he gives the signal,

et mittit Æduos, eodem tempore, ab dextrâ  
and sends the Ædui. at the same time, from the right

parte alio adscensu.  
side [flank] by another ascent.

46. Murus oppidi aberat mille et du-  
The wall of the town was distant a thousand and two

centos [MCC] passus ab planitie, atque initio  
hundred paces from the plain, and from the beginning

adscensûs, rectâ regione, si nullus anfractus  
of the ascent, in a straight direction, if no bend

intercederet. Quidquid accesserat huic  
should intervene. Whatever may have been added to this

circuitûs ad molliendum clivum, id arcebat  
(of) circuit for easing the slope [ascent]. this increased

spatium itineris. Galli præduxerant murum  
the length of the route. The Gauls had extended a wall

sex pedum ex grandibus saxis, ferè à  
six feet (high) of great stones, nearly in

medio colle in longitudine ut  
the middle (of) the hill on the length [lengthwise], as

natura montis ferebat, qui tardaret  
the nature of the mountain was allowing, which might retard

impetum nostrorum; atque omni inferiore spatio  
the attack of our men; and all the lower space

relicto vacuo, compleverant superiorem partem  
having been left vacant, they had filled the higher part

collis usque ad murum oppidi castris  
of the hill even to the wall of the town with camps

densissimis. Milites, signo dato,  
 very close. The soldiers, the signal having been given,  
 celeriter perveniunt ad munitionem, que  
 quickly arrived at (this) fortification, and  
 transgressi eam, potiuntur trinis  
 having passed over it, take possession (of) three (separate)  
 castris. Ac tanta fuit celeritas in capiendis  
 camps. And so great was the speed in capturing  
 castris, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum,  
 the camps, that Teutomatus, king of the Nitiobriges,  
 oppressus subito in tabernaculo, ut  
 having been surprised suddenly in (his) tent, as  
 conqueverat meridie, vix eriperet se  
 he went to rest at noon, scarcely saved himself  
 ex manibus prædantium militum, superiore  
 from the hands of the plundering soldiers, the upper  
 parte corporis nudatâ, equo  
 part of (his) body (having been) naked, (and his) horse  
 vulnerato.  
 (having been) wounded,

47. Cæsar consecutus id quod proposuerat  
 Cæsar having attained that which he had proposed

animo, jussit receptui cani, que  
 in mind, ordered the retreat to be sounded, and (the soldiers)  
 decimæ legionis, quâ erat tum comitatus,  
 of the tenth legion, by which he was then accompanied,  
 consistere signa. At milites reliquarum  
 stood [halted] at the standards. But the soldiers of the other  
 legionum, non exaudito sono tubæ, quod  
 legions, not having heard the sound of the trumpet, because  
 vallis satis magna intercedebat, tamen  
 a valley sufficiently [quite] large was intervening, however  
 retinebantur à tribunis militum que  
 were kept back by the tribunes of the soldiers and  
 legatis, ut præceptum erat à Cæsar.  
 by the lieutenants, as (it) had been commanded by Cæsar.  
 Sed elati spe celeris victoriæ et fugâ  
 but elated by the hope of a speedy victory and by the flight

hostium, que secundis præliis superiorum  
 of the enemy, and the favorable battles of former  
 temporum existimabant nihil adeo arduum  
 times they are thinking (that) nothing (was) so difficult  
 sibi, quod possent non consequi virtute;  
 for them, which they could not accomplish by valor;  
 neque fecerunt finem sequendi, prius  
 nor did they make an end of following, before  
 quàm appropinquârunt muro que portis oppidi.  
 (that) they had approached the wall and the gates of the town.  
 Vero tum clamore orto ex omnibus partibus  
 But then a shout having arisen from all parts  
 urbis, qui aberant longiùs perterriti  
 of the town, those who were distant farther frightened  
 repentino tumultu, quum existimarent hostes  
 by the sudden tumult, as they thought the enemy  
 esse intra portas, jecerunt sese ex  
 to be [were] within the gates, threw themselves from  
 oppido. Matres familiâs jactabant  
 the town. The mothers of families [matrons] threw  
 vestem que argentum de muro, et  
 (their) clothes and silver from the wall, and  
 prominentes nudo pectore, passis manibus  
 bending forward with naked breast, with outstretched hands  
 obtestabantur Romanos, ut parcèrent sibi; neu  
 they implored the Romans, that they should spare them; nor  
 sicut fecissent Avarici, abstinerèrent ne  
 as they had done at Avaricum, abstain from [spare] not  
 mulieribus quidem atque infantibus. Nonnullæ  
 the women even and children. Some  
 demissæ de muris per manus,  
 having let themselves down from the wall by their hands  
 transdebant sese militibus. L. Fabius  
 were delivering themselves to the soldiers. L. Fabius  
 centurio octavæ legionis, quem, constabat  
 a centurion of the eighth legion, whom [who], it appeared  
 dixisse eo die inter suos, se  
 to have [had] said this day among his (men, that) he

excitari Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,  
 was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,  
 ut quisquam adscenderet murum priùs,  
 that any one should mount the wall before (himself),  
 nactus tres suos manipulares atque  
 having taken three (of) his company and  
 sublevatus ab iis adscendit murum;  
 having been raised up by them he mounted the wall;  
 ipse rursus exceptans extulit eos in murum,  
 he in turn taking up drew them onto the wall,  
 singulos.  
 one at a time.

48. Interim ïi, qui convenërant ad altëram  
 In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other  
 partem oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causâ  
 part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose  
 munitionis, primo clamöre exaudito, inde  
 of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward  
 etiâ incitati crebris nunciis, oppidum  
 also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town  
 teneri ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,  
 was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,  
 contenderunt ëo magno concursu. Ut quisque  
 they hastened there in a great throng. As each  
 ëorum primus venërat consistebat sub muro,  
 of them first came he was halting under the wall,  
 que augebat numerum suorum pugnantium.  
 and was increasing the number of their (men) fighting.  
 Quum magna multitudo quorum convenisset,  
 When a great multitude of these had assembled,  
 matres familiâs quæ paulò antè  
 the mothers of families [matrons] who a little before  
 tendebant manus de muro Romanis,  
 were holding (their) hands from the wall to the Romans,  
 cœperunt obtestari suos et Gallico mōre  
 began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner  
 ostentare passum capillum, que proferre  
 to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

liberos in conspectum. Contentio erat æqua  
the children into view. The contest was equal

Romanis nec lōco nec numēro (sing.) simul  
for the Romans neither in place nor in numbers; at the same time

defatigati et cursu et spatio pugnæ,  
fatigued both by running and by the duration of the fight

non facilè sustinebat recentes atque integros.  
they were not easily withstanding (those) fresh and vigorous.

49. Cæsar cùm videret pugnari  
Cæsar when he saw (it) to be [was] fought

iniquo lōco, que copias hostium  
in a disadvantageous place, and the forces of the enemy

augeri, præmetuens suis mittit ad  
to be [were] increased, being anxious for his (men) he sends to

T. Sextum legatum, quem reliquerat præsidio  
T. Sextius (his) lieutenant, whom he had left for [as] a guard

minoribus castris, ut celeriter educeret  
to the smaller camp, that he should quickly lead forth

cohortes ex castris, et constitueret sub  
the cohorts from the camp, and should station (them) at

infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium;  
the lowest (part of) the hill on the right wing of the enemy

ut si vidisset nostros depulsos lōco,  
that if he should see our (men) repulsed from the place

terreret hostes quò insequerentur minùs  
he might alarm the enemy so that they would follow less

liberè. Ipse progressus paulùm ex ò  
freely. He himself having proceeded a little from this

loco cum legione, ubi constiterat, expectabat  
place with the legion, where he had halted, was awaiting

eventum pugnæ.  
the issue of the battle.

50. Quum pugnatur<sup>35</sup> accerimè comminus,  
While it was fought most violently hand to hand.

hostes confiderent loco et numero  
the enemy confided in the place and (their) number

nostri virtute; Ædui sunt subito visi, ab  
our men in (their) courage; the Ædui were suddenly seen. by

nostris aperto latere, quos Cæsar miserat  
 our (men) on the exposed flank, whom Cæsar had sent  
 ab dextrâ parte alio ascensu, causâ  
 from the right side [flank] by another ascent, for the purpose  
 destinendæ manus.<sup>36</sup> Hi vehementer perterruerunt  
 of cutting off the force They very much alarmed  
 nostros similitudine armorum; ac tametsi  
 our men by the similarity of (their) arms; and although  
 animadvertebantur dextris humeris exertis,  
 they were observed with the right shoulder uncovered,  
 quod consueverat esse insigne pacatis,  
 which was accustomed to be the sign (of those) in peace,  
 tamen milites existimabant id ipsum  
 however the soldiers were thinking (that) this same  
 factum ab hostibus causâ fallendi sui.  
 (was) done by the enemy for the sake of deceiving them-  
 Eodem tempore centurio, L. Fabius, quæ  
 At the same time the centurion, L. Fabius, and  
 qui adscenderant murum unâ,  
 (those) who had ascended the wall together (with him),  
 circumventi atque interfecti, præcipitabantur  
 having been surrounded and slain. were thrown  
 de muro. M. Petronius, centurio ejusdem  
 from the wall. M. Petronius, a centurion of the same  
 legionis, quum conatus esset excindere portas,  
 legion. when he had attempted to cut down the gates,  
 oppressus à multitudine, ac desperans  
 overpowered by the multitude, and despairing of safety  
 sibi, jam vulneribus acceptis, inquit  
 for himself, already wounds having been received, said  
 suis manipularibus qui secuti erant illum.  
 to his comrades who had followed him.  
 "Quoniam possum non servare me unâ vobiscum,  
 "Since I can not save myself together with you,  
 quidem certè prospiciam vestræ saluti, quos,  
 indeed certainly I will provide for your safety, whom,  
 I, adductos cupiditate gloriæ deduxi in  
 L. led by the desire of glory, have brought into

periculum; vos, facultate datâ consulite  
 danger; you, an opportunity having been given, consult  
 vobis." Simul irrupit in medios  
 for yourselves " At the same time he threw himself into the midst  
 hostes, que duobus interfectis, submovit  
 of the enemy, and two having been killed, he drove back  
 reliquos paulum à portâ. Suis conantibus  
 the rest a little from the gate. To his (men) endeavoring  
 auxiliari inquit, "Frustra conamini subvenire meâ  
 to assist he said, "In vain you try to save my  
 vitæ quem sanguis que vires jam deficiunt,  
 life whom blood and strength now fail,  
 proinde abite hinc, dum est facultas,  
 therefore go from here, while there is the chance,  
 que recipite vos ad legionem." Pugnans ita  
 and get [betake] yourselves to the legion." Fighting thus  
 concidit post paulum, ac fuit salutis<sup>37</sup>  
 he fell after a little, and was (for) a safety  
 suis.  
 to his (men).

51. Quum nostri premerentur undique,  
 As our (men) were pressed on every side,  
 quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis,  
 forty six centurions having been lost,  
 dejecti sunt loco. Sed decima legio,  
 they were driven from the place. But the tenth legion,  
 quæ constiterat pro subsidio paulò æquiore  
 which had taken stand for a reserve on a little more level  
 loco tardavit Gallos insequentes intolerantius.  
 place checked the Gauls following too eagerly.  
 Cohortes decimæ tertiæ legionis, rursus exceperunt  
 The cohorts of the thirteenth legion, in turn supported  
 hanc,<sup>38</sup> quæ eductæ ex minoribus castris,  
 this, that having been led from the smaller camp,  
 cum T. Sextio, legato, cepērant superiorem  
 with T. Sextius, the lieutenant, had occupied the higher  
 locum. Ubi legiones primum attigerunt planitiem  
 ground. When the legions first reached the plain

constiterunt, signis infestis contra  
 they halted, the standards having been turned against  
 hostes. Vercingetorix reduxit suos ab  
 the enemy. Vercingetorix led back his (men) from  
 radicibus collis intra munitiones. Eo  
 the foot of the hill within the fortifications. On this  
 die paulò minùs septingentis milites  
 day a little less (than) seven hundred soldiers  
 desiderati sunt.  
 were missing.

52. Postero die, Cæsar, concione advocata,  
 On the next day, Cæsar, a council having been called,  
 reprehendit temeritatem que cupiditatem militum,  
 censured the rashness and avarice of the soldiers,  
 quòd ipsi judicavissent sibi, quò videretur  
 because they had judged for themselves, where it seemed  
 procedendum, aut quid agendum,  
 (that they) to [must] go or what to [must] be done,  
 neque, signo recipiendi dato,  
 neither, the signal for halting having been given,  
 constitissent, neque potuissent retineri à  
 did they halt, nor could they be restrained by  
 tribunis militum que legatis. Exposuit  
 the tribunes of the soldiers and by the lieutenants He showed  
 quid iniquitas loci posset,  
 what the disadvantage of position would be able (to effect),  
 quid ipse sensisset ad Avaricum, quum,  
 what (he) himself had thought at Avaricum. when,  
 hostibus deprehensis, sine duce et  
 the enemy having been surprised without a leader and  
 sine equitatu, demisisset exploratam victoriam,  
 without cavalry, he had given up a certain victory.  
 ne acciperet modò parvum detrimentum in  
 lest he might receive only a small injury in  
 contentione, propter iniquitatem loci  
 the contest, on account of the disadvantage of the place  
 Quantopère admiraretur eorum magnitudinem animi,  
 As much as he admired their greatness of soul



quos non munitiones castrorum, non altitudo  
 whom neither the fortifications of the camp, nor the height  
 montis, non murus oppidi potuisset  
 of the mountain, nor the wall of the town could  
 tardare, reprehendere tantopere licentiam que  
 retard, he censured so greatly (their) lawlessness and  
 arrogantiam, quòd existimarent se sentire  
 presumption, because they were thinking (that) they understood  
 plus quàm imperatorem de victoriâ atque  
 more than (their) commander about victory and  
 exitu rerum; se desiderare in milite nec  
 the issue of affairs, (saying that) he desired in a soldier no  
 minùs modestiam et continentiam, quàm virtutem  
 less moderation and submission, than valor  
 atque magnitudinem animi."  
 and greatness of soul."

53. Hac concione, habitâ et ad extremum  
 This council. having been held and at the end

militibus confirmatis oratione, ne  
 the soldiers having been encouraged by (his) speech, that (they)  
 permoverentur animo ob hanc causam, neu  
 should not be disturbed in mind on account of this affair, nor  
 tribuèrent id virtuti hostium, quod  
 should they attribute this to the valor of the enemy, which  
 iniquitas lœci attulisset; cogitans  
 the disadvantage of position had brought on (them); thinking  
 eadem de profectione, quæ senserat  
 the same concerning a departure, which [as] he had felt  
 antè, eduxit legiones ex castris, que  
 before. he led forth the legions from the camp, and  
 constituit aciem idoneo loco. Quum  
 drew up the battle-line in a favorable place. When  
 Vercingetorix nihilo magis descenderet in æquum  
 Vercingetorix no more would descend into level  
 lœcum, levi equestri prælio facto,  
 ground a slight cavalry engagement having occurred,  
 atque è secundo, reduxit exercitum  
 and this (being) favorable. he led back (his) army

in castra. Quum fecisset hoc idem postero  
 into the camp When he had done this same thing the next  
 die, existimans satis factum ad minuendam  
 day, believing (that) enough was done for lessening  
 Gallicam ostentationem, que confirmandos  
 the Gallic arrogance, and for encouraging  
 animos militum, movit castra in  
 the minds of (his) soldiers, he moves (his) camp into  
 Æduos. Hostibus ne tum quidem insecutis,  
 the Ædui. The enemy not then even having followed,  
 tertio die refecit pontem ad flumen  
 on the third day he repaired the bridge over the river  
 Elaver, atque transduxit exercitum.  
 Allier, and led over (his) army.

54. Ibi appellatus à Viridomaro atque  
 There, having been waited on by Viridomarus and  
 Eporedorige Æduis, discit Litavicus, cum  
 Eporedorix the Æduans, he learns (that) Litavicus, with  
 omni equitatu profectum ad sollicitandos Æduos;  
 all the cavalry had set out for instigating the Ædui,  
 et esse opus ipsos antecedere  
 and (that) it was necessary (that) they should go before  
 ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi Cæsar jam  
 for restraining the state. Although Cæsar already  
 multis rebus habebat perfidiam Æduorum  
 in many things was having the unfaithfulness of the Ædui  
 perspectam atque existimabat disessu  
 clearly understood and he was thinking (that) by the departure  
 horum defectionem civitatis admaturari;  
 of these the defection of the state to [would] be hastened,  
 tamen censuit eos non retinendos, ne  
 however he was of the opinion that they should not be detained, lest  
 videretur aut inferre injuriam, aut dare  
 he might appear either to impose a wrong, or to give  
 aliquam suspicionem timoris. His discedentibus,  
 some suspicion of fear. To them departing,  
 breviter exposuit sua merita in Æduos, quos  
 he briefly states his services to the Ædui, whom

accepisset et quàm humiles, compulsos in  
 he had taken in charge and how humbled, driven into  
 oppida, multatos agris, omnibus copiis  
 their towns, deprived of their lands, all (their) means  
 ereptis, stipendio imposito,  
 having been taken away, a tribute having been imposed, (and)  
 obsidibus extortis cum summâ contumeliâ,  
 hostages having been exacted with the greatest insult,  
 in quam fortunam, que in quam amplitudinem  
 to what fortune, and to what greatness  
 deduxisset, ut non solum redissent in  
 he had raised (them) that they had not only returned to (their)  
 pristinum statum, sed viderentur antecessisse  
 former state but they seemed to have surpassed  
 dignitatem et gratiam omnium temporum. His  
 the dignity and influence of all times. This  
 mandatis datis, dimisit eos ab  
 charge having been given, he dismisses them from  
 se.

his presence.

55. Novidunum erat oppidum Æduorum  
 Novidunum [Nevers] was a town of the Ædui  
 positum opportuno loco ad ripas Ligeris.  
 situated in an advantageous place on the banks of the Loire.  
 Cæsar contulerat huc omnes obsides Galliarum,  
 Cæsar had brought hither all the hostages of Gaul  
 frumentum, publicam pecuniam, magnam partem  
 the corn, the public money, a great part  
 suorum impedimentorum, atque exercitûs.  
 of his baggage, and (that) of the army  
 Misérat huc magnum numerum equorum  
 He had sent hither a great number of horses  
 coëmptorum in Italiâ atque Hispaniâ, causâ  
 bought in Italy and Spain, for the purpose  
 hujus belli. Quum Eporedorix que Viridomarus  
 of this war. When Eporedorix and Viridomarus  
 venissent eo, et cognovissent de statu  
 had arrived there, and had learned about the condition.

civitatis; Litavicum receptum ab  
 [attitude] of the state; (that) Litavicus was received by  
 Æduis Bibracte, quod est oppidum maximæ  
 the Ædui in Bibracte, which is a town of the greatest  
 auctoritatis apud eos, Convictolitavem  
 importance among them, (that) Convictolitavis  
 magistratum que magnam partem senatus  
 the magistrate and a great part of the senate  
 convenisse ad eum, legatos publicè  
 had gone to him, (that) ambassadors were openly  
 missos ad Vercingetorigem de conciliandâ pace  
 sent to Vercingetorix concerning procuring peace  
 et amicitia, existimaverunt tantum commodum  
 and alliance, they thought so great an advantage  
 non prætermittendum. Itaque custodibus Novioduni  
 must not (to) be neglected. Therefore the guards of Noviodunum  
 interfectis, que qui conveniant eo  
 having been killed, and those who had assembled there  
 causâ negotiandi, aut itinêris, partiti sunt  
 for the sake of trading, or travel, they divided  
 pecuniam atque equos inter se; curaverunt  
 the money and the horses among themselves; they took care  
 obsides civitatum deducendos Bibracte  
 (that) the hostages of the states should be conducted to Bibracte  
 ad magistratum, oppidum, quod judicabant  
 to the magistrate, the town, because they thought (it)  
 posse non teneri ab se, incenderunt, ne  
 could not be held by them. they burned, lest  
 esset cui usui Romanis. Avexerunt  
 it might be (of) some use to the Romans. They carried away  
 subito navibus quod potuerunt frumenti; corru-  
 suddenly in ships what they could of corn. they  
 perunt reliquum flumine atque incendio; ipsi  
 destroyed the rest in the river and by fire; they  
 cœperunt copere copias ex finitimis regionibus,  
 began to collect forces from the neighboring districts  
 disponere præsidia que custodias ad ripas  
 to place garrisons and guards along the banks

Legeris, que ostentare equitatum omnibus locis  
of the Loire, and to display cavalry in all places

causâ injiciendi timoris, si aut possent  
for the purpose of exciting alarm, or either they could

excludere Romanos re frumentariâ, aut adductos  
cut off the Romans (from) a corn supply, or driven

inopiâ, expellere ex Provinciâ;  
by want, could expel (them) from the province; (this)

adjuvabat eos multum ad quam spem, quod  
was assisting them much to such hope, because

Liger creverat ex nivibus, ut videretur  
the Loire had swollen from snows, so that it seemed

omnino posse non transiri vador.  
altogether (that) it could not be crossed by a ford.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar censuit  
Which things having been known, Cæsar was of the opinion

sibi maturandum,<sup>39</sup> si esset periclitandum  
(that) he must hasten, if he must take the risk

in perficiendis pontibus, ut dimicaret prius  
in building the bridges, so that he might fight before

quàm majores copiæ coactæ eo. Nam ut,  
(that) greater forces were collected there. For that,

consilio commutato, convertēret iter  
(his) plan having been changed, he might alter (his) route

in Provinciam, existimabat id ne tum  
into the Province, he was thinking (that) this not then

quidem necessariò faciendum, quum infamia  
even of necessity to [must] be done, not only the disgrace

atque indignitas rei, et oppositus mons  
and humiliation of the thing, and the opposed mount

Cebenna, que difficultas viarum impediēbat (sing.);  
Cevennes, and the difficulty of the roads were preventing;

tum maxime quod cupiebat vehementer  
but also especially because he was desiring very much

adungi Labieno, atque iis legionibus quas  
to be united with Labienus, and these legions which

miserat unâ. Itaque admodum magnis  
he had sent together (with him). Therefore very long

itineribus diurnis atque nocturnis, confectis  
marches by day and by night, having been made

pervenit ad Ligerim, contra opinionem omnium;  
he arrived at the Loire, contrary to the opinion of all;

que vado invento per equites, opportuno  
and a ford having been found by the horsemen suitable

pro necessitate rei; ut brachia modo, atque  
for the urgency of the case, that the arms only and

humeri possent esse liberi ab aqua ad  
the shoulders might be free from the water for

sustinenda arma, equitatu disposito  
supporting (their) equipments, the cavalry having been stationed

qui refringeret vim fluminis, atque  
(that) they might break the force of the river, and

hostibus perturbatis primo adspectu,  
the enemy (having been) confounded at first sight

transduxit exercitum incolumem que nactus  
he led over the army safe and having found

frumentum in agris, et copiam pecoris,  
corn in the fields, and abundance of cattle,

exercitu repleto iis rebus, instituit  
the army having been supplied with those things, he determines

facere iter in Senones.  
to make (his) march into the Senones.

57. Dum hæc geruntur apud Cæsarem,  
While these things are transacted under Cæsar,

Labienus, eo supplemento, quod nuper venerat  
Labienus, this contingent [addition], that had lately come

ex Italiâ relicto Agendici, ut  
from Italy having been left at Agendicum [Sens], that

esset præsidio impedimentis, proficiscitur  
it might be (for) a guard to the baggage, marches

cum quatuor legionibus Lutetiam. Id est  
with four legions to Lutetia [Paris]. This is

oppidum Parisiorum positum in insulâ fluminis  
a town of the Parisii situated on an island of the river

Sequanæ. Cujus adventu cognito ab  
Seine. Whose arrival having been learned by

hostibus, magnæ copiæ convenerunt ex finitimis  
 the enemy. great forces assembled from the neighboring  
 civitatibus. Summa imperii transditur Camulogero  
 states. The supreme command is given to Camulogerus  
 Aulero; qui propè confectus ætate,  
 the Aulercan: who (though) nearly worn out with age.  
 tamen evocatus est ad eum honorem propter  
 yet was called to this honor on account of (his)  
 singularem scientiam militaris rei. Is, quum  
 singular knowledge of military affairs. He, when  
 animadvertisset esse perpetuam paludem  
 he had observed (that there) was a continuous marsh  
 quæ influeret in Sequanam, atque magnopere  
 which opened into the Seine, and greatly  
 impediret omnem illum locum, consedit hic, que  
 obstructed all that place, encamped there. and  
 instituit prohibere nostros transitu.  
 resolved to prohibit our (soldiers) from passing.

58. Labienus primò conabatur agere vineas,  
 Labienus at first was endeavoring to work the sheds,

explere paludem cratibus atque aggere, atque  
 to fill up the marsh with hurdles and a mound, and  
 munire iter. Postquam animadvertit id  
 to open a road. After he observed (that) this

conferi difficilius, egressus  
 would be accomplished with great difficulty, having marched out

è castris silentio tertiâ vigiliâ, pervenit  
 from (his) camp in silence on the third watch, he arrived

Metiosedum,<sup>40</sup> eodem itinere, quo  
 at Metiosedum [Melun] by the same road, by which

venerat. Id est oppidum Senonum positum  
 he had come. This is a town of the Senones situated

in insulâ Sequanæ, ut paulò antè diximus  
 on an island of the Seine, as a little before we have said

Lutetiam. Circiter quinquaginta navibus depre-  
 (was) Lutetia. About fifty ships having been

hensis, quer conjunctis celerite, atque  
 seized, and (having been) joined together quickly, and

militibus impositis eò, et oppidanis  
 soldiers having been placed thereon, and the people of the town  
 (having been) perterritis novitate rei, magna  
 alarmed by the novelty of the thing a great  
 pars quorum erat evocata ad bellum,  
 part of whom had been called away to the war,

potitur oppido sine contentione. Ponte  
 he seizes the town without a contest. The bridge

refecto, quem hostes resciderant  
 having been rebuilt, which the enemy had destroyed

superioribus diebus, transducit exercitum, et  
 on the preceding days he leads over (his) army. and

cœpit facere iter secundo flumine ad Lutetiam  
 began to make (his) way down the river to Lutetia.

Hostes, re cognita ab iis qui  
 The enemy, the matter having been learned from those who

profugerant à Metiosedo, jubent Lutetiam  
 had fled from Metiosedum, order Lutetia

incendi que pontes ejus oppidi rescindi;  
 to be burned and the bridges of this town to be destroyed;

ipsi profecti palude, considunt in  
 they themselves having left the marsh, place themselves on

ripis Sequanæ è regione Lutetiæ contra  
 the banks of the Seine over against Lutetia opposite

castra Labieni.  
 the camp of Labienus.

59. Jam Cæsar audiebatur discessisse à  
 Already Cæsar was heard to have departed from

Gergoviâ; jam rumores afferebantur de defectione  
 Gergovia; already reports were brought of the revolt

Æduorum, et secundo motu Galliæ, que  
 of the Ædui, and of the successful rising of Gaul and

Galli in colloquiis confirmabant Cæsarem  
 the Gauls in their conversations were asserting (that) Cæsar

interclusum itinere et Ligere,  
 cut off from (his) route and from the Loire (and)

coactum inopiâ frumenti, contendisse in  
 forced by the want of corn, had marched into



Provinciam. Autem Bellovacī, defectione Æduorum  
 the province. But the Bellovacī, the defection of the Ædui  
 cognitā, qui antē erant per se  
 having been learned. who before were of themselves  
 infideles, cœperunt cogere manus, atque apertē  
 unfaithful, began to collect forces. and openly  
 parare bellum. Tum Labienus, tantā  
 to prepare (for) war. Then Labienus, in so great  
 commutatione rerum intelligebat longē aliud  
 a change of affairs thought (that) a far different  
 consilium capiendum sibi, atque senserat  
 plan to [must] be taken by him. than he had considered  
 antea. Neque jam cogitabat, ut acquireret  
 before. Nor now was he thinking. that he should acquire  
 aliquid, quē lacesseret hostes prœlio, sed ut  
 anything. and should attack the enemy in battle. but that  
 reduceret exercitum incolumem Agendicum.  
 he should lead back (his) army safe to Agendicum.  
 Namque ex altērâ parte Bellovacī, quæ civitas  
 For on the one side the Bellovacī, which state  
 habet maximam opinionem virtutis in Galliâ,  
 had the greatest reputation of [for] bravery in Gaul,  
 instabant; altēram Camulogenus tenebat  
 were pressing: the other (side) Camulogenus was holding  
 parato atque instructo exercitu; tum  
 with an organized and equipped army, also  
 maximum flumen distinebat legiones  
 a very large river was separating the legions (having been)  
 interclusas à præsidio atque impedimentis.  
 cut off from the garrison and baggage.  
 Tantis difficultatibus subitō objectis,  
 Such great difficulties suddenly having been presented  
 videbat auxilium petendum ab virtute<sup>41</sup>  
 he saw (that) aid to [must] be sought from strength  
 animi.  
 of mind.

60. Itaque sub vesp̄erum, concilio con-  
 Therefore towards evening. a council having been

vocato, cohortatus, ut diligenter que  
 called, he exhorted (his soldiers), that diligently and  
 industriè administrarent, ea quæ  
 industriously they should execute [perform] those (things) which  
 imperâset; naves, quas deduxerat à  
 he should command; the ships, which he had brought from  
 Metiosedo, attribuit singulas Romanis equitibus; et  
 Metiosedum, he assigns each one to Roman knights; and  
 jubet, primâ vigiliâ confectâ,  
 orders (them), the first watch having been completed,  
 progredi quatuor millia passuum secundo flumine,  
 to proceed four thousand paces down the river,  
 silentio, que ibi se expectari. Relinquit  
 in silence, and (that) there he was to be awaited. He leaves  
 quinque cohortes, quas existimabat esse minimè  
 five cohorts, which he considered to be least  
 firmas ad dimicandum, præsidio castris;  
 sturdy for fighting, for [as] a guard to the camp;  
 imperat reliquas quinque ejusdem legionis  
 he commands the remaining five of the same legion  
 proficisci de mediâ nocte cum omnibus impedimentis  
 to proceed at mid night with all (their) baggage  
 adverso flumine magno tumultu. Etiam  
 up the river with a great din. Also  
 conquirunt lintres; has mittit in eandem partem,  
 he collects boats; these he sends in the same direction,  
 incitatus magno sonitu remorum. Ipse, paulò  
 driven by a great sound [noise] of oars. He himself, a little  
 post, egressus silentio cum tribus legionibus,  
 after, having marched out in silence with three legions,  
 petit eum locum, quò jusserat naves  
 seeks this place, where he had ordered the ships  
 appellari.  
 to be brought.

61. Quùm esset ventum<sup>42</sup> eo, exploratores  
 When it was come [he came] there, the scouts

hostium, ut dispositi erant omni parte  
 of the enemy, as they were stationed in every part

fluminis, inopinantes, quòd magna tempestas  
of the river. not expecting, because a great storm

subitò còorta erat, opprimuntur ab nostris;  
had suddenly arisen, were overpowered by our (men);

exercitus que equitatus celeriter transmittitur,  
the infantry and cavalry are speedily transported,

Romanis equitibus administrantibus, quos  
the Roman knights superintending, whom he (Labienus)

præfeceret ei negotio. Ferè uno  
had appointed for this affair. Nearly at one [the same]

tempore sub lucem nunciatur hostibus,  
time about daylight it was announced to the enemy,

tumultuari in castris Romanorum præter  
(that) there was confusion in the camp of the Romans beyond

consuetudinem, et magnum agmen ire  
custom, and (that) a great force was going

adverso flumine, que sonitum remorum  
up the river, and (that) the sound [noise] of oars

exaudiri in eadem parte, et paulò  
was heard in the same direction, and (that) a little

infra milites transportari navibus. Quibus rebus  
below soldiers were transported in ships. Which things

auditis, quòd existimabant legiones  
having been heard, because they thought (that) the legions

transire tribus locis, atque omnes perturbatos  
were crossing in three places, and (that) all alarmed

defectione Æduorum parere fugam,  
by the defection of the Ædui were preparing for flight,

quoque distribuerunt suas copias in tres partes.  
they also divided their forces into three parts.

Nam, præsidio relicto à regione castrorum,  
For, a guard having been left opposite the camp,

et parvâ manu missâ versùs Metiosedum,  
and a small force having been sent toward Metiosedum,

quæ progredereetur tantum quantum naves pro-  
which should advance only as far as the ships had

cessissent, duxerunt reliquas copias contra Labienum.  
proceeded, they led the remaining forces against Labienus.

62. Primâ luce et omnes nostri  
 At first light [daylight] both all our (soldiers)  
 transportati erant, et acies hostium cernebatur.  
 had been transported, and the army of the enemy was discerned  
 Labienus cohortatus milites ut tenerent  
 [seen]. Labienus exhorted the soldiers that they should hold  
 memoriam suæ pristinæ virtutis, et tot  
 the memory (of) their former valor, and (of) so many  
 secundissimorum prœliorum, atque existimarent  
 very successful battles, and that they should think  
 Cæsarem ipsum, cujus ductu sæpenum-  
 (that) Cæsar himself, under whose leadership they had so  
 ero superâssent hostes adesse; dat signum  
 often conquered the enemy, was present; he gives the signal  
 prœli. Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi  
 of battle. On the first encounter, on the right wing, where  
 septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur,  
 the seventh legion stood. the enemy are repulsed,  
 atque conjiuntur in fugam; ab sinistro,  
 and are thrown into flight; on the left (wing),  
 quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, quum  
 which place the twelfth legion was holding, when  
 primi ordines hostium concidissent transfixi  
 the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed  
 pilis, reliqui tamen resistebant acerrimè, nec  
 by javelins, the rest yet were resisting most actively, nor  
 quisquam dabat suspicionem fugæ. Dux  
 was any one giving suspicion of flight. The general  
 ipse hostium Camulogenus aderat suis,  
 himself of the enemy Camulogenus was present with his  
 atque cohortabatur eos. At exitu  
 (men), and was encouraging them. But the issue  
 victoriæ etiam nunc incerto, quum  
 of the victory even now (being) uncertain, when  
 nunciatum esset tribunis septimæ legionis,  
 it was announced to the tribunes of the seventh legion,  
 quæ gererentur in sinistro cornu, ostenderunt  
 what was transpiring on the left wing. they displayed

legionem post tergum hostium, que intulerunt  
the legion behind [on] the rear of the enemy, and advanced

signa. Ne eo tempore quidem quisquam cessit  
the standards. Not at this time even did any one leave

loco, sed omnes circumventi sunt que  
the place, but all were surrounded and

interfecti; Camulogenus tulit eandem  
slain; Camulogenus bore [met] the same

fortunam. At ii qui relictii erant praesidio  
fortune [fate]. But those who were left for a garrison

contra castra Labieni, quum audissent  
over against the camp of Labienus, when they had heard

proelium commissum, ierunt subsidio  
(that) the battle (had) commenced, went for [as] an aid

suis, que ceperunt collem, neque  
to their [people], and took [occupied], the hill, nor

potuerunt sustinere impetum nostrorum militum  
could they endure the attack of our soldiers

victorum: sic permixti cum suis fugientibus,  
(when) conquerors; so mingled with their own (men) retreating,

quos silvae que montes non texerunt  
those whom the woods and the mountains did not conceal

interfecti sunt ab equitatu. Hoc negotio con-  
were killed by the cavalry. This affair having

fecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi  
been completed, Labienus returned to Agedincum, where

impedimenta totius exercitus relictii erant; inde  
the baggage of all the army had been left, thence

pervenit ad Caesarem cum omnibus copis.  
he came to Caesar with all (his) forces.

63. Defectione Aduorum cognitii, bellum  
The revolt of the Adui having been known, the war

augetur; legationes circummittuntur in omnes  
is increased; embassies are sent about in all

partes; nituntur ad sollicitandas civitates quantum  
directions; they strive to solicit the states as much as

valent gratii, auctoritate, pecuniâ.  
they may avail by favor, by authority, (or) by money.

Nacti obsides, quos Cæsar deposuerat  
 Having got the hostages, whom Cæsar had deposited  
 apud eos, territant dubitantes supplicio  
 with them, they frighten the hesitating by the punishment  
 horum. Ædui petunt â Vercingetorige ut  
 of these. The Ædui request of Vercingetorix that  
 veniat ad se, que communicet rationes  
 he come to them, and communicate the plans  
 gerendi belli. Re impetratâ,  
 of carrying on the war. This thing having been obtained,  
 contendunt, ut summa imperii tradatur  
 they maintain, that the chief command should be assigned  
 ipsis et, re deductâ in controversiam,  
 to them and, the thing having been brought into dispute,  
 concilium totius Galliæ indicitur Bibracte.  
 a council of all Gaul is convoked at Bibracte.  
 Frequentes undique conveniunt eodem; res  
 Great numbers from everywhere assemble there; the matter  
 permittitur suffragiis multitudinis; omnes ad unum  
 is consigned to the votes of the multitude; all to one  
 probant Vercingetorigem imperatorem.  
 [a man] approve of Vercingetorix (as) commander.  
 Remi, Lingones, Treviri, abfuerunt ab  
 The Remi, Lingones, (and) Treviri, were absent from  
 hoc concilio; illi quòd sequebantur  
 this council; those [two first] because they were following  
 [observing] amicitiam Romanorum; Treviri quòd  
 the friendship of the Romans; the Treviri because  
 longius aberant, et premebantur ab Germanis;  
 they were far distant, and were hard pressed by the Germans;  
 quæ fuit causa quare abessent toto  
 which was the reason why they were absent in the whole  
 bello, et mitterent auxilia neutris. Ædui  
 war, and were sending auxiliaries to neither. The Ædui  
 ferunt magno dolore se dejectos  
 bear with great resentment (that) they were deprived  
 principatu; queruntur commutationem fortunæ,  
 of the leadership: they lament the change of fortune

et requirunt Cæsaris indulgentiam in se;  
 and they miss Cæsar's indulgence toward themselves;  
 neque tamen, bello suscepto, audent  
 nor however, the war having been undertaken, do they dare  
 separare suum consilium ab reliquis.  
 to separate their plan [course] from the rest.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus adolescentes summæ  
 Eporedorix and Viridomarus young men of the highest  
 spei (sing.) inviti parent Vercingetorigi.  
 expectations unwillingly obey Vercingetorix.

64. Ille imperat obsides reliquis  
 He [Vercingetorix] demands hostages from the other  
 civitatibus. Denique constituit diem ĕi rēi;  
 states. Finally he appoints a day for this matter:

huc jubet omnes equites, numēro  
 here he orders all the horsemen, to the number

quindecim millia, convenire celeriter. Dicit  
 of fifteen thousand, to assemble quickly. He says

se fore contentum peditatu quem  
 (that) he would be content with the infantry which

habuerit antē; neque temtaturum fortunam, neque  
 he had before; nor would he tempt fortune, nor

dimicaturum acie;<sup>43</sup> sed, quoniam abundet  
 would he fight in the battle-line; but, since he abounds

equitatu, esse perfacile factu prohibere  
 in cavalry, it would be very easy in fact to check

Romanos frumentationibus que pabulationibus; mōdō  
 the Romans from corn and forage: provided

ipsi æquo animo corrumpant sua  
 they themselves with a calm mind destroy their own

frumenta, que incendant ædificia; quā  
 corn, and burn (their) houses; by which

jacturā familiaris rēi videant se  
 loss of private property they may see (that) they would

consequi perpetuum imperium que libertatem. His  
 obtain perpetual empire and freedom, These

rebus constitutis, imperat Æduis que  
 things having been arranged, he demands from the Ædui and

Segusianis, qui sunt finitimi Provinciæ, decem  
 the Segusiani, who are nearest to the Province, ten  
 millia peditum; huc addit octingentos  
 thousand (of) infantry; to this he adds eight hundred

equites; his præficit fratrem Eporedorigis,  
 horsemen; over these he appoints the brother of Eporidorig,

que jubet inferre bellum Allobrogibus.  
 and orders (him) to wage war with the Allobroges.

Ex alterâ parte mittit Gabalos que proximos  
 On the other side he sends the Gabali and the nearest

pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos,  
 cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii; likewise the Ruteni,

que Cadurcos ad depopulandos fines Volcarum  
 and the Cadurci to lay waste the territories of the Volcæ

Arecomicorum. Nihilominus sollicitat Allobroges  
 Arecomici. Nevertheless he solicits the Allobroges

clandestinis nunciis que legationibus, quorum mentes  
 by secret messages and embassies, whose minds

sperabat nondum resedissee à  
 he was hoping not yet to have [had] recovered from

superiore bello. Horum principibus pollicetur pecunias,  
 the former war. To their leaders he promises money,

autem civitati imperum totius Provinciæ.  
 but to the state the empire of all the Province.

65. Ad omnes hos casus præsidia  
 Against all these contingencies [crises] the protection

viginti et duarum cohortium provisa erant, quæ  
 of twenty and two cohorts had been provided, which

coacta ex Provinciâ ipsâ ab L. Cæsare,  
 having been collected from the province itself by L. Cæsar,

legato opponebantur ad omnes partes.  
 (his) lieutenant were opposing at [on] all sides.

Helvii, suâ sponte congressi prælio cum  
 The Helvii, of their own accord having engaged in battle with

finitimis, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro,  
 their neighbors. are defeated. and C. Valerius Donaturus,

filio Caburi, principe civitatis, que compluribus  
 the son of Caburus. a chief of the state, and many



aliis interfectis, compelluntur intra oppida  
 others having been killed, they are driven into the towns  
 que muros. Allobroges crebris præsidiis  
 and fortifications. The Allobroges frequent guards

dispositis ad Rhodanum, tuentur suos  
 having been placed at [along] the Rhone; defend their

fines cum magnâ curâ et diligentia. Cæsar,  
 frontiers with great care and diligence. Cæsar,

quòd intelligebat hostes esse  
 because he was perceiving (that) the enemy to be [were]

superiores equitatu, et omnibus itineribus  
 superior in cavalry, and, all the roads

interclusis, poterat sublevari nullâ re  
 having been shut up, he could be assisted in no thing [respect]

ex Provinciâ atque Italiâ, mittit trans Rhenum  
 from the Province and Italy, sends across the Rhine

in Germaniam ad eas civitates, quas pacaverat  
 into Germany to these states, which he had conquered

superioribus annis, que arcessit equites ab his,  
 in former years, and demanded cavalry from them,

et pedites levis armaturæ, qui consueverant  
 and infantry of light armor, that were accustomed

præliari inter eos. Eorum adventu, quòd  
 to battle among them. On their coming, because

utebantur equis minùs idoneis, sumit equos  
 they used horses less suitable, he takes horses

à tribunis militum, sed ut  
 (not only) from the tribunes of the soldiers, but also

Romanis equitibus, atque evocatis, que distribuit  
 from the Roman knights, and veterans, and distributes

Germanis.  
 to the Germans.

66. Interea dum hæc geruntur, copiae  
 Mean time while these things are transpiring, the force

ex Arvernīs, que equites, qui imperati erant  
 from the Arverni, and the cavalry, that had been demanded

toti Galliæ, conveniunt. Magno numero horum  
 of all of Gaul assemble. A great number of these

coacto, quum Cæsar faceret iter in  
 having been collected, when Cæsar made (his) way into  
 Sequanos, per extremos fines Lingonum,  
 the Sequani, through the extreme borders of the Lingones,  
 quò posset faciliùs ferre subsidium Provinciæ,  
 so that he could more easily bring aid to the Province,  
 Vercingetorix consedit, trinis castris, circiter decem  
 Vercingetorix halted, in three camps, about ten  
 millia passuum ab Romanis; que præfectis  
 thousand (of) paces from the Romans; and the commanders  
 equitum convocatis ad concilium, demonstrat  
 of the cavalry having been called to a council, he shows (that)  
 tempus victoriæ venisse; Romanos fugere in  
 the time of victory had come; the Romans were fleeing into  
 Provinciæ, que excedere Galliâ; id esse satis  
 the Province, and were leaving Gaul; (that) this was enough  
 sibi ad obtinendam præsentem libertatem;  
 for them for obtaining present [immediate] freedom;  
 profici parum ad pacem atque otium  
 (but it) profited little for the peace and repose  
 reliqui temporis; enim majoribus copiis  
 of the remaining time; for greater forces  
 coactis reversuros neque facturos  
 having been collected they would return nor would they make  
 finem bellandi; proinde adorianur  
 an end of waring; therefore let them attack (them)  
 impeditos agmine. Si pedites ferant auxilium  
 incumbered on the march. If the infantry bring assistance  
 suis, atque morentur eo, iter posse  
 to their (men), and delay for this, (that) the march could  
 non confici; sin, id quod magis  
 not be performed; but, this which the rather [the more]  
 confidat futurum, impedimentis relictis,  
 he trusts would be, the baggage having been abandoned,  
 consulant suæ salutis, iri spoliatum  
 if they may consult their safety, they would be deprived  
 et usu necessariarum rerum, et dignitate.  
 both of the use of necessary things, and of their honor.

Nam de equitibus hostium, ne ipsos  
 For concerning the cavalry of the enemy, not they  
 quidem debere dubitare, quin nemo eorum  
 even ought to doubt, (but) that no one of them  
 audeat mōdō progredi extra agmen.  
 would dare even to advance beyond the marching-line.  
 Quo faciant id majore animo, se habiturum  
 That they may do this with greater spirit, he would hold  
 omnes copias pro castris, et futurum  
 all (his) forces before the camp, and would be  
 terrori hostibus. Equites conclamant  
 (for) a terror to the enemy. The cavalry shout (that)  
 oportēre confirmari sanctissimo jurejurando,  
 it was proper to confirm (this) by a most sacred oath,  
 ne recipiatur tecto, habeat aditum  
 that he should not be received under a roof, (nor) have access  
 ne ad liberos ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem,  
 either to children or to parents, or to wife,  
 qui non bis perequitasset per agmen  
 who had not twice ridden through the army  
 hostium.  
 of the enemy.

67. Re probatā, atque omnibus  
 The thing having been approved, and all  
 adactis ad jusjurandum, postēro die  
 having been bound to an oath, on the next day  
 equitatu distributo in tres partes, duæ  
 the cavalry having been divided into three parts, two  
 ostendunt se à duobus lateribus; una cœpit  
 show themselves on the two flanks; one began  
 impedire iter à primo agmine. Quâ  
 to impede the march on the first line [the front]. Which  
 re nunciatā, Cæsar quoque jubet suum  
 thing having been announced, Cæsar also orders his  
 equitatum divisum tripartitō ire contra hostem.  
 cavalry divided into three parts to go against the enemy  
 Pugnatur (pass. sing.) unā in omnibus partibus.  
 They fought together on all sides.

Agmen constitit. Impedimenta recipiuntur  
 The marching-column halted. The baggage is received  
 inter legiones. Si in quâ parte nostri  
 among the legions. If in any part our (men)  
 videbantur laborare, aut premi gravius, èd  
 were seeming to labor, or be pressed more severely, there  
 Cæsar jubebat signa inferri, que  
 Cæsar was ordering the standards to be borne, and  
 aciem converti; quæ res et tardabat  
 the battle-line to be turned; which thing both was retarding  
 hostes ad insequendum, et confirmabat  
 the enemy for [from] following, and was encouraging  
 nostros spe auxili. Tandem Germani  
 our (men) with the hope of aid. At length the Germans  
 ab dextro latere, nacti summum jugum  
 on the right wing, having gained the top of the hill  
 depellunt hostes loco; persequuntur  
 force the enemy from the place; they pursue  
 fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix  
 (them) fleeing even to the river, where Vercingetorix  
 consederat cum pedestribus copiis, que interficiunt  
 had halted with the foot forces, and they kill  
 complures. Quâ re animadvertâ, reliqui  
 very many. Which thing having been observed, the rest  
 veriti, ne circumvenirentur, mandant se  
 afraid, lest they might be surrounded, consign themselves  
 fugæ. Cædes fit omnibus locis. Tres  
 to flight. Slaughter is made in all parts. Three  
 nobilissimi Ædui capti perducuntur ad Cæsarem;  
 most noble Æduans captured are led back to Cæsar;  
 Cotus præfectus equitum, qui habuerat  
 Cotus the commander of the cavalry, who had held  
 controversiam cum Convictolitave proximis comitiis;  
 the contest with Convictolitavis in the late elections;  
 et Cavarillus, qui, post defectionem Litavici  
 and Cavarillus, who, after the revolt of Litavicus  
 præfuerat pedestribus copiis, et Eporedorix  
 had commanded the foot forces, and Eporedorix,

quo duce, ante adventum Cæsaris, Ædui  
 with whom as leader, before the arrival of Cæsar, the Ædui  
 contendērant bello cum Sequanis.  
 had fought in the war with the Sequani.

68. Omni equitatu fugato, Vercingetorix  
 All the cavalry having been routed, Vercingetorix

reduxit suas copias ut collocaverat pro  
 led back his forces as he had placed (them) before  
 castris; que protinus cœpit facere iter  
 the camp; and immediately began to make (his) march  
 Alesiam,<sup>44</sup> quod est oppidum Mandubiorum; que  
 to Alesia, which is a town of the Mandubii; and  
 jussit impedimenta celeriter educi ex castris,  
 ordered the baggage quickly to be brought from the camp,  
 et subsequi se. Cæsar, impedimentis  
 and to follow closely after him. Cæsar, the baggage

deductis in proximum collem, que duabus  
 having been conducted to the next hill, and two

legionibus relictis præsidio, secutus,  
 legions having been left for [as] a guard, having followed,

quantum tempus diēi passum est, circiter tribus  
 as far as the time of day allowed, about three

millibus hostium ex novissimo agmine inter-  
 thousand of the enemy in the rear line having been

fectis, altēro die fecit castra ad  
 slain, on the next day makes [pitches] camp at

Alesiam. Perspecto situ urbis, que  
 Alesia. Having reconnoitered the situation of the town, and

hostibus perterritis, quod erant pulsi  
 the enemy (having been) terrified, because they were beaten

equitatu, quā parte exercitus maximē  
 by the cavalry, in which part [branch] of the army especially

confidebant; adhortatus milites ad laborem,  
 they were confiding; having exhorted the soldiers to the labor,

instituit circumvallare Alesiam.  
 he determined to invest Alesia.

69. Oppidum ipsum erat in summo colle,  
 The town itself was on the top (of) a hill,

lōco admodum edito, ut videretur non posse ex-  
 the place very high, so that it seemed it could not (to)  
 pugnari nisi obsidione. Duo flumina ex  
 be captured unless by a blockade. Two rivers on  
 duabus partibus subuebant radices cujus collis.  
 two sides were washing the foot of this hill.  
 Ante oppidum planities patebat circiter trium  
 Before the town a plain was extending about three  
 millia passuum in longitudinem. Ex omnibus  
 thousand paces [miles] in length On all  
 reliquis partibus, colles, mediocri spatia  
 the remaining sides, hills, a moderate distance  
 interjecto pari fastigio  
 (having been) interposed with equal elevation [degree]  
 altitudinis cingebant oppidum. Sub muro,  
 of height were encircling the town. Under the wall.  
 pars collis, quæ spectabat ad orientem,  
 the part of the hill, which was looking to the east,  
 omnem hunc lōcum copiae Gallorum compleverant,  
 all this place the forces of the Gauls had filled,  
 que præduxerant fossam, et maceriam  
 and had led [thrown] around a ditch, and a cement wall  
 sex pedum in altitudinem. Circuitus ejus  
 six feet in height. The circuit of this  
 munitionis, quæ instituebatur ab Romanis  
 fortification, which was undertaken by the Romans  
 tenebat undecim millia passuum. Castra  
 was extending eleven thousand paces [miles]. The camp  
 posita erant opportunis lōcis; que ibi viginti  
 was placed in favorable positions; and there twenty  
 tria castella facta, in quibus interdiu stationes  
 three fortresses were made, in which by day guards  
 disponebantur, ne qua irruptio fieret subitō.  
 were placed, lest any sally might be made suddenly.  
 Hæc eadem tenebantur noctu excubitoribus,  
 These same were held [occupied] at night by pickets,  
 ac firmis præsidiis.  
 and strong posts.

70. Opère instituto, equestre prœlium  
 The work having been undertaken, a cavalry battle  
 fit in ěâ planitie, quam, demonstravimus  
 took place on this plain, which, we have shown  
 suprâ, patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem,  
 above, extends three thousand paces in length.  
 intermissam collibus. Contenditur (pass. sing.)  
 limited by the hills. They contended  
 summâ vi ab utrisque. Cæsar  
 with the highest [utmost] vigor by [on] both sides. Cæsar  
 submittit Germanos nostris laborantibus, que  
 sends the Germans to our men hard pressed, and  
 constituit legiones pro castris, ne qua irruptio  
 draws up the legions before the camp, lest any sally  
 subitò fiat peditatu hostium. Præsidio  
 suddenly should be made by the infantry of the enemy. The protection  
 legionum addito, animus augetur nostris;  
 of the legions having been added, courage is increased in our men;  
 hostes coniecti in fugam, ipsi impediunt  
 the enemy thrown into flight, they impede  
 se multitudine; atque coartantur angustioribus  
 themselves by their mass; and are crowded in the narrower  
 portis relictis. Germani sequuntur  
 gates left (open). The Germans follow (them)  
 acrius usque ad munitiones; maga cædes  
 more vigorously even to the fortifications; a great slaughter  
 fit; nonnulli, equis relictis, conantur  
 is made; some, the horses having been abandoned, endeavor  
 transire fossam, et transcendere maceriam.  
 to cross over the ditch, and climb the cement wall.  
 Cæsar jubet legiones, quas constituerat  
 Cæsar orders the legions, which he had drawn up  
 pro vallo promoveri paulum. Galli,  
 before the rampart to be moved forward a little. The Gauls  
 qui erant intra munitiones, non minus  
 who were within the fortifications, no less  
 perturbantur; existimantes veniri  
 were terrified: thinking (our men) were coming

confestim ad se, conclamant ad arma. Nonnulli  
quickly to them, they call to arms. Some

perterriti irrumpunt in oppidum. Vercingetorix  
panic stricken burst into the town. Vercingetorix

jubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur.  
orders the gates to be closed, lest the camp should be left bare.

Multis interfectis, compluribus equis  
Many having been slain, (and) very many horses

captis, Germani recipiunt sese.  
having been captured, the Germans return [retire].

71. Vercingetorix capit consilium dimittere à  
Vercingetorix adopts the plan to send away from

se omnem equitatum noctu, priusquam munitiones  
him all the cavalry by night, before the fortifications

perficiantur ab Romanis. Mandat discedentibus,  
should be finished by the Romans. He commands them departing,

ut, quisque eorum adeat suam civitatem, que  
that, each one of them should go to their own state, and

cogant ad bellum omnes, qui per  
(that) they should assemble for the war all, who by

ætatem possint ferre arma. Proponit sua  
their age might be able to bear arms. He states his

merita in illos, que obtestatur, ut habeant  
services toward them, and implores, that they should have

rationem suæ salutis, neu dedant se hostibus  
a regard for his safety, nor deliver him to the enemy

in cruciatum, meritum optime de  
for torture, having merited so well concerning

communi libertate; qui<sup>45</sup> si fuerint indiligentiores,  
the common liberty: who if they should be somewhat remiss,

demonstrat octoginta millia delecta hominum  
he shows (that) eighty thousand chosen men

interitura cum se; ratione inita,  
would perish with him: a calculation having been entered [made].

se habere frumentum exiguè triginta dierum, sed  
he had corn scarcely of [for] thirty days, but

posse tolerare etiam paulò longiùs parcendo.  
he could endure even a little longer by sparing.



His mandatis datis, dimittit equitatum  
 These orders having been given, he dismisses the cavalry  
 silentio, secundâ vigiliâ, quâ mostrium opus  
 in silence, in the second watch, where our work  
 intermissum; jubet omne frumentum ferri ad  
 ceased; he orders all the corn to be brought to  
 se; consiuit pœnam capitis<sup>46</sup> iis,  
 himself; he ordains the punishment of the head [of death] to those,  
 qui non paruerint; distribuit pecus, ejus  
 who should not obey; he distributes the cattle, of which  
 magna copia compulsa erat ab Mandubiis,  
 a great abundance had been driven (there) by the Mandubii,  
 viritim; instituit frumentum metiri  
 man by man; he regulates (that) the corn to [should] be measured  
 parcè et paulatim; recipit omnes copias,  
 sparingly and by little: he receives all the forces,  
 quas collocaverat pro oppido, in oppidum.  
 which he had placed before the town, into the town.  
 His rationibus parat expectare auxilia Galliæ,  
 In this manner he prepares to await the aid of Gaul,  
 et administrare bellum.  
 and to carry on the war.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis  
 Which things having been known from deserters  
 et captivis, Cæsar instituit hæc gênera (pl.)  
 and prisoners, Cæsar adopts this kind  
 munitionis. Duxit fossam viginti pedum  
 of fortification. He constructed a ditch (of) twenty feet  
 latam directis lateribus, ut ejus solum  
 broad with perpendicular sides, so that its bottom  
 pateret tantundem quantum summa labra distabant.  
 might open just as much as the upper edges were apart.  
 Reduxit omnes reliquas munitiones quadringentis  
 He drew back all the other fortifications (by) four hundred  
 pedibus ab eâ fossâ; id hœc consilio  
 feet from this ditch: this with this design  
 (quoniam tantum spatium necessario esset complexus,  
 (since so great a space necessarily was embraced,

totum opus nec facile cingeretur  
 (that) the whole work not easily could be surrounded  
 coronâ militum), ne aut multitudo hostium  
 by a circle of soldiers), lest either a mass of the enemy

advolaret ad munitiones de improvise noctu,  
 should sally out to the works of a sudden by night,

aut interdiu possent conicere tela in  
 or by day they might be able to throw weapons against

nostros destinatos operi. Hæc spatio inter-  
 our men assigned to the work. This space having been

misso, perduxit duas fossas quindecim pedes latas,  
 left, he forms two trenches fifteen feet wide,

eadem altitudine; interiorum quarum  
 with the same depth; the inner one of which (being)

campestribus ac demissis locis, complevit aqua  
 in level and low ground, he fills with water

derivatâ ex flumine. Post hæc extruxit  
 led from the river. Behind these he constructed

aggerem et vallum duodecim pedum. Huic  
 a mound and rampart of twelve feet. To this

adjecit loricam que pinnas, grandibus cervis  
 he added a parapet and battlements, with great stag-horns

eminentibus ad commissuras (pl.) pluteorum (pl.)  
 projecting at the junction of the parapet

atque aggeris, qui tardarent adscensum  
 and the mound, which might hinder the ascent

hostium; et circumdedit turres toto opere, quæ  
 of the enemy; and he put around towers on all the work, which

distant inter se<sup>47</sup> octoginta pedes.  
 were distant among themselves eighty feet.

73. Erat necesse eodem tempore et  
 It was necessary at the same time both

materiari, et frumentari, et tantas  
 to bring wood, and to get corn, and (that) so great

munitiones fieri, nostris copiis dim-  
 fortifications to (should) be made, our forces having been

inutis, quæ progrediebantur longius ab  
 diminished, that were proceeding rather far from

castris; et Galli nonnunquam conabantur  
 the camp; and the Gauls sometimes were endeavoring  
 tentar nostra opëra, atque facere eruptionem  
 to attack our works, and to make a sally  
 ex oppido summâ vi pluribus portis.  
 from the town with the utmost vigor by several gates.

Quare Cæsar putavit ad hæc rursus  
 Therefore Cæsar thought to these again (to) [there must]

addendum opera, quò munitiones possent  
 be added works, so that the fortifications might

defendi minore numëro militum. Itaque truncis  
 be defended with a less number of men [soldiers]. Therefore trunks

arborum, aut ramis admodum firmis abscissis,  
 of trees, or branches somewhat stout having been cut down,

atque cacuminibus horum delibratis atque  
 and the tops of these having been peeled and

preacutis; perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ  
 sharpened; continuous ditches five feet deep

ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et  
 were cut. Here these stakes were put down, and

reincti ab infimo possent ne revelli,  
 fastened at the bottom (so that) they could not be pulled up,

eminebant ab ramis. Quini ordines  
 they were projecting by their branches. Every five rows

erant conjuncti, atque implicati inter se,  
 were united, and intertwined among themselves

quò ipsi qui<sup>48</sup> intraverant, induebant se  
 where they who might enter, were impaling themselves

acutissimis vallis; appellabant hos cippos.  
 on very sharp stakes; they were calling these cippi [boundary

posts]. Ante hos obliquis ordinibus,  
 Before these in oblique rows, and (having been)

dispositis in quincuncem, scrobes, in altitudinem  
 arranged in quincunx, pits, to the depth

trium pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore  
 of three feet were dug with a little narrower

fastigio ad summum. Huc teretes stipites crassitudine  
 surface at the top. Here round stakes of the thickness

feminis, ab summo præacuti et præusti,  
 of the thigh, at the top very sharp and burnt,  
 demittebantur; ita ut non amplius quatuor  
 were set in; so that not more (than) four

digitis eminerent ex terrâ. Simul  
 inches might project from the ground. At the same time

causâ confirmandi et stabiliendi, singuli<sup>49</sup>  
 for the purpose of strengthening and steadying, each

pedes (pl.) ab infimo solo terrâ  
 foot from the lowest ground with earth

exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis integebatur  
 were trodden down; the remaining part of the pit was covered

viminibus ac virgultis ad occultandas insidias.  
 with osiers and twigs for concealing the traps.

Octoni ordines hujus generis ducti, distabant  
 Eight rows of this kind were set, they were distant

ternos pedes inter se. Id, ex similitudine  
 three feet among themselves. This, from the likeness

floris, appellabant liliū. Ante hæc taleæ,  
 to the flower, they were calling a lily. Before these, stakes,

pedem longæ, ferreis hamis infixis, totæ  
 a foot long, with iron hooks fixed in, all [wholly]

infodiebantur in terram: que, mediocribus  
 were sunk into the ground; and, moderate

spatiis intermissis, disserebantur omnibus  
 spaces (having been) interposed, were planted in all

locis, quos nominabant stimulos.  
 places, which they were calling spurs.

74. His rebus perfectis, secutus  
 These things having been completed, having followed

regiones æquissimas, pro naturâ loci quàm  
 localities the most level, for the nature of the place that [as]

potuit, complexus quatuordecim millia  
 he could, (and) having enclosed fourteen thousand

passuum, perfecit pares munitiones ejusdem  
 paces, he completed like fortifications of the same

generis, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem  
 kind, opposite from these, against an external

hostem; ut præsidia munitionum possent  
 enemy; that the guards of the fortifications could

circumfundi ne magna<sup>50</sup> multitudine, quidem (si  
 be surrounded not by a great multitude, even (if

accidat ita, discessu<sup>51</sup> ejus).  
 it should happen so, by the departure of it [its, the cavalry's

Neu cogerentur egredi ex  
 departure]. Nor (that) they should be forced to go from

castris cum periculo, jubet omnes habere pabulum  
 the camp with danger, he orders all to have forage

convectum que frumentum triginta dierum.  
 collected and corn for thirty days.

75. Dum hæc geruntur ad Alesiam,  
 While these (things) are transpiring at Alesia,

Galli, concilio principum indicto,  
 the Gauls, a council of the chiefs having been convoked,

statuunt, non omnes convocandos qui  
 ordain, (that) not all should be called out who

possent ferre arma (ut Vercingetorix censuit),  
 could bear arms (as Vercingetorix decided),

sed certum numerum imperandum cuique  
 but (that) a certain number should be ordered for each

civitati; ne, tantâ confusâ multitudine  
 state; lest, in so great (and) mixed a multitude

possent nec moderari, nec discernere suos  
 they could neither govern, nor distinguish their (men)

nec habere rationem frumentandi. Impërant  
 nor have the means of provisioning They demand

triginta quinque millia Æduis atque  
 thirty five thousand from the Ædui and

eorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis,  
 their clients, the Segusiani, the Ambivareti, the Aulerci,

Brannovicibus, (Blannoviis); parem numerum  
 the Brannovices, (Blannovii); a like number

Arvernīs, adjunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis,  
 from the Arverni, united with the Eleuteti, the Cadurci,

Gabalīs, Vellaviis, qui consueverunt  
 the Gabali, (and) the Vellavii, who have been accustomed

esse sub imperio Arvernorum: Senonibus,  
 to be under the command of the Arverni: from the Senones,  
 Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonibus, Rutenis,  
 the Sequani, the Bituriges, the Santones, the Ruteni,  
 Carnutibus, duodena millia; Bellovacis, decim;  
 the Carnutes, twelve thousand; the Bellovaci, ten;  
 totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et  
 the same from the Lemovices; eight from the Pictones, and  
 Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helvetiis; sena  
 the Turoni, and the Parisii, and the Helvetii; six  
 Audibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis,  
 from the Audes, the Ambiani, the Mediomatrici, the Petrocorii,  
 Nervii, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia  
 the Nervii, the Morini, the Nitiobriges, five thousand  
 Aulercis Cenomanis; totidem Atrebatibus;  
 from the Aulercis Cenomani; the same number from the Atrebates;  
 quatuor Veliocassis; (Lexoviis et) Aulercis  
 four from the Velioicassi; (the Lexovii and) the Aulerci  
 Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis bina.  
 Eburovices three; from the Rauraci and Boii two.  
 Decim universis civitatibus, quæ attingunt  
 Ten from all the states, which border on  
 Oceanum, quæque eorum consuetudine appellantur  
 the Ocean, and that by their custom are called  
 Armoricæ, in quo numero sunt Coriosolites,  
 Armoricæ, in which number are the Coriosolites,  
 Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti,  
 the Redones, the Ambibarii, the Caletes, the Osismi, the Veneti,  
 Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci non  
 Lexovii, Venelli. Of these the Bellovaci did not  
 contulerunt suum numerum; quòd dixerunt  
 contribute their number; because they said (that)  
 se gesturos bellum cum Romanis suo  
 they would carry on war with the Romans by their own  
 nomine atque arbitrio, neque obtemperaturos  
 name and will, nor would they obey  
 imperio cujusquam. Rogati à Commius,  
 the command of any one. Requested by Commius,

pro ejus hospitio, tamen miserunt  
 on account of his tie of hospitality, however they sent  
 duo millia.  
 two thousand.

76. Cæsar, ita ut antea demonstravimus, erat usus  
 Cæsar, just as before we have shown, had used

fideli atque utili opẽrã hujus Commius,  
 the faithful and helpful service, of this Commius,

superioribus annis in Britannia; pro quibus meritis  
 in former years in Britain; for which deserts

jusserat ejus civitatem esse immunem,  
 he had ordered his state to be exempt (from tribute),

reddiderat jura que leges; atque attribuerat  
 had restored the rights and laws; and had conferred

ipsi Morinos. Tamen tanta fuit consensio  
 on himself [him] the Morini. Yet so great was the unanimity

universæ Gallia vindicandæ libertatis, et  
 of the whole of Gaul of [for] establishing liberty, and

recuperandæ pristinae laudis belli, ut  
 of [for] recovering (their) ancient renown in war, that

moverentur neque beneficiis, neque memoriã  
 they could be moved neither by benefits, nor by the memory

amicitiæ, que omnes incumberent in id  
 of friendship, and all were devoting themselves to this

bellum et animo et opibus; octo  
 war with both mind [thought] and means; eight

millibus equitum, et circiter ducentis et  
 thousand cavalry, and about two hundred and

quadraginta millibus peditum coactis.  
 forty thousand infantry having been collected.

Hæc recensebantur in finibus Æduorum; que  
 These were reviewed in the country of the Ædui; and

numerus inibatur; præfecti constituebantur;  
 the number was secured; commanders were appointed;

summa imperii transdatur Commius Atrebatii,  
 the supreme command is conferred on Commius the Atrebatian,

Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Æduis.  
 Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Æduans, (and

Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercinge-  
 Vercassivellauns the Arvernian, cousin-german to Vercinge-  
 torigis. Iis delecti ex civitatibus  
 torix. To them (those) selected from the states  
 attribuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur.  
 are assigned, by whose counsel the war should be conducted.  
 Omnes proficiscuntur ad Alesiam alacres et pleni  
 All set out to Alesia eager and full  
 fiducia. Nec erat quisquam omnium, qui,  
 of confidence. Nor was there any one of all, who,  
 arbitraretur adspectum modò tantæ  
 supposed that the sight even of so great  
 multitudinis posse sustineri, præsertim ancipiti  
 a multitude could be endured, especially in a two-fold  
 proelio; quum pugnaretur<sup>52</sup> eruptione ex  
 battle; when it would be [they] fought by [in] a sally from  
 oppido, et foris tantæ copiae equitatus que  
 the town, and outside so great forces of cavalry and  
 peditatus cerneretur.  
 infantry should be discerned.  
 77. At ii qui obsidebantur Alesia, die  
 But those who were besieged in Alesia, the day  
 præterita, quâ expectaverant auxilia suorum,  
 having passed, on which they had expected the aid of their (allies),  
 omni frumento consumpto, inscii quid  
 all the corn having been consumed, ignorant what  
 geretur in Æduis, concilio coacto,  
 was passing among the Ædui, a council having been assembled  
 consultabant de exitu suarum fortunarum.  
 they were deliberating about the issue of their fortunes.  
 Ac variis sententiis dictis, quarum pars  
 And various opinions having been expressed, of which a part  
 censebant deditionem, pars eruptionem dum  
 were recommending a surrender, a part a sally while  
 vires (pl.) suppeterent. Oratio Critognati  
 (their) strength was sufficing. The speech of Critognatus  
 videtur non prætereunda, propter ejus  
 it seems ought not to be passed over, on account of its



singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, natus  
 singular and infamous cruelty. He, born  
 summo lōco in Arvernīs, et habitus  
 of the highest family among the Arverni, and possessed  
 magnæ auctoritatis, inquit: "dicturus sum nihil  
 of great influence, said: "I am about to say nothing  
 de sentiā eorum, qui appellant  
 concerning the opinion of those, who call  
 turpissimam servitutem nomīne deditiōis;  
 the basest slavery by the name of surrender:  
 censeo hos neque habendos lōco  
 I am of the opinion (that) these neither ought to be held in the place  
 civium, neque adhibendos ad  
 [role] of citizens, nor ought they to be admitted to  
 concilium. Res est mihi cum iis, qui  
 the counsel. The business is for me with those, who  
 probant eruptionem; in consilio quorum consensu  
 sanction a sally, in the advice of whom with the consent  
 vestrum omnium memoria pristina virtutis  
 of you all the memory of the old-time valor  
 videtur residere. Ista est mollities animi non  
 seems to abide. This is a weakness of mind not  
 virtus, non posse ferre inopiam paulisper.  
 courage, not to be able to endure privation for a little time.  
 Qui ultro offerant se morti facilius  
 (Those) who willingly offer themselves to death more easily  
 reperiuntur, quā qui patienter ferant dolorem.  
 are found, than (those) who patiently endure distress.  
 Atque ego probarem hanc sententiam tantum  
 And I would approve this opinion, so much  
 apud me dignitas potest), si viderem  
 with me honor is able [avails], if I could see (that)  
 nullam jacturam fieri præterquam nostræ  
 no loss would be made except of our  
 vitæ (sing.). Sed in capiēdo consilio,  
 lives. But in taking [forming] plans,  
 respiciamus omnem Galliam, quam concitavimus  
 let us regard all Gaul, which we have aroused

ad nostrum auxilium. Octoginta millibus hominum  
 to our assistance. Eighty thousand men  
 interfectis, uno lōco, quid animi existimatis  
 having been slain, in one place, what (of) spirit do you think  
 fore nostris propinquis que consanguineis, si  
 (this) would be to our relatives and kinsmen, if  
 cogentur decertare prœlio pænè in  
 they may be forced to engage in battle almost over (our)  
 cadaveribus ipsis? Nolite spoliare hos vestro  
 dead bodies themselves? Do not deprive those of your  
 auxilio, qui causâ vestræ salutis neglexerint  
 aid, who for the sake of your safety have disregarded  
 suum periculum, nec vestrâ stultitiâ ac  
 their own peril, nor by your folly and  
 temeritate, aut imbecillitate animi prosternere  
 recklessness, or imbecility of mind prostrate  
 omnem Galliam, ac addicere perpetuæ servituti.  
 all Gaul, and consign (it) to perpetual slavery.  
 An quòd non venērint ad diem  
 Why because they may not have come at [on] the day  
 dubitatis de eorum fide que constantia? Quid  
 do you doubt of their fidelity and constancy? What  
 ergo? Putatis Romanos exerceri quotidie  
 then? Do you suppose (that) the Romans are training daily  
 in illis ulterioribus munitionibus ne causâ  
 in those outer fortifications only for the purpose  
 animi?<sup>53</sup> Si potestis non confirmari nun-  
 of the mind? If you can not be strengthened by the  
 tiis illorum, omni aditu præsepto,  
 messages of those, all access having been prevented  
 utimini his testibus eorum adventum  
 use these (as) witnesses (that) their arrival  
 appropinquare exterriti timore ejus re  
 draws near alarmed by the fear of this thing  
 versantur diem que noctem in opère. Quid  
 they are busied day and night in the works. What  
 ergo est mei consilii? Facere quod nostri  
 therefore is my advice? To do what our

maiores fecerunt nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum  
 forefathers did in the by no means equal war of the Cimbri  
 que Teutonum, qui compulsi in oppida, ac  
 and Teutones, who driven into towns, and  
 subacti simili inopiâ, toleraverunt vitam corporibus  
 forced by a like want, supported life by the bodies  
 eorum, qui ætate videbantur inutiles ad bellum,  
 of those, who by age seemed useless for war,  
 neque transdiderunt se hostibus. Si  
 nor did they surrender themselves to the enemy. If  
 haberemus non exemplum cuius rei, tamen  
 we had not the example of this thing, yet  
 iudicarem pulcherrimum causâ libertatis  
 I should judge it most glorious for the sake of liberty  
 institui, et prodi posteris. Nam  
 to be established, and be handed down to posterity. For  
 quid fuit simile illi bello?<sup>54</sup> Galliâ  
 what was it like that war? Gaul (having been)  
 depopulatâ, que magnâ calamitate illatâ,  
 depopulated, and a great disaster (having been) inflicted,  
 Cimbri aliquando excesserunt nostris finibus, atque  
 the Cimbri at length departed from our territories, and  
 petierunt alias terras; reliquerunt nobis jura,  
 sought other lands; they left us the rights,  
 leges, agros libertatem. Verò Romani  
 the laws, the lands (and) liberty. But the Romans  
 quid aliud petunt, aut quid volunt, nisi  
 what else do they seek, or what do they wish, except  
 adducti invidiâ, considere in agris que  
 induced by greed, to settle in the fields and  
 civitatibus horum, quos cognoverunt famâ  
 states of these (those) whom they have learned by report  
 nobiles que potentes bello, atque his  
 (are) noble and powerful in war, and on these  
 injungere æternam servitutem? Neque enim  
 impose perpetual slavery? Nor even  
 unquam gesserunt bella aliâ conditione. Quòd  
 have they ever waged war on any other terms. For

si ignoratis ęa quę geruntur in  
 if you know not those things which are carried on in  
 longinquis nationibus, respicite finitimam Galliam,  
 distant nations, look ye [you] at neighboring Gaul,

quę redacta in provinciam, jure et legibus  
 which reduced to a province, (its) rights and laws

commutatis, subjecta securi-  
 (having been) subverted (having been) subjected to the (lic-

bus premitur perpetuā servitute!"  
 tors') axes, is oppressed by perpetual slavery!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut  
 The opinions having been delivered, they resolve, that

qui valetudine, aut ætate sunt inutiles bello  
 (those) who by sickness, or age are useless for war

excedant oppido, atque omnia experiantur,  
 should leave the town, and all things should be tried,

prius quàm descendant ad sententiam  
 before (that) they descend to the recommendation

Critognati; tamen utendum illo consilio, is res  
 of Critognatus; however to use his advice, if the case

cogat, atque auxilia morentur, potiùs quàm  
 compels, and aid be delayed, rather than (that)

conditionem deditionis aut pacis subeundam.  
 a condition of surrender or of peace should be endured

Mandubii, qui recepērant ęos oppido coguntur  
 The Mandubii, who had received them in the town were forced

exire cum liberis atque uxoribus. Hi  
 to depart with the children and wives. These

quum accessissent ad munitones Romanorum,  
 when they had approached to the fortifications of the Romans,

flentes orabant omnibus precibus, ut recep-  
 weeping were praying with all entreaties, that having been

tos in servitutem, juarent cibo.  
 received into slavery, they would relieve (them) with food

Hos Cæsar, custodiis dispositis in vallo,  
 These Cæsar, sentinels having been posted on the rampart

prohibebat recipi.  
 was refusing to be received.

79. Interea Comius, et reliqui duces,  
 In the mean time Commius, and the other leaders,  
 quibus summa imperii permissa erant, perveniunt  
 to whom the supreme command had been assigned, arrive  
 ad Alesiam cum omnibus copiis, et exteriore  
 at Alesia with all the forces, and an outer  
 colle occupato, considunt non longius  
 hill having been occupied, they encamp not farther (than)  
 mille passibus à nostris munitionibus. Postëro  
 a thousand paces from our fortifications, The next  
 die, equitatu educto ex castris,  
 day, the cavalry having been led forth from (their) camp,  
 complent omnem eam planitiem, quam demonstravimus  
 they fill all this plain, which we have shown  
 patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem;  
 to extend [extends] three thousand paces in length:  
 que constituunt pedestres copias paulum ab eo  
 and they station the foot soldiers a little from this  
 loco, abditas in superioribus locis (pl.). Erat  
 place, removed on higher ground. There was  
 despectus ex oppido Alesiâ in campum.  
 a view from the town (of) Alesia over the plain.  
 His auxiliis visis, concurritur,  
 These auxiliaries having been seen, there is running together  
 gratulatio fit (sing.) inter eos, atque animi  
 congratulations are made among them, and the souls  
 omnium excitantur ad lætitiâ. Itaque, copiis  
 of all are excited to joy. Therefore, (their) forces  
 productis ante oppidum, considunt et  
 having been drawn out before the town, they take stand and  
 integunt proximam fossam cratibus, atque explent  
 cover the nearest ditch with hurdles, and fill (it)  
 aggere, que comparant se ad eruptionem,  
 with dirt, and prepare themselves for a sally.  
 atque omnes casus.  
 and all chances.
80. Cæsar, omni exercitu disposito ad  
 Cæsar, all the army having been stationed at

utramque partem munitionum, ut si usus  
 both sides of the fortifications, (so) that if the need  
 veniat, quisque noverit et teneat suum locum,  
 came, each might know and keep his own place,  
 jubet equitatum educi ex castris, et  
 orders the cavalry to be led from the camp, and  
 committi prœlium. Erat despectus ex omnibus  
 to join battle. There was a view from all  
 castris, quæ undique tenebant summum  
 the camp, which everywhere was holding the highest  
 jugum, atque animi omnium militum intenti  
 ridge, and the minds of all the soldiers absorbed  
 expectabant eventum pugnae. Galli  
 were anticipating the issue of the battle. The Gauls  
 interjecerant inter equites raros sagittarios,  
 had placed among the horsemen scattered archers,  
 que expeditos levis armaturæ,<sup>55</sup> qui succurrent  
 and ready soldiers lightly armed, who might succor  
 auxilio suis cedentibus et sustinerent  
 by (their) aid their (men) retreating and hold  
 impetum nostrorum equitum. Complures  
 the charge of our cavalry. Many (of our men)  
 vulnerati de improviso ab his excedebant  
 wounded unexpectedly by these were withdrawing  
 prœlio. Quum Galli confiderent suos  
 from the battle. When the Gauls were trusting (that) their  
 (men) were superior in the fight, and were seeing  
 nostros premi multitudine; ex om-  
 our (men) (to be) hard pressed by the throng; from [on]  
 nibus partibus, et ii qui continebantur  
 all parts [sides], both those who were retained  
 munitionibus, et ii qui convenerant ad  
 within the fortifications, and those who had come for  
 auxilium, confirmabant animos suorum clamore  
 aid, were encouraging the souls of their men by a shout  
 et ululatu. Quod res gerebatur in conspectu  
 and yell. As the action was carried on in the sight

omnium, neque factum rectè ac<sup>56</sup>  
 of all, neither (a thing) done rightly (nobly) and (nor)  
 turpiter potèrat celari, et cupiditas laudis,  
 shamefully could be concealed, both the desire of praise,  
 et timor ignominiae excitabat (sing.) utrosque ad  
 and the fear of disgrace were inciting both sides to  
 virtutem. Quum pugnaretur à meridie  
 valor. When it was [they] fought from noon  
 propè ad occasum solis dubiâ victoriâ,  
 nearly to the setting of the sun with a doubtful victory,  
 Germani in unâ parte confertis turmis fecerunt  
 the Germans on one side in compact troops made  
 impetum in hostes, que propulerunt eos.  
 an attack on the enemy, and routed them.  
 Quibus coniectis in fugam,  
 Whom [These] (having been) thrown into flight,  
 sagittarii circumventi sunt que interfecti. Item  
 the archers were surrounded and slain. Also  
 ex reliquis partibus nostri insecuti (those)  
 in other quarters our men followed  
 cedentes usque ad castra, dederunt  
 retreating even to the camp, (and) gave  
 non facultatem colligendi sui. At  
 no opportunity of [for] collecting their (men). But  
 ïi, qui processerant ab Alesia, victoriâ  
 those, who had come from Alesia, the victory  
 propè desperatâ, receperunt se  
 nearly (having been) despaired of betook themselves  
 mœsti, in oppidum.  
 sorrowful, into the town.

81. Uno die intermisso, atque hœc spatio  
 One day having intervened, and in this period

magno numëro cratium, scalarum, harpagonum  
 a great number of hurdles, ladders, pole-hooks

effecto, Galli, mediâ nocte, silentio,  
 having been made, the Gauls, at mid night, (and) in silence,

egressi ex castris accedunt ad  
 having marched from (their) camp approach to

campestres munitiones. Subito clamore  
 the field [outside] fortifications. A sudden shout  
 sublato, quâ significatione, qui  
 having been raised, by which signal, (those) who  
 obsidebantur in oppido, possent cognoscere de  
 were besieged in the town, might know of  
 suo adventu, projicere crates deturbare  
 their arrival, (they) (to) throw out the hurdles, force  
 nostros de vallo fundis, sugittis lapidibus,  
 our men from the rampart by slings, arrows (and) stones,  
 que administrare reliqua quæ pertinent ad  
 and (to) perform the other things which belong to  
 oppugnationem. Eodem tempore, clamore  
 an assault. At the same time, the shout  
 exaudito, Vercingetorix dat signum suis  
 having been heard, Vercingetorix gives the signal to his men  
 tubâ, atque educit ex oppido.  
 by the trumpet, and leads (them forth) from the town  
 Nostri, ut superioribus diebus, suas locas  
 Our men, as on the former days, his place (having  
 attributus erat cuique, accedunt ad munitiones;  
 been) assigned to each one, proceed to the fortifications,  
 perterrent Gallos fundis libralibus<sup>57</sup> que  
 they alarm the Gauls by slings (of) pound-weight and  
 sudibus, quas disposuerant in opère, ac  
 stakes, which they had placed in the works, and  
 glandibus. Prospectu adempto tenebris,  
 by lead bullets. The view (having been) prevented by darkness,  
 multa vulnera accipiuntur utrimque, complura  
 many wounds are received on both sides, numerous  
 tela conjiuntur tormentis. At M. Antonius,<sup>58</sup>  
 weapons are thrown by the engines. But M. Antonius,  
 et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus ea partes  
 and C. Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom these parts  
 obveniant ad defendendum, ex quâ  
 had fallen for defending, on what [whatever]  
 parte intellexerunt nostros premi,  
 side they understood (that) our men were hard pressed,



submittebant iis auxilio deductos ex  
they sent to them for [as] aid (those) drawn [led] out from

ulterioribus castellis.  
the more remote fortresses.

82. Dum Galli aberant longius ab  
While the Gauls were distant rather far from

munitione, proficiebant, plus multitudine  
the fortifications, they were accomplishing, more by the multitude

telorum; posteaquàm successerunt propius,  
[mass] of weapons; after they approached nearer,

aut ipsi inopinantes induebant se stimulis,  
either they unawares were impaling themselves on the spurs,

aut delapsi in scrobes transfodiebantur, aut  
or having fallen into the pits were transfixcd, or

interibant transecti muralibus pilis ex  
were perishing pierced by the wall javelins (thrown) from

vallo et turribus. Multis vulneribus accep-  
the rampart and towers. Many wounds having

tis undique, nullâ munitione perruptâ,  
been received on all sides, no fortification having been forced

quum lux appeteret, veriti ne  
when (day) light was approaching, having feared lest

circumvenirentur ab aperto latere, eruptione  
they might be surrounded on the exposed flank, by a sally

ex superioribus castris, receperunt se ad suos.  
from the higher camp, they retreated to their (people).

At interiores, dum proferunt ea  
But those within (the town), while they bring out these things

quæ præparata erant Vercingetorige ad  
which had been prepared by Vercingetorix for

eruptionem, explent priores fossas; morati  
the sally, fill up the first ditches; having been delayed

diutius in administrandis iis rebus, cognov-  
rather long in performing these things, they

verunt suos discessisse prius quàm  
learned (that) their men had withdrawn before (that)

appropinquarent munitionibus. Ita, re  
they had got near (to) the fortifications. Thus, the thing

infectâ, reverterunt in  
 [design] having been unaccomplished, they returned into  
 oppidum.  
 the town.

83. Galli bis repulsi cum magno  
 The Gauls twice having been repulsed with great  
 detremento, consulunt quid agant. Adhibent  
 loss, consult what they should do. They admit

peritos locorum (pl.). Cognoscunt ab  
 (those) acquainted with the locality. They learn from  
 his situs superiorum castrorum que  
 these the position of the higher camp and

munitiones. Erat collis à septentrionibus,  
 the fortifications. There was a hill on the north,

quem<sup>59</sup> quia non potuerant circumplecti opere,  
 which because they could not enclose in the works,

propter magnitudinem circuitûs, nostri pænè  
 on account of the greatness of the circuit, our men almost

necessariò fecerunt castra iniquo loco,  
 necessarily pitched (their) camp in an unfavorable place,

et leniter declivi. C. Antistius Reginus, et  
 and gently descending. C. Antistius Reginus, and

C. Caninius Rubilus, legati, obtinebant hæc  
 C. Caninius Rubilus, the lieutenants, were holding this

cum duabus legionibus. Regionibus cognitiss  
 with two legions. The country having been explored

per exploratores, duces hostium deligunt  
 by scouts, the leaders of the enemy select

sexaginta millia ex omni numero earum  
 sixty thousand from all the number of those

civitatum, quæ habeant maximam opinionem  
 states, which have the greatest reputation

virtutis; occultè constituunt inter se, quid,  
 of [for] bravery; secretly they arrange among themselves, what,

que quo pacto placëat agi.  
 and in what manner it pleases (them) to be done [to take action].

Definiunt tempus adeundi quum videatur  
 They determine the time of advancing when it may seem

esse merities. Præficiunt iis copias  
 to be noon. They place over these forces

Vercassivellaunus Arvernum, unum ex  
 Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one from [of]

quatuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis. Ille  
 the four leaders, a kinsman of Vercingetorix. He

egressus ex castris primâ vigiliâ itinère  
 having departed from the camp on the first watch the march

confecto propè sub lucem, occultavit  
 having been completed nearly about (day) light, concealed

se post montem, que jussit milites  
 himself behind the mountain, and ordered the soldiers

reficere sese ex nocturnol abore. Quam  
 to refresh themselves from [after] (their) nocturnal labor. When

jam merities videretur appropinquare, contendit  
 now noon was seeming to draw near, he marched

ad ea castra, quæ demonstravimus suprâ, que  
 to this camp, which we have mentioned above, and

eodem tempore equitatus cœperunt accedere  
 at the same time the cavalry commenced to approach

ad campestres munitiones, et reliquæ  
 to the field [outer] fortifications, and the remaining

copiæ ostendere sese pro castris.  
 forces to show themselves before the camp.

84. Vercingetorix conspicatus suos, ex  
 Vercingetorix having beheld his (allies), from

arce Alesia, egreditur ex oppido, profert  
 the citadel of Alesia, marches from the town, he brings forth

è castris longurios, musculos, falces, que  
 from the camp long poles, moveable sheds, wall hooks, and

reliqua, quæ paraverat causâ eruptionis.  
 other things, which he had prepared for the purpose of the sally.

Pugnatur<sup>60</sup> uno tempore, omnibus locis, atque  
 It was fought at one time, in all places, and

omnia tentantur. Quæ pars visa esse minimè  
 all things are attempted. What part is seen to be least

firma, huc concurritur. Manus Romanorum  
 strong, hither (they) run together. The force of the Romans

distinctur tantis munitionibus ne facile  
 is extended in so great fortifications that not easily  
 occurrit pluribus locis. Clamor, qui exstitit  
 it opposed in many places. The din, that arose  
 post tergum pugnantibus, valuit multum ad  
 in the rear to [of] the combatants, served much for  
 terrendo nostros, quod vident suum  
 alarming our men, because they see (that) their  
 periculum consistere in virtute alienâ. Enim  
 peril depends on the bravery (of) others. For  
 plerumque omnia quæ absunt perturbant  
 generally all things which are absent alarm  
 mentes hominum vehementius.  
 the minds of men more violently.

85. Cæsar nactus idoneum locum, cognoscit  
 Cæsar, having chosen a suitable place, learns  
 quid geratur in quaque parte, submittit  
 what is done in every part, he sends (aid)  
 laborantibus. Occurrit ad animum utrisque,  
 (to those) hard pressed. It occurs to the mind to each,  
 illud esse unum tempus, quo conveniat  
 (that) that was the one time, in which it was fitting  
 maximè contendit.<sup>61</sup> Galli, nisi  
 to the greatest degree to be fought [to fight]. The Gauls, unless  
 perfregissent munitiones, desperant de omni  
 they break through the fortifications, despair of all  
 salute. Romani, si obtinuissent rem  
 safety. The Romans, if they should gain the affair [action]  
 expectant finem omnium laborum. Maxime  
 expect an end of all (their) labor. Especially  
 laboratur ad superiores munitiones, quod  
 it was [they] struggled at the higher fortifications, where  
 demonstravimus Vercassivellaunum missum.  
 we have shown (that) Vercassivellaunus (had been) sent.  
 Exiguum fastigium loci ad declivitatem,  
 The small elevation of the place with the slope,  
 habet magnum momentum. Alii conjiciunt tela,  
 has great importance. Some throw weapons

alii testudine factâ, subeunt, integri  
others a testudo having been made advance. fresh men

succedunt defatigatis invicem. Agger conjectus  
relieved the wearied by turns. The materials thrown

ab universis in munitionem, et dat (sing.)  
by all against the fortifications, both give

adscensum Gallis, et contegit (sing.) quæ  
an ascent to the Gauls, and cover what

Romani occultavērant in terram. Nec jam  
the Romans had concealed in the ground. Neither now

arma, nec vires suppetunt nostris.  
arms, nor strength suffice for our men.

86. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar mittit  
These things having been known. Cæsar sends

Labienum cum sex cohortibus laborantibus  
Labienus with six cohorts (to those) struggling

subsidio. Imperat, si possit non  
for [as] aid. He commands (him), if he could not

sustinere, cohortibus deductis, pugnaret  
withstand, the cohorts having been drawn [led] out. he should fight

eruptione; non faciat id, nisi necessariò.  
in a sally; not [nor] do this, unless necessarily.

Ipsē adit reliquos; cohortatur ne  
He goes to the rest; he exhorts (them) that they should not

succumbant labori; docet fructum omnium  
succumb to the work; he shows (that) the fruit of all

superiorum dimicationum consistere in eo  
(their) former battles depended on this

die atque horâ. Interiores campestribus  
day and hour. Those within [The besieged] the level

locis desperatis, propter magnitudinem  
places having been despaired of, on account of the size

munitionum, tentant loca prærupta ex  
of the fortifications, attempt the places steep in

adscensu; hūc conferunt ea quæ parâ  
ascent; here they bring those things which they had

vērant, deturbant propugnantes ex turribus  
prepared. they drive back the defenders from the towers

multitudine telorum; explent fossas aggere  
by the multitude of weapons; they fill up the trenches with earth  
et cratibus expediunt aditus; rescindunt  
and fascines they prepare an approach; they tear down

vallum ac loricam falcibus.  
the rampart and parapet with hooks.

87. Cæsar primò mittit Brutum, adolescentem,  
Cæsar at first sends Brutus, a young man,

cum sex cohortibus, post Fabium legatum cum  
with six cohorts, afterwards Fabius (his) lieutenant with  
septem aliis. Postremò ipse, quum pugnaretur<sup>62</sup>  
seven others. At length he himself, when it is fought

vehementius, adducit intergos subsidio.  
more desperately, leads up fresh (men) for aid.

Prælio restituto, ac hostibus repul-  
The battle having been renewed, and the enemy having been

sis, contendit eo quò miserat Labienum;  
repulsed, he marches thither where he had sent Labienus;

educit quatuor cohortes ex proximo castello;  
he draws out four cohorts from the nearest fortress;

jubet partem equitum sequi se, partem  
he orders a part of the cavalry to follow himself, a part

circumire exteriores munitiones, et adoriri  
to go around the other fortifications, and to attack

hostes ab tergo. Labienus, postquam  
the enemy from [in] the rear. Labienus, after (that)

neque aggeres neque fossæ poterant sustinere  
neither the mounds nor the trenches could resist

vim hostium, una de quadraginta cohortibus  
the force of the enemy, thirty-nine cohorts

coactis, quas deductas ex proximis  
having been assembled, which drawn from the nearest

præidiis, sors obtulit; fecit certiore Cæsarem,  
posts, chance offered; he informs Cæsar,

per nuncios quid existimet faciendum. Cæsar  
by messengers what he thought must be done. Cæsar

accelerat ut intersit prælio.  
hastens that he may be present at the battle.

88. Ejus adventu cognito ex colore\*  
 His arrival having been known from the color  
 vestitûs, (quo insigni consueverat uti  
 of (his) robe, (which (as) an insignia he was accustomed to use  
 in proeliis), que turmis equitum et cohortibus  
 in battle), both the troops of cavalry and cohorts  
 visis, quas jusserat sequi se, ut de  
 having been seen, which he had ordered to follow him, as from  
 superioribus locis hæc declivia et devexa  
 the higher places these sloping and inclined (places)  
 cernebantur, hostes committunt prælium. Clamore  
 were beheld, the enemy join battle. A shout  
 sublato utrimque, clamor rursus excipit  
 having been raised on both sides, a shout is again received  
 ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus.  
 (heard) from the rampart and all the fortifications.  
 Nostri pilis omissis, gerant  
 Our (men) the javelins having been laid aside, carry on  
 rem gladiis (pl.). Equitatus repentè cernitur  
 the action with the sword. The cavalry suddenly is seen  
 post tergum; aliæ cohortes appropinquant;  
 in the rear (of the Gauls); other cohorts advance;  
 hostes vertunt terga; equites occurrunt  
 the enemy turn (their) backs; the cavalry meet  
 fugientibus; magna cædes fit. Sedulius  
 (those) fleeing; a great slaughter is made. Sedulius  
 dux et princeps Lemovicum occiditur;  
 general and chief of the Lemovices is slain;  
 Vercassivellaunus Arvernus comprehenditur vivus  
 Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian is taken alive  
 in fugâ; septuaginta quatuor militaria signa  
 in flight; seventy four military standards  
 referuntur ad Cæsarem; pauci ex tanto  
 are brought to Cæsar; few from [of] so great  
 numero recipiunt se incolumes in castra. Conspicati  
 a number return safe into the camp. Having beheld  
 ex oppido cædem et fugam suorum,  
 from the town the slaughter and flight of their (people),  
 \* white.

salute desperatâ, reducunt copias  
 safety having been despaired of, they lead back (their) forces  
 à munitionibus. Hâc re auditâ  
 from the fortifications. This action having been heard  
 fuga protinus fit, ex castris Gallorum;  
 a flight immediately is made, from the camp of the Gauls;  
 quod nisi milites fuissent defessi  
 as to [regarding] which [this] unless the soldiers had been fatigued  
 crebris subsidiis ac labore totius  
 by the frequent reinforcements and by the labor of the whole  
 diei, omnes copiae hostium potuissent deleri.  
 day, all the forces of the enemy would have been destroyed.  
 De mediâ nocte, equitatus missus consequitur  
 About mid night the cavalry having been sent overtakes  
 novissimum agmen. Magnus numerus capitur,  
 the rear line. A great number are taken,  
 atque interficitur; reliqui discedunt ex fugâ  
 and killed; the rest escape from the flight [route]  
 in civitates.  
 into their states.  
 89. Postero die, concilio convocato,  
 On the next day, a council having been called,  
 Vercingetorix demonstrat se suscepisse  
 Vercingetorix shows (that) he had undertaken  
 bellum non causâ suarum necessitatum (pl.), sed  
 the war not for the sake of his own necessity, but  
 communis libertatis, et quoniam sit  
 of (their) common liberty, and because it must  
 cedendum fortunæ, offere se illis  
 be yielded to fortune, (that he) offered himself to them  
 ad utramque rem, seu velint  
 for either thing [alternative], whether they wished  
 satisfacere Romanis suâ morte, seu tradere  
 to satisfy the Romans by his death, or to surrender  
 vivum. Legati mittuntur ad Cæsarem  
 (him) alive. Ambassadors are sent to Cæsar  
 de his rebus. Jubet arma  
 concerning these things. He orders (their) arms



tradi, principes roduci. Ipse  
 to be surrendered, (and their) chiefs to be led forth. He  
 consedit in munitione pro castris: eo  
 seated himself at the fortification before the camp; there  
 principes producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur;  
 the chiefs are led forth. Vercingetorix is surrendered  
 arma projiciuntur. Æduis atque Arvernis  
 the arms are thrown down. The Ædui and Arverni  
 reservatis, si per eos posset recuperare  
 having been reserved, if through them he could gain over  
 civitates; ex reliquis captivis distribuit  
 (their) states; from the remaining captives he distributed  
 singula capita toto exercitu nomine  
 one each in the whole army under the name  
 prædæ.  
 of booty.

90. His rebus confectis, proficiscitur  
 These things having been accomplished, he marches  
 in Æduos; recipit civitatem. Eo  
 into the Ædui; he receives the state. Thither  
 legati ab Arvernis missi pollicentur  
 ambassadors from the Arverni having been sent they promise  
 se facturos, quæ imperaret. Imperat  
 (that) they would do, what he might command. He orders  
 magnum numerum obsidum. Mittit legiones in  
 a great number of hostages. He sends the legions into  
 hiberna. Reddit circiter viginti millia  
 winter-quarters. He restores about twenty thousand  
 captivorum Æduis que Arvernis. Jubet  
 (of) prisoners to the Ædui and Arverni. He orders  
 T. Labienum proficisci in Sequanos cum  
 T. Labienus to march into the Sequani with  
 duabus legionibus et equitatu. Huic attribuit  
 two legions and the cavalry. To him he assigns  
 M. Sempronium Rutilum. Collocat C. Fabium  
 M. Sempronius Rutilus; He places C. Fabius  
 et L. Minucium Basilum in Remis cum  
 and L. Minucius Basilus among the Remi with

duabus legionibus, ne accipiant quam  
 two legions, lest they might receive any  
 calamitatem à finitimis Bellovacis. Mittit  
 injury from the neighboring Bellovaci. He sends  
 C. Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos,  
 C. Antistius Reginus among the Ambivareti,  
 T. Sextium in Bituriges, C. Caninum Rebilum  
 T. Sextius among the Bituriges, C. Caninus Rebilus  
 in Rutenos, cum legionibus singulis; collocat  
 among the Ruteni, with a legion each; he stations  
 Q. Tullium Ciceronem, et P. Sulpicium Cabiloni  
 Q. Tullius Cicero, and P. Sulpicius at Cabilo  
 et Matiscone ad Ararim in Æduis  
 and Matisco on [near] the (river) Saone among the Ædui  
 causâ frumentariæ rei; ipse constituit  
 for the purpose of the corn supply; he himself determines  
 hiemare Bibracte. His rebus cognitis  
 to winter at Bibracte. These things having been learned  
 litteris Cæsaris Romæ, supplicatio viginti  
 by letter of Cæsar at Rome, a thanksgiving of twenty  
 dierum indicitur.  
 way is decreed.

## NOTES

## FIRST BOOK

PAGE 1—1 Latin order: - *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgæ*, Lit., Gaul is all divided into parts three; of which one inhabit Belgæ.

PAGE 2—2 *eorum* i. e. the Germans. *eorum* in the next sentence refers to the Celts or Gauls, *tertiam*, above. 3 Meaning, on the same side of the river, i. e. west side. 4 The country slopes to the north.

PAGE 3—5 Dative after verb of persuading, used as direct object. 6 on one side, the Rhine a river very wide and very deep—on the other side the Jura (St. Cloude) a very lofty mountain—on the third side by Lake Geneva and the river Rhone.

PAGE 4—7 Other text: - *qua ex parte*, and for this reason. 8 they were considering that they had narrow territories in consideration of the multitude of men, the glory of war and their bravery. 9 to make as great sowings as possible. 10 they decided two years' time would be sufficient to them for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 5—11 Orgetorix is chosen for executing these things. 12 Whose father had held sway among the Sequani many years.

PAGE 6—13 he assures (them) that he himself is about to secure the kingdom for them with his resources and his army 14 they hope that they may be able to get possession of all Gaul. 15 and brought together to the same place all his clients and debt bondsmen of whom he was having a great number; through whom he rescued himself from pleading his cause.

PAGE 7—16 nor is suspicion wanting as the Helvetians think, that he had committed suicide 17 they might be more prepared for undergoing all dangers.

PAGE 8—18 Literally, and they vote in the Boii, admitted to themselves, as their (*sibi*) allies. In English a double verb construction would be used, not the participle they take the Boii into their own number (*ad se*) and vote them in as allies. 19 They were thinking that they (*sese*) either would persuade the Allobroges because they were seeming to be not yet in good feeling toward the Roman people, or would compel by force to suffer them to go through their territories.

PAGE 9—20 by journeys as great as he was able.

PAGE 10—21 to ask that it may be allowed them to do this with his good will [permission] 22 Because Cæsar was holding in memory that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain (supply *esse* with *occisum*) and his army had been routed (supply *esse*) by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke, he was considering that it must not be granted, nor was he thinking that men of hostile spirit, an opportunity of making a way through the province having been given, would refrain from injury and damage. 23 that he himself was about to take a day for deliberating,——

PAGE 11—24 nineteen thousand paces i. e. nineteen Roman miles about seventeen and one half English miles. The work actually represented five short spans the remaining distance being naturally protected somewhat by bluffs and ravines 25 he denies that according to the custom and example of the Roman people he is able to grant a way to any through the province; and if they attempt to employ force he shows that he would prevent them (supply *esse* with *prohibiturum*) 26 Lit. :- ships having been joined and rafts having been made i. e. when ships had been joined together and rafts made,—— 27 where the depth of the river was least.

PAGE 12—28 because he had taken in marriage,—— 29 and induced by a desire (lit., greed) for the throne, he was zealous for a revolution and was wishing to have as many states as possible attached to him by his beneficence.

PAGE 13—30 and where the route was the nearest into farther Gaul,——

PAGE 14—31 and were ravaging their lands. 32 their children led off into captivity,——

PAGE 15—33 now that their fields are devastated they are

not easily checking the violence of the enemy from the towns 34 and show that there is nothing left to them besides the soil of the land.

PAGE 16—35 When Cæsar had been informed by scouts that the Helvetians had already led over this river three parts of their forces but that the fourth part had been left,— —

PAGE 17—36 he takes care that a bridge should be made on the Saone 37 when they were understanding that he had done in one day,— —

PAGE 21—37a and from the Ædui and from their allies

PAGE 22—38 Meantime Cæsar daily demands from the Ædui the grain — *Flagitare* is a historical infinitive used as a finite tense 39 The emphasized word or phrase stands between *ne* and *quidem* and *quidem* throws its force back upon the emphasized term. 40 The Ædui put him off from day to day (and) say that it is being gathered, that it is being brought, that it is at hand.—*ducere* and *dicere* are historical infinitives.

PAGE 23—41 their chiefs have been called together — — 42 especially when in a great degree (lit., from a great part) he induced by their prayers had undertaken the war. 43 that there are some whose authority avails very much among the common people.

PAGE 25—44 he had both increased his family estate i. e. his clanship, and provided great means for — —

PAGE 26—45 and for the sake of this power he had married his mother among the Bituriges to a man there, most noble and most powerful, he himself had a wife from the Helvetians, he had given his sister on his mother's side and his kinswomen in marriage into other states. That he favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance, that he hates (*odisse*, perfect with present sense) Cæsar and the Romans by his own right (lit., name) because his power had been diminished by their arrival 45a He favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance; also he hated Cæsar and the Romans on his own account (lit., from his own name) because his power (lit., the power of him) had been diminished by their arrival (lit., by the arrival of them), and Divitiacus, his brother, restored into the ancient place of favor and honor: if anything may happen to the Romans, he

entertains the highest hope of obtaining the Kingdom through the Helvetians. 46 he entertains the highest hope of obtaining the throne through the Helvetians if anything happens to the Romans. 47 he not only despairs of the throne.

PAGE 27—48 since the most certain facts were substantiating these suspicions — — 49 he was deeming that there was enough cause why (wherefore) either he himself should punish him (lit., attend to him) or should order the state to punish him.

PAGE 28—50 that he himself knows that these things are true nor does anyone take more grief from this thing than himself

PAGE 29—51 which means and strength he was using not only for diminishing his (Divitiacus?) influence but almost for his destruction. 52 from which thing it would come to pass that — —

PAGE 30—53 he warns him to avoid all suspicions — — 54 he says that he himself forgives the past (offences) for (the sake of) his brother Divitiacus.

PAGE 31—55 It was reported that it was easy. 56 At early dawn when the mountain summit (lit., highest) is held by Titus Labienus — —

PAGE 33—57 This movement (lit., thing) is reported to the enemy by fugitives from Lucius Æmilius, captain of the Gallic horse, — — 58 or because they were trusting that our men could be cut off from the grain supply.

PAGE 35—59 It was a great disadvantage to the Gauls in the battle.....nor since the left hand was hampered to fight conveniently enough.....and to fight with unprotected person (i. e., the body unshielded, lit., naked).

PAGE 36—60 having assailed our men upon the march on (the exposed flank began) to surround (them). 61 So the fighting continued in a doubtful battle long and fiercely. 62 no one could see a routed enemy.

PAGE 37—63 When the fighting had continued a long time our men got possession of the baggage and the camp. 64 and if they (lit., if who) should assist them he would hold them in the same light (or, position - *locus*) as (*quo*) the Helvetians

PAGE 38—65 Some texts have: *legatos de ditione ad eum miserunt* - sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender.

PAGE 39—66 they were thinking that their flight would be either concealed or overlooked altogether,— 67 When Cæsar discovered (other readings: *resciit*) this (lit., which) he ordered those through whose territories they had gone — 68 if they were wishing to be exculpated toward himself i. e. in his eyes. 69 When they were brought back he held them in the class of enemies i. e. they were either sold into slavery or more probably put to death. 70 because he was unwilling that this place whence the Helvetians had departed should be unoccupied

PAGE 40—71 and they afterwards received them into an equal estate of law and liberty as were they themselves.

PAGE 41—72 ambassadors of almost all Gaul, chiefs of the states, assembled for congratulating Cæsar.

PAGE 43—73 Divitiacus the Æduan spoke for these (saying that) there are two factions of all Gaul, that the Æduans hold the chieftaincy of one, of the other the Averni.

PAGE 44—74 The Ædui and their clients time and again have contended— 75 nor would refuse that they should be forever under their sway and empire (lit., sway and empire of them)

PAGE 45—76 because Ariovistus king of the Germans had settled in their territories (lit., borders)— 77 We would compare the worse with the better and would say in English: for neither is the German land to be mentioned with the Gallic—

PAGE 46—78 if anything is not done at his nod and will— 79 his demands (lit., commands) cannot be endured longer. Unless there may be some aid in Cæsar or the Roman people, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls— 80 there is no doubt (lit., he not to doubt).

PAGE 47—81 This speech having been delivered by Divitiacus —

PAGE 49—82 That the Germans moreover were accustomed little by little to cross the Rhine and that a great multitude of them came into Gaul, he was seeing was a perilous thing to the Roman people, nor was he judging that wild and barbarous men, when they had occupied all Gaul as the Cimbri and Teutones had done, would restrain themselves before— 83 he was thinking he must meet these things (lit., which things) as early as possible

PAGE 50—84 had taken upon himself so many airs (so great insolence) that it seemed he must not be borne. 85 if anything was needful to him from Cæsar, he would have come to him 86 nor could he gather an army into one place without great provisions and trouble, moreover it seemed wonderful to himself — —

PAGE 51—87 that he should, though invited, be averse to come into a conference nor should think that he must not speak nor learn concerning a common matter, these are the things which he was demanding from him, that — — 88 that it should be granted to the Sequani that it should be allowed with his consent to return to them (the Ædui) those whom they were holding — —

PAGE 53—89 if he was not dictating to the Roman people in what manner it should use its right, it was not proper that he himself should be hindered by the Roman people in his right 90 he himself would not return the hostages to the Ædui, nor would he bring war with damage upon them nor upon their allies if they would abide by that (lit., remain in that) which had been agreed upon and would pay (lit., weigh out) the tribute yearly, if they would not do this the fraternal name of the Roman people would be far away from them.

PAGE 54—91 were ravaging their territories, they could not purchase peace of Ariovistus when even hostages had been given 92 judged that he must hasten, lest if the new hand —.

PAGE 55—93 it could be less easily opposed 94 when he had gone a three days' course — — 95 that Ariovistus with all his troops was hastening to seize Vesontio (lit., for occupying Vesontio) 96 which were of use for war 97 for prolonging the war.

PAGE 56—98 so that the foot (lit., roots) of this mountain touches the bank of the river on either hand (lit., each part, i. e. the entire intervening space) 99 hither Cæsar hastens by forced marches day and night. 100 for the sake of grain and provisions 101 that they themselves having oftentimes encountered them were not able to bear even their looks, and — —

PAGE 57—102 one of whom for one cause, another for another having reported what he was declaring was necessary to



him for setting out, was asking that it might be allowed him to depart with his consent — — 103 to avoid the suspicion of fear, were remaining. 104 (Those) of them who were wishing that they might be thought less fearful were saying that they did not dread the enemy but feared the straits of the way ....or the matter of corn that it could not be transported conveniently enough.

PAGE 58—105 that the soldiers would not be obedient to the command nor would bear the standard on account of fear. 106 because they were thinking it should be inquired or considered into what part

PAGE 59—107 Indeed he himself was persuaded that when his demands were known and the fairness of the conditions perceived he would reject neither — — 108 was seeming to have deserved not less praise than the commander himself. (Supply *esse* with *meritus*). 109 in the slave uprising — —. Many of the slaves were German captives taken by Marius 110 From which it can be judged how much good firmness was having in itself....by this (trickery) (.....) not even he himself expected our army could be taken.

PAGE 61—111 upon the pretence of the grain supply and the straits of the ways did this officiously 112 These things were his care. 113 that it is said (translate *dicantur* as if singular) that they are not going to be obedient to the command and are not going to bear the standard, he himself is disturbed in nowise by this thing, for he knew that to whomsoever an army has been disobedient at the command — —

PAGE 62—114 his own integrity in his life throughout — —

PAGE 63—115 and the highest alertness and eagerness for waging war was incited 116 and assured (him) that it was most prepared for waging war. 117 Their apology (lit., satisfaction) having been received and the way having been reconvoitered by Divitiacus 118 he was informed — —

PAGE 64—119 and he was thinking he could do this without danger. Cæsar did not reject the terms. 120 and thought he had now returned to reason 121 it would transpire (fore) that he would cease from his obstinacy

PAGE 65—122 in another manner he himself would not come.

PAGE 66—123 now he enrolls it among the horse (lit., to the horse) i. e. makes them "*equites*," horsemen or knights. 124 When they had come there.

PAGE 67—125 were existing between them and the Ædui.

PAGE 69—126 that he himself had not inflicted war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon himself 127 he himself did this for the sake of protecting himself and not of assailing the Gauls.

PAGE 70—128 that he did not come except as he was asked and that he did not wage war but had defended himself. 129 Never before this time had an army of the Roman people gone out of the borders of the province of Gaul.

PAGE 71—130 He ought to be suspicious (*susplicari*, passive voice) that while friendship is feigned, because Cæsar had an army in Gaul, he has it for the sake of crushing him. 131 that if he should kill him he himself would be doing a grateful thing — 132 that he himself has this, an ascertained fact, from themselves through their messengers.

PAGE 72—133 allies who have deserved the best, nor does he himself judge that Gaul is rather the possession — 134 but if it is proper that the most ancient time in detail (lit., each most ancient time) be regarded — —

PAGE 73—135 approached nearer the hillock and rode up to our men, threw stones and weapons against our men — 136 yet he was thinking it must not be permitted that, the enemy having been repulsed, it could be said they had been tricked by himself treacherously (lit., contrary to faith) in a conference 137 the arrogance that Ariovistus had used in the conference and that he had interdicted — —

PAGE 74—138 It did not seem to Cæsar that there was a cause for conferring, and so much the more that — —

PAGE 75 139 and because the Germans had in him no cause of transgressing (lit., because there was not cause to the Germans of transgressing in him) — — 140 But when Ariovistus had beheld them — — (*Quos*, whom, translate, But... them).

PAGE 76—141 were brought (*supportaretur* is singular, the English idiom requires the plural number) 142 the opportunity might not be lacking to him 143 in cavalry battle

PAGE 77—144 if they must advance farther or retire more quickly anywhere.

PAGE 79—145 to assault the lesser camp. There was fighting sharply on both sides until towards evening 147 that they reported (*dicere*) thus: "it is not permitted (was,— the divine law, or fate) that the Germans shall conquer, if they should join in battle before the new moon." 148 because he was less powerful in the mass (lit., multitude) of legionary soldiers as compared with the number of the enemy.

PAGE 80—149 Cæsar appointed lieutenants one each and a questor (quartermaster) for the several legions

PAGE 81—150 The javelins thrown aside the fighting went hand to hand with swords. 151 because he was more free to act (lit., more unencumbered) than those who were involved in the battle-line he sent as a reinforcement the third battle-line to our toiling men

PAGE 82—152 The term, woman, is inserted to show the gender of *una* and *Sueva*.

PAGE 84—153 and the Ubii who dwell nearest the Rhine having pursued them panic-stricken — — To follow the English idiom render *quos* by a connective and relative as if it were *etque eos*.

## SECOND BOOK

PAGE 85—1 also he was informed by the letters of Labienus that all the Belgæ.....were conspiring.....and were giving hostages among themselves. That these were the causes of conspiring — —

PAGE 86—2 who were having means for mustering men. 3 he himself as soon as there was beginning to be plenty of forage came to the army.

PAGE 87—4 that they ascertain these things that are transpiring among the latter (lit., them) and inform him concerning these matters 5 then indeed he judged that he must not hesitate to set out to them (lit., that it must not be hesitated but that — —) 6 that they entrust themselves and their all to the good faith and power of the Roman people.

PAGE 88—7 that they could not intimidate (lit., restrain by

fear) even the Suessiones ..... from intriguing (lit., but that they should intrigue. Or, from conniving) with these.

PAGE 89—8 and that it was they alone who in the memory of our fathers when all Gaul was harassed, checked the Teutones and Cimbri from entering within their territories. 9 The Bellovaci were the most powerful among them.

PAGE 91—10 and having dismissed them (lit., followed, took leave of) generously in an address — 11 lest he must come to blows (lit., it must be combatted) at one time with so great a multitude

PAGE 92—12 he dismisses him from his presence (lit., from himself). 13 nor now were far distant.

PAGE 93—14 For when so great a multitude were hurling stones and weapons, there was an opportunity for no one of standing on the walls.

PAGE 95—15 favorable and suitable for drawing up the battle-line.

PAGE 96—16 *subsido*, lit. for a relief.

PAGE 97—17 *illis*, those (forces) i. e. the enemy. 18 *contendebatur*, lit. it was contended. 19 for carrying on the war. 20 and were cutting off our (men) from supplies. Other reading: — *que sustenebant nostros commeatu* — and were sustaining our (men) with provisions. 21 light armed Numidians

PAGE 98—22 There was sharp fighting in that place 23 when they understood that they had deceived themselves in the hope both of storming the town and of crossing the river, — 24 for defending those into whose borders — —

PAGE 99—25 were approaching the borders — — 26 It was not possible to persuade these to delay longer and not to bring aid to their (countrymen) 27 had not yet seen clearly 28 at daybreak

PAGE 100—29 to whom they came 30 as the period of the day permitted

PAGE 101—31 he was not able to storm it 32 although few were defending. 33 of use for storming

PAGE 102—34 they bring it to pass (lit., obtain) that they shall be preserved. 35 the chiefs of the state and two sons — — Cæsar received the Suessiones into surrender 36 and signify

by voice that they come into his protection and power and are not contending in arms against the Roman people.

PAGE 103—37 (saying) the Belovæi for all time had been in the confidence — — that they had been impelled by their chiefs who had said that the Ædui were reduced to slavery by Cæsar and bore all indignities and affronts; (saying) that they had both revolted from the Ædui and had waged war against the Roman people.

PAGE 104—38 support themselves if any wars have arisen

PAGE 105—39 there was no approach for merchants to them; that they suffered no wine and other things tending to luxury to be imported, because they judged their minds were enfeebled and their valor diminished by these things; that the men were fierce and of great valor — — that they chided and blamed the remaining Belgians — — that they affirmed that they would neither send ambassadors nor would receive any conditions of peace.

PAGE 106—40 Dative after *persuadeo*. 41 there might not be access for an army

PAGE 107—42 nor was there any difficulty when the first legion had come into camp 43 it would come to pass that the remaining legions would not dare to take stand in opposition.

PAGE 108—44 into which it was not possible not only to make entrance (pass. voice) but even to be seen through. 45 so that it was possible to get sight (pass. voice) within.

PAGE 109—46 For, because Cæsar was approaching the enemy according to his custom he was leading six legions light armed 47 nor were our (men) daring to follow those yielding farther than to the limit which the extended and open places were reaching; the six legions meantime — —

PAGE 110—48 and encouraged themselves

PAGE 111—49 those who had advanced rather far for the sake of mound material must be summoned

PAGE 112—50 for the sake of exhorting the soldiers 51 he gave the signal for joining battle 52 and so prepared the mind of the enemy for fighting that time failed not only for putting on the badges but even for donning the helmet and drawing off the coverings from the shields

PAGE 113—53 since some legions in one position others in another were resting the enemy in various places and as very dense hedges were interposing, as we have shown before, the view was intercepted and neither were sure reserves able to be placed nor what might be useful in each position before seen nor all the commands given by one (person)

PAGE 114—54 They did not hesitate to cross the river 55 the Veromandui having been routed with whom they had joined (battle), were fighting from the higher ground on the very banks of the river

PAGE 115—56 and some panicstricken were borne in one direction, others in another 57 they announced to the state that the Romans had been routed and overcome; that the enemy possessed their camp and baggage — With *pulsos*, *superatos* and *potitos* supply *esse*, after verbs of saying.

PAGE 117—58 and that they (the enemy) pressed on from either flank and that the case was in a crisis, and that there was no reinforcement which could be sent up

PAGE 118—59 Hope being infused in the soldiers by his coming and their spirit restored, since each one was desiring to do his best for himself in the sight of the General, even in his extreme dangers, the attack of the enemy was checked a little. 60 and should direct against the enemy the standards turned about — i. e. right and left face. 61 when some were bringing aid to some, others to others — —

PAGE 119—62 they left nothing undone for themselves as regards speed

PAGE 120—63 these dead bodies having been thrown down and heaped up 64 so that it ought to be considered that not without reason (i. e. with hope of success) men of so great valor — —

PAGE 121—65 and in recounting the calamity of the state they said that they themselves were reduced

PAGE 122—66 *esse* understood with *usus*. 67 Since this (town) on all sides in its circumference had very high rocks and outlooks, on one side a gently sloping approach was left not more than two hundred feet in width. This *quum*-clause explains *egregie munitum*.

PAGE 123—68 when sometimes they were waging war, at other time were repelling it when brought upon (them)

PAGE 124—69 But when they saw that it was moved and that it approached the walls.

PAGE 125—70 they said that they give up themselves and all their possessions into their (the Romans') power; that they sought and begged one thing

PAGE 126—71 but that there was no condition of surrender except when the arms had been delivered; that he himself would do — —

PAGE 127—72 There was a rush thither from the nearest fortresses and the battle was fought by the enemy — —

### THIRD BOOK

PAGE 131—1 and this (which) village located in a valley a plain not large adjoining is hemmed in on all sides by very lofty mountains.

PAGE 133—2 and they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were endeavoring to occupy the peaks of the Alps 3 since neither the work of winter quarters nor the fortifications were fully completed nor was enough grain and other provisions secured, because, — —

PAGE 134—4 neither was it possible (*posset*, understood) for anyone to come to their aid 5 for arranging and executing these things which they had decreed 6 Historical infinitives denoting rapid action are translated like finite tenses. The same is true of *conjicere*, *repugnare*, *mittere*, *occurrere*, *ferre*, *superari*. 7 Our men at first repulse them bravely while their strength is fresh

PAGE 135—8 When now the fight was continuing unceasingly, — — 9 and as our men were becoming more faint, they began to, — —

PAGE 136—10 who, we have said, was spent with many wounds, — — 11 that there is one hope of safety

PAGE 137—12 nor of collecting themselves i. e. of recovering their senses 13 those (lit., these) who had come into the hope of getting possession of the camp, when they were

surrounded on every side. 14 nor suffered them to take stand even in the places that are higher, *quidem* emphasizes *in locis*. 15 and remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design and was seeing that he had met with other circumstances.

PAGE 138—16 and so at the beginning of winter had set out into Illyricum 17 omit *mare* in translation.

PAGE 140—18 they take oath among themselves through their chiefs that they would act in nothing (accusative of specification) except by common counsel and that they would bear, — —

PAGE 141—19 ambassadors, a name, — — .... had been detained by them and cast into chains. Supply *esse* with *retentos* and *conjectos*

PAGE 142 20 Supply *esse* - that navigation was hindered 21 longer, or rather long, i. e. any length of time. 22 supplies of grain

PAGE 143—23 These were the difficulties of waging the war lit., of war to be waged.

PAGE 144—24 *esse* understood, forming the perfect passive infinitive after verbs of saying

PAGE 145—25 Pluperfect of defective verb, *cæpi*, used with the force of the imperfect - they were beginning to despair

PAGE 146—26 in order that they may be able the more easily to take the shoals and ebb-tides (lit., ebb of the tide); 27 for enduring any force and buffeting; the benches were made from beams a foot in width fastened together with iron nails of the thickness of a thumb.

PAGE 147—28 and so great fury of the winds could (*posse*) not be withstood and so great masses of ships governed by sails conveniently enough 29 Some texts read *adigebatur*. - nor was a weapon easily shot at them.

PAGE 148—30 nor could (*posse*) he inflict injury (*noceri*, passive voice) upon them, he decided that the fleet must be awaited. 31 about two hundred and twenty of their ships the best equipped and most provided with every kind of armament (lit., arms) — —

PAGE 149—32 for they had understood that they could not inflict injury by the beak (prow). Lit., *hostes* understood is



subject of *posse*. 33 With a form not unlike that of wall-hooks. — —

PAGE 150—34 all advantage of their ships was lost at the same time i. e. all at once. 35 after the barbarians perceived that this was done

PAGE 151—36 and this condition (which thing) was especially favorable for completing the business 37 since the battle continued 38 in whom there was some counsel or dignity had gathered there; besides they had assembled in one place what ships had been everywhere

PAGE 152—39 under the hammer i. e. at auction

PAGE 153—40 an enthusiasm for fighting was [were] recalling, — —

PAGE 154—41 because he was thinking that a battle ought not to be undertaken by a lieutenant.....except on equal grounds or when some opportunity was given 42 to go over to the enemy 43 nor is it farther off than that on the next night Sabinus may lead out, — — and set out to Cæsar for the sake of bringing him aid. When this report was heard all shout that the opportunity for carrying on the business well must not be lost that it is the proper thing to go to camp.

PAGE 155—44 the want of food which had been provided by them without sufficient care. 45 Induced by these things they do not release Viridovix and the other leaders from the council before that it has been granted by them to take arms and to hasten to the camp

PAGE 156—46 at full speed, that as brief a period as possible might be given the Romans for assembling and arming themselves, and arrived out of breath. 47 It came to pass 48 and our soldiers with fresh strength having pursued them (*quos*, translated by and....them) encumbered slew a great number of them

PAGE 157—49 for undertaking wars, so their mind is soft and by no means sturdy [resistant] for bearing misfortunes.

PAGE 158—50 There was fighting long and sharply 51 that the security of the entire Aquitania was placed in their valor (Supply *esse* with *positam*)

PAGE 159—52 that it should be seen what they could

accomplish without the general, — — The clause: *quid possent.....duce* is subject of *perspici*, and the whole construction is the object of *caperent*. 53 and when they were bravely resisting, — — One of the many instances in which an ablative absolute may be rendered best in English by a subordinate clause.

PAGE 160—54 commit suicide 55 and the fighting there was violent

PAGE 161—56 however he obtained from Crassus to enjoy (English idiom, the enjoyment of) the same condition of surrender. 57 because they had learned that a town..... had been stormed (supply *esse*) in the few days in which (the Romans) had come there.

PAGE 162—58 he considered that he must not delay settling the issue (but that he should settle the issue) in battle. 59 that all thought the same thing, — —

PAGE 163—60 when the plan had been approved by their generals, although the troops of the Romans were drawn up, they were keeping themselves in camp. 61 that it was befitting them not to wait longer but that they should be off to the camp; having exhorted his men, all filled with eagerness, he hastens to the camp of the enemy.

PAGE 166—62 far into the night

PAGE 167—63 nor had ever sent ambassadors to him about peace. 64 and when Cæsar had arrived at the margin of these forests and had decided to fortify a camp nor meantime had an enemy been seen, — —

PAGE 168—65 therefore all their fields (lit., all the fields of them) having been laid waste (or, when all their fields had been laid waste and their villages and buildings burned,) — —

#### FOURTH BOOK

PAGE 171—1 from each of which they lead yearly a thousand armed men out of their territories. 2 but for the most part on milk and beef (lit., cattle) and are often (lit., much) in huntings; [in the chase]; and this condition (lit., which thing) — —

PAGE 173—3 and fight on foot (lit., battle on the feet) 4 therefore however few they dare to approach (to) any number whatever of saddled horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported — — 5 because they think that by this thing men are enfeebled for enduring labor and are effeminated. 6 are said to be unoccupied from the Suevi on one side; the Ubii come next in the other direction (lit., at the other part).

PAGE 175—7 they arrived at the Rhine, the localities which the Memapii were inhabiting 8 they were checking the Germans from crossing over — — 9 they pretend that they are returning to their own habitations and countries — — 10 who have been informed of the departure of the Germans by spies

PAGE 176—11 before (lit., before that) this part of the Memapii which was on this side of the Rhine was informed.

PAGE 177—12 and very many answer fictions according to the wish of these. 13 lest he might encounter a severer war. Sometimes rendered: - a rather severe war 14 he learned that these things had been done which he suspected would be, that ambassadors had been sent by some states to the Germans and that they had been requested to depart (lit., that they should depart) from the Rhine — — Supply *esse* with *facta missas* and *invitados*. 15 and the Germans induced by this (*Qua*) hope — —

PAGE 178—16 When he was distant a few days' journey from them — — 17 whose speech was as follows: (lit., these things). 18 nor yet do they refuse to contend in arms if they are attacked.

PAGE 181—19 forming many great islands (lit., many and great) — —

PAGE 182—20 if their chiefs and senate would give pledge (lit., give faith) by oath they were showing that they themselves would use those terms that were offered by Cæsar (lit., this condition, let him give them (themselves) a period of three days for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 183—21 let them assemble hither on the next day as numerous as possible that he might learn concerning their demands (lit., the requests of them) 22 But as soon as (*ubi primum*. lit., when first) the enemy beheld our cavalry — —

Introduce the noun into the subordinate clause in English and supply a pronoun as *ii* or *illi*, as subject of *perturbaverunt*, the principal verb several lines below 23 some texts have *induciis*.

PAGE 185—24 to whom he was judging no time at all should be given (lit., nothing of time) for taking counsel (lit., counsels). as well, (*simul*, correlative of *simul* below)

PAGE 186—25 as it was said, for the sake of exonerating themselves 26 (contrary to what (lit., as) had been declared [said] and to what they themselves had sought — — 27 Cæsar rejoicing (lit., having rejoiced) ordered them when they were presented to him to be detained. Change the *quos* clause to the English idiom. The fate of these people is mention in the last few lines of Chapter 15.

PAGE 187—28 *qui*, and they — — 29 time (lit., space) having been given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms 30 When their (lit., whose, or of whom) panic was indicated — —

PAGE 189—31 of which (cause) this (that) was the most justifiable (lit., most just) 32 In addition also that portion of the cavalry — —

PAGE 190 33 when Cæsar had sent messengers to them 34 if he should judge that it was not just that the Germans should cross the Rhine into Gaul, when he was unwilling, why should he demand that any of his empire or power should be across the Rhine.

PAGE 191—35 since Ariovistus was routed and this last battle fought — — an ablative absolute denoting cause, it is best rendered in English by a subordinate clause

PAGE 192—36 which having been separated and held fast in opposite directions — —

PAGE 193—37 at the lower part of the river — — i. e. down stream.

PAGE 198—38 the countries having been explored in so far as opportunity could (*potuit*, was able) be given to him — —

PAGE 199—39 concerning the project of the former season (lit., time).

PAGE 200—40 And when they were brought to him (lit., whom having been brought) he received them into alliance

PAGE 201—41 since this was executed by these (lit., by whom) a little more slowly [rather slowly] — —

PAGE 202—42 as the method of military affairs and especially as maritime movements (lit., thing) demand (as these (*quæ*) have a quick and unsteady motion).

PAGE 203—43 moreover the soldiers both must leap down at the same time from the ships and must take stand in the waves and must fight with the enemy — — (lit., it must be leaped down by the soldiers — —) 44 while they (*illi*, the enemy) — — 45 when Cæsar perceived this (which) — —

PAGE 205—46 there was sharp fighting by both sides.

PAGE 207—47 he said he would pardon their indiscretion (lit., ignorance)

PAGE 208—48 the fourth day after he had come into Britain (lit., it was come); when they were approaching to Britain — — 49 *quæ* translate as if *hæ*, these, subject of *complerentur*.

PAGE 209—50 (in which Cæsar had caused (lit., had provided, or taken care,) the army to be transported) — —

PAGE 210—51 and all things were lacking which were of use for repairing the ships and because it was evident to all that it was expedient to winter in Gaul (since) corn had not been provided in these places against the winter. 52 some texts have *ad ea facienda quæ Cæsar jusserat* for these (things) to be done which Cæsar had ordered i. e. for doing these things which Cæsar had ordered

PAGE 212—53 he brought it to pass that they could make a sailing (*navigari*, passive voice, lit., to be sailed) easily in the rest. Some texts read: *satis commode*, quite easily.

PAGE 213—54 and disorder the ranks generally by the very terror of the horses (lit., terror itself) — —

PAGE 214—55 and battle on foot (lit., on the feet)

PAGE 215—56 having thought the time unsuited for attacking the enemy and for joining battle — — 57 a short time having passed (lit., having been interposed) 58 the rest (i. e. the Britains) who were in the fields departed. 59 how great an opportunity was presented (lit., given) for (of) making plunder and of freeing themselves forever — —

PAGE 217—60 he was thinking that the passage (lit., voyage) must not be incurred in winter (lit., exposed to win-

ter) with weak ships — — 61 when about three hundred soldiers had been landed from these (which) ships and were hartening into camp — — 65 if they were unwilling to be slain (lit., if they were unwilling themselves to be slain) — —

## FIFTH BOOK

PAGE 220—1 that they should take care in the winter (that) ships as many as could be (lit., as they were able) should be built and the old repaired. He shows their size and form.

PAGE 221—2 because he had learned that the waves became less great there on account of the frequent alterations of the tides. 3 for transporting cargos and a multitude of beasts of burden— — 4 and for this object (lit., for which thing) etc. *Res* is a very indefinite term and requires translation according to the connection. 5 He orders these (materials) which are of use for rigging ships, (lit., for ships to be rigged) to be brought from Spain. 6 he demands soldiers from the states. *Impero* takes the dative of the person and accusative of the thing.

PAGE 222—7 he shows that he would proceed against the state with war.

PAGE 223—8 nor were they far from (wanting much from) this condition of being possible (*possent*) to be launched (lit., led down) in a few days. 9 This state is by far the most powerful of all Gaul in cavalry

PAGE 224—10 were striving with one another (lit., among themselves) concerning the chieftaincy. 11 he prepares war (*parare*, historical infinitive)

PAGE 225—12 that he himself withdrew from his own people and had been unwilling to come to him for this reason in order that he might preserve the state more easily in its allegiance etc. 13 for what reason these things were said (i. e. his jealousy of Cingetorix).

PAGE 226—14 and this thing (which thing) he was not only understanding should be done by himself because of his deserts but also he was judging that it concerned him greatly that the authority of this one (lit., the authority of him) should

prevail as much as possible among his own people, whose good will he had perceived was so excellent toward himself.

PAGE 227—15 had not been able, infinitive after *cognoscit*.

PAGE 228—16 Impossible to render exactly, lit.:— It was approaching hither that etc. It happened in addition that etc. 17 *suis* - his, i. e. Dumnorix's — — 18 After he saw that this was denied him persistently (lit., obstinately)

PAGE 229—19 (saying) that he was alarmed with the fear that not without reason it was done so that Gaul should be stripped of all the nobility etc. 20 he insinuated a pledge to the rest, demanded an oath etc. 21 because he was seeing that his madness had gone too far, he must look out (lit., it must be looked out) that (*ne*; lest) he should (*posset*) not injure himself and the state.

PAGE 230—22 he was taking pains (lit., giving work) etc. 23 and he orders that he be dragged back; if he shows violence (lit., makes violence) nor obeys, he orders that he be killed having considered that he would do nothing like a sane man since he had disregarded his commands in his presence.

PAGE 231—24 that he might take counsel in accordance with time and circumstances — — Plu. in English idiom for *re*.

PAGE 232—25 An approach was made to Britain by all the ships nearly at noon time. 26 Nor was an enemy seen in this place etc.

PAGE 234—27 and were preventing our men from penetrating within the fortifications.

PAGE 235—28 Some texts have the term *literis* in parenthesis as given here although quite probably it should be omitted.

PAGE 236—29 not the time of night even - *nocturnis* is emphasized by *quidem*.

PAGE 237—30 The chieftaincy of the command and of the managing of the war i. e. the leadership of the command and the chief management. 31 The interior part of Britian is inhabited by those who, it is handed down by memory, (by tradition) have been born in (i. e. are native to) the island itself. *Esse* is understood with *proditum*. The subject of *proditum esse* is the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*.

PAGE 238—32 *examinatis*, lit., weighed.

PAGE 240—33 in *circuitu*, - all around. 34 and they have long hair.

PAGE 243—35 Add to this etc. See note 16 — — 36 and some were relieving some, others others in succession

PAGE 244—37 so that they were not keeping back from the standards and the legions. 38 neither did they give the opportunity of collecting themselves nor of halting.

PAGE 246—39 and by this fear was hindering them from roaming more widely. It followed (lit., was left) that Cæsar would not allow departure to be made (lit., it to be departed) too far from the marching-line of the legions and that injury should be inflicted upon the enemy (lit., it should be injured to the enemy in) by ravaging the fields and making conflagrations (lit., burnings) etc.

PAGE 248—40 many (of the enemy) etc.

PAGE 250—41 He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus not to injure Mandubracius nor the Trinobantes. 42 *et*, omit in translating

PAGE 251—43 and (those) which Labienus had taken care to be made etc. 44 When Cæsar had awaited these (lit., which) etc.

PAGE 252—45 of these legions (lit., from which legions) he gave one etc.

PAGE 254—46 by whose management (lit., work) he may learn that Tasgetius had been killed. Meantime he was informed by all the lieutenants and quæstors to whom he had assigned legions that they had arrived in winter quarters and that the place was fortified for the winter quarters. This is an impersonal construction and impossible to translate literally (i. e. that it had been arrived into winter quarters etc.). In about fifteen days since they had come into winter quarters (lit., from which it was come etc.).

PAGE 257—47 that Gauls are not easily able to refuse Gauls, especially when a design was seeming best to be adopted (lit., entered into) concerning the restoring of the common liberties. 48 he advises Cæsar for his kindness, he beseeches Titurius for his hospitality — — 49 it is their plan (i. e. it is for them to decide) whether they etc.

PAGE 258—50 when he does this he (*sese*) both consults for the state because it will be relieved from winter quarters and returns a favor to Cæsar for his good offices (lit., merits, or services).



PAGE 259—51 that nothing must be performed rashly nor must they depart (lit., it to be departed) from winter quarters without the order of *Cæsar*. 52 The fact is a witness. 53 Meantime reinforcements would arrive both from the nearest winter quarters and from *Cæsar*.

PAGE 260—54 Neither otherwise would the Carnutes have formed the design of killing *Tasgetius* nor would the Eburones have come etc.

PAGE 261—55 The English idiom would require some such form as this: who would persuade himself, or, would be persuaded, regarding this etc. 56 In which (i. e. following that advice) if not present danger etc.

PAGE 263—57 Everything is calculated why they may not remain without danger and why the danger is increased by the weariness and wakefulness of the soldiers. 58 They set out at early dawn from the camp in such a manner (lit., so) as they etc. 59 but by *Ambiorix* as a most faithful man.

PAGE 265—60 was performing the duties of a general in summoning and encouraging the soldiers and of a soldier in the battle. 61 this seemed to be done etc.

PAGE 267—62 that they could in nowise be injured (lit., it was possible as to nothing to be injured to them) because of the lightness of their arms and their daily exercise.

PAGE 268—63 Then *Titus Balventius* has each thigh pierced with a javelin. 64 who had led the first century i. e. had been first centurion.

PAGE 271—65 that there is no trouble, for the legion, having been suddenly crushed, which winters with *Cicero* to be slain etc.

PAGE 272—66 as great as they are able — — 67 *necesse*, unavoidable (lit., necessary)

PAGE 273—68 they (the Romans) had brought together etc.

PAGE 274—69 *contabulantur*, i. e. are built up with stories. 70 *nocturnum* is emphasized by *quidem* in the regular text. 71 they exhibit *Ambiorix* for the sake of creating confidence (lit., of making faith). 72 *inveterascere*, lit., to become old 73 he himself hopes that they may obtain what they sought in view of his justice.

PAGE 277—74 i. e. it was spread into every part of the

camp. 75 but no one scarcely even looked back and besides all were fighting most fiercely and most valiantly.

PAGE 279—76 *pugnaretur*, lit., when it was fought etc. 77 "or what opportunity (lit., place) of proving thy valor dost thou await?" 78 Pullo's shield is pierced.

PAGE 283—79 for the sake of passing (lit., bearing), the winter.

PAGE 284—80 *reciderat*, lit., had fallen back.

PAGE 286—81 and therefore was thinking he must relax with an easy mind from speed (lit., it must be relaxed)

PAGE 288—82 and that there be confusion as much as possible in managing these things and that it be performed (*agi*) with a pretence of fear. The enemy having been tempted by all these things (lit., by all which things) etc. 83 they approach nearer i. e. the enemy approach.

PAGE 289—84 after this time no longer would be the opportunity. 85 nor was he seeing that the place had been left with a trifling loss on their part.

PAGE 292—86 without anxiety on the part of Cæsar etc.

PAGE 294—87 they were not obedient to the command. It availed so much among barbarian men that some were found the leaders in waging war etc.

PAGE 295—88 lost no time of the whole winter without sending ambassadors across the Rhine, inviting the states, promising money, (who) should say etc. 89 Nor yet was it possible to prevail upon any state of the Germans to cross the Rhine;

PAGE 298—90 but was thinking he should not lose any opportunity for performing a matter well.

PAGE 299—91 with many insulting words. 92 and enjoins, (lit., forbids), which refers to the part of the sentence below: *omnes peterent quemquam*.

## SIXTH BOOK

PAGE 302—1 *augeri* cannot be translated literally, i. e. to be increased, the idea being that the loss can not only be repaired but may be more than made good, *supplemented* ap-

proaches the meaning. 2 *proximis* and 3 *ulteriores* Germans or states is understood — 4 they bind each other (*inter se*) by an oath. 5 *parari*, *esse*, *venire*, *communicare*, *solicitari*, are infinitives after *videret* (saw that), which are translated as finite past tenses.

PAGE 304—6 and had united these states, (i. e. with the Senones,) but they were thought to have been absent from this council (the recent confederacy). *Hac re* this thing (the adjournment to Lutetia) etc.

PAGE 305—7 for the sake of asking quarter.

PAGE 306—8 Lit., not to be about to contend.

PAGE 307—9 Lit., for the sake of peace to be sought.

PAGE 308—10 at fifteen thousand paces (from Labienus).

PAGE 309—11 Lit., at first light.

PAGE 310—12 Lit., among themselves.

PAGE 312—13 Lit., for the sake of themselves to be cleared

PAGE 313—14 Lit., he becomes, or is made more certain.

PAGE 315—15 from one another.

PAGE 316—16 and forced them to swear publicly that they would enter (*esse* understood with *inituros*, lit., to be about to enter) into no design (lit., nothing of design) against the Sequani.

PAGE 317—17 Lit., themselves to use — 18 as it was perceived that they (*quos*) equaled the Ædui in favor etc.

PAGE 319—19 Lit., they to whom it had been interdicted are held in the number etc.

PAGE 321—20 Lit., to pass from some to others, — plural to correspond with pl. number of *animas*, not the form.

PAGE 322—21 they vow that they will sacrifice them.

PAGE 323—22 *depellere*, *tradere*, *tenere*, *regere*, are infinitives after *habent* . . . *opinionem*.

PAGE 324—23 Supply *esse* with *proditum*.

PAGE 325—24 according to the manner with slaves, i. e. torture. 25 Lit., to have been to the heart to them living.

PAGE 328—26 as wide as possible.

PAGE 331—27 they not themselves even compare etc., *se* is emphasized.

PAGE 337—28 because he thought, he must not contend in battle etc.

PAGE 340—29 for devastating this locality, lit., for this locality to be devastated.

PAGE 348—30 consciousness leaves Sextius, i. e. Sextius faints.

PAGE 350—31 through the midst of the enemy etc.

PAGE 352—32 would not have assaulted the camp etc.

PAGE 353—33 Lit., for harassing the enemy. 34 Lit., it would seem it to be perished by these.

PAGE 355—35 He inflicted death by flogging.

## SEVENTH BOOK

PAGE 357—1 Lit., at the peril of their head, like our term capital (head *caput*) punishment.

PAGE 359—2 Lit., it is departed from the council.

PAGE 360—3 Lit., the sun rising (abl. absolute) — 4 i. e. between nine and ten P. M., viz., about sixteen hours. It must be kept in mind that many miles of the country were then uninhabited. 5 recourse is had to arms, lit., it is rushed to arms.

PAGE 363—6 who they ascertain had made this plan etc. 7 *virtute*, i. e. vigor. Sometimes translated: thanks to Cneius Pompey.

PAGE 366—8 Having been stirred by their entreaties etc. 9 because he had anticipated in his judgment that these things would come to pass as regards Vercingetorix, he departs from the army etc.

PAGE 367—10 for undertaking a plan.

PAGE 370—11 very few of the whole number of the enemy having missed, (or escaped), being captured etc. *Cuncti*, in sense, goes with *perpaucis ex numero*. 12 When ambassadors had come to him from this town etc.

PAGE 371—13 as soon as the townsmen had seen it (*quem* i. e. *equitatum*) and entertained the hope of aid etc.

PAGE 373—14 Supply *esse* with *laturos* and *progressuros*, that the Romans either would not bear privation or would proceed rather far from the camp, with great danger.

PAGE 376—15 Lit., that it should be gone.

PAGE 377—16 to such a degree that the soldiers etc.

PAGE 380—17 since he saw them (*quos*) so prepared in mind etc.

PAGE 381—18 that he prefers to have etc. 19 feebleness of purpose.

PAGE 382—20 *gratiam habendam*, thanks must be given, is understood before *huic*.

PAGE 384—21 and when they had caught them (*quos*) etc.

PAGE 385—22 at equal intervals apart (*inter se*) etc.

PAGE 386—23 In this passage the same phrase (*inter se*) may be rendered one another, each other.

PAGE 387—24 where first it should be thwarted (lit., it should be run to meet so as to frustrate or thwart).

PAGE 388—25 When the battle was raging in all places etc. 26 was depending on that instant of time (lit., to be placed in that instant etc., *esse* being understood with *positam*).

PAGE 389—27 Lit., was retarding the Romans for following.

PAGE 391—28 that if any advance to meet them (*obviam*) on any side they might fight with the battle line arrayed.

PAGE 392—29 that part of the camp which had fallen to each from the beginning.

PAGE 397—30 That is, each of them has his own (followers) adherents. might translate freely *suas eorum*, each of them has his own partisans.

PAGE 401—31 he resolved that he must not act regarding a siege etc.

PAGE 402—32 both in a large measure from water and from unrestricted (free) foraging etc.

PAGE 409—33 who (*quibus*) on account of the size of the camp must remain continually on the wall without relief (lit., the same).

PAGE 411—34 Although Cæsar was knowing these things (lit., which things — *quæ*) etc.

PAGE 419—35 While they are fighting (While the fighting proceeds) most violently etc.

PAGE 420—36 *Manus*, force lit., band, i. e. the force of the enemy.

PAGE 421—37 and was the salvation of his men. 38 viz. the tenth legion.

PAGE 427—38 Lit., it must be hastened by himself if it must be hazarded in building the bridges.

PAGE 429—40 or Melodunum, according to some authorities.

PAGE 431—41 aid must be sought from his own mental resources (lit., by the courage of mind)

PAGE 432—42 When he had come there etc.

PAGE 437—43 in a pitched battle.

PAGE 443—44 *Alesia*, the modern Alise-St-Reine where many relics of the siege have been excavated.

PAGE 446—45 and if they should be rather heedless (dilatatory) he shows etc.

PAGE 447—46 *Poenam capitis*, capital punishment.

PAGE 448—47 from each other eighty feet i. e. about four hundred of them.

PAGE 449—48 where if any (*qui*) might enter — — 49 the foot lit., feet, of each (the several feet) in the ground at the bottom (from [on] the lowest ground) were trodden in with earth.

PAGE 451—50 could be surrounded not by a multitude even great, *quidem* emphasizes *magna*. 51 (if it happens so through its withdrawal) i. e. the departure of the cavalry. This clause is generally omitted in translation.

PAGE 454—52 when these would be fighting in a sally etc.

PAGE 456—53 for the joy of it, i. e. for a mere idea.

PAGE 457—54 For what was in (lit., to) that war like this?

PAGE 460—55 active (soldiers) of the light armed troops.

PAGE 461—56 *ac* must be rendered as if *nec*, nor, i. e. neither a noble nor cowardly act could be concealed.

PAGE 462—57 by one-pounder sling shots. 58 Mark Anthony, the triumvir.

PAGE 464—59 and because they could not enclose it in the works on account of the extent of the surface, our men etc. (*quem, viz., and . . it*)

PAGE 465 60 There was fighting at the same time in all places,

PAGE 466—61 in which it was fitting that they should fight to the uttermost.

PAGE 468—62 when they are fighting more desperately etc.